

# Manual for FOMA® N901iS '05.6



Contents/Safety  
Precautions

Getting Started

Making/Receiving  
Phone Calls

Making/Receiving  
Videophone Calls

Using the Phonebook

Tone/Display/  
Lighting Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode

Mail

i-appli

i-motion

Mobile Wallet  
i-mode FeliCa

Full Browser

Displaying, Editing and  
Organizing Files

Other Useful Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Entering Text

Appendix

Quick Search/Index/  
Quick Manual

# DoCoMo W-CDMA System

- Thank you for choosing the FOMA N901iS.
- Please read this Manual carefully before and during use for using the FOMA N901iS effectively and correctly.

## Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or in an out-of-service area, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb the people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.  
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

## Using the Manual (This Document)

### ● Looking up items from the Table of Contents

Firstly, look in the contents page (P.2). There are tips for operating the phone, etc. You can look up the page with the information you want to know.

### ● Looking up items from the Index

If you know the keyword for the item you are looking for, you find the page quickly through the index (P.566).

### ● Looking up items by categories

If you search by category, you can search in the "Chapter Guide" (in the front cover of the manual). The chapter page (the first page of each chapter) describes the details of contents to look up functions.

### ● Looking up items in Quick Search

If you cannot think of the function name or keyword, you find the function in "Quick Search" (P.564).

### ● Looking up items from the Features

If you know the name of the function or FOMA menu item, you can also find it from the Menu Function List (P.528).

### ● Using the Quick Manual

There is a Quick Manual at the end of this manual that describes the basic functions. You can tear it out of this manual and fold it for ease of use.

- In this manual for FOMA N901iS, the FOMA N901iS is described as the FOMA terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use the miniSD memory card. To use these functions, you need the miniSD memory card. miniSD memory card → P.378
- It is prohibited to reprint a part or all of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual may change without prior notification.

# How to Use This Manual

## About the symbols (Quick Manual → P.572)

This manual describes the symbols as follows:

Shows the function name.

Describes the purpose and overview of the function.

Describes the information you need to know before use.

Indicates the step numbers.

Describes the supplement to the operation.

Describes the operations.

Describes the options displayed on the screen (some options may not appear in some cases).

Describes the useful information or advice about the operations.

**Storing Your Own Name and Image**

Use this function to store your own personal information, including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Stored personal information provides the FOMA terminal with a way of confirming that you are the owner and can also be quoted in text entry and editing displays.

- You cannot change or delete the FOMA terminal's own phone number.
- Items other than the own number are stored on the FOMA terminal. If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) of another FOMA terminal, the items other than the own number are displayed.

**Displaying personal data**

When this function runs, it shows only your name, the FOMA terminal's own phone number and the first e-mail address listed.

The "Own number" screen appears. If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can display all the data by selecting "Display all data" from the function menu and entering security code.

**Function menu (Own Number screen)**

Item	Description
Edit	Edits your personal data. See "Storing personal data" → P.431
Display all data	Enter your security code. Check the contents with . For information on security code → P.140
Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into input and other screens. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.320
Copy phone number	Copies the phone number stored in the personal data. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other screens. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.320
Send Ir data	"Sending and Receiving Individual Data Eater" → P.395
Export this	"Imported/Exported data" → P.382
Erase phone number	Deletes the phone number, stored in the personal data.
Reset	Enter your security code. "YES" Resets (initials) all the personal data other than your FOMA terminal's phone number and restores the defaults set at the time of purchase. When you use "Display all data" to display the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code. For information on security code → P.140

**NOTE**

If you change your own e-mail address or store a secret code, the e-mail address stored in this function does not automatically change.

433

Indicates the menu number.

Describes the settings at the time of purchase or contract, the monthly charge, etc. of the function or service.

Shows the screen at the time of operation.

Shows the page of the function menu.

Shows the category.

Describes each option and its operation.

\* The contents above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

Indicates the page number.

Indicates that the descriptions go on to the next page.

- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.
- This manual describes "Mobile Wallet i-αpli supporting IC Card function" as "Mobile Wallet i-αpli".

The Quick Manual describes the basic operations and displays.

# Contents

<b>How to Use This Manual .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Features of the FOMA N901iS .....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Mastering the FOMA N901iS! .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Safety Precautions .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Handling with Care .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Intellectual Property Right.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Main Components and Optional Equipment.....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Getting Started .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Component names and functions</li> <li>· How to view the display · Menu functions</li> <li>· Selecting the menu</li> <li>· Attaching/removing the battery pack</li> <li>· Charging the FOMA terminal</li> <li>· Turning the FOMA terminal on/off</li> <li>· Setting date and time · Caller ID notification, etc.</li> </ul>	
<b>Making/Receiving Phone Calls.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Making/receiving phone calls</li> <li>· Changing voice call to videophone call</li> <li>· Redial · Pause dial · WORLD CALL</li> <li>· Hands-free · In-car Hands-free</li> <li>· Received calls · Volume · Answer hold</li> <li>· Driving mode · Record message, etc.</li> </ul>	
<b>Making/Receiving Videophone Calls....</b>	<b>77</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Making/receiving videophone calls</li> <li>· Using Chara-den · Remote observation, etc.</li> </ul>	
<b>Using the Phonebook .....</b>	<b>95</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Add to phonebook · Group setting</li> <li>· Search phonebook · Copying a phonebook</li> <li>· Utilities, etc.</li> </ul>	
<b>Tone/Display/Lighting Settings .....</b>	<b>113</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Select ring tone · Vibrator · Keypad sound</li> <li>· Charge sound · Mail/Msg. ring time</li> <li>· Manner mode · Display settings</li> <li>· Display light settings · Set menu display</li> <li>· Neuropointer</li> <li>· Illumination/Illumination in talk</li> <li>· Desktop icon, etc.</li> </ul>	
<b>Security Settings.....</b>	<b>139</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Security code · PIN code · All lock</li> <li>· Remote all lock · Keypad dial lock</li> <li>· Secret mode · PIM lock</li> <li>· Mail security settings · Restrictions</li> <li>· Reject unknown, etc.</li> </ul>	
<b>Camera.....</b>	<b>155</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Shooting image · Continuous shooting</li> <li>· Shooting framed images · Shooting movie</li> <li>· Bar code reader · Access reader, etc.</li> </ul>	

**i-mode ..... 189**

- What is i-mode? · i-mode menu
- Viewing a site · My Menu
- i-mode password · Internet connection
- Bookmark
- Phone To/Mail To/Web To function
- Message service, etc.

**Mail ..... 227**

- What is i-mode mail?
- Composing and sending i-mode mail
- Deco-mail · Emotion-expressing mail
- Receive option · Check new message
- i-motion mail · Chat mail
- SMS (short message), etc.

**i-αppli ..... 299**

- What is an i-αppli? · Downloading i-αppli
- i-αppli standby screen
- Upgrading i-αppli, etc.

**i-motion ..... 315**

- What is an i-motion?
- Downloading i-motion, etc.

**Mobile Wallet****i-mode FeliCa..... 321**

- What is Mobile Wallet?
- Launching Mobile Wallet i-αppli
- IC Card lock, etc.

**Full Browser ..... 325**

- Displaying website designed for viewing on PC
- Full browser screen
- Full browser settings, etc.

**Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files ..... 335**

- Displaying image · Playing movie/i-motion
- Editing image · Editing movie
- Shooting Chara-den · Playing melody
- miniSD memory card
- Infrared data exchange function
- Displaying document (PDF file)
- Printing image, etc.

**Other Useful Functions ..... 415**

- Multi access · Alarm setting · Alarm clock
- Schedule · ToDo · Own number
- Call time/Charge · Calculator · Text memo
- Auto dial setting · Reset settings
- Initialize, etc.

**Network Services ..... 453**

- Voice mail service · Call waiting service
- Call forwarding service
- Nuisance call barring service
- Caller ID request service
- Dual network service, etc.

**Data Communication ..... 467**

- About data communication · Setting PC
- FOMA PC setting software
- Executing communication/disconnect
- Setting up dial-up network
- AT command list

**Entering Text ..... 505**

- Switching text entry method
- Entering kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic/numeric characters
- Copying and pasting text
- Entering kuten codes
- Entering text in 2-touch input
- Entering text in T9 input · User dictionary
- Download dictionary
- Common phrase, etc.

**Appendix..... 527**

- Menu function list
- Symbols and special characters list
- Pictographs symbols lists
- Smiley face symbols list · Kuten code list
- Options and accessories
- Playing i-motion (music data) created on PC
- Malfunction checklist · Error message
- Software update · Scanning function
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), etc.

**Quick Search/Index/Quick Manual.....563**

- Quick Search
- Index
- Quick Manual

## Features of the FOMA N901iS

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

### i-mode

i-mode is an online service that you can use to send e-mail as well as using the i-mode terminal display to look at the i-mode menu site (program) and i-mode compatible homepage.

●i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.

- |                    |        |                |        |
|--------------------|--------|----------------|--------|
| · i-mode (charged) | →P.190 | · i-appli      | →P.300 |
| · i-mode mail      | →P.228 | · i-shot       | →P.232 |
| · i-motion         | →P.316 | · Chaku-motion | →P.192 |
| · i-motion mail    | →P.250 |                |        |

P.189

### Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa

Downloading Mobile Wallet i-appli enables you to transmit electronic cash into the IC Card of your FOMA terminal, to check the account balance or transaction history, or to use your FOMA terminal as the airline ticket or as the point card. The FOMA terminal plays the part of "Mobile Wallet", which makes your life more convenient.

P.321

### PDF Viewer

Enables you to view a PDF file. You can download and check a PDF containing a map, catalog, time table, etc. on i-mode terminal as if you carried a piece of paper.

P.402

### Videophone/Chara-den

#### ●Videophone

You can talk to your party imaging his/her face, let your party's voice come out of the speaker, or switch to the rear camera to show your surroundings to your party. Also, you can switch voice call to videophone call without cutting the call.

#### ●Chara-den

The preinstalled or downloaded characters can substitute for the image of yourself during videophone call. Press the keys to change the character's face or move its hands.

P.77, 85, 367

### 3D × 3D

The improvement of the 3D graphics and 3D sound gives you the feeling of actually being there with games such as the car racing game.

P.116

### Wide variety of network services

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| · Voice mail service            | · Caller ID request service |
| · Call waiting                  | · Dual network service      |
| · Call forwarding service       | · English guidance          |
| · Nuisance call barring service |                             |

P.453

## Deco-mail

You can compose and send expressive mail by changing the font color, size, or the background color for the message, or by inserting a Deco-mail picture or a photo shot with the built-in camera. The FOMA terminal supports templates, which means that you can compose Deco-mail easily by using the format of the received Deco-mail or the downloaded format.

P.242

## Large-sized i-appli, i-appli DX

Download i-appli from the site, and you can enjoy the game or automatically update the stock price or weather report. i-appli DX can be linked to the information such as the phonebook or mail stored in i-mode terminal.

P.299

## Camera

Use the front and rear cameras to shoot a still image and a movie. The rear camera is equipped with Super CCD Honeycomb having the Auto Focus function of two million pixels (effective one million pixels), and can shoot a large image of 1,616 x 1,212 (dots).

“Chance capture” allows you to record movies retroactively from the point you end shooting so that you will never miss the important scene. “Picture voice” enables you to add a voice or sound to the still image you shot. The movies shot using these functions can be saved to i-motion and can be attached to i-mode mail.

P.155

## Full Browser

Full Browser displays the website for PC, which provides you with more information than i-mode site does.

P.325

## 2.5 inch screen

A large screen of 2.5 inch enables you to view larger fonts or images, and makes i-appli more enjoyable.

## Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function and use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.

P.179

## Infrared communication/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

P.392, 398

## Multi-access

By Multi access that enables the FOMA terminal to handle a voice call, packet communication and SMS at the same time, you can talk while enjoying the i-mode service or exchange mails during a call.

P.416

## miniSD memory card available

miniSD memory card enables you to exchange data such as phonebook, schedule, mail or image with PC or another FOMA terminal. Save a movie or music data created on an external device to the miniSD memory card, and you can play it on the FOMA terminal (some data may not be played).

P.378, 540

## Security settings

Protect your privacy using a security code or password. You can also use the security settings such as Lock/security function, which locks your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using when you have lost it.

P.139

## Ring tone

The ring tone supports 50-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

P.114

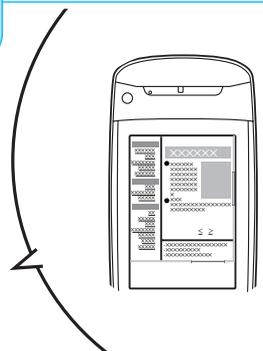
# Mastering the FOMA N901iS !

## ■ Visual communication with the FOMA N901iS

### Display website for PC “Full browser”

#### ● “Full browser” → P.325

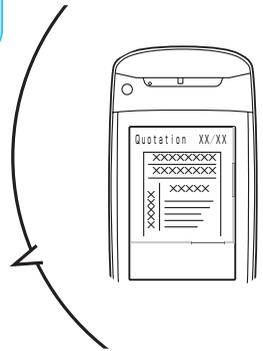
You can adjust the size to the FOMA display, or browse on the actual size of the webpage.  
You can also open a maximum of five Internet web pages at the same time and switch to view one by one.



### Display PDF-formatted file “PDF Viewer”

#### ● “Viewing document (PDF file)” → P.402

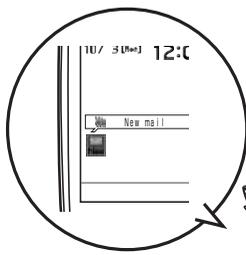
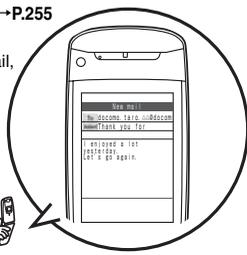
Use miniSD memory card to download a PDF document, and you can view it on the FOMA display.  
Can also zoom in, zoom out, rotate or scroll for a better preview of the fonts or images.



### Display emotion icon for specific mail “Emotion-expressing mail”

#### ● “Emotion-expressing mail” → P.255

An emotion icon is displayed when you receive i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS.  
You can also specify the icons for the received mails containing keywords specified.



\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

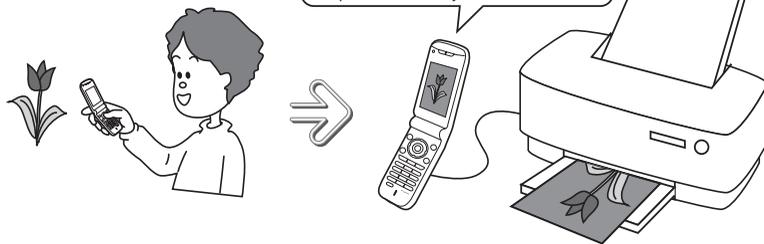
Print images shot using built-in camera on your printer

### “PictBridge Print”

#### ● “PictBridge Print” → P.411

Connect the FOMA terminal directly to your printer via the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can print JPEG-formatted pictures.

**Image processor “PictMagic” equipped**  
 Just release the shutter. The FOMA terminal ensures you high quality and natural color. Selects the best color (skin, greenery, sky, etc.), brightness, contrast, chroma and sharpness for the object.



- \*You cannot print pictures if they are not JPEG.
- \*You need a printer supporting PictBridge.

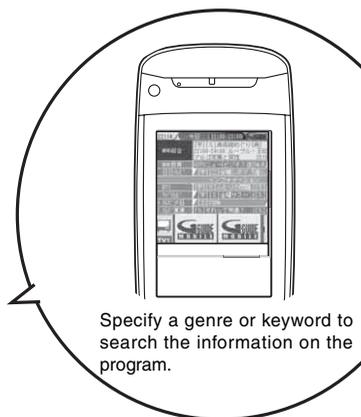
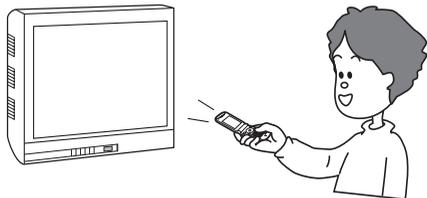


Use as remote control supporting Electronic Program Guide

### “Gガイド番組表リモコン”

#### ● “Infrared remote control function” → P.398

The infrared function of your FOMA terminal plays the part of remote control for your TV, video, DVD player, etc. The function supports Electronic Program Guide (EPG) that enables you to reserve the recording easily.



- \* The screen on the right is only the image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Safety Precautions carefully before you use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain the information intended to prevent the bodily injuries or the damage to the property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

 <b>DANGER</b>
Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from the improper use.

 <b>WARNING</b>
Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result from the improper use.

 <b>CAUTION</b>
Indicates that the bodily injury and/or damage to the property may result from the improper use.

- The following symbols indicate the specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with your wet hand.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near the water, which means that you must not wet it.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

- Safety Precautions are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) . . . . .	9
2. Handling the FOMA terminal . . . . .	10
3. Handling the Battery Pack . . . . .	12
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) . . . . .	14
5. Handling the FOMA card . . . . .	16
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment . . . . .	17

 **DANGER**



**Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.**

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N09 Desktop Holder N07 FOMA AC Adapter P1  
 FOMA DC Adapter 01 Data Communication Adapter N01  
 FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01

For the information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



**Do not wet the devices.**

Exposing the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.

 **WARNING**



**Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



**Keep the conductive foreign matters (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert those matters inside.**

This may result in the short-circuit causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



**Do not shock or throw the FOMA terminal.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the terminal to malfunction or ignite.



**If you find extraordinary happenings, e.g. the FOMA terminal or another device smokes or smells, or it is broken, make sure to:**

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use (or charge) the FOMA terminal may cause it to ignite, etc. After you remove the battery pack, contact our service center.



**Be sure to turn off the mobile phone before entering a place where flammable gas could generate such as gas station. Also, do not charge the phone. Gas could ignite.**

Turn off the mobile phone when using Osaifu-Keitai in a certain area including the gas station. (If setting the IC card lock, unlock it before turning the power off.)

 **CAUTION**



**If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.**

Improper usage could result in the bodily injury.



**Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the terminal to malfunction or be deformed. Also, this may cause a part of the case to become hot and burn you.



**Keep the FOMA terminal away from the humid, dusty or hot places.**

This may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction.



**Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a slope or unstable surface.**

This may fall the FOMA terminal and cause the injury or malfunction.



**Keep the FOMA terminal out of young children's reach.**

A young child may swallow it or suffer from the injury.

## 2. Handling the FOMA terminal

### WARNING



Don't

#### **Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.**

This may prevent you from driving safely and cause a traffic accident. Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or use the driving mode.

According to the Road Traffic Law revised on November 1st, 2004, the penalty will be imposed on using a mobile phone while driving.

When using a phone while walking, take great care on your surroundings or on the road conditions.



No disassemble

#### **Do not try to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal.**

This may cause the fire, injury or electric shock.



Do

#### **Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where it is prohibited to use the mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.**

This may affect the electric or medical equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set OFF to the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions provided by the medical facility about using the mobile phone. If you use the phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



Do

#### **If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls.**

Your heart may be adversely affected.



Don't

#### **Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near the fire or heater.**

This may cause the FOMA terminal to overheat or ignite.



Don't

#### **Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.**

This may cause the eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may cause the device to malfunction.



Do

#### **Turn off the FOMA terminal near the electric equipment using the high-precision control or weak signals.**

This may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

\*Take great care on the following electric devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.



Don't

#### **If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.**

The FOMA terminal is a folding mobile phone and uses magnets to detect that it is closed. Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.



Do

#### **Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance from it when you talk in the hands-free mode with the speaker.**

It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.



Don't

#### **Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.**

This may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.



Don't

#### **Keep the display light away from another person's eyes.**

This may cause the eye injury. Also, this may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Don't

#### **Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as a problem may occur due to air bag inflation.**

The air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

 **CAUTION**


**In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal might impair the safe driving.



**Never swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.**

The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury, malfunction or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



**Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.**

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



**Take care when loading or removing the miniSD memory card.**

This may injure your hands or fingers.



**Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot inside the FOMA terminal.**

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



**Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards or another magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal.**

The magnetic data stored on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



**If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.**

There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.



**If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.**

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause the injury.



**Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to the direct sunlight for a long time.**

The light-collecting nature of the lens may cause fire or failure.



**Do not turn the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to your eyes. Take care not to bring the light close to your eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.**

This could cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect your eyes. Also, this may dazzle or surprise you and cause an injury.



**Do not use the light for the use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.**

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. Using it for the purposes other than shooting with built-in cameras (such as using it as an electronic torch) may cause the light to run out suddenly, which may lead to an accident.



**Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.**

The metal is used in the following locations:

\*Location:Material

<Common to all colors>

Multi-function keys, Neuropointer

: Aluminum coated with alumite

Around the rear camera lens

: Chrome-plated, undercoat; Nickel-plated and copper-plated



**Take care not to pinch your finger in the hinge part when you open the FOMA terminal.**

This may cause an injury.

# 3. Handling the Battery Pack

- Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

## DANGER



**Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near the fire or heater.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**If battery fluid comes into your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water and see a doctor.**

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



**Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the battery pack terminals, and do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**Do not try to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal by yourself. Do not solder it directly to the FOMA terminal.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use the excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

## WARNING



**If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.**

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.



**If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during the use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal and do not use it again.**

Continuing to use the battery pack may cause it to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



**If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it as far as possible away from any flame or fire.**

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

**WARNING**

Don't

**Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.**

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

**CAUTION**

Don't

**Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.**

Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to the DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

## 4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)

### WARNING



Do

#### Use the specified power supply and voltage.

Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction.

FOMA AC adapter 01:

100V AC (should be plugged to 100V AC power outlet for home use in Japan only)

DC adapter:

12V/24V DC (specific to vehicle with negative ground)



Don't

#### The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground. Never use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.

Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.



Do

#### If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with the specified type of fuse.

Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for the information on the correct fuse specifications.



No disassembly

#### Do not try to disassemble or modify the adapter and charger by yourself.

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

#### Never use the damaged adapter's or charger's power cord or DC power cord.

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or overheat.



No wet hands

#### Do not touch the power cords of the adapters and charger or the power outlet with wet hands.

This may cause an electric shock.



Don't

#### Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is plugged to the power outlet or the socket in a vehicle. Also take care for a part of your body (hand, finger, etc.) not to come into contact with the charging terminal.

Such actions could cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.



Don't

#### Never use the AC adapter or desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as bathroom.

This may cause an electric shock.



Do

#### Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug.

The dust may cause a fire.



Don't

#### Do not touch the FOMA terminal, adapter or charger when you hear a crash of thunder.

There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.

## WARNING



Unplug

**Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.**

Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Don't

**Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Take care also not to cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.**

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.



Unplug

**If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or socket.**

Water in the adapter or charger may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



Do

**When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.**

Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

## CAUTION



Unplug

**Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or socket before cleaning the adapter or charger.**

This may cause an electric shock.



Don't

**Do not charge the wet battery pack.**

This may cause the battery pack to overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

**Do not put heavy objects on the AC or DC power cord for the adapter or charger.**

This may cause fire or electric shock.



Do

**Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull on the cord itself.**

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

## 5. Handling the FOMA card

### WARNING



**Do not place the FOMA card in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.**

This may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.

### CAUTION



**Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part).**

This may injure your hands or fingers.



**Do not touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**

This may cause the loss of data or malfunction.



**Use the FOMA card with equipment specified by DoCoMo.**

If you use the FOMA card with equipment other than specified, it may lead to the loss of data or equipment malfunction. For the specified combination of the FOMA card and equipment, contact a nearby DoCoMo service counter.



**Do not drop or shock the FOMA card.**

This may cause the FOMA card to malfunction.



No disassembly

**Do not try to disassemble or modify the FOMA card by yourself.**

This may cause the loss of data or malfunction.



**Do not bend the FOMA card or put something heavy on it.**

This may cause the FOMA card to malfunction.



**Do not use or leave the FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near the fire or heater.**

This may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



**Do not scratch the IC.**

This may cause the FOMA card to malfunction.



**Do not keep the FOMA card in a dusty place.**

This may cause the FOMA card to malfunction.



**Do not incinerate or heat the FOMA card.**

This may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



**Do not keep the FOMA card in locations subject to direct sunlight, high humidity, or high temperatures.**

This may cause the FOMA card to malfunction.



**Put the FOMA card out of your children's reach.**

A young child may swallow it or suffer from the injury.

- The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:



### WARNING



Do

**If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away.**

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

**Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.**

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

**Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:**

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even if you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- If a medical facility gives specific instructions prohibiting you from carrying or using mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set OFF to the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Do

**Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) that are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for the information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.**

Radio waves may affect the operations of the electric or medical equipment.

## General Notes

---

### Do not water the devices.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. If the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even if it can be fixed, you will be charged since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

### Clean with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). The LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

### Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.

- Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud when it is dirty.

### Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

### Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. This may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.

### Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapters and charger carefully.

## Handling the FOMA Terminal

---

### Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal within a temperature range between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.

### It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm while being used or charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.

Using the FOMA terminal close to home (landline) phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such devices before using the FOMA terminal.

### It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.

### Take care not to put the FOMA terminal in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- This may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction.

### Do not close the FOMA terminal with its strap caught between the folding parts.

- This may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction or be damaged.

### Always fit the earphone/microphone socket cap, external connector cap and miniSD memory card slot cover before use.

- Failing to fit these covers may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction due to the dust or water getting in.

### Do not leave the camera under the direct sunshine.

- This may discolor or burn the element.

## Handling the Battery Pack

---

### The battery pack is a consumable.

- If the battery pack does not work despite the fully charging, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.

### Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).

### Make sure to charge the battery when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or if you have not used it for a long period.

The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions in which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

**Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.**

- Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to the DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

**Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunshine.**

- If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger), and keep it in the bundled soft case.

**Handling the Adapters and Charger****Do not charge the battery pack:**

- In a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C
- In a humid, dusty or shaky place
- Near your home phone, TV or radio

**It is normal for the adapter or charger to become warm while being charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.**

**Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.**

- This may drain the car battery.

**If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet user's manual.**

**Do not shock the adapter or charger. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**

- This may cause a malfunction.

**Handling the FOMA card**

**When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, never apply unnecessary force.**

**It is normal for the FOMA card to become warm while being used or charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.**

**The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is the user's responsibility.**

**Always keep the IC part clean.**

**Clean the FOMA card with a soft, dry cloth.**

**It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA card.**

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA card.

**To preserve the environment, take used FOMA card to the DoCoMo service counter.**

**Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.**

**Handling the miniSD Memory Card**

**Do not remove miniSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while you are using the miniSD memory card.**

- This may cause the loss of data or malfunction.

**Handling the Camera**

If you seriously inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit content such as text, images, music or software that was photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from Internet website and that is subject to third-party copyright without the permission of the copyright holder, except where the duplication or quoting of the content for personal use is permitted under copyright law.

It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Shooting a photo of someone by the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot by the FOMA terminal on the website without his or her permission is a breach of portrait right.

## Trademarks and registered trademarks

### All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-appli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Driving mode", "i-melody", "i-area", "QUICKCAST", "Multi access", "i-motion", "mopera", "mopera U", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-anime", "i-appli search", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Short mail", "Dual network", "FirstPass", "M-stage V-LIVE", "Security Scan", "Mobile Wallet" and "FOMA", "i-mode" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- miniSD™ is a trademark of SD Association. 
- F e l i C a is a contactless I C technology developed by Sony Corporation. F e l i C a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
-  is a trademark of F e l i C a Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- LC Font/LC FONT® and LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications. 
- T9 Text Input® is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol  are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.  
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QR Code is registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- "Edy" is the brand name of the pre-paid electronic money service offered by bitWallet, Inc. 
- Handset 3D, Game 3D and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic LTD. of the U.K. 
- Facestamps use the N-Vision Virtual Accessory engine. 
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- NetFront and **NetFront**® are registered trademarks or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is registered trademarks or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- © 2005 DEVILROBOTS
- G Guide Mobile, G-GUIDE Mobile and G guide mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan, and G Guide, G-GUIDE, G guide logo and the G-code are the registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
- Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- McAfee® is registered trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are the registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
- Super CCD Honeycomb is registered trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co., Ltd.
- ©1987-2005 ARMOR PROJECT/BIRD STUDIO/CHUNSOFT/SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.
- The other company names and brand names described in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

## Others

- Macromedia® Flash™ technology of Macromedia, Inc. is used for this product.  
Copyright© 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA
 When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product is equipped with Adobe Reader of Adobe Systems Incorporated.  
Copyright© 2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.  
Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:  
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501  
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239  
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338  
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569  
5,710,784 5,778,338
- This product is equipped with NetFront v3.2 for FOMA Internet Edition for the Internet.  
NetFront v3.2 is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and Infrared data exchange.  
IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- The software in this product contains the module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains the software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL · LGPL 等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.  
The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and the quality control and information management for this product follow the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).  
Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)



## Description of Windows

- Windows® 98 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me stands for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This user's guide describes Windows 98 for Windows® 98 and Windows® 98SE.
- This user's guide describes Windows 2000 for Windows® 2000 Professional.
- This user's guide describes Windows XP for Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition.

# Main Components and Optional Equipment

## <Main Components>

### FOMA N901iS

(Including the warranty and Back Cover N07)



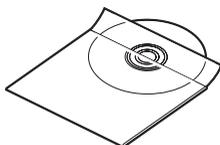
### Manual for FOMA N901iS

(This manual)



\*The Quick Manual starts on P.572.

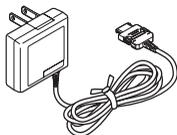
### FOMA N901iS CD-ROM



## <Optional Equipment>

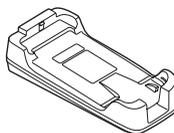
### FOMA AC Adapter 01

(Including warranty and manual)



### Desktop Holder N07

(Including manual)



### Battery Pack N09

(Including manual)



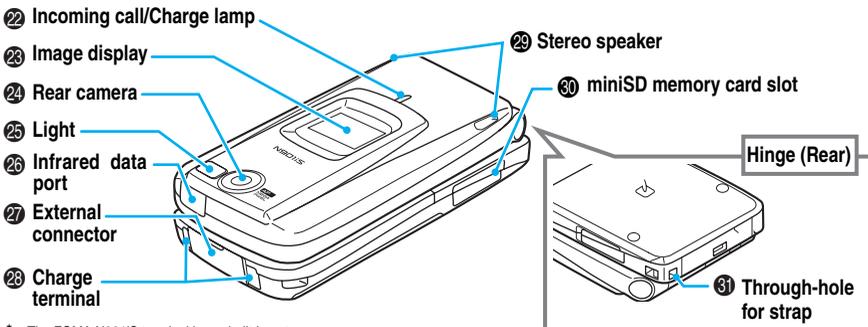
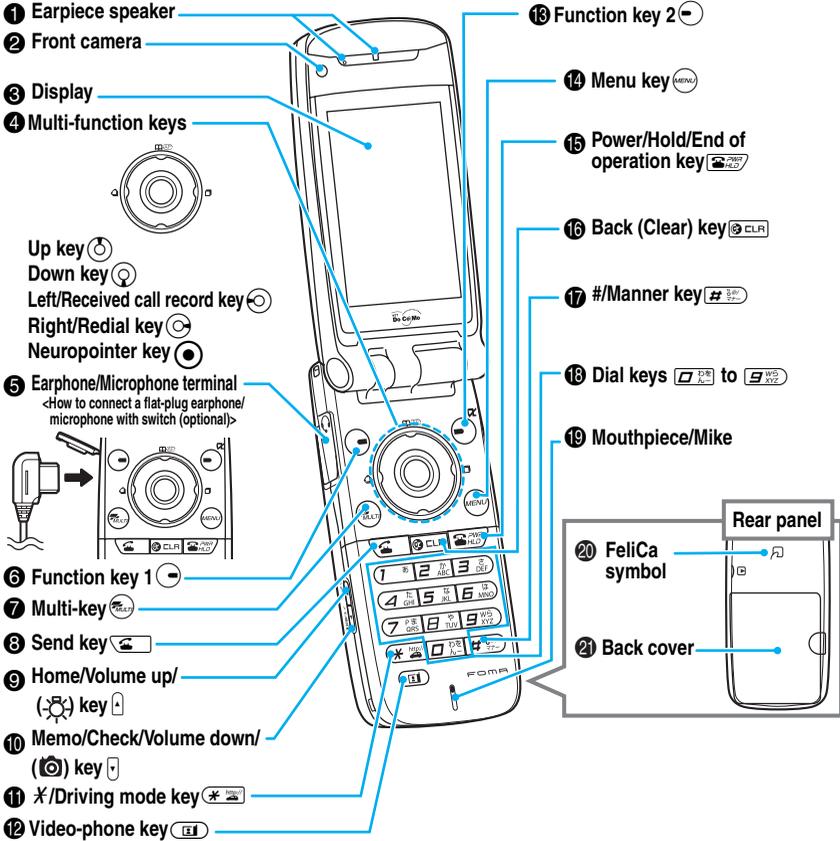
Other options and accessories → P.538

# ● Getting Started

Component Names and Functions .....	24
How to View the Display .....	27
How to View the Image Display (Rear Panel Display) .....	30
Menu Functions .....	32
Selecting the Menu .....	34
Setting the FOMA Card .....	38
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack .....	40
Charging the FOMA Terminal .....	43
Checking the Battery Level .....	45
Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off .....	45
Switching between Japanese and English .....	<b>Select language</b> 46
Setting the Default .....	<b>Initial setting</b> 46
Setting the Date and Time .....	<b>Set time</b> 47
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number .....	<b>Caller ID notification</b> 48
Checking Your Own Phone Number .....	<b>Own number</b> 48

# Component Names and Functions

In this manual, keys are represented as below icons.



\* : The FOMA N901iS terminal has a built-in antenna.

Size (mm)*1	Width 51 × Height 106 × Depth 24
Mass (g)*2	Approx. 123

\*1 : Height and depth are for the FOMA when folded.  
 \*2 : When the battery pack is attached.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →P.378

## ■ Functions

- 1 Earpiece speaker
  - Allows you to hear the other party's voice.
- 2 Front camera
  - Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send your video to the other party during a videophone call.
- 3 Display
- 4 Multi-function keys
  - Up key 
    - Moves the cursor or highlight upward (towards the reversed direction). Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
    - Scrolls up the display.
    - Displays the phonebook menu screen.
    - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.
  - Down key 
    - Moves the cursor or highlighted display downward.
    - Scrolls down the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
    - Displays the "Search phonebook" menu screen.
    - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.
  - Left/Received call record key 
    - Moves the cursor to the left.
    - Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.
    - Displays the received call record. → P.65
  - Right/Redial key 
    - Moves the cursor to the right.
    - Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
    - Displays the redial record. → P.54
  - Neuropointer key 
    - How to use the Neuropointer. → P.26
- 5 Earphone/microphone terminal
  - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is plugged in, hands-free operation is available. You can use a conventional earphone/microphone with switch by using the earphone jack conversion adapter.
- 6 Function key 1 
  - Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom left side of the display. → P.26
- 7 Multi-key 
  - Display the task menu. → P.418
- 8 Send key 
  - Makes a voice call. → P.50
  - Answers a voice call. → P.63
  - Answers a videophone call with the substitute image. → P.84
  - Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → P.515
- 9 Home/Volume up/() key 
  - Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (P.216) easily using i-mode.
  - Lights the display light for the image display when pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.
  - Increases the earpiece volume during a call. → P.67
  - Moves the cursor to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. → P.506
  - Turns the light on when using a camera.
  - Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.
- 10 Memo/Check/Volume down/() key 
  - Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". → P.74
  - Plays recorded messages. → P.74
  - Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded. → P.71
  - Lowers the earpiece volume during a call. → P.67
  - Takes pictures (still images) with the FOMA terminal folded. → P.166
  - Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
- () and () are both referred to as side keys in this manual.)
- 11 /Driving mode key 
  - Enters "X", "http://" or other character strings. → P.508
  - Enters the pause (p). → P.56
- 12 Videophone key 
  - Makes a videophone call. → P.79
  - Answers a videophone call. → P.84
  - Switches the substitute image/camera view while making a videophone call. → P.84
- 13 Function key 2 
  - Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom right side of the display. → P.26
- 14 Menu key 
  - Displays the main menu. → P.34
- 15 Power/Hold/End of operation key 
  - Hold down 1 second or more to turn the power on. → P.45
  - Hold down 2 seconds or more to turn the power off. → P.46
  - Ends a call. → P.50
  - Puts an incoming call on hold. → P.69
- 16 Back (clear) key 
  - Goes back to one step before.
  - Puts a call on hold. → P.52
  - Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → P.51
- 17 /Manner key 
  - Enters "#" or other symbols. → P.508
  - Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". → P.74
- 18 Dial key  to 
  - Enters the phone number. → P.50
  - Enters characters and numbers. → P.514
- 19 Mouthpiece/Mike
  - Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
  - Used as the microphone when the camera is used in the Movie mode and "Picture voice".
- 20 FeliCa symbol
  - The IC card is built-in. Pass the symbol over a unit (reader/writer) to use the IC card function. The IC card cannot be removed.
- 21 Back cover
- 22 Incoming call/Charge lamp
  - This flashes when a voice or videophone call comes in or when mail or Message Request/Free is received. The light turns red during charging.
- 23 Image display
  - Tells you FOMA terminal condition by displaying messages, icons and animations.
- 24 Rear camera
  - Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send images such as scenery to the other party during a videophone call.
- 25 Light
  - Can be used to provide light when taking pictures.
- 26 Infrared data port
  - Window used for sending and receiving infrared rays. → P.392
- 27 External connector
  - Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal.
- 28 Charging terminals
- 29 Stereo speaker
  - Sounds such as the ring tone and voice of the other party during the hands-free mode are emitted from here.
- 30 miniSD memory card slot
  - Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. → P.378
- 31 Through-hole for strap

## Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or more

The functions that are available by holding down each key for 1 second or more are as follows:

Key	Function	See Page	Key	Function	See Page
	Received address list display	P.279		Side keys setting (while the main menu is displayed)	P.148
	Sent address list display	P.279		Driving mode setting (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.70
	Display light on/off	P.126		Earpiece volume adjustment (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call)	P.67
	Enter "+" (standby screen, the phone numbers entering screen)	P.59		Voice memo recording (during a call)	P.434
				Photo mode screen (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.163
	Manner mode setting (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call)	P.119		Check new messages (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.220, 258
	Task switch (during multi task)	P.418		i-appli software list screen (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.304
	Standby screen (during multi task)	P.418		Change to the main screen (during videophone calls)	P.78, 81

## How to use the software keys

To run a software key displayed in the display, press the corresponding function key.

### ■ To run the software key ①

Press to run the software key displayed in ①.

① includes (Mode), (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (), etc.

### ■ To run the software key ②

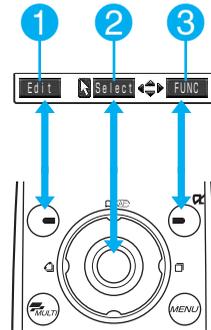
Press to run the software key displayed in ②.

② includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

### ■ To run the software key ③

Press to run the software key displayed in ③.

③ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press while (FUNC) is displayed to display the function menu. → P.36



## How to use the Neuropointer

When is displayed at the bottom of the standby or another screen, slide the Neuropointer to display the pointer (). Moving the pointer by sliding the Neuropointer enables to quickly select an icon or item. When the list screen or function menu spreads across multiple pages, you can scroll a page up and down with the Neuropointer.

### ● Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer

#### 1 Slide to display ▶ Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

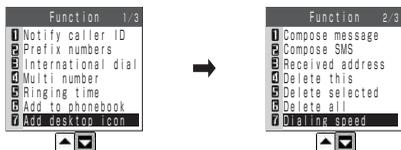
The pointer changes to

#### ■ When the pointer is moved to the top

The pointer changes to

## 2 Press

The next page of the function menu appears.



### ■ When displaying the previous page of function menu

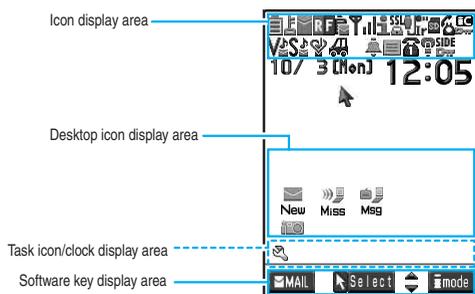
▶ Slide  to leftward and change  to  ▶ Press 

## How to View the Display

The symbols (such as , , , etc.) displayed on the display and image display are referred to as icons.

● A calendar, etc. can be set to a display. → P.124

### ■ Display



### Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level. → P.45	 (Red)	Inbox is full/SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.254, 298
	Displayed while All lock is activated → P.143	 (Green)	You have unread Message Request. → P.218
	Displayed in Secret mode or Secret only mode → P.145	 (Red)	Message Request is full. → P.219
	Displayed while PIM lock is activated → P.147	 (Purple)	You have unread Message Free. → P.218
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated → P.148	 (Red)	Message Free is full. → P.219
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time → P.145, 148	 (Blue)	You have mail at the i-mode Center. → P.258
	Displayed while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set at the same time → P.147, 148	 (Red)	Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. → P.258
 (Blue)	You have unread mail. → P.254		Appears when you have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P.257
 (Red)	Inbox is full. → P.254	 (Green)	You have a Message Request at the i-mode Center. → P.220
	SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.298	 (Red)	Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. → P.220
 (Blue)	You have unread mail/ SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.298	 (Purple)	You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. → P.220

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. →P.220		Ir data exchange is in progress. →P.392 Appears when you are using Ir remote control function. →P.398
	Signal strength →P.46		Appears when a miniSD memory card is inserted. →P.378
	Displays when the FOMA is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach. →P.46		Appears when the wrong type of miniSD memory card is inserted. →P.378
	Displays in Self mode. →P.153		Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer. →P.387
	i-mode is activated. →P.196		Displays during a voice call. →P.50
	i-mode communication is in progress. →P.196		64K data communication is in progress. →P.479
	Packet communication is in progress. →P.479		Displays the dialing speed of a videophone call. →P.79
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) →P.479		Changing between voice call and videophone call is in progress. →P.52, 83
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) →P.479		Displays when IC card is locked. →P.324
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) →P.479		Displays when Vibrator is set. →P.116
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) →P.479		Displays when Ring volume is set to "Silent". →P.68 Displays when the Mail/Msg. ring time is set to "OFF". →P.118
	Displaying pages compatible with SSL. →P.199		Displays in Manner mode. →P.119
	In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		Displays when Remote monitor is set. →P.91
	In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388, 470		Displays in Driving mode. →P.70
	In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays when Alarm is set. →P.420
	In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays when Record message is set. →P.72
	In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		Displays the number of voice mail messages. →P.456
	In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.387		Displays when Display light is set to "OFF". →P.126
	In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays when Side keys guard is set to "ON". →P.148
	In Print mode, unrecognized a printer and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		
	In Print mode, recognized a printer and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		
	In Print mode, recognized a printer and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		
	In Print mode, unrecognized a printer and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		

### Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
	Icons providing information →P.135
	Pasted desktop icons →P.133

### Task icon/clock display area

Icon	Description
	Task icon →P.136

Icon	Description
	Displaying the date and time on the standby screen → P.133 (On other screens, time is displayed regardless of "Clock display" setting.)

## Software key display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 1  . → P.26		Displays when each key of the Multi-function keys  is available.
	Displays when the Neuropointer is available. → P.26		Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 2  . → P.26
	Displays the functions of software keys for the Neuropointer key  . → P.26		

## Display area

Icon	Description
	Pointer (Blue) → P.130
	Pointer (White) → P.130
	Scrolls a page by pointer → P.26

## Image display



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level → P.45		Signal strength → P.46
	You have unread mail. → P.254		Displayed when the FOMA is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach → P.46
	Inbox is full. → P.254		Displayed in Self mode → P.153
	SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.298		i-mode is activated. → P.196
	You have unread mail/ SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.298		i-mode communication is in progress. → P.196
	Inbox is full/SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.254, 298		Packet communication is in progress. → P.479
	You have mail at the i-mode Center. → P.258		Packet communication is in progress. (sending) → P.479
	Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. → P.258		Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) → P.479
	Appears when you have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P.257		Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) → P.479
	You have Message Request at the i-mode Center. → P.220		Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) → P.479
	Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. → P.220		Appears when a miniSD memory card is inserted. → P.378
	You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. → P.220		Appears when the wrong type of miniSD memory card is inserted. → P.378
	Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. → P.220		Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer. → P.387

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		Displays the dialing speed of a videophone call. →P.79
	In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388, 470		Changing between voice call and videophone call is in progress. →P.52, 83
	In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays in Manner mode. →P.119
	In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays in Driving mode. →P.70
	In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		Displays when IC card is locked. →P.324
	In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.387		Displays in Secret mode or Secret only mode. →P.146
	In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays while PIM lock is activated. →P.147
	In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays while Keypad dial lock is activated. →P.148
	In Print mode, unrecognized a printer and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		Displays while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time. →P.145, 148
	In Print mode, recognized a printer and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device →P.388		Displays while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set at the same time. →P.147, 148
	In Print mode, recognized a printer and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		Displays when Side keys guard is set to "ON". →P.148
	In Print mode, unrecognized a printer and connected to a hands-free compatible device →P.62, 388		
	Displays during a voice call. →P.50		
	64K data communication is in progress. →P.479		

## NOTE

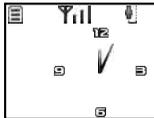
- The display for this FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- Press to check the name of the icon displayed on the screen.

## How to View the Image Display (Rear Panel Display)

The image display notifies you of incoming call/mail or alarm notification in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening your FOMA terminal.

- "Setting the Image Display Mode" →P.125

### Display examples



Analog



Digital



Alarm clock ringing



Receiving call



Camera (shoot closed (with frame))



Emotion-expressing mail



Call billing notification



Switching voice/videophone call

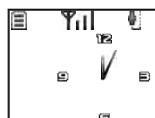
## Checking the caller or sender

If you press  (Home), you can check for missed calls or new mails.

- When you display the “Missed calls” record or delete the “Missed calls” desktop icon, the missed call display in the image display disappears.
- When using the tool group function (P.418), you cannot check missed calls with the image display.

### Missed call display

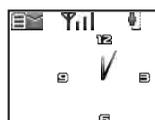
You can check up to three missed calls.



After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

### New mail display

When you receive two mails or more at the same time, you can check up to three new mails.



When “Mail” is set to “ON” in the image display (P.125), the sender, sent date and title are displayed.

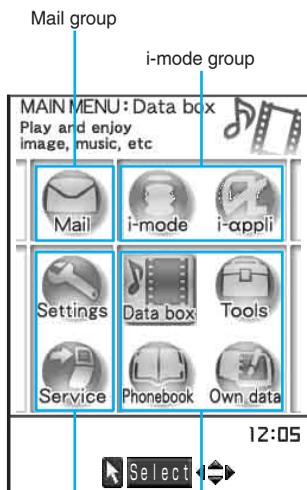
After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

#### NOTE

- Press  (Home) with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the display light up. It is useful for checking the current time in the dark.
- In power save mode, the image display is blank. Press  (Home) to display the image display again.

# Menu Functions

To set or check various functions with the FOMA terminal, you can call up each function from the main menu. Press  to display the main menu. The structure of the menus is as follows.



Settings group

Tool group

## < Mail group >

### ● Mail

Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

Mail
Inbox
Outbox
Draft
Compose message
Chat mail
Compose SMS
Check new message
Receive option
Check new SMS
Template
Mail settings

## < i-mode group >

### ● i-mode

Use i-mode service to access website, etc.

i-mode menu
i-Menu
Bookmark
Screen memo
Last URL
Go to location
Message
Check new message
Client certificate
i-mode settings
Internet(Full Browser)

### ● i-appli

Find useful applications.

i-appli
Software list
Auto start set
i-appli info

## < Tool group >

### ● Data box

Enjoy picture, music, etc.

Data Box
My picture
motion
Melody
Chara-den
My document

### ● Phonebook

Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

Phonebook
Add to phonebook
Search phonebook
No. of phonebook
Utilities
Restrictions
Group setting

### ● Own data

Manage and check your personal data and history.

Own Data
Own number
Received calls
Dialed calls
Mail member
Chat group
Common phrases
Own dictionary
DL dictionary

### ● Tool

Find useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.

Tool
Camera
Schedule
Alarm clock
To do
Text memo
Calculator
Play/erase msg
Record message
Voice memo
Voice announce
Receive Ir data
IJM operation
Forwarding image
Access reader
Bar code reader
SD-PIM
Dictionary

## <Settings group>

### ●Settings

Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

Settings
Incoming call
Talk
Video-phone
Display
Call time/Charge
Clock
Lock/Security
Connection setting
W@ppol settings
External connection
Other settings

### ●Network service

Specify and confirm the settings of network service.

Network service
Check messages
Caller ID notification
Voice mail
Call waiting
Call forwarding
Nuisance call barring
Caller ID request
Arrival call act
Set arrival act
Remote access
Dual network
English guidance
Additional service
Service dialing number
Multi number*1
Call barrings*2

Incoming call
Ring volume
Select ring tone
Sound effect
Vibrator
Illumination
Manner mode set
Disp. PH-book image
Answer setting
Fold setting
Mail/Msg. ring time
Hinging time
Info notice setting

Lock/Security
All lock
PTM lock
IC Card lock
Self mode
Keypad dial lock
Reject unknown
Call setting w/o ID
Change security code
PIN setting
Secret mode
Secret only mode
Scanning function
Remote all lock

Talk
Noise reduction
Quality alarm
Reconnect control
Illumination in talk
Call response setting
Auto dial setting

Connection setting
Set connection timeout
Set check new message
Host selection
SMS center selection
Certificate
Certificate host

Video-phone
Visual preference
Camera image sending
Select image
Voice call auto switch
Remote observation
Disp. setting VP
Indicate V-phone

W@ppol settings
Disp. software info
End stand-by display

External connection
USB mode setting
Fairphone
Automatic answer

Display
Display setting
Display light
Display design
Image display
Font
Desktop icon
Select language
Original menu
Menu display set
Viewer settings
Automatic display
Icons

Other Settings
Keypad sound
Charge sound
Battery level
Side keys guard
Character input method
Record display set
Pause dial
Sub-address
Prefix setting
Int'l dial setting
PLMN setting
Neuropointer
Select icons setting
Reset
Initialize
Software update

Call time/Charge
Call data
Notify cost limit
Reset call duration
Auto reset all cost
Call time display

Clock
Set time
Clock display
Alarm setting

\*1: The service is not provided as of June, 2005.  
\*2: Not available for this terminal

### "Multi Tasking"-->P.418

The FOMA terminal supports "Multi task" that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time, up to three functions from the main menu groups. While the multi task function is used, the in-use groups of the menus are enclosed with a box.



In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

## Selecting the Menu

You can display the screen to set or check each function from the main menu or the original menu.

- When you run, set or check the FOMA terminal's functions by pressing (MENU), you can either select a function from the main menu or access the function by pressing its menu numbers (P.528) The explanations in this User Manual mainly use the method of selecting a function from the main menu.
- To cancel the menu operation, press (ESC). The setting operation is canceled and the standby screen or the previous screen reappears. Depending on the menu, a message asking whether to void the setting being made or not may appear. In that case, press (OK) to clear the message and display the previous screen.
- The frequently used menu such as Mail menu (P.234) or i-mode menu (P.196) can be displayed easily from the standby screen. In the standby screen, press (M) (MAIL) to display Mail menu, and press (i) (i-mode) to display i-mode menu.

## Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: Setting flashing color of "Illumination in talk">

- 1 (MENU) ► Use (Neuropointer) to highlight (Settings) and then press (Enter) ► Use (Neuropointer) to highlight "Talk" and then press (Enter)



- To scroll items continuously

► Press and hold down (Neuropointer)

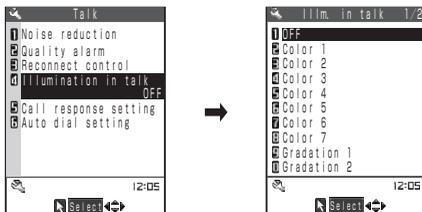
- To use the Neuropointer key

"How to use the Neuropointer" → P.26

- If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu is displayed

The main menu completes and returns to the previous screen.

- 2 Use (Neuropointer) to highlight "Illumination in talk", and then press (Enter)



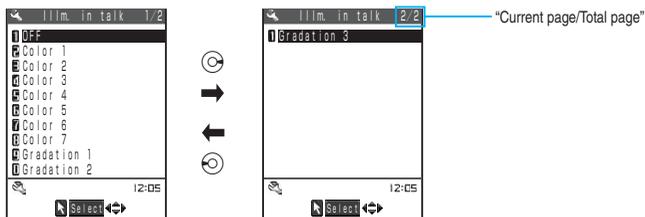
### NOTE

- You can set to not display the guidance of the main menu in "Menu display set". → P.128

## When items appear in multiple pages

- 1 Press (Enter) to select the item you want to set

To scroll the display by page, press (Left) (or (Home)) for the previous page, press (Right) (or (Memo/Check)) for the next page.

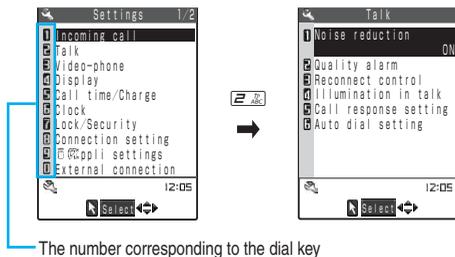


- 2** Press  The selected item is set.

- 3** Press  after operation The menu operation completes and the standby screen reappears. However, the other activate screen appears when the multi task is being used.

## Using the dial key to select items

- 1** Press  to  to select items



## Selecting “YES/NO” or “ON/OFF”

- 1** Press  to select “YES” (or “ON”) or “NO” (or “OFF”), and then press 



The selected item is set.

## Entering a security code

Depending upon the function, before the detail screen is displayed, a security code screen may be displayed. To display the detail screen for that function, enter a security code. → P.140

- 1** Enter a 4 to 8 digit security code, and press 



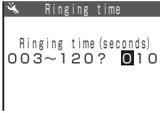
The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as “\_”. The detail screen of the function is displayed when the security code is successfully entered.

### ■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is wrong is displayed. Re-enter the security code from the beginning.

## Entering numbers

### 1 Enter numbers by pressing to



To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number in a 3-digit number entry screen, press  twice or once before entering a number.

■ To enter "1"

▶ , , 

■ To enter "12"

▶ , , 

## Marking a checkbox (selecting multiple items)

### 1 Press to select checkbox ( ) to mark and press

The checkbox changes from  to . This is the status of a selected checkbox. Press  to toggle  and .

When "Finish" appears as a software key, pressing  (Finish) selects the item selected.

When "FUNC" appears as a software key, pressing  (FUNC) allows you to use "Select all" or "Release all".



## Selecting the function from your original menu

You can easily call up the functions by using the "Original menu".

- The contents of original menu is changed with "Original menu". → P.130
- The original menu is displayed in "List".

### 1 Press

Pressing  switches between the main menu and the original menu.

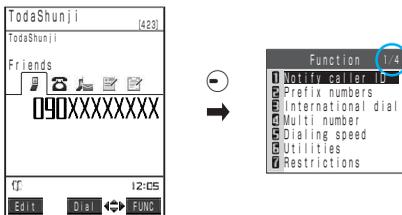


#### NOTE

- When you return to the standby screen from the original menu, or when you call up a function from the original menu, press  to display the original menu.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether you store functions to the original menu or not appears.

## Function menu

When operating a function that can store, edit or delete, "FUNC" appears as a software key. Press  (FUNC) to display the function menu. Press  to highlight the item which you desire from the function menu, and then press  to select the item.



- When an item appears in multiple pages, “Current page/Total pages” appears in the upper right corner of the function menu. Press while the top item of the function menu is selected to display the previous page. Press while the bottom item is selected to display the next page. To scroll the display by page, press (or (Home)) for the previous page, press (or (Memo/Check)) for the next page.
- The displayed function menu differs depending on the function in operation or settings.
- You may not be able to select some items in function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in function menu are grayed out.

### Instructions for menu operations

In this manual, instructions for menu operations are described as shown below. The procedure (extract) for selecting “Remote observation” from “Video-phone” in “Settings” is taken as an example.

#### Notation for this manual:

**1** ▶ “Video-phone” ▶ “Remote observation” ▶ Enter the security code ▶ “Other ID”

**2** Select “<Not recorded>” option

⋮

#### Actual operations:

- 1 Press in the standby screen.
- 2 Press on the main menu to highlight and press .
- 3 Press on the “Settings” menu to highlight “Video-phone” and press .
- 4 Press on the “Video-phone” menu to highlight “Remote observation” and press .
- 5 Enter the security code and press .
- 6 Highlight “Other ID” on the “Remote observation” menu and press .
- 7 Press on the “Other ID” menu to select and highlight a “<Not recorded>” option and press .

Operation for ①

Operation for ②

⋮

## Setting the FOMA Card

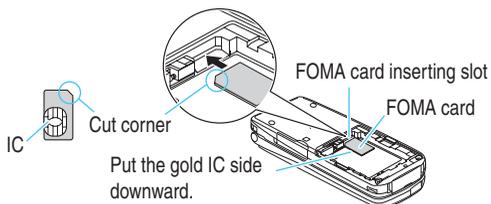
The FOMA card is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number.

### Inserting/removing the FOMA card

Before inserting or removing the FOMA card, first turn the power off and remove the battery pack. Note also that when you try to insert or remove the FOMA card, keep the FOMA terminal held in your hand.

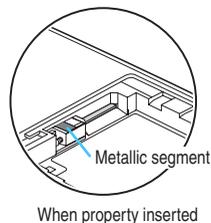
#### ● Inserting

- 1 Put the IC side downward and put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot as shown in the illustration**



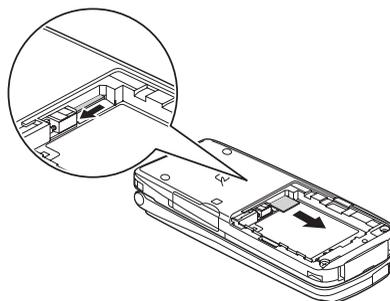
- 2 Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed**

Check that the metallic segment on the lock lever is located at the left edge as shown in the illustration.



#### ● Removing

- 1 Slide the lock which secures the FOMA card**



- 2 The FOMA card is ejected a little. Carefully pull it out straight**

#### NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card could damage the card.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA card after removing it from the FOMA terminal.
- Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA terminal.
- If you do not insert the FOMA card correctly, or if there is a problem on the FOMA card, error messages (P.546) appear.

## PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card (UIM).

PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered every time the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered when user authentication is required for online services such as accessing a site or the Internet or for resetting the total call time and charges.

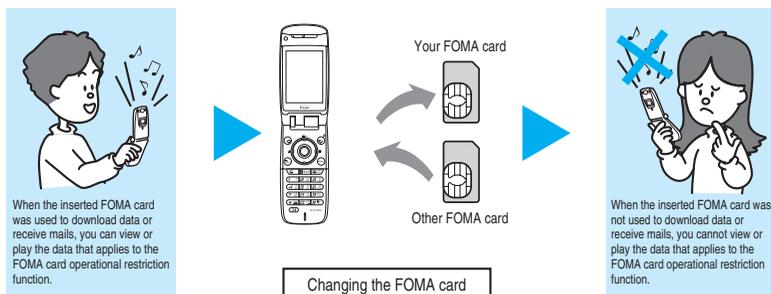
- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is "0000".
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes. → P.141
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

## FOMA card operational restriction function

The FOMA card operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from i-mode sites or websites or receive files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set. Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.

If you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the "📱" mark is attached with data and files with this function set.

- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
  - i-αppli, melody, image, Chara-den, PDF documents, downloaded dictionary downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
  - i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
  - Screen memo containing melody, image, i-motion, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary
  - File (melody/image) attached to or pasted in i-mode mail in Inbox
  - File (melody/image/i-motion, except for data created or shot with the FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mail in Outbox/Draft
  - Message Request/Free with attached or pasted file (melody/image)
  - Images inserted into the message of Deco-mail.
- You can move or delete data and files with this function set even when other FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- Data received via the Infrared data exchange function, data transmission (OBEX) function or a miniSD memory card, edited images (no file restriction) and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not targeted by this function.



### NOTE

- If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set and you insert someone else's FOMA card (UIM), you will not be able to use settings such as "Display setting" or "Select ring tone" with data or files with this function set.
- After data or a file with this function set is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", if you remove your FOMA card (UIM) or replace it with another one, these settings are reset to the default settings.
- Pre-installed i-αppli can be subjected to this function when it is upgraded or re-downloaded from a site after deleted.
- If you set FOMA card operational restriction functions, you cannot select items such as highlighted text in an i-mode mail detail screen and use it to launch an i-αppli.

## FOMA card functional differences

There are 2 versions in the FOMA card (UIM). Please note that there are the following functional differences when you use different FOMA cards (UIM) on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits	26 digits
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Not available	Available
WORLD WING	Not available	Available
Service dial	Not available	Available

### WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls in overseas countries with the same mobile phone number as you use in Japan by inserting "FOMA card (green)" in an overseas mobile phone (GSM) for the service.

A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Please consult the back cover of this manual for more details regarding applying.

## Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before replacing the battery pack.

### Attaching the battery pack

#### 1 Remove the back cover

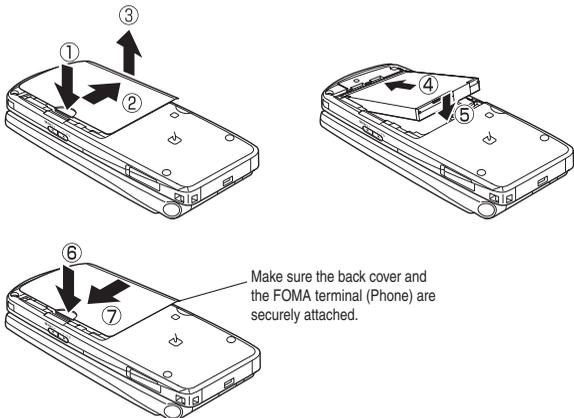
Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② as you lift the back cover in direction ③.

#### 2 Attach the battery pack

With the battery warnings on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ④. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ⑤.

#### 3 Re-attach the back cover

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑥ and slide the back cover in direction ⑦. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

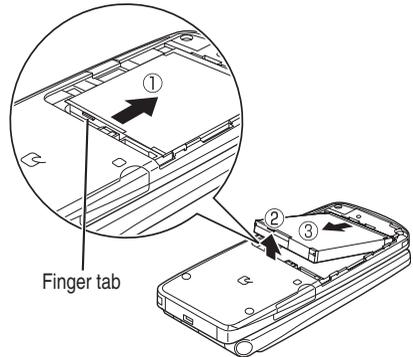


## Removing the battery pack

### 1 Remove the back cover

### 2 Remove the battery pack

Press the tab on the side of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ② and pull the battery out in direction ③.



#### NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to load the battery pack could damage the charging terminals in the FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
- For details, refer to the Battery Pack N09 instructions.

## Getting the best out of your battery pack

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack N09 for the FOMA terminal.

### ■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

### ■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- To charge the battery pack using the AC adapter or DC adapter, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if the "Display light" for "Charging" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.

### ■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

If you charge the battery pack for a long period with the FOMA terminal switched on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-battery alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again for recharging.

### Battery usage time

(The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice call: Approx. 130 min. Videophone call: Approx. 80 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting up downloaded i-cppli and i-cppli standby screen will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- Using alarm tone or vibrator frequently for "Alarm clock" or "Notify cost limit" function shortens the talk and standby times.
- The standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Loading the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or the light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

### NOTE

- If the battery pack is out of charge or you have removed the battery pack, you may be unable to save images or movies.

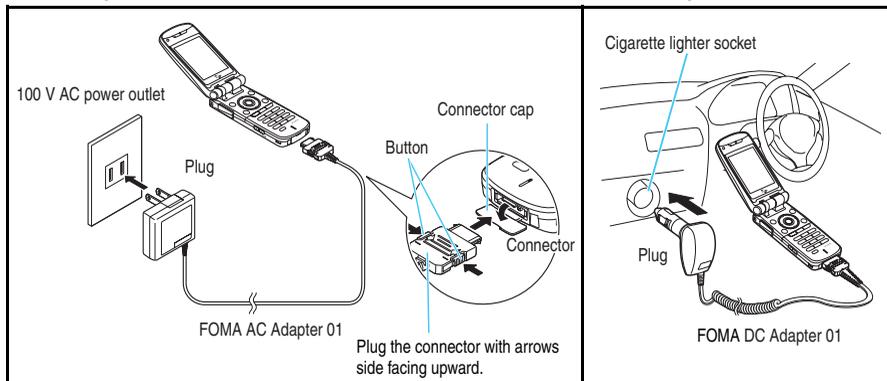
## Charging the FOMA Terminal

- You can charge the FOMA terminal with the optional AC adapter or DC adapter. You can also charge the FOMA terminal with the optional AC adapter and desktop holder.

### Charging the battery pack with the AC/DC adapter

#### ■ AC adapter

#### ■ DC adapter



- Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
- Plug the AC/DC adapter connector horizontally into the FOMA terminal's external connector
- Plug the AC adapter into the outlet or DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car

Charging starts.

#### Standard charging time

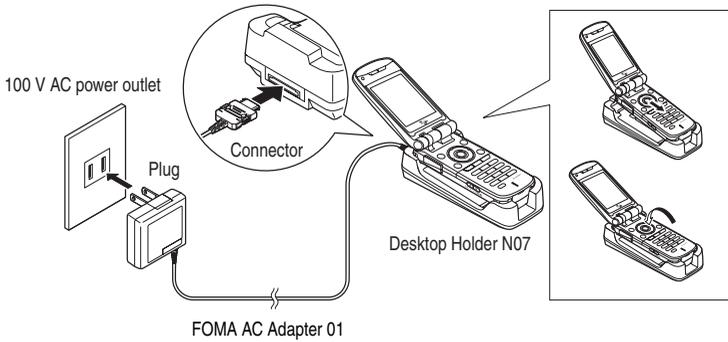
Approx. 120 min.

- When charging is completed, remove the AC/DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the connector button ▶
- Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet or DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car
- Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

#### NOTE

- When the charging lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) and "🔋" on the display disappears, and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" is displayed, disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adaptor or DC adaptor and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adaptor or DC adaptor. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

## Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder



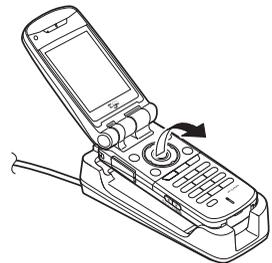
- 1** Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above
- 2** Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet
- 3** Place the FOMA terminal firmly in the desktop holder as shown above

Charging starts.

### Standard charging time

Approx. 120 min.

- 4** After charging ends, hold down the desktop holder, grip both sides of the FOMA terminal and lift it up in the direction of the arrow from the holder



### NOTE

- Set the FOMA terminal firmly in its desktop holder. Also, take care not to trap the strap.
- The charge lamp lights red during charging. The charge lamp turns off when charging ends. If the FOMA terminal is turned on, " " flashes during charging and " " lights when charging ends.
- Turning the FOMA terminal on allows you to receive calls even while the battery pack is charging. (This will extend the charging time longer than the standard.)
- If you turn the FOMA terminal on, the FOMA terminal sounds the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends.
- The AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in the FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out or the power is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has started.
- The DC adapter is exclusively for negative-grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

## Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

### Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed.



- (green): Full charge
- (green): Low charge
- (red) : Almost empty

### Checking the battery level with sound and animation



The current battery level is indicated by sound and animation.

1



“Other settings” ▶ “Battery level”

The check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

“3 short beeps” : Full charge

“2 short beeps” : Low charge

“1 short beep” : Almost empty

#### NOTE

- The beeps do not sound when “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or in the Manner mode.

### When the battery runs out



The screen as shown on the left flashes and the low-battery alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any key other than (Home) or (Memo/Check).

#### NOTE

- During a call, the Recharge battery screen above is displayed and 3 short beeps sound. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.
- During setting to “Manner mode”, when manner mode operation is set to “Manner mode”, “Super silent”, or “OFF” for “LVA tone” in “Original”, no low-battery alarm sounds.

## Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery. Make sure that you use the specified AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.
- Date and time are not set when you purchase the FOMA terminal. Set them in “Set time”. → P.47

### Turning the FOMA terminal on

- Before turning the FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.

1



(1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just loaded the battery pack and you turn the FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the “Wait a minute” message may be displayed for a short time.

### ■ When “” appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as “” appears. The reception level for the FOMA terminal is as follows:



### ■ When the PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”

The Enter PIN1 code screen appears.

### ■ When “All reset all cost” is set to “OFF”

The Enter PIN2 code screen appears.

### ■ If the Initial settings screen appears

Specify the initial settings. → P.46



## Turning the FOMA terminal off

### 1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

#### NOTE

- Signal strength is not stable in calls made while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that “” is displayed when using the FOMA terminal.
- After turning the FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Select language>

## Switching between Japanese and English



You can switch between Japanese and English for displaying the function names or messages on the screen or image display.

### 1 “ディスプレイ” ▶ “バイリンガル” ▶ “English”

#### ■ To change from Japanese to English

▶ “English”



Japanese

#### ■ To change from English to Japanese

▶ “日本語”



English

#### NOTE

- Selecting “English” for “Select language” gives you two options “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” in “Clock display” and for “Info notice setting”.

<Initial setting>

## Setting the Default

Turn the FOMA terminal on and you can set “Set time”, “Change security code”, “Keypad sound” and “Neuropointer” (“Simple” only) as initial value.

- After you set a function, that function’s setting screen is no longer displayed.
- After you set all functions, the initial setting screen is no longer displayed. The initial settings screen also does not appear if you run “Reset” when the initial settings screen is not shown.
- When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code input screen appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to display the initial setting screen. → P.141

**1 Initial setting screen ▶ “YES”****2 Set time**

Setting time → P.47

**3 Change security code**

The default setting is “0000”.

“Changing Your Security Code” → P.140

**4 Set the keypad sound**

Keypad sound → P.117

**5 Set speed of the neuropointer**

Only the basic settings for the neuropointer settings can be set.

Neuropointer → P.130

**NOTE**

- You cannot specify the initial settings while All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- If specification of the initial settings is interrupted because you receive a call or press the or key, the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also specify separate settings for individual functions.

&lt;Set time&gt;

**Setting the Date and Time**

No date or time is set by default. After setting the date and time in “Set time”, the date and time you set appears on displays such as the standby screen and image display.

- This function allows you to set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.
- If you set the clock time, you will be able to use functions to manage the date and time such as “Alarm clock” and “Schedule”.
- Ensure that the correct date and time are set on the FOMA terminal.
- To set the clock time in the initial setting, start step 2 of “Setting the Default” (P.46).

&lt;Example: Setting October 3, 2005, 12:05&gt;

**1** ▶ ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Set time”**2 Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format)**

Press to move the highlight, and then enter the numbers with the dial keys.  
Press , , , , , , , , , , , , , and .

**NOTE**

- If you enter the date and time outside the scope of this FOMA terminal, the date and time are not set. Enter the correct date and time again.
- You can set the date and time during a call.
- If you do not set the correct date and time, you cannot use functions such as the SSL communication (authentication) function, the i-appli automatic run function and i-appli DX, and you cannot acquire i-motion with the replay limit and period.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a built-in backup battery. The date and time you set are retained by the built-in backup battery, so the settings are not lost when you replace the battery pack. However, the date and time may not be held if the battery pack is removed for two weeks or more. In this case, charge the FOMA terminal, then set the date and time again. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

&lt;Caller ID notification&gt;

MENU 1 2 3 4

## Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

Default setting: OFF

Subscription: Unnecessary

Monthly charge: Free

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a call. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.

- You cannot operate the Caller ID notification service when the “” icon is displayed.
- This function is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the caller ID.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set “Activate” to “ON” and place the call again.

1



“Caller ID notification” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Activate	Network security code → P.140
	ON ▶ Enter the Network security code
	OFF ▶ Enter the Network security code
Status request	▶ Check the notify caller ID setting and press 

### NOTE

- You can also set the notify caller ID to ON or OFF when you dial a phone number or display it from the “Phonebook”, “Redial” or “Received calls”. → P.51

&lt;Own number&gt;

MENU 1 2 3 4

## Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card (UIM).

1



You can also display your phone number (own number) by selecting  ▶  ▶ “Own number”.



### NOTE

- By default, you can display only own number.
- Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address and mail address, etc.) can be stored. How to store and display your data → P.432
- An i-mode mail address can be checked in the i-mode menu ▶  Menu ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Mail Settings” ▶ “Confirm Mail Address”.

# ● Making/Receiving Phone Calls

## ■ Making Phone Calls

Making a Call .....	50
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call .....	52
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number .....	<b>Redial/Dialed calls</b> 54
Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls .....	56
Sending Push Signals Quickly .....	<b>Pause dial</b> 56
Setting Prefix Numbers .....	<b>Prefix setting</b> 57
Making International Calls .....	<b>WORLD CALL</b> 58
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls .....	<b>Sub-address</b> 61
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection .....	<b>Reconnect control</b> 61
Blocking Out Ambient Noise .....	<b>Noise reduction</b> 61
Switching to Hands-free Operation .....	<b>Hands-free</b> 62
Making Hands-free Calls in the Car .....	<b>In-car Hands-free</b> 62

## ■ Receiving Phone Calls

Receiving a Call .....	63
Using the Dial Keys to Receive a Call .....	<b>Answer setting</b> 64
Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded .....	<b>Fold setting</b> 65
Using the Received Calls .....	<b>Received calls</b> 65
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume .....	<b>Volume</b> 67
Adjusting the Ring Volume .....	<b>Ring volume</b> 68

## ■ Settings For When You Cannot Take Calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately .....	<b>Answer hold</b> 69
Setting the Hold Tone .....	<b>Call response setting</b> 69
Blocking Calls When You Are Driving .....	<b>Driving mode</b> 70
Checking Missed Calls .....	<b>Info notice setting</b> 71
Having the Caller Leave a Message .....	<b>Record message</b> 72
Having Callers Leave a Message During Another Call .....	<b>Quick message</b> 74
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos .....	74

# Making a Call

Use this procedure to dial a phone number and make a voice call.

## 1 Dial the phone number starting with the other party's area code

"Phone number input screen" appears.

Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning if a number of more than 26 digits is input.

### ■ To call to a mobile phone

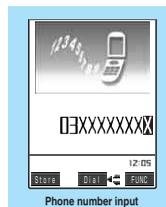
090 - × × × × - × × × ×

or

080 - × × × × - × × × ×

### ■ To call to a PHS phone

070 - × × × × - × × × ×



Function menu → P.51

## 2 or

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.

The  icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call.

The "in-call screen" appears.

### ■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call" → P.52

### ■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press , and call again after a while.

### ■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press , and call again after a while.

### ■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the caller ID request service switched to "Activate". Call again with caller ID notification enabled.



Function menu → P.51

## 3 To end the call, press

### NOTE

- You can make calls while the FOMA terminal is in i-mode or you are sending or receiving mail.
- You cannot make a voice call using multi access communication during 64K data communication or during a videophone call. However, if you are on a videophone call with a person using the FOMA terminal that supports switching to voice call, you can change to voice call by selecting "Voice phone change" from the function menu. (As of June 2005, only 901iS series supports this function.) → P.83
- If you display a screen other than the in-call screen during a call, press  to return to the in-call screen.
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail). → P.241
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make calls while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- If the name or phone number of the called party is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the name of the called party and the icon selected while you are dialing the call. However, if you also stored a still image in the phonebook entry, the image is not displayed.
- For entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or while PIM lock was activated, the phone number is displayed without the name.
- How to make a call using a hands-free device → P.62
- You can make a call using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → P.444

## Function menu (phone number input screen)

## 1 Phone number input screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Notify caller ID</b>	Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". <b>■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF"</b> ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID notification" (P.48) setting is applied.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	▶ <b>Select the prefix name to be added</b> "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P.57
<b>International dial</b>	<b>■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added)</b> The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.59). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When "Auto" is set  "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting".</li> <li>When "OFF" is set  ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b>  "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</li> </ul> <b>■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)</b> ▶ <b>Select a country code</b> ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b> The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.59
<b>Multi number</b>	"Multi number" → P.464
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
<b>Dialing speed</b>	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
<b>Select image</b>	Sets the image used for videophone calls. → P.87 Selecting "Release" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

## Function menu (in-call screen)

## 1 In-call screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Speed photo mail</b>	"Sending an image you shot during a call" → P.241
<b>Disp photo mail</b>	Displays received speed photo mail.
<b>Check new message</b>	Checks for new i-mode messages. → P.220, 258

## When you make a mistake dialing a number

**■ To insert a number**

Press  and move the cursor to the number to the right of the position where you want to insert the number. Then enter the number.

**■ To delete a number**

Press  and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press .

Hold down  for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the right of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

**■ To correct all the numbers**

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and hold down  for 1 second or longer.

## Putting the current call on hold <Holding>

Use the procedure below to put the current call on hold.

### 1 During a call ▶



The other party hears the on-hold tone.

#### ■ To end the held call



#### ■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.

### 2 Press , or to resume the call

#### NOTE

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use "Call response setting" to select the tone used for held calls.
- Provided "End the call" is not selected in "Fold setting", folding the FOMA terminal will also put a call on hold.
- If a setting other than "OFF" is selected for "Illumination in talk", the incoming call lamp also flashes for held or muted calls during a call.

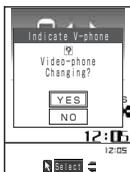
## Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call

The caller can change between voice call and videophone call.

- If the handset of the other party is the FOMA terminal supporting the call change, "V-phone" is displayed during the voice call, and you can switch between the voice call and videophone call. (Only 901iS series supported, as of June, 2005)
- You can change the voice call only when you are the caller. When you receive a voice call, you cannot change it to the videophone call.
- To change the call, your FOMA terminal must be set to let the other party notify you "Indicate V-phone" beforehand. → P.90
- It is possible to change repeatedly between voice call and videophone call.

### 1 In-call screen (P.50) ▶ or ▶ "YES"

While the voice call is changed to videophone call, the indicator is displayed, which indicates that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is played. Select "NO" in the "Indicate V-phone" message screen to return to the in-call screen.



The digital communication fee is charged after the appearance of this screen.

## NOTE

- You can change the videophone call to the voice call. →P.83
- It takes about 5 seconds to change the calls. The signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change between the videophone and voice calls while talking in the following cases:
  - You receive the call.
  - The other party stops the call change function. →P.90
  - The terminal of the other party does not support the call change function.
- The call time displayed is reset to 0 second each time the calls are changed. However, after the change operation, if the videophone call is finished, the call time displayed is the total of voice call and videophone call.
- If you try to change the call, the message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select the image to be sent, camera image or substitute image. →P.64
- If the change is operated, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls records. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to videophone.
- If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "Cannot change" meaning you cannot change the calls. The voice call continues.
- Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the calls and the call may be canceled.
- You are not charged while the indicator showing "Changing" is displayed.
- When "Call waiting" is operated, you cannot change the calls.
- If the other party connects to the voice mail service or call forwarding service, or if the other party begins message recording, you cannot change to videophone.
- If you performed the switching operation, the amount of call charge displayed in "Call data" (P.436) may differ from the one you will pay.
- The hands-free operation continues after the change of calls. You can also activate or deactivate hands-free operation during switching to videophone call (P.62).

## Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

The information such as phone number, date and time you called is recorded as Redial/Dialed calls record.

### Using the Redial and Dialed calls

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls and videophone calls. The Dialed calls record stores a total of 60 calls, comprising up to 30 voice call or videophone call entries and 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- Calls to the same phone number in the same phonebook entry are stored in the redial record as a single entry under the most recent call.
- When the number of redial record entries exceeds the maximum number, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during a videophone call.
- The date and time of a call are only stored if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- When you make a call by retrieving a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, the name stored in the phonebook is not recorded in the Redial/Dialed calls record.
- If you can change between voice call and videophone call, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls histories.

#### 1 Standby screen

The "Redial (list) screen" appears.

##### ■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶ Standby screen  ▶  ▶ "Dialed calls"

The "Dialed calls (list) screen" appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu▶P.55

#### 2 Select the Redial or Dialed calls record entry you want to check

The "Redial (details)" screen or "Dialed calls (details) screen" appears. In the top right corner of the display, the "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

##### ■ To check earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Press  to move to the previous (more recent) number or  to move to the next (older) number.

##### ■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



Example: Redial (details)

Function menu▶P.55

#### 3 or

##### ■ To make a videophone call

▶ 

#### 4 To end the call, press

#### NOTE

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the entries in the Redial or Dialed calls records. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective records of Redial or Dialed calls, or set "Redial/Dialed calls" in "Record display set" to "OFF".
- You can make a voice call (or videophone call) to the most recent Redial record by pressing  (or ) and then  in the standby screen.
- Setting "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" erases all the entries recorded as Redial or Dialed calls. However, calls made subsequently are recorded in "Dialed calls".
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored when you call someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- Phone numbers you have called before are also stored in "Dialed calls". Even when a call is made to the same number, calling history is recorded as a separate entry in "Dialed calls".

## Function menu (Redial/Dialed calls screen)

- The function menus displayed in the Redial screen and Dialed calls screen are the same whether the list screen or detail screen is shown.

### 1 Redial/Dialed calls screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Notify caller ID*</b>	Select either "OFF" or "ON" to notify the other party of your caller ID. <b>■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF"</b> <b>▶ "Cancel prefix"</b> When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID notification" (P.48) setting is applied.
<b>Prefix numbers*</b>	<b>▶ Select the prefix name to be added</b> "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P.57
<b>International dial</b>	<b>■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added)</b> The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.59). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When "Auto" is set                              "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting".</li> <li>When "OFF" is set  <b>▶ Select the IDD prefix code</b>                              "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</li> </ul> <b>■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)</b> <b>▶ Select a country code ▶ Select the IDD prefix code</b> The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.59
<b>Multi number*</b>	"Multi number" → P.464
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → P.100
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
<b>Compose SMS</b>	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → P.292
<b>Sent address</b>	Displays the sent address list.
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record.
<b>Delete selected</b>	<b>▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES"</b> You can delete multiple Redial or Dialed calls records.
<b>Delete all</b>	<b>▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"</b> All the Redial and Dialed calls records are deleted. Security code → P.140
<b>Dialing speed*</b>	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
<b>Select image*</b>	Sets the image used for videophone calls. → P.87 Selecting "Release" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

\* : This function is available only for the detail screen.

#### NOTE

- Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with a mail address specified as the address when the mail address is stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook, the first address is specified as the address.
- "Delete all" deletes all the entries recorded in both redial and dialed calls. Note that using "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the redial record entries does not delete the records from the dialed calls and the records remain. To delete records in the dialed calls, use the function menu in the Dialed calls screen.

#### ■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Indicates a voice call.		Indicates an international videophone call.
	Indicates an international call.		Indicates a packet communications call.
	Indicates a videophone call.		Indicates a 64K data communications call.

## Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can provide your phone number (caller ID) for display on the other party's phone (display) when you make a voice or videophone call. Note that your caller ID is important information and care should be taken when providing it to others.

Function	Description	Ref. page
Caller ID notification	Specifies whether other parties are notified of your caller ID whenever you make a call.	P.48
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P.56
Notify caller ID	Uses function menu to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P.51

### Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To provide your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix when you dial the phone number. To withhold your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

#### ■ To provide your phone number

- Voice calls : 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 
- Videophone calls : 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 

#### ■ To withhold your phone number

- Voice calls : 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 
- Videophone calls : 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 

#### NOTE

- The same effect can be achieved by dialing the "X31#" prefix instead of "186" and the "#31#" prefix instead of "184".
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" or "X31#" prefix.
- If you make a call with the "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is recorded in the Redial or Dialed calls.

<Pause dial>



## Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to QUICKCAST\* and to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

### Storing dialing data as pause dial record entries

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into a pause dial record entry. Inserting a pause (p) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can only store one dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and X symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

#### 1 "Other settings" ▶ "Pause dial"

The "Pause dial screen" appears.

#### ■ If there is dialing data already stored

The stored dialing data appears.

#### 2 (Edit) ▶ Enter the dialing data

Press  to , , and  to enter the dialing data

#### ■ To enter a pause (p)

▶  (for 1 second or longer)



Function menu ▶ P.57

## Function menu (Pause dial screen)

**1** Pause dial screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	▶ Edit the dialing data
Send pause dial	▶ Enter the destination phone number ▶  Whenever you press  , the dialing data ending with a pause (p) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

## Using dialing data as a pause dial for transmission

**1**  ▶  ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Pause dial”

**2**  ▶ Dial the destination phone number

■ To enter the number by searching the phonebook using part of the phone number  
▶ Dial a part of the phone number ▶ Press  to search the phonebook

■ To enter the number by searching the phonebook using a search mode other than the phone number  
▶  ▶ Choose a search mode from the search phonebook screen

■ To enter the number by searching the Received calls/Redial record  
▶  ▶ Search the number by using the Received calls or pressing 

**3**  or 



The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and displays the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.

**4**  or 

Each time you press  or , the dialing data ending with a pause (p) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ To transmit all the dialing data at once  
▶  (for 1 second or longer) ▶ “Send at one time”  
It may not be possible to batch send to some recipients.

### NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- Switching to the Pause dial screen during a voice call allows you to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- You cannot send push signals in a videophone call.

<Prefix setting>

## Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting  
WORLD CALL (009130010)

Set the frequently used, specific numbers (prefix) in advance. You can then use the preset numbers as phone number prefixes when you make calls using “Dial input”, “Redial”, “Phonebook” or the “Received calls” and “Dialed calls” records. It is useful for setting numbers such as “Caller ID notification”.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset numbers can include numbers from 0 to 9 and the #, \*, + and symbols.

**1** **“Other settings”** **“Prefix setting”**

The “Prefix setting screen” appears.

**2** **Highlight a “<Not recorded>” option and press**  
**(Edit)**

- **To change the details of a previously stored prefix**  
 Highlight the item to be changed and press (Edit)
- **To check the details of an already recorded prefix**  
 Select the item to be checked



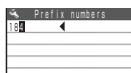
Function menu P.58

**3** **Enter the name to be stored**



The name can be stored consisting of up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.  
 “Entering Text” P.506

**4** **Enter the numbers (prefix)**



The number can be input consisting of up to 10 digits.

**Function menu (prefix setting screen)**

**1** **Prefix setting screen** **(FUNC)** **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the prefix number. “Entering Text”  P.506
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted prefix number.
<b>Delete all</b>	<b>Enter your security code</b> <b>“YES”</b> Security code  P.140

**<WORLD CALL>**

**Making International Calls**

Subscription: Not required  
 Monthly fee: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service that can be used from DoCoMo mobile phones. FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to “WORLD CALL” when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who indicated that they did not require the service.)

- WORLD CALL can be used to call around 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included on the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding “+” or selecting “International dial” or “Prefix numbers” from the function menu in the phone number input screen, Redial/Dialed calls screen, Received calls screen or phonebook detail entry screen.

**Changes to the international dialing procedure**

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the “MYLINE” service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. Consequently, with the introduction of the “MYLINE” service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the procedure described below with “010” removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back of the manual.

“International videophone calls” can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing to make the call after using the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information on accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the image of the other party shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

## Using dial key to make international calls

### 1 Dial the number in the following order: 009130→010→(country code) → (area code) → (the other party's phone number)

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the first zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

### 2 or

An international call is made to the number you dialed.

### 3 To end the call, press

## Using "+" to make an international call

By using the "+" prefix, you can make international calls without having to dial the international access code (e.g. 009130-010).

- At the time of purchase, "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting" (P.59) is set to "Auto", so that the FOMA terminal automatically dials the international access code.

### 1 In the standby screen, dial the following; +( (for 1 second or longer)) → (country code) → (area code) → (phone number called)

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the first zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

### 2 or

The international call is made.

- **To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code**

▶ "Original phone No."

※: This function is not available for your FOMA terminal.

- **To cancel the call**

▶ "Cancel"

## Making an overseas phone call with easy operation <Int'l dial setting>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD prefix setting: "WORLD CALL" (009130010) Country code setting: "アメリカ (United States)" (Country code: 1)
-----------------	--

You can change the settings used for dialing overseas calls and store new country codes. You can set the following settings:

Setting	Explanation
Auto assist setting	When you make an overseas call from Japan, the entered "+" is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
IDD prefix setting	Stores the international access name and IDD prefix code used when you make an international call.
Country code setting	Stores the country name and country code used when you make an international call.

### ● Auto assist settings

Use the procedure below to set the Auto assist function for "+" when you make an international call.

### 1 ▶ ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Int'l dial setting"

### 2 "Auto assist setting" ▶ "Auto"

- **To disable Auto assist**

▶ "OFF"

### 3 Select the country name

### 4 Select an international access name

**NOTE**

● If you enter "81" (the country code for Japan) after "+" or an emergency number (110, 119 or 118), the international access code is not added.

**● Storing the IDD prefix code**

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

**1**   ▶ **“Other settings”** ▶ **“Int'l dial setting”**

**2** **“IDD prefix setting”**

The “IDD prefix setting screen” appears.

**3** **Highlight a “<Not recorded>” option and press**

 **(Edit)**

■ **To change the details of a previously stored setting**

▶ Highlight the item to be changed and press  **(Edit)**

**4** **Enter an IDD prefix name**

“Entering Text” → P.506

**5** **Enter the IDD prefix code**



IDD prefix setting  
Function menu▶P.60

**Function menu (IDD prefix setting screen)**

**1** **IDD prefix setting screen** ▶  **(FUNC)** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the item registered in IDD prefix setting. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted item registered in IDD prefix setting.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ <b>“YES”</b> Deletes all the items registered in IDD prefix setting. Security code → P.140

**NOTE**

● You cannot delete the IDD prefix code selected in “Auto assist setting”. When “Auto” is set in “Auto assist setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

**● Storing a country code**

You can store up to 3 country codes, each of 5 digits max.

**1**   ▶ **“Other settings”** ▶ **“Int'l dial setting”**

**2** **“Country code setting”**

The “Country code setting screen” appears.

**3** **Highlight a “<Not recorded>” option and press**

 **(Edit)**

■ **To change the details of a previously stored setting**

▶ Highlight the item to be changed and press  **(Edit)**

**4** **Enter the Country name**

“Entering Text” → P.506

**5** **Enter the Country code**

See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.



Country code setting  
Function menu▶P.61

## Function menu (Country code setting screen)

### 1 Country code setting screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the Country code. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted Country code setting.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Deletes all the registered Country code setting. Security code → P.140

#### NOTE

- You cannot delete country codes set using "Auto assist setting". You cannot delete all country codes when "Auto assist setting" is set to "Auto".

### <Sub-address>

## Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting  
ON

This function enables you to set "X" contained in the phone number as a separator so that the numbers following "X" are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are used in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communications devices and to select content in "M-stage V-LIVE".

### 1 [MENU] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Sub-address" ▶ "ON"

- To cancel the sub-address setting

▶ "OFF"

#### NOTE

- In the following cases, "X" does not function as a sub-address separator. The enter number including "X" is recognized as an ordinary phone number.
  - Where the "X" is at the beginning of a phone number.
  - Where "X" immediately follows "186", "184", "X31#" or "#31#" at the beginning of a phone number.
  - Where "X" immediately follows a number entered using "Prefix".

### <Reconnect control>

## Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting  
No tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call or videophone call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. Using this function allows you to set the type of alarm when a call is reconnecting.

- The interval for reconnection capability varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.
- If the signal quality deteriorates very suddenly, the call may end without an alarm being sounded.

### 1 [MENU] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Talk" ▶ "Reconnect control" ▶ "No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone"

#### NOTE

- Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
- The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

### <Noise reduction>

## Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting  
ON

The noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice or videophone call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

### 1 [MENU] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Talk" ▶ "Noise reduction" ▶ "ON"

- To not use the noise reduction

▶ "OFF"

<Hands-free>

## Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

### 1 In-call screen (P.50) ▶ (📞➡📞)

While your terminal is ringing because of an incoming voice call, you can switch to hands-free operation by pressing (📞➡📞).

“📞➡📞” appears and you can hear other party's voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.



Voice call



Videophone call

#### ■ To cancel the hands-free operation during a call

▶ Press (📞➡📞) during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and “📞➡📞” disappears during a voice call and “📞➡📞” changes to “📞➡📞” during a videophone call.

### ● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

#### NOTE

- Other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- When a call is finished, the hands-free setting is canceled.

<In-car Hands-free>

## Making Hands-free Calls in the Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a store-bought device that support hands-free operation (such as a car navigation system), you can make and receive voice and videophone call through the hands-free device.

For information on how to use the hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. This function is an optional function that will be available once devices that support hands-free operation are released. As of June 2005, no such devices have been released.

- To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. → P.388
- The display and ring tones used for incoming calls and mail are as specified in the FOMA terminal settings.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone will still sound through the hands-free device for incoming mail or voice and videophone calls even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or the ring volume is set to “Silent”.
- When the FOMA terminal is set in Driving mode, operation for incoming calls and messages is as specified in the “Driving mode” settings.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to record caller messages, operation for incoming calls and mail is as specified in the “Record message” settings.
- If you make a videophone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial function, the dialing speed is determined by the hands-free device. If no dialing speed is set, “64K” is used.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call is as specified in “Fold setting”. If the FOMA terminal is set up so that sound is emitted from the hands-free device, “Fold setting” is ignored and folding the FOMA terminal makes no difference to the call status.

# Receiving a Call

- 1** When you receive a call, press  or . When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal rings, the call alert indicator flashes and the "ringing screen" appears. Unless "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also vibrates to alert you to the call. The image display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller's name. → P.30
- To switch to a videophone call during a voice call  
"Changing voice call to videophone call" → P.64



- 2** To end the call, press 

## Function menu (ringing screen)

- 1** Ringing screen   (FUNC)  Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Call rejection</b>	Deliberately ends the call.
<b>Call forwarding</b>	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Call Forwarding Service" → P.458
<b>Voice mail</b>	Connects the caller to the voice mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Voice Mail Service" → P.455

### NOTE

- Besides  and , you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can also answer a call by pressing any of the  to  keys, ,  or  (Home) (Any key answer). However, pressing  while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold. You can also set up the FOMA terminal so that pressing a key only stops the ring tone (Quick silent).
- Pressing  or  while the FOMA terminal is ringing switches to "Manner mode" and also switches the FOMA terminal to "Record message" so that the caller can record a message. → P.74
- When you receive a call with a caller ID from someone who is listed in your phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the corresponding phonebook entry, the image is also displayed. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are withheld and only the phone number is displayed. If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the reason for not providing ID is displayed (caller ID withheld).
- If the same phone number is registered in the multiple phonebook entries with different names and you receive a call, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings is displayed. → P.101
- Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the "Received calls" record. If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed. If a caller who provides a phone number is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are displayed.
- If you enable "Set arrival act" and set "Arrival Call Act" to "Answer", you will hear a short double-beep ("bibip") if someone else calls when you are already on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
  - If you have subscribed to the "Voice mail" service, you can forward the new call to the voice mail service center.
  - If you have subscribed to the "Call forwarding" service, you can forward the new call to the designated call forwarding number. Furthermore, if you subscribe to the "Call waiting", set "Arrival Call Act" to "Answer" and then activate Call waiting, you can put your current call on hold and answer the new call. See P.457 for details.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Driving mode" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- You can reject calls from numbers that are not stored in your phonebook. → P.153
- If you receive a call from a number that is not stored in your phonebook, you can specify the period of time from receiving a call to the ring tone beginning. → P.152
- You cannot receive calls from callers that you set for "Call rejection". You cannot receive calls from callers other than those who are set for "Call acceptance". → P.150
- Using the hands-free operation → P.62

## Changing voice call to videophone call

The caller can change a voice call to videophone call by performing the operation below.

- You can change the voice call only when you are the caller. When you receive a voice call, you cannot change it to the videophone call.
- To change a call on the calling phone, "Indicate V-phone" must be set to "Indication ON" on the called phone beforehand. → P.90

### 1 In-call screen (P.50) ▶ Caller changes the voice call to videophone call ▶ "YES"



While a voice call is changed to videophone call, the indicator is displayed indicating that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is played.

The voice call changes to the videophone call and camera image is sent to the caller.

#### ■ To send substitute image to the caller

##### ▶ "NO"

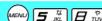
The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.

#### NOTE

- The hands-free operation continues after the change of calls when using the hands-free function before changing. You can activate or deactivate hands-free operation during switching to videophone call (P.62).

### <Answer setting>

## Using the Dial Keys to Receive a Call



Default setting  
Any key answer

You can use this setting to allow you to quickly turn off the ring tone or answer the phone when you receive a call. This can be very useful when you receive a call in a situation where the ring tone may disturb people around you.

### 1 "Incoming call" ▶ "Answer setting" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Any key answer</b>	When you receive a voice call, as well as  and , pressing any of the following keys enables you to answer the call immediately:  keys or , ,  (When the (Change) is not displayed), or  (Home). (However, pressing  (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold.) Note that this does not apply for videophone calls.
<b>Quick silent</b>	When you receive a voice or videophone call, pressing any of the following keys or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone and vibration:  keys, , ,  (When the (Change) is not displayed),  or  (Home). When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. For a voice call, you can answer the call by pressing  or . For a videophone call, press  to answer using the camera image or press  or  to answer using the alternate image.
<b>OFF</b>	When you receive a voice call, only pressing the following keys enables an answer for calling:  or . When you receive a videophone call, only pressing the following keys enables an answer for calling: , , or . (When you press  and , you may answer the call using the substitute image.)

#### NOTE

- Even when "Quick silent" is set, the "Any key answer" function is used in "Manner mode".
- Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" is set, pressing and holding for 1 second or longer makes ON/OFF switching for the display light and "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not function.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you can accept calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the "Answer setting" setting.
- If "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not function even if you press (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded.
- Pressing (Memo/Check) or while receiving a call allows you to start the Record message and record the messages. → P.74

# Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded

Default setting  
End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

- 1 "Incoming call" ▶ "Fold setting" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>No tone</b>	Mutes the sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, the sound is muted and the substitute image is sent to the caller. No hold tone is used. When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status prior to when folded.	
<b>Tone on</b>	Puts the current call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether the hold tone is played through the speaker of your own FOMA terminal. For voice calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" while the FOMA terminal is folded. For videophone calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" and sees the hold image. → P.69 When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status prior to when folded. However, if you folded the FOMA terminal when the current call was on hold, re-opening the FOMA terminal resumes the call when it is a voice call. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.	
	<b>Speaker ON</b>	The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.
	<b>Speaker OFF</b>	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
<b>End the call</b>	Ends the call. Folding the FOMA terminal has the same effect as pressing .	

### NOTE

- When Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if "Speaker ON" is set.
- If flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call condition. However, during a videophone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the substitute image.
- Even if the "Tone on" setting is selected, folding the FOMA terminal activates the "No tone" setting if "Call waiting" is switched on.

# Using the Received Calls

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone number and the date and time are stored in the received calls record.

- The received calls record stores a total of 60 calls, comprising up to 30 voice calls or videophone calls and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication calls.
- When the received calls record is full, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- The received calls record cannot be displayed during a videophone call.
- The date and time of a call are only stored if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- If you change between voice call and videophone call, the first received number is registered to the received calls record.

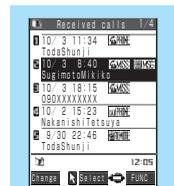
- 1 "Received calls" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>All calls</b>	Displays all the call record entries.
<b>Missed calls</b>	Displays only the record entries for missed calls.

No. unchecked: Displays the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

## 2 Check the list of received calls

The "Received calls (list) screen" appears.



Example: Received calls (list)

Function menu▶P.66

### 3 Select the received call entry you want to check

The "Received calls (detail) screen" appears. In the top right corner of the display, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ **To check earlier or later received call entries**

Press to move to the previous (more recent) number or to move to the next (older) number.

■ **If the phone number is stored in the phonebook**

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



Function menu → P.66

### 4 or

■ **To make a videophone call**

▶

### 5 To end the call, press

**NOTE**

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the records in Received calls. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone number, delete the records in Received calls or set "Received calls" in "Record display set" to "OFF".
- If you set a call that did not ring long enough not to be recorded in the call history in "Ringing time", a call that is shorter than the time you set in "Set mute seconds" is not recorded in the call history. → P.152
- You can also retrieve the Received calls by pressing in the standby screen as well.
- You can make a voice call (or videophone call) to the most recent Received calls by pressing (or ) and then in the standby screen.
- Setting "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" erases all the entries stored up to that point in the received calls record. However, calls received subsequently are stored as received call record entries.
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored when you receive a call from someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- If the caller is using "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" number may be displayed.
- If a caller who provides a phone number is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are displayed in the Received calls record. If the caller's phone number is not provided, the reason for the non-notification (P.151) is displayed. However, if you receive calls from someone who provides phone numbers other than the specified phonebook entries when "Restrict dialing" is set, only the phone numbers are stored for those calls.

■ **Icons used in the received and missed call records**

	Indicates incoming voice calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.		Indicates incoming international videophone calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.
	Indicates incoming international voice calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.		Indicates incoming packet communication/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.
	Indicates incoming videophone calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.		Indicates incoming 64K data communication/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.
	Indicates some messages recorded.		Indicates incoming packet communication or 64K data communication that is received without external unit connected
	Indicates incoming remote observation calls.		

**Function menu (Received calls screen)**

- The function menu displayed in the Received calls screen is the same whether the list screen or detail screen is shown.

### 1 Received calls screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Notify caller ID*</b>	Select either "OFF" or "ON" to notify the other party of your caller ID. ■ <b>To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF"</b> ▶ <b>"Cancel prefix"</b> When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID notification" (P.48) setting is applied.
<b>Prefix numbers*</b>	▶ <b>Select the prefix name to be added</b> "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P.57

Item	Description
<b>International dial</b>	<p><b>■ When “+” is prefixed (country code is added)</b></p> <p>The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting “Int'l dial setting” → “Auto assist setting” (P.59).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When “Auto” is set “+” is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in “Auto assist setting”.</li> <li>When “OFF” is set ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b> “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</li> </ul> <p><b>■ When “+” is not prefixed (no country code is added)</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a country code</b> ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b></p> <p>The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.59</p>
<b>Multi number*</b>	“Multi number” → P.464
<b>Ringing time</b>	Displays the missed call record entries with the ringing times. This setting is available only when the Received calls list screen appears.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	“Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records” → P.100
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	“Using Desktop Icons” → P.133
<b>Compose message</b>	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235
<b>Compose SMS</b>	“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)” → P.292
<b>Received address</b>	Displays the received address list.
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected received call.
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Use  to select a checkbox (  ) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES”</b> You can delete multiple Received calls records.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ <b>“YES”</b> Deletes all the received calls records. Security code → P.140
<b>Dialing speed*</b>	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.
<b>Select image*</b>	Sets the image used for videophone calls. → P.87 Selecting “Release” cancels the setting of “Me” or “Chara-den”.

\* : This function is available only for the detail screen.

#### NOTE

- Selecting “Compose message” enables you to compose a mail with a mail address specified as the address when the mail address is stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook, the first address is specified as the address.
- Received calls through packet and 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

<Volume>

## Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting  
Level 4

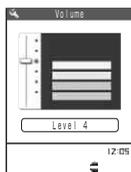
Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to a setting between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

- If you adjust the volume during a call or while the FOMA terminal is in standby mode, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.

### Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

#### 1 During a call ▶ Use (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume



You can adjust the volume in the same way by holding down or for 1 second or longer. You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing (Home) or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during earpiece volume adjustment.

If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece adjustment screen is displayed, the FOMA terminal ends the volume adjustment and returns to the in-call screen.

Continued on next page

**NOTE**

- You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on videophone or in hands-free mode.
- Adjust the volume by pressing or during a videophone call. You cannot adjust the earpiece volume in succession, even if you press and hold (Home) or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during earpiece volume adjustment.

## Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

### 1 On standby screen ▶ or (for 1 second or longer) ▶ Adjust the volume with or

You can adjust the volume in succession by holding down or for 1 second or longer. If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece adjustment screen is displayed, the FOMA terminal ends the volume adjustment and returns to the in-call screen.

<Ring volume>

## Adjusting the Ring Volume



Default setting  
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of the ring tones the FOMA terminal uses when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, Message Request or Message Free. There are six volume settings for each type of call. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

- You cannot adjust the ring tone volume while receiving an incoming voice or videophone call, Message Request or Message Free. Perform adjustment when the standby screen appears.
- The ring volume setting specified for "Phone" in this function is also applied to the "Melody", the "Select ring tone" setting for a voice call, the alarm tones for "Schedule" and "ToDo" events and the playback volume for downloaded melodies.
- The volume is retained after setting with this function.

### 1 ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Ring volume" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Phone</b>	▶  or Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
<b>Video-phone</b>	▶  or Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
<b>Mail</b>	▶  or Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mail, SMS or packet communication.
<b>Chat mail</b>	▶  or Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mail.
<b>MessageR</b>	▶  or Adjusts the ring tone volume for Message Request.
<b>MessageF</b>	▶  or Adjusts the ring tone volume for Message Free.

**■ To set step tones (gradually louder ring tones)**

▶ In the "Level 6" setting, press

When you receive a call with "Step" tones set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at "Level 1" and increasing to "Level 6".

**■ To set a silent ring tone**

▶ In the "Level 1" setting, press

When you receive a call with "Step" tones set, there is no ring tone. An icon appears in the standby screen to confirm that a "Silent" ring tone is set.

: Displays when "Silent" is set for "Phone" and/or "Video-phone" calls.

: Displays when "Silent" is set for more than one of "Mail", "Chat mail", "Message Request" or "Message Free".

: Displays that "Silent" is set for both "" and "".

<Answer hold>

## Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When the FOMA terminal rings and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the unanswered call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

- Call charges apply to the caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.

### 1 During an incoming call



The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the caller on hold.

The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.

You can set the message played while the call is held in "Call response setting".

#### ■ To hang up while a call is on hold



#### ■ If the caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.

### 2 When you are ready to take the call, press or

You can also answer the call by pressing .

When you set "Answer setting" to "Any key answer", you can answer a call by pressing any of the following keys:  to , , , , ,  or  (Home). You can also answer the call by pressing  (Memo/Check),  or .

For a videophone call → P.84

#### NOTE

- If "Phone" or "Video-phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you apply answer hold. However, the beeps do sound if you are using an "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- If you are contracted to receive "Voice mail service" or "Call forwarding service", selecting "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" from the function menu when you receive a call either forwards the call to the voice mail service or forwarding number.
- If you close the FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the FOMA terminal displays the held call in the image display while the call is on answer hold.

<Call response setting>

## Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting

On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

When you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put a call that is already in progress on hold, use this procedure to set the message heard by the other party.

### 1 "Talk" "Call response setting" Select any item:

Item	Description	
On hold tone	Sets the message played when a call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	Tone 2	The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."
	Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played.
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.435
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone in talk.	
	Melody	"Fur Elise" is played.
	Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played.
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.435

\* : Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

**NOTE**

- You can check the selected message by pressing (Play) in the message selection screen.
- Even if you select "English" in the setting of "Select language", the messages of "Tone 1" and "Tone 2" remain in Japanese.

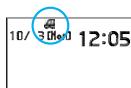
<Driving mode>

## Blocking Calls When You Are Driving

Driving mode (the in-car messaging function) is an automatic answering service specifically provided to ensure safe driving. When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode, it sends a message to callers saying that you cannot answer the phone because you are driving, and then ends the call.

- Driving mode can only be set or cancelled from the standby screen. It can also be set or cancelled when the icon is displayed.
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

### 1 On standby screen (for 1 second or longer)



A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been set and appears on the standby screen.

■ To cancel Driving mode

▶ Standby screen (setting to Driving mode) (for 1 second or longer)

A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been cancelled and disappears from the standby screen.

**NOTE**

- If "Record message" is set to "ON", Driving mode takes priority and the "Record message" setting is ignored.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to "Manner mode", Driving mode takes priority and "Manner mode" is disabled.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, the FOMA terminal cancels Driving mode.
- The following tones do not sound in Driving mode:
  - Ring tone for Voice/videophone calls
  - Ring tone for Message Request/Free
  - Alarm clock tone
  - ToDo alarm tone
  - Low-battery alarm tone
  - Software ring tone for i-appli
  - Mail ring tone
  - Notification tone for chat-mail
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - Alarm tone for cost limit notification
  - Charging confirmation tone
  - 64K data communication ring tone
- Remote all lock can also be set when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

### ● Handling of received calls in Driving mode

In Driving mode, your FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a voice call or videophone call. Calls are logged in the "Received calls" record or "Missed calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

There is also no ring tone when you receive a mail or 64K data communication. The "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. A caller making a voice call hears a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. A caller making a videophone call sees a message on his or her display saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. However, if the power is off or is displayed on the screen, calls are not notified and the same guidance as is displayed is played.

### ● Handling of received calls when network services and Driving mode are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service	Keeps the recorded message after the in-car guidance message is announced to the caller.*1	Voice mail cannot be used for videophone calls. A call ends without the message notifying the caller of driving.
Call forwarding	Transfers the call to the forwarding number after the in-car guidance message is announced to the caller.*2	Call forwarding can be used for videophone calls. Call forwarding takes priority and the received videophone call is immediately forwarded to the designated number.*3

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Nuisance call barring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Callers from barred numbers hear a message saying that the call has been rejected and the call then ends.</li> <li>Callers from other numbers hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.</li> </ul>	<p>The Nuisance call barring service can be used for videophone calls.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the call is from a barred number, the Nuisance call barring service takes priority so that the call ends without the guidance message notifying that the call has been rejected.</li> <li>Callers from other numbers see the message notifying that you are driving and the call then ends.</li> </ul>
Caller ID request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Callers who have not provided a caller ID hear a message requesting a caller ID and the call then ends.</li> <li>Callers who have provided a caller ID hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.</li> </ul>	<p>The Caller ID request service can also be used for videophone calls.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the FOMA terminal ends the call without the guidance message asking the caller to provide a caller ID.</li> <li>If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller sees the message notifying that you are driving and the call then ends.</li> </ul>

\*1 : If the ring time for voice mail is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.

\*2 : If the ring time for call forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.

\*3 : Forwarded videophone calls are only connected if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible videophone.

<Info notice setting>

## Checking Missed Calls



When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can use this function to have the FOMA terminal use tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp to notify you when you have any missed calls or new mail.

- This function alerts you using a "YES" indication when the "Missed call", "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon is displayed. → P.135
- You cannot use this function to check for missed calls or new mail in the following situations:
  - When All lock is set.
  - When Side keys guard is set to "ON".
  - When PIM lock is set.
  - When the Info notice setting is set to "OFF".

### Setting the notification method for the Info notice function



### Checking for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail

This function allows you to check for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail by pressing (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail		When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and 1-second vibration.*1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in "Phone", "Mail" and "Chat mail2" in the "Illumination" settings. When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color.*2	"Bibibip" tone and 0.2-second vibration.*1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 5 seconds in "color 12".

\*1 : FOMA terminal vibrates when "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF".

\*2 : If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in the "Illumination" settings, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mail and "Color 3" for new chat mail.

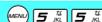
**NOTE**

- The "OFF" volume is determined in the "Phone" under "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, "Level 2" is used as the voice volume. If "Silent" is set, the FOMA terminal makes no sound.

**NOTE**

- If "OFF" is selected as the "Phone" setting in "Vibrator", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- In Manner mode, the FOMA terminal emits no tones and notifies you using vibration. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you are using an "Original" manner mode and the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- You cannot use this function to check new mail held at the i-mode Center.
- Opening the FOMA terminal during the notification stops the notification.
- You cannot use this function to check missed calls while the FOMA terminal is open. Pressing (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is open switches to "Play/Erase msg.".

<Record message>



## Having the Caller Leave a Message

**Default setting**      **Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 sec.**

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal.

- You can record up to 5 messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- A message for videophone call is recorded as a voice record message.
- The difference between Record message and Voice mail is as follows.

Item	Record message	Voice Mail Service
<b>Recording time and No. of messages</b>	Voice call and videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages (Only voice is recorded for videophone call.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages</li> <li>· Videophone call: not storable</li> </ul>
<b>Retention period</b>	No limit	Up to 72 hours
<b>Where to store</b>	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail Center
<b>Condition for playback</b>	Inside or outside the service area	Only inside the service area
<b>Condition for recording</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· A message can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area.</li> <li>· Setting "Record message" to "ON" (P.72)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· A message can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area.</li> <li>· Activating the Voice Mail Service (P.455)</li> </ul>

## Setting Record message

### 1



▶ "Record message" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>ON</b>	Select the desired type of answer message.
<b>Japanese1</b>	"I can't answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep. Even if this is a videophone call, a voice message is only accepted." as message is played in Japanese.
<b>Japanese2</b>	"Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep. Even if it's a video call, you can leave only a voice message. OK? Thanks." as message is played in Japanese.
<b>English</b>	"I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. When you call by video phone, you can leave a voice message." as message is played.
<b>Voice announce 1*</b>	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.435
<b>Voice announce 2*</b>	
<b>OFF</b>	Cancels the "Record message" setting.

\* : Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

### 2

## Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ringing time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets the record message and appears on the standby screen.

■ **To set the displayed time as shown**

▶ Without entering a time, press

**NOTE**

- You can check the selected answer message by pressing (Play) in the answer message selection screen.
- You cannot set the same ringing time for recorded messages and "Remote observation" or "Automatic answer".

**NOTE**

- To give priority to the "Record message" function when "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" are set at the same time, set a shorter ringing time than the time set for Voice mail and Call forwarding.
- The Record message function is disabled when the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode.
- If the ringing start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time set for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the ringing start time.
- You can use "Utilities" to set an answer message for each phone number and group "Utilities" to set an answer message for each group. → P.108

**When you receive a call with "Record message" set to "ON"**

Once the set time has elapsed, the Record message function starts up and plays the preset answer message to the caller. For a videophone call, the "Preparing" image is sent and the answer message is played. The "Recording Voice only" image is then sent and recording begins.

**When message recording begins**

- The recording screen will be displayed. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration of the recording, the recordings is counted in terms of the number of recordings when recording begins.



Voice call

**To answer a voice call**

▶ or

**To answer a videophone call**

▶ To answer using the camera image, press . To answer using the substitute image, press or .

**When message recording ends**

- The original screen reappears and the "Missed call" icon or "Record message" desktop icon appears in the standby screen. You can check the contents by selecting the one of the desktop icons. → P.135  
Selecting desktop icons → P.134
- When one message is recorded, "" changes to "". "" appears for two messages, "" for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages.



**NOTE**

- While "" is displayed, you cannot use the Record message.
- While PIM lock is set, this function is set to "OFF" and the desktop icon is not displayed.
- Once you have recorded 5 messages, the FOMA terminal cannot use the Record message function to record a message for the next caller.
- Even when "Record message" is not set to "ON", you can record messages from callers by setting an "Original" manner mode in which "Record message" is set to ON. However, if there are already 5 record messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the other setting for "Manner mode set" (P.120) without activating the "Record message".
- If your FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode, you cannot hear the caller's voice during a voice recording.
- If "Voice mail" is set, and when the FOMA terminal is turned off, "" appears or 5 messages have been recorded on the terminal, you can have additional messages recorded by the Voice mail service center. For a videophone call, however, the call is not connected to the Voice mail service center and is ended after the ring time set for the Voice mail service elapses.
- You cannot receive another call while a message is being recorded. The other caller hears the busy tone.

**Important**

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

## Having Callers Leave a Message During Another Call

Even when the “Record message” function is not set to “ON”, this function allows you to begin message recording during a call simply by pressing one key.

### 1 During an incoming call or (Memo/Check)

The voice record message recording starts and the Manner mode is set at the same time. Even for a video phone call, a voice record message is recorded.

#### NOTE

- This function records a message each time you receive a call. This operation can be valid only once. You cannot set “Record message” to “ON”.
- The Record message function starts up even when Manner mode operation is set to use an “Original” manner mode and “Record message” is set to “OFF” in that mode.
- If you receive a voice call or videophone call when there are already 5 record messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the other setting for “Manner mode set” (P.120) without activating the “Record message”.
- Manner mode still remains in setting when the call ends. To cancel Manner mode, hold down  for 1 second or longer.
- While “PIM lock” is set, the record message is not activated even if the manner mode is set.

## Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

Use this function to play back and erase voice calls and messages recorded using “Record message” and “Voice memo”.

### To play messages and memos

 “MSG” is displayed on the standby screen when a record message is recorded.

- If there is a message recorded and it is a record message from a voice call,  “PHONE” appears on the “Play/ Erase msg.” screen.  “PHONE” appears for a record message from a videophone call, and “★” for a voice memo.
- When a recorded message is from a caller who provided a caller ID, the caller’s phone number is displayed during playback.  
If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name is also displayed.

### 1 “Play/Erase msg.”

The “Play/Erase msg. screen” appears.

### 2 Select the item you want to play

The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the message ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

#### ■ To play the next message

▶  (Memo/Check)

Each time you press  (Memo/Check), the next most recent message is played.  
Voice memos are played last.

#### ■ To stop the playback

▶  or 

#### ■ To call the phone number displayed during playback

▶ 

#### ■ To make a videophone call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶ 

#### ■ To erase the message during playback

▶  (Erase) ▶ “YES”



Function menu ▶ P.75

#### NOTE

- You can also play back messages by pressing  in the standby screen.

## Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

**1** Play/Erase msg. screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Play</b>	Plays the message. "To play messages and memos" → P.74
<b>Delete this</b>	Erases the highlighted message.
<b>Delete rec. msg.</b>	Erases all the recorded messages.
<b>Delete all</b>	Erases all the recorded messages and voice memos.

### ■ Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.



# ● Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

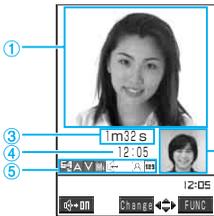
What is the Videophone?.....	78
Making a Videophone Call.....	79
Changing a Videophone Call to a Voice Call.....	83
Receiving a Videophone Call.....	84
Using Chara-den.....	85
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party .....	86
Setting the Image Displayed During Videophone Calls .....	89
Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call .....	90
Setting Remote Observation.....	91

# What is the Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between the terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- The videophone function can be used between any two phones that support DoCoMo videophoning, even different types of phone.
- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M<sup>\*1</sup> standard set down in the international 3GPP<sup>\*2</sup> standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from DoCoMo videophones.
  - \*1: 3G-324M  
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.
  - \*2: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)  
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
  - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
  - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.

## Viewing the videophone screen



- ① Main screen. By default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone.
- ② Sub-screen. By default, this shows the camera image from your phone.
- ③ Shows the call duration.
- ④ Shows the current time.
- ⑤ Shows the videophone function settings.

- :64K videophone call in progress
- :32K videophone call in progress
- :Sending/receiving voice
- :Voice transmission error
- :Sending/receiving video
- :Video transmission error
- :Sending camera image
- :Sending substitute image selected in "Select image"
- :Hands-free OFF
- :Hands-free ON

- :Photo mode (Portrait)
- :Photo mode (Scenery)
- :Photo mode (Close-up)
- :Key operation/DTMF mode\*
- \*: DTMF → P.81
- :Key operation/Whole action mode
- :Key operation/Parts action mode
- :Sending Chara-den
- :State where the motion of a face can be followed
- :State where the motion of a face cannot be followed
- :Visual check in progress

Control keys	Videophone operation
	Switches between front and rear cameras
(1 second or longer)	Switches main screen → P.81
(Home) or  (Memo/Check)	Adjusts the volume
	Adjusts zoom ratio
	Switches on/off hands-free
	Displays function menu
(Memo/Check)(1 second or longer)	Recording other party's voice during a call
	Tone on

# Making a Videophone Call

Use this procedure to dial a phone number and make a videophone call.

## 1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

“Videophone number input screen” appears.  
Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

- **To call a mobile phone**  
090-XXXXX-XXXXX  
or  
080-XXXXX-XXXXX
- **To call a PHS phone**  
070-XXXXX-XXXXX



Videophone number input  
Function menu → P.80

## 2 If a videophone call is connected, press (M) to switch to hands-free mode

“Videophone in-call screen” appears.  
“Using the hands-free operation” → P.62

- **To switch to a voice call during a videophone call.**  
“Changing a Videophone Call to a Voice Call” → P.83
- **To switch between camera image and substitute image**  
▶ (M)



The charge of digital communications starts from this screen.



Videophone in-call  
Function menu → P.80

- **To send video from the rear camera**  
▶ (C)

Each time you press (C), the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

- **To put the current videophone call on hold**  
▶ (CLR)

The other party hears the hold tone and the “Holding” image appears on his or her videophone display.  
To release a held videophone call, press (M) (answers the held videophone call using the camera image) or (CLR), (M) (answers the held videophone call using the substitute image).

- **When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

- **“If a videophone call is not connected” → P.82**

## 3 To end the call, press (END)

### NOTE

- “ 54” icon flashes while you are dialing a videophone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If the call is connected at the “32K” dialing speed, “ 32” flashes and is displayed continuously during the call.
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make videophone calls during “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing”.
- Videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo “WORLD CALL” international dialing service. → P.58
- It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to a substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.

## Function menu (videophone number input screen)

### 1 Videophone number input screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Notify caller ID</b>	Select "OFF" or "ON" whether to notify the other party of your caller ID or not. Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". <b>■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF"</b> ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID notification" (P.48) setting is applied.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	▶ <b>Choose the prefix name to be added</b> "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P.57
<b>International dial</b>	<b>■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added)</b> The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.59). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When "Auto" is set                              "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting".</li> <li>• When "OFF" is set                              ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b>                              "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</li> </ul> <b>■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)</b> ▶ <b>Select a country code</b> ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b> The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.59
<b>Multi number</b>	"Multi number" → P.464
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding Information to the FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
<b>Dialing speed</b>	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
<b>Select image</b>	Set the image used for videophone calls. → P.87 To cancel the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den", select "Release".

#### NOTE

- The Dialing speed setting only applies to one (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls records. Also, if you make a voice call after specifying "Dialing speed" setting, the setting is ignored.

## Function menu (videophone in-call screen)

### 1 Videophone in-call screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description						
<b>V-phone settings</b>	Sets the screen for videophone call.						
<b>Visual preference</b>	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during the call. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td><b>Normal</b> (default)</td> <td>Standard setting for both quality and movement.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Prefer img qual</b></td> <td>Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Prefer motion spd</b></td> <td>Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Normal</b> (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.	<b>Prefer img qual</b>	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.	<b>Prefer motion spd</b>	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
<b>Normal</b> (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.						
<b>Prefer img qual</b>	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.						
<b>Prefer motion spd</b>	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.						
<b>Brightness</b>	▶ <b>Adjust the brightness using</b>  Five brightness levels (-2 to ± 0 to +2) are available.						

Item	Description		
<b>V-phone settings</b>	<b>White balance</b>	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. → P.173	
		<b>Auto</b> (default)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		<b>Fine</b>	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		<b>Cloudy</b>	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		<b>Light bulb</b>	Select this option when indoors under incandescent lighting.
		<b>Fluorescent light</b>	Select this option when indoors under fluorescent lighting.
	<b>Color mode set</b>	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during the call.	
		<b>Normal</b> (default)	Sets a normal image.
		<b>Sepia</b>	Sets a sepia-tone image.
		<b>Monochrome</b>	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
	<b>Photo mode</b>	Sets modes suited to the scene being shot. This option cannot be set for the front camera.	
<b>Portrait</b> (default)		The best mode for shooting people	
<b>Scenery</b>		The best mode for shooting scenery	
<b>Close-up</b>		The best mode for close-up shooting	
<b>Chara-den setup</b>	"Setting Chara-den" → P.82 This option cannot be set for the camera images.		
<b>Display light</b>	Sets lighting of display light.		
	<b>All time ON</b> (default)	Turns the display light on.	
	<b>15 seconds ON</b>	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.	
<b>Disp. screen size</b>	Sets the screen size.		
	<b>Normal</b>	Displays the image at actual size.	
	<b>Large</b> (default)	Resizes the image to fit the display size.	
<b>Rear camera</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Switches between the front and rear cameras. This setting is only retained during the call.		
<b>Change main disp.</b>	Changes the main display. The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen." → "Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen." → "Displaying only the image from the other party's camera." → "Displaying only the image from your own camera."		
<b>Voice phone change</b>	"Changing a Videophone Call to a Voice Call" → P.83		
<b>Send DTMF tone</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode during Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.		
<b>Own number</b>	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.		
<b>Petit message</b>	"Sending messages during videophone calls (sending of camera image)" → P.90		
<b>Decoration</b>	"Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls" → P.89		
<b>Off decoration</b>	Erases the currently displayed message or stamp.		
<b>Visual check</b> <sup>*3</sup>	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call" → P.88		
<b>Call time disp.</b> (default setting: ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.		

\*1: If you have selected the rear camera, "Front camera" is displayed.

\*2: If you have selected "Send DTMF tone", "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed.

\*3: If you have selected "Visual check", "Visual check off" is displayed.

## ● Setting Chara-den

You can perform the Chara-den settings below during a videophone call using Chara-den.

### 1 Videophone in-call screen (P.79) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chara-den setup” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Switch Chara-den</b>	▶ <b>Select a character</b> Selects the character to be displayed.
<b>Action list</b>	▶ <b>Check the actions and keys</b> Checks the available actions and the corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing (☞☞).
<b>Change action</b>	Changes the Action mode.
<b>Switch image</b>	Displays your own custom image on the other party's display. → P.87

### ● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call was not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, the explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the called party and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

- If a message is displayed informing you that you cannot connect when you are making a videophone call, set “Caller ID notification” to “ON” and make a call again.

Message	Reason
Check the number and retry	You dialed the number incorrectly.
Busy	The called party is on another call or using i-mode or packet communication.
Out of service area or power off	The called party is out of service area or his/her phone is turned off.
Select on for Call ID Notification	Displayed when you connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into V-LIVE or Visual Net).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded.
Please redial phone call	The called party sets the Voice mail service or a terminal to which call is forwarded does not support videophone call.
Connection failed	Set “Caller ID notification” to “ON” and then try again. · This message may also be displayed in other situations.

#### NOTE

- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone calls, or if the called party's phone supports videophone calls but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone calls and “Voice call auto switch” is set to “ON”, the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation is not carried out if you dial the wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of June 2005). Note that call charge may apply in some cases.
- The “32K” dialing speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at “64K” due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at “64K” and the called party is in a “32K” area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that “32K” videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as “64K” videophone calls.

**NOTE**

● If you cannot make a videophone call at "64K" communication speed, the communication speed is automatically changed to "32K". If the video call is still not connected, your call is automatically changed to a voice call when you set "Voice call auto switch" to "ON".  
 The relations between the switching of dialing speed and "Voice call auto switch" setting are listed below.

	Dialing speed set to "64K"	Dialing speed set to "32K"
"Voice call auto switch" set to ON	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice call mode.
"Voice call auto switch" set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, the video-phone call ends.	Ends the videophone call.

- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a videophone call. Received mail is held at the i-mode center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" once the videophone is completed.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" battery low alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging battery before the call is terminated, the videophone call continues with the image that had been displayed before battery low alarm was given.
- Digital call charges still apply when the substitute image is displayed during a videophone call.

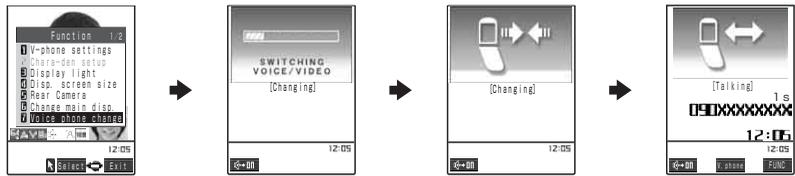
## Changing a Videophone Call to a Voice Call

The caller can change to voice call during videophone call.

- If the handset of your party is the FOMA terminal supporting the call change, "Voice phone change" can be selected from the function menu during the videophone call and you can switch between a videophone and voice calls. (Supported only in 901iS series as of June, 2005)
- You can change only when you are the caller for the videophone. When you receive the call, you cannot change the calls.
- To change the call, your FOMA terminal must be set to let the caller notify you "Indicate V-phone" beforehand. → P.90
- It is possible to change repeatedly between videophone call and voice call.

### 1 Videophone in-call screen (P.79) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Voice phone change"

While the videophone call is changed to voice call, the indicator is displayed, which indicates that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is played.



**NOTE**

- The caller can change between voice call and videophone call. The caller can change between voice call and videophone call. → P.52
- It takes about 5 seconds to change the calls. Note that the signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change the calls in the following cases:
  - You receive the call.
  - The other party stops the call change function. → P.90
  - The terminal of your party does not support the call change function.
- The call time displayed is reset to 0 second each time the calls are changed. However, after the change operation, if the videophone call is finished, the call time displayed is the total of voice call and videophone call.
- The call is canceled if the change is not successful due to the network status.
- If the change is operated, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls records. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- If you performed the switching operation, the amount of call charge displayed in "Call data" (P.436) may differ from the one you will pay.
- The hands-free operation that is performed before the change will be canceled after the change.

# Receiving a Videophone Call

Use this procedure to accept an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call immediately, you can still receive the call without showing the caller the image from your camera by displaying a substitute image.

## 1 When a videophone call comes in, press

### ■ To answer using the substitute image

▶  or 

The substitute image appears on the caller's display.

After sending the substitute image, you can still change to the camera image by pressing .

### ■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

▶ Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

You can also answer using the substitute image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers the call using the substitute image once the specified ringing time has elapsed.

### ■ To switch between camera image and substitute image

▶ 

### ■ To put a videophone call on answer hold while the FOMA terminal is ringing

▶ 

The "On hold" image and message appear on the caller's videophone display. To answer the held call using the camera image, press . To answer using the substitute image, press  or .



Function menu → P.84

## 2 When the videophone call is connected, press ( → ) to switch to hands-free mode

"Videophone in-call screen" appears.

"Using the hands-free operation" → P.62

### ■ To switch to a voice call during a videophone call

▶ "Changing videophone call to voice call" → P.85

### ■ To send video from the rear camera

▶ 

Each time you press , the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

### ■ To put the current videophone call on hold

▶ 

The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her videophone display.

To release a held videophone call, press  (answers the held videophone call using the camera image), or  or  (answers the held videophone call using the substitute image).

### ■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

## 3 To end the call, press

### Function menu (videophone call reception screen)

## 1 Videophone call reception screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Call rejection	Deliberately cuts off the call.
Call forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Call Forwarding Service" → P.458

### NOTE

- Digital call charges still apply to the caller when the alternate image is displayed during a videophone call.
- Even if "Voice mail" is set to "Activate", incoming videophone calls are not connected to the Voice mail service center. After elapse of the time set in Ringing time, this call is disconnected.

## NOTE

- Even if "Call forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible (P.78) videophone. Check if a terminal to which a call will be forwarded supports 3G-324M before setting.
- If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance call barring service, the call ends without the guidance message notifying that the call has been rejected.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a videophone call. Received mail is held at the i-mode center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" once the videophone is completed.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" battery low alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging the battery before the call is terminated, the call continues with the image that was displayed before the battery low alarm.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Driving mode" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- Depending on the settings used by the caller, you may receive a substitute image instead of video images.

## Changing videophone call to voice call

The caller can change a videophone call to voice call by performing the operation below.

- You can change only when you are the caller for the videophone. When you receive the call, you cannot change the calls.
- To change the call on the dialing phone, "Indicate V-phone" must be set to "Indication ON" on the receiving phone beforehand. → P.90

### 1 Videophone in-call screen (P.79) ▶ Change to videophone on the dialing phone

While the videophone call is changed to voice call, a message and sound that indicate the change is being carried out.

## NOTE

- If the hands-free is used before the call change, the hands-free setting is canceled after the change.

## Using Chara-den

This function sends a cartoon character instead of your own image when you make a videophone call. With Chara-den, you can make your cartoon character move in response to sound, and you can also move its hands and feet or change its facial expression by pressing keys.

- "What is Chara-den?" → P.367
- To use Chara-den, you must first select the following functions. You can also use Chara-den by specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or in the Utilities.
  - Setting Chara-den by selecting "OFF" in "Camera image sending" → P.86
  - Setting Chara-den by selecting "Substitutive image" in "Select image". → P.86
- To switch from the camera image to Chara-den, press .

<Example: When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook>

### 1 When you receive a videophone call, press

### 2 Control your character by pressing the dial keys



Chara-den

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

#### ■ To change the Action mode

You can switch between "Whole" and "Parts" in the function menu. → P.82

"Whole" action mode gives you full control over the character's movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Control the character by pressing the  to  or  to  keys.

"Parts" action mode gives you partial control over the character's movements (face, hands and feet, etc.) Control the character by pressing the  to  to  to  keys.



■ **To check an action**

Press **(\*)** to view the list of actions.

You can also press **(V)** to select an action and then perform that action.

## Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

**1** ▶ **“Video-phone”**  
“Video-phone settings screen” appears.

**2** **Select any item:**



Item	Description	
<b>Visual preference</b>	Sets the visual preference for videophone call.	
	<b>Normal (default)</b>	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	<b>Prefer img qual</b>	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	<b>Prefer motion spd</b>	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
<b>Camera image sending</b>	“Setting the substitute image sent to the other party in a videophone call” → P.86	
<b>Select image</b>	“Setting the image sent during videophone calls” → P.87	
<b>Voice call auto switch</b>	Sets the operation performed when a videophone call fails to connect.	
	<b>ON</b>	If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
	<b>OFF (default)</b>	A message is displayed notifying that you could not connect to a videophone call, and the display returns to the standby screen.
<b>Remote observation</b>	“Setting Remote Observation” → P.91	
<b>Disp. setting VP</b>	“Setting the Image Displayed During Videophone Calls” → P.89	
<b>Indicate V-phone</b>	“Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call” → P.90	

### ● **Setting the substitute image sent to the other party in a videophone call**

Use the procedure below to select the image sent in place of the camera image.

- The image that can be set using this function is the JPEG or GIF image that is VGA size (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) or smaller. However, if the selected image is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high), it is reduced to Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high).
- The setting in this function is still retained after the videophone call ends.

**1** **Video-phone settings screen (P.86) ▶ “Camera image sending” ▶**  
**Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>ON (default)</b>	Sends the camera image.

Item	Description	
OFF	Pre-installed	Only "Camera Off" message is sent.
	Original	Images and "Camera Off" message is sent. <b>■ To change the setting</b> ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change setting" ▶ Select an image
	Chara-den	Sends the Chara-den character selected in the "Substitutive image". "Function menu (Chara-den list screen)" → P.369 Priority order for Chara-den setting → P.98 <b>■ To change the setting</b> ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change setting" ▶ Select an image

## ● Setting the image sent during videophone calls

Default setting	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitutive image: Chara-den (フンブン(Dimo)) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed
-----------------	--

Use the procedure below to select the image sent in place of the camera image.

- The images that can be set using this function is the JPEG or GIF image that is VGA size (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) or smaller. However, if the selected image is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high), it is reduced to Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high).
- The setting in this function is still retained after the videophone call ends.

### 1 Video-phone settings screen (P.86) ▶ "Select image" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
On hold	Sets the image sent for a call on answer hold.
Holding	Sets the image sent for a call on hold.
Substitutive image	Sets the image sent as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets the image sent during recording of the record message.
Preparing	Sets the image sent during preparation for the record message.
Voice memo	Sets the image sent during recording of the voice memo.

### 2 Select the image to be sent

Item	Description
Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and a message. <b>■ To change the setting</b> ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change setting" ▶ Select an image
Chara-den	This option appears only when "Substitutive image" is selected. Sends the image selected in "Substitute image". "Function menu (Chara-den list screen)" → P.369 Priority order for Chara-den setting → P.98 <b>■ To change the setting</b> ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change setting" ▶ Select an image

#### ■ Messages that can be sent

The messages sent are as follows:

- For answer hold : "On Hold"
- For holding : "Holding"
- For sending the substitute image : "Camera Off"
- For recording message : "Recording Voice only"
- For preparing : "Preparing"
- For voice calls : "Recording Voice only"

**NOTE**

**<Visual preference>**

- This can also be set from the function menu during a videophone call. However, when the videophone call ends, the settings revert to the values set using this function.
- If the signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, the image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the settings in "Visual preference".

**<Camera image sending/Select image>**

- Some GIF images may not be set in "Original".
- Regardless of the "Camera image sending" settings, you can switch between the camera image and substitute image during a videophone call.
- To check an image, select the item you want to check and press (Play).
- Changing the setting from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den" does not delete the stored image.
- The set still image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party's phone. However, the answering message for a recorded message is only sent to the other party's phone.
- You cannot delete the "Original" still image. To change the image, use "Set as display" in "My picture" to store a new image in place of the old image. Even if you delete the original image used as the source for the pasted image, the image is still displayed on (sent to) the other party's phone.
- A pre-installed substitutive image is sent when PIM lock is set.
- When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the "Chara-den" substitute image cannot be displayed, the pre-installed "Dimo" is sent. If you delete the pre-installed "Dimo", the "Pre-installed" substitute still image is sent.
- The substitute image setting specified after "Camera image sending" is set to "OFF" is mutually dependent with the substitute image setting for "Substitutive image" in "Select image".

**<Voice call auto switch>**

- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call records are logged in the "Dialed calls" record.
- Even if "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

**Checking your appearance before making a videophone call <Visual check>**

**1 Videophone in-call screen (P.79) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Visual check"**

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.

"" is displayed during a visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

**2 **

Visual check ends. The camera image is sent to the other party after the visual check.

You can also select "Visual check off" from the function menu to end the visual check. Then the screen returns to the state before the visual check.

**Enlarging the image to be sent**

During a videophone call, you can enlarge the image of yourself that is sent to the other party.

- If you are sending the image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to 4 (in 16 steps). The image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to 2 (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When a videophone call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge the image when you are sending a substitute image.
- You cannot enlarge the other party's image.

**1 During a videophone call ▶  ▶ Zoom in or out**



# Setting the Image Displayed During Videophone Calls

## Setting the image in the main screen and the image size <Disp. setting VP>

Default setting      Main screen: Other image    Display screen size: Large

- 1** Video-phone settings screen (P.86) ▶ “Disp. setting VP” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Main display</b>	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	<b>Other image</b>	Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main screen.
	<b>Camera image</b>	Displays the image from your own camera on your main screen.
	<b>Only other image</b>	Displays only the image from the other party's camera on your display.
	<b>Only camera image</b>	Displays only the image from your own camera on your display.
<b>Display screen size</b>	Sets the screen size for videophone call.	
	<b>Large</b>	Resizes the image to fit the display size.
	<b>Normal</b>	Displays the image at actual size.

## Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone call screen (image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

- The FOMA terminal comes with pre-installed stamps that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps of the same type from the “みんなNらんど” site. “みんなNらんど” → P.197

- 1** Videophone in-call screen (P.79) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Decoration” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Frame/stamp</b>	Pastes fixed (static) decorations into the videophone screen.	
	<b>Frame</b>	▶ <b>Select a frame</b> Places a frame around the videophone screen.
	<b>Stamp</b>	▶ <b>Select a stamp</b> ▶ <b>Decide the location using</b>  Places a stamp in the videophone screen.
<b>Facestamp</b>	▶ <b>Select a stamp</b> Places a stamp that follows facial movements in the videophone screen. If a stamp can follows facial movements, displays “  ”. If not, displays “  ”.	

### ■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Off decoration” in the function menu in videophone in-call screen → P.81

#### NOTE

- You can check the selected frame, stamp or facestamp by pressing  (Play) in each selection screen.
- Because the camera image of yourself is a mirror image, text stamps pasted in the image appear reversed and cannot be read correctly.

## Sending messages during videophone calls (sending of camera image) <Petit message>

### 1 Videophone in-call screen (P.79) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Petit message” ▶ Enter a message ▶

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.  
The message can contain up to 16 full-pitch characters.  
“Entering Text” → P.506

- **To cancel message entry**
  - ▶ Erase the entire message ▶
- **To erase the message manually**
  - ▶ (1 second or longer)

You can also erase the message by selecting “Off decoration” from the function menu.

#### NOTE

- Because the camera image of yourself is a mirror image, text appears reversed and cannot be read correctly.

### <Indicate V-phone>

## Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting  
Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the change between voice call and videophone call.

- Switching this function to “Active” enables the switching operation at the caller side after notifying the caller that switching is available when you receive a call.
- You cannot set this function during a call or while “ ” appears.

### 1 Video-phone settings screen (P.86) ▶ “Indicate V-phone” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Indication ON</b>	Notifies your the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the change between voice call and videophone call.
<b>Indication OFF</b>	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the change between voice call and videophone call.
<b>Check indication</b>	Displays the settings of “Indicate V-phone”.

# Setting Remote Observation

Default setting

Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF

Remote observation is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with a 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either the dialing or receiving phone for remote observation.

- Remote observation can only be carried out when the phone number of the observing (receiving) phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote observations and "Remote observation" is set to "ON".

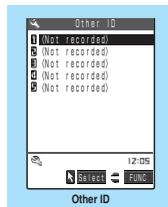
## Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and the delay until remote observation begins (Ringing time) on the phone receiving the remote observation (receiving phone).

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.
- Remote observation cannot be performed when the receiving FOMA terminal is in "Manner mode" or "Driving mode".

### 1 Video-phone settings screen (P.86) ▶ "Remote observation" ▶ Enter the security code ▶ "Other ID"

"Other ID screen" appears.  
Security code → P.140



Function menu ▶ P.92

### 2 Select "<Not recorded>" option

- To change a previously recorded ID  
▶ Select an ID you want to change

### 3 Enter the phone number of the other phone ▶

Press to return to the remote observation screen.

### 4 "Ringing time" ▶ Enter the ring time (003-120 seconds)

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.

- To set the displayed time as shown  
▶ Press without entering a time

### 5 "Set" ▶ "ON"



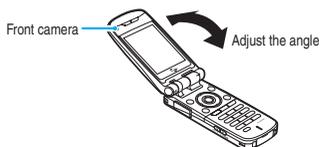
- To turn remote observation off  
▶ "OFF"

### 6 Position the FOMA terminal

In remote observation, the image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.

Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the observation position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.

If the FOMA terminal is left folded, remote observation is disabled and incoming signals are rejected.



#### NOTE

- When you set remote observation, appears in the standby screen.
- The ringing time set for Remote observation cannot be the same as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ringing time set for "Call forwarding" on the receiver side is shorter than the ringing time set for remote observation, "Call forwarding" takes priority. To give priority to remote observation, set a shorter ringing time than the "Call forwarding" setting.
- To receive remote observation with "Call Forwarding" service, set a phone that supports 3G-324M-compatible videophone as a terminal to forward calls and store the sender's phone number as the other ID.

## Function menu (Other ID screen)

### 1 Other ID screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Look-up address</b>	Sets the number of other party.
	<b>Phonebook</b> Stores a number stored in the phonebook. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101
	<b>Dialed calls</b> Stores a number stored as the Dialed calls record. "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number" → P.54
	<b>Received calls</b> Stores a number stored as the Received calls record. "Using the Received Calls" → P.65
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes a highlighted ID record.
<b>Delete all</b>	Deletes all IDs. The setting is turned "OFF" if all IDs are deleted.

#### NOTE

- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you can only call the phone numbers specified in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- When "OFF" is selected for "Redial/Dialed calls" and "Received calls" in "Record display set", you cannot access the "Received calls" or "Dialed calls" records.

## Performing remote observation

- To perform remote observation, you should always make a videophone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive the remote observation, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

### 1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone



Receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote observation begins. Video images and sound from the receiving phone are played through the dialing phone. If you press  to switch to hands-free mode, sound from the receiving phone is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone without switching to hands-free mode.

#### ■ To answer a videophone call (with camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote observation

- ▶ Answer by pressing  before the ringing time has elapsed
- To answer with a substitute image, press .

#### NOTE

- Calls from the phone number stored in the Remote observation settings can be received as a remote observation call even when "All lock" is set.
- If caller ID notification is not provided, the call is received as a normal videophone call and not as remote observation.
- If "Call acceptance" is set in a phone number other than the "Other ID" number, or if "Call rejection" is set for the "Other ID" phone number on the receiving phone, the incoming call is rejected and remote observation cannot be performed.
- Remote observation cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
  - Driving mode · Manner mode · Call rejection/acceptation · Reject unknown
- If Remote observation and Record message are set at the same time, Remote observation takes priority even when the ringing time set for Record message is shorter than the one set for Remote observation.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- Ring tone is specifically for Remote observation and cannot be modified.
- Ring tone is played at the volume set in "Video-phone" in "Ring volume". However, if the ring volume set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the remote observation volume is set to "Level 2".
- When remote observation is being received, the flashing color is set to "Gradation" and the flashing pattern is "Standard", regardless of the "Illumination" settings.
- Answer hold cannot be used while remote observation is being received. Press  to end the call.

## NOTE

- If Remote observation is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a videophone call received from the phone number stored as the "Other ID" is logged in the Received calls record as a remote observation call. If remote observation was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed call record for videophone in the Received calls record.
- You cannot receive a voice call or videophone call on the receiver side during remote observation. Voice calls or videophone calls not received during remote observation are logged as missed calls and stored in the Received calls record, and the missed call desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded during remote observation, the terminal operates as specified in "Fold setting". However, when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Fold setting" specification is ignored and the FOMA terminal sends a substitute image to the other party when it is folded.
- You cannot switch cameras during remote observation.

## Ending remote observation

1



The call duration is displayed and remote observation ends.  
You can also end remote observation by pressing  on the receiving phone.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. Improper use of the FOMA terminal in ways that constitute a serious public nuisance may be punishable under laws or ordinances intended to prevent such behavior (privacy protection laws, etc.).



# Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal .....	96
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone)	
Phonebook.....	<b>Add to phonebook</b> 97
Adding Information to the UIM	
Phonebook.....	<b>Add to UIM Phonebook</b> 98
Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records .....	100
Renaming Groups.....	<b>Group setting</b> 100
Making a Call From the Phonebook .....	<b>Search phonebook</b> 101
Editing the Phonebook.....	<b>Edit Phonebook</b> 105
Deleting a Phonebook Entry.....	<b>Delete data</b> 105
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card .....	<b>UIM operation</b> 106
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status.....	108
Setting Up Phonebook Utilities.....	<b>Utilities/Group utilities</b> 108
Using Dialing Shortcuts .....	<b>Two-touch dialing</b> 112
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites.....	<b>Automatic display</b> 112

# Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

## Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

### Data stored

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
No. of entries *1	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups *2	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage *3	The phonebook will hold up to 700 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry.	Only one number can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons "  " "  ", etc. for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 700 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons "  ", "  ", etc. for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one "Chara-den" character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include the contact's name, reading, postal code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

\*1: Depending on the amount of data stored in each entry, the number of entries that can actually be stored may decrease.

\*2: You can rename "Group 01" to "Group 19" ("Group 01" to "Group 10" in the UIM phonebook). It is often useful to select your preferred group names beforehand. → P.100

\*3: You can enter 0-9, #, +, \*, p in the phonebook. If you use a sub-address (P.61), enter \*.

### Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following utility functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) allows you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. → P.112
- You can use the "Utilities" functions to specify the settings used for dialing and receiving calls by group or by phone number or e-mail address. → P.108
- You can use "Restrictions" to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. → P.150
- You can use "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. → P.145
- "Setting your secret code" → P.105

### Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This makes the UIM phonebook very useful when you use multiple FOMA terminals in different locations.

## Displaying names

### Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call with caller ID notification from someone who is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's name and phone number.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Display phonebook image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, depending on the size and amount of data of the registered image, it may take time for the image to be displayed.

The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

### i-mode mail and SMS

When you receive i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or you receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the sender's name in the Inbox list screen and details screen. When you send i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is also shown in the Outbox list screen and details screen. The person's name also appears in the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

## Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook

- Always enter a name in the "Name" field. The entry will not be stored in the phonebook unless a name is entered.

### 1 On the standby screen ▶ ▶ "Add to phonebook" ▶ "Phone" ▶ Enter the name



The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.

Names consisting of up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be stored.

"Entering Text" → P.506

### 2 Check the reading

#### If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be used.

"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

### 3 Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

Item	Description
<b>Group</b>	▶ <b>Select a group</b> Selects a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
<b>Phone number</b>	▶ <b>Enter the phone number</b> ▶ <b>Select an icon</b> Enters the phone number and select the icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. Once you have stored the first phone number, the  "<Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.

Continued on next page

Item	Description
 Mail address	▶ <b>Enter the e-mail address</b> ▶ <b>Select an icon</b> Enters the e-mail address and select an icon. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
 Address	▶ <b>Enter the postal code</b> ▶ <b>Enter the street address</b> Enters the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. Street addresses can be up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
 Birthday	▶ <b>Enter the birthday</b> Enters the contact's birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 Memorandums	▶ <b>Enter a memo</b> Enters a memo (short note). Memos can be up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
 Set image	Select the image displayed when you receive a call from the contact.
 Chara-den	Select the "Chara-den" character displayed during a videophone call. The character is displayed when making and receiving a videophone call.
 Memory No	▶ <b>Enter a memory number</b> Memory numbers are automatically assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired.

## NOTE

- If you enter the "ㇿ" character (full-pitch, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as "ㇿ" (half-pitch, upper case). Symbols and pictographs are not represented in the reading.
  - Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly e.g. when data are transferred.
  - Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.  
(E.g.) docomo.taro△△@docomo.ne.jp
  - If the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.
  - If you store an image or "Chara-den" character in a phonebook entry and then modify or delete the original image or "Chara-den" character, the image or "Chara-den" character in the phonebook entry is also modified or deleted.
  - To have a stored image or "Chara-den" character displayed when you receive a call, set "Disp. phonebook image" to "ON". →P.125
  - When you receive a call and the phone number and still image are stored in the phonebook, if the size of the still image is larger than the displayed area set in "Calling" under "Display setting", the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. If it is smaller than the image screen area, it is centered on the screen.
- <Chara-den settings priority sequence>**
- The priority order for "Chara-den" settings is as follows (① has the highest priority):
    - ① Select image in the videophone setting →P.80
    - ② Chara-den set in the phonebook utilities →P.109
    - ③ Chara-den set in the group utilities →P.110
    - ④ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
    - ⑤ Camera image sending →P.86 / "Substitutive image" in "Select image" →P.87

## &lt;Add to UIM Phonebook&gt;

## Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

## 1 ▶ "Add to phonebook" ▶ "UIM" ▶ Enter the name



The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.  
Names consisting of up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be stored.  
"Entering Text" →P.506

## 2 Check the reading

### ■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using full-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.  
Up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be used.  
"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

### 3 Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

Item	Description
 <b>Group</b>	▶ <b>Select a group</b> Selects a group number between "00" and "10". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
 <b>Phone number</b>	▶ <b>Enter the phone number</b> Enters the phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits long on a green FOMA card (UIM). When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
 <b>Mail address</b>	▶ <b>Enter the e-mail address</b> Enters the e-mail address. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

#### NOTE

- If you enter the "ㇰ" character (full-pitch, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as "ㇱ" (half-pitch, upper case). However, you can also enter the "ㇰ" character (full-pitch, lower case) using reading input. Symbols are not represented in the reading.
- Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.  
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- If the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.

## When phonebook editing is interrupted

### 1 On the standby screen ▶ (Phone) ▶ "Add to phonebook" ▶ "Phone" or "UIM" ▶ "Recall"



If a battery low alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using Multi tasking, editing of the interrupted phonebook entry can be restarted.

When you are re-editing an entry, if you cancel editing without storing the changes, the data being edited is erased.

#### ■ To store a new entry

▶ "New"

#### NOTE

- When data being edited is stored temporarily, only the most recent entry is stored.
- If you receive a voice or videophone call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the phonebook entry being edited and answer the call.  
In the case of a voice call, you can return to phonebook edit screen by pressing (Phone) to display the task menu and then selecting the item that was being edited. In both voice calls and videophone calls, the original editing screen reappears when the call ends.

#### Important

- You should back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.538) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up the phonebook data onto your PC. Charging the battery pack charges the internal backup battery at the same time.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.

**Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries. Users should back up phonebook data onto a PC using the Data Link Software.**

## Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address”, “Sent address”, “Access reader” and “Sites” records. You can also add phonebook entries after dialing a phone number.

- To add information to the existing phonebook entry, select “Add”, search the phonebook and retrieve the entry before storing the new information.

<Example: Adding information from the “Received calls” record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

- Received calls screen (P.65)  (FUNC)  “Add to phonebook”  “Phone”**
  - To add information to the UIM phonebook
    - ▶ “UIM”
- “Add”  Locate the phonebook entry to which the information is to be added**

Searching the phonebook → P.101

  - To store a new phonebook entry
    - ▶ “New”
  - To add information to the UIM
    - ▶ “New” or “Overwrite”
- Display the phonebook detail screen**

“Phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook editing screen” appears.  
Editing the phonebook → P.105
- After completing the changes, press  (Finish)**
  - If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data
    - ▶ “YES”

### NOTE

- The “Notify caller ID” setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the “Dialed calls” and “Redial” records is not stored in the phonebook.
- Received addresses to which replies cannot be sent cannot be added to the phonebook.
- Text that exceeds the limit on the number of characters that can be added to the phonebook is deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting>

## Renaming Groups

Default setting

FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19 UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign your stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact’s role (“Work”, “Friends”, etc.) or by hobby (“Baseball”, “Arts”, etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose. The table below shows the groups that you can rename and the number of characters that can be stored.

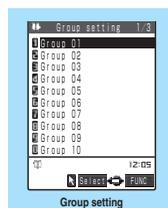
	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch
UIM	Groups 01-10	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch

- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

-   “Group setting”**

“Group setting screen” appears.
- Select a group  Enter the new group name**

The  icon appears next to UIM groups.  
If the same name is used for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they are displayed as separate groups.  
“Entering Text” → P.506



Function menu → P.101

## Function menu (Group setting screen)

## 1 Group setting screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit group name</b>	Edits the group name. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Utilities</b>	"Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook" → P.110
<b>Reset group name</b>	The changed group name is reset to the default name assigned at the time of purchase.

## NOTE

- Resetting the group name does not clear the "Utilities" settings specified for that group.
- When the group names are unchanged or have been deleted (reset), "Group 01" to "Group 19" is displayed for the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook while "Group 01" to "Group 10" is displayed for the UIM phonebook.

&lt;Search phonebook&gt;

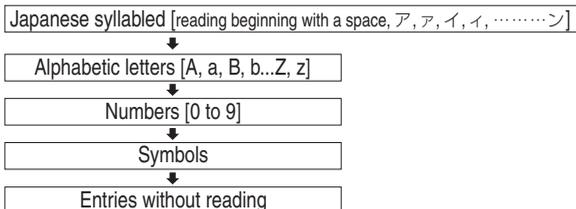
## Making a Call From the Phonebook

You can make a call by searching for a phonebook entry using any of 7 search criteria, reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group or "column" in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.).

- Phonebook entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

## ■ Viewing the search results

Except for memory number searches, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the reading entered when the entry was stored.



## 1 On the standby screen ▶ (Q) ▶ Select the search method



## ■ To display your preferred search method first

- ▶ Select the search method that you want to have displayed first ▶ (Prefer)

A star "★" appears next to the preferred search method.

The next time you search the phonebook, pressing (Q) on the standby screen will display the search method selection screen with your preferred method shown first.

## ■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

- ▶ On the standby screen ▶ (Q) ▶ "Search phonebook" ▶ Select the search method with the star "★" ▶ (OFF)

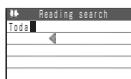
## 2 Search the phonebook

When the search ends, The “Phonebook list screen” that meets the searching conditions appears. “

If no phonebook entry that satisfies the search conditions is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.



Function menu → P.103



### ■ Reading search

▶ Enter some of the reading  or 

Enter the reading from the first in the order of the family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading you are searching for.

“Entering Text” → P.506



### ■ Name search

▶ Enter part of the person's name  or 

Start with the person's surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.



### ■ Phone No. search

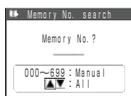
▶ Enter part of the person's phone number  or 

You can search by entering either the first digits in the phone number or any part of the number.



### ■ E-mail search

▶ Enter part of the person's e-mail address  or 



### ■ Memory No. search

▶ Enter the 3-digit memory number

You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.



### ■ Group search

▶ Select the desired group

Note that the UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.



### ■ Column search in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)

▶ Press the key for the “column” you want to search

-  : Displays only entries that begin with “a” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “ka” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “sa” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “ta” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “na” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “ha” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “ma” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “ya” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “ra” column reading.
-  : Displays only entries that begin with “wa”, “wo” or “n” column reading.
-  : Displays other entries.

### ■ To list all the entries stored in the phonebook

▶ Press  or  without entering any search criteria

Note that you cannot list all the phonebook entries when “Group search” is selected as the search method.

### ■ To make a call from the list screen

▶ Select the phonebook entry you want to call  or 

Press  to make a voice call and  to make a videophone call. If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

### 3 Select the desired phonebook entry

“Phonebook entry detail screen” appears.

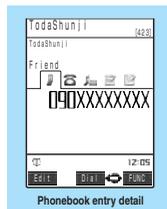
■ **If multiple phone numbers are stored for the same entry**

Use to display a different phone number.

■ **To make a call from the phonebook entry detail screen**

▶ Display the phone number you want to call and press or .

Press or to make a voice call and to make a videophone call.



Phonebook entry detail  
Function menu▶P.103

#### NOTE

- If you have not set a preferred phonebook search method, pressing displays the phonebook search screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

### Function menu (phonebook list screen)

#### 1 Phonebook list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts the phonebook list screen.	
	<b>-reading order</b> (default setting)	Sorts the entries by reading.
	<b>Name order</b>	Sorts the entries by name.
	<b>Memory No. order</b>	Sorts the entries by memory number.
	<b>Descending*</b>	Selects the sorting sequence.
<b>Export this</b>	Exports one phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	“Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries” → P.395	
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	“Transferring multiple data at the same time” → P.396	
<b>Delete data</b>	Delete phonebook entries.	
	<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected phonebook.
	<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> )▶  (Finish)▶ “YES” You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
	<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your security code▶ “YES”▶ “YES” Delete all the phonebook entries. Security code → P.140

\*: If you have selected the Descending, “Ascending” is displayed. The default setting is “Ascending”.

#### NOTE

- Deleting all the phonebook entries also deletes the UIM phonebook entries.
- You cannot delete phonebook data while “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.

### Function menu (phonebook detail screen)

#### 1 Phonebook detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Notify caller ID</b>	Specifies whether to notify your caller ID of your party by selecting “Don’t notify” or “Notify caller”. ■ To cancel “Don’t notify”/“Notify caller” in “Notify caller ID” ▶ “Cancel prefix” Selecting “Cancel prefix” activates the settings of “Caller ID notification” (P.48).

Item	Description						
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	▶ <b>Select the prefix name to be added.</b> "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P.57						
<b>International dial</b>	<p>■ <b>When "+" is prefixed (country code is added)</b></p> <p>The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.59).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When "Auto" is set "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting".</li> <li>When "OFF" is set ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b> "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</li> </ul> <p>■ <b>When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a country code</b> ▶ <b>Select the IDD prefix code</b></p> <p>The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.59</p>						
<b>Multi number</b>	"Multi number" → P.464						
<b>Dialing speed</b>	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".						
<b>Utilities</b>	"Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses" → P.109						
<b>Restrictions</b>	"Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers" → P.150						
<b>Edit data</b>	"Editing the Phonebook" → P.105						
<b>Delete data</b>	"Deleting a Phonebook Entry" → P.105						
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133						
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235						
<b>Compose SMS</b>	"Composing and Sending SMS" → P.292						
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries" → P.395						
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.396						
<b>Automatic disp.</b>	"Specifying the automatically displayed phone number" → P.112						
<b>Export this</b>	Exports a phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.						
<b>Copy name</b>	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into input and other screens. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522						
<b>Copy phone number<sup>*1</sup></b>	Copies phone numbers stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other screens. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522						
<b>Secret code</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ <b>Select any item:</b></p> <p>"Setting your secret code" → P.105 Security code → P.140</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Set code</b></td> <td>▶ <b>Enter a 4-digit number</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Sets your secret code.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Check code</b></td> <td>Confirms the set secret code.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Release code</b></td> <td>Cancels the set secret code.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Set code</b>	▶ <b>Enter a 4-digit number</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Sets your secret code.	<b>Check code</b>	Confirms the set secret code.	<b>Release code</b>	Cancels the set secret code.
<b>Set code</b>	▶ <b>Enter a 4-digit number</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Sets your secret code.						
<b>Check code</b>	Confirms the set secret code.						
<b>Release code</b>	Cancels the set secret code.						
<b>Release secret</b>	"Changing secret data back to normal data" → P.147						
<b>Copy to UIM<sup>*2</sup></b>	▶ <b>"YES"</b> Copies phonebook data. "Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM" → P.106						
<b>Select image</b>	Set the image used for videophone calls. → P.87 To cancel the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den", select "Release".						

\*1 : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, "Copy mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, "Copy address" is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Copy birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, "Copy memorandums" is displayed.

\*2 : If you have selected the UIM phonebook, "Copy from UIM" is displayed.

## ● Setting your secret code

To send i-mode mail to someone who has a stored secret code, you must add his or her secret code to the e-mail address. Setting a secret code for an e-mail address automatically adds that secret code when you send e-mail to that address.

- For i-mode mail sent to an i-mode phone that uses just the phone number as its e-mail address, you can also set a secret code for the phone number.
- You can only add a secret code when the destination e-mail address is in the “phone number” or “[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp” format. You cannot add secret codes to e-mail address with other formats.
- You cannot set secret codes for the UIM phonebook.
- You cannot set “0000” as a secret code.

### NOTE

- If a phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook with a secret code assigned, and if you additionally add a secret code to the phone number or e-mail address in this function, your mail cannot be sent to the recipient. In order to avoid that situation, delete the secret code assigned in the phonebook and then add a secret code in this function, or do not use this function to add another code.

<Edit Phonebook>

## Editing the Phonebook

Use the procedure below to edit phonebook entries.

You can also store an edited phonebook entry as a new entry.

- The readings cannot be edited automatically when you edit the names.

### 1 Phonebook detail screen (P.103) ▶ (Edit) ▶ Edit the respective items

Edit the required items using the procedure used in “Add to phonebook”.

Adding information to the phonebook → P.97

#### ■ To store a new memory number

▶ “No” ▶ Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored.

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new phonebook entry with a different memory number.

### 2 After editing, press (Finish) ▶ “YES”

#### ■ To add information to the UIM

▶ (Finish) ▶ “Overwrite/Add”

Selecting “Overwrite” stores the edited information.

Selecting “Add” leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

### NOTE

- You cannot edit the phonebook while “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.

<Delete data>

## Deleting a Phonebook Entry

Use this procedure to delete information in the phonebook. You can select and delete a phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or “Chara-den” character.

### 1 Phonebook detail screen (P.103) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete data” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Erase phone number*</b>	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or “Chara-den” character.
<b>This phonebook</b>	Deletes the phonebook displayed in detail.

\* : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, “Erase mail add.” is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, “Erase address” is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Erase birthday” is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, “Erase memorandums” is displayed.
- If you have selected an image, “Delete image” is displayed.
- If you have selected a Chara-den, “Delete chara-den” is displayed.

Continued on next page

## NOTE

- You cannot delete phonebook data while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- You can delete phonebook data on the phonebook list screen. However, an item of the phonebook detail cannot be deleted.
- If you delete the first phone number or mail address when multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored, the next phone number or mail address appears.

## &lt;UIM operation&gt;

## Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can use this procedure to transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete SMS data and phonebook entries stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot call/receive voice calls or videophone calls, or send/receive mail while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.

For information on the items and the number of stored entries that can be copied. → P.96

### Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between your FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM).

- Copying data does not delete or modify the original source data on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot use this function unless your FOMA terminal (Phone) is fitted with a FOMA card (UIM).

1



“UIM operation” ▶ Enter your security code

Once you enter your security code, “” is displayed and you can no longer receive communication such as incoming calls. If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation procedure ends.

Security code → P.140

2

“Copy” ▶ “Phone → UIM” or “UIM → Phone”

3

Select the item to be copied ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook	
	Displays the phonebook list screen. Searching the phonebook → P.101	
SMS	Select the SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4

Use to select a checkbox (  ) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES”



Function menu → P.107

## NOTE

- You cannot exchange data with the FOMA card (UIM) when an error occurs on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If the maximum number of entries that can be stored (saved) at the destination is reached during copying, a message appears notifying you that the memory used for data storage is full. Delete some unwanted entries from the stored (saved) data and then copy the uncopied data again.

## NOTE

- Copying the phonebook from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card converts “katakana” included in name and reading to full-pitch. Copied are up to 10 full-pitch or up to 21 half-pitch characters for name and up to 12 full-pitch or up to 25 half-pitch characters for reading.
- Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM is different, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- Because the types of characters that can be used on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) are different, some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- You can also copy individual phonebook entries by displaying the phonebook detail screen and selecting “Copy to UIM” (or “Copy from UIM” when using the FOMA card (UIM)) from the function menu.
- Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when the FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If the same group names are not set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the entries are stored in group 00.
- You cannot copy just the SMS report. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent messages SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS by box or by folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to the FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the messages on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icons are also changed to “Read”.
- If you copied SMS in added folders, i-oppil mail folders, the “Chat” folder or the “Trash box” folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), those messages can be viewed in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- Entries copied from the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone) are copied to the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

## Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

**1** On the UIM operation (copy) screen  (FUNC)  Select any item:

Item	Description
Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects the data.
Select all	Selects all the data.
Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

## Deleting phonebook or SMS data

**1**   **“UIM operation”**  Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

**2** **“Delete”**  **“Phone”** or **“UIM”**

**3** Select any item:

Item	Description	
Phonebook	 <b>Search the phonebook</b> Displays the phonebook list screen. Searching the phonebook → P.101	
SMS	Select the SMS data.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	<b>Outbox</b>	Shows the Outbox list screen.



Purpose		Function	Page
Receiving	To identify calls from specific callers using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones*1	Ring tone
		Identify using vibration	Vibrator
		Identify using call alert indicator color*1	Illumination
		Identify using image or movie	Image
	To change the answer message used when Record message starts up based on who is calling*2	Answer message	P.72
To identify mail from specific senders using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones	Mail ring tone	P.114
	Identify using vibration	Mail vibrator	P.116
	Identify using call alert indicator color	Mail illumination	P.131
Sending	To set the connection speed used for videophone calls based on who you are calling	Dialing speed	P.80
Receiving/Sending	To set the "Chara-den" character used for videophone calls based on who the other party is	Chara-den	P.82

\*1 : Identification is also possible for received 64K data communication.

\*2 : "Record message" must be set to "ON" beforehand.

- Cannot be set to "Group 00" on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the phonebook or groups on the FOMA card (UIM).
- Cannot be set to the phonebook stored as the secret data.
- The "Utilities" functions will only work if the caller provides a caller ID (phone number). You should always use the "Caller ID request" service. → P.461

## Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses

When you receive a voice call, videophone call or SMS from the specified phone number, or when you receive i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address, the selected utility notifies you of the received call or mail.

- The FOMA terminal uses the "Mail ring tone", "Mail illumination" or "Mail Vibrator" set for a phone number when you receive an SMS or when the sender's e-mail address is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp". When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.

### 1 Phonebook detail screen (P.103) > (FUNC) > "Utilities"

"Phonebook utilities setting screen" appears.

A star "★" appears next to the selected function.

#### ■ To deselect a selected function

▶ Select the function indicated by the star "★"

The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.



### 2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Ring tone	"Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P.114
Vibrator	"Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.116
Illumination	"Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P.131
Image	"Changing the Display" → P.121
Answer message	"Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P.72
Mail ring tone	"Changing the FOMA Terminal Ring Tone" → P.114
Mail vibrator	"Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.116
Mail illumination	"Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P.131
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Chara-den setting	"Setting Chara-den" → P.82

## ■ When you set a utility...

An icon appears in the phonebook detail screen indicating the utility that has been set.

-  : Indicates that "Ring tone" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Vibrator" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Illumination" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Image" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Answer message" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Mail ring tone" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Mail vibrator" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Mail illumination" is set.
-  : Indicates that "Dialing speed" is set to "64K".
-  : Indicates that "Dialing speed" is set to "32K".
-  : Indicates that "Chara-den setting" is set.

## Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook

### 1 Group setting screen (P.100) ► (FUNC) ► "Utilities"

"Group utilities setting" screen appears.

A star "★" appears next to the selected function.

#### ■ To deselect a selected function

- Select the function indicated by the star "★"

The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.



### 2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Ring tone	"Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P.114
Vibrator	"Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.116
Illumination	"Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P.131
Image	"Changing the Display" → P.121
Answer message	"Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P.72
Mail ring tone	"Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P.114
Mail vibrator	"Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.116
Mail illumination	"Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P.131
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Chara-den setting	"Setting Chara-den" → P.82

#### NOTE

- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and entries stored as ordinary data. However, group utility settings are disabled for mail or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- When Utilities settings duplicate the settings specified for other functions, and mail and Message Request/Free with differing respective settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.

**NOTE**

- When multiple e-mails or Message Request/Free are received simultaneously

Operations of ring tone and illumination	
Multiple mails are received.	The settings for the last mail are applied to the operations. If the mails include a chat mail, the ring tone set for chat mail is used.
Message Request and Message Free are received simultaneously.	The settings for Message Request are applied to the operations.
Mail, Message Request and Message Free are received simultaneously.	The settings for the last mail are applied to the operations. If the mail and messages include a chat mail, the ring tone set for chat mail is used.

**<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>**

- Priority is assigned as follows for call alert indicator operation when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):

- ① Illumination for phonebook utilities
- ② Illumination for group utilities
- ③ Illumination → P.131

**<Ring tone priority sequence>**

- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone operation when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):

- ① Ring tone for phonebook utilities
- ② Ring tone for group utilities
- ③ Ring tone for select ring tone (videophone) → P.114
- ④ Ring tone for call setting w/o ID → P.151
- ⑤ Ring tone for select ring tone (except for videophone) → P.114

The phonebook or group utilities priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):

- ① i-motion for ring tone
- ② i-motion for image
- ③ i-motion for ring tone (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice), melody

**<Image display priority sequence>**

- Priority is assigned as follows for image screen when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):

- ① Phonebook utilities image
- ② Group utilities image
- ③ Add to phonebook image → P.96
- ④ i-motion for select ring tone → P.114
- ⑤ Display setting → P.121

The phonebook or group utilities priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):

- ① i-motion for ring tone
- ② i-motion for the image, image

**<Dialing speed priority sequence>**

- Priority is assigned as follows when dialing speed settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):

- ① Dialing speed → P.80, 104
- ② Dialing speed set in Phonebook utilities
- ③ Dialing speed set in Group utilities

## Checking the Utilities settings



You can use the procedure below to check the settings for each of the phonebook and group functions specified in "Utilities".

**1**



**"Utilities"**

"Phonebook utilities screen" appears.

A star "★" is used to indicate items for which the functions are set.



Function menu ▶ P.111

### Function menu (Phonebook utilities screen)

Select a function or setting marked with a star "★".

**1**

Phonebook utilities screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Check settings	▶ Select a function or setting marked with a star "★" ▶ Check the phonebook entry or group to which the setting applies Checks the utilities settings.
Release	Cancels all the selected function settings.

\*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

## &lt;Two-touch dialing&gt;

## Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers "000" to "009" to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys  to  and then pressing  or  () to make a videophone call).

- 1**  to    or 
- **To make a videophone call**  
▶ 

## NOTE

- If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- If a phonebook entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", two-touch dialing can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 is not nominated in the "Restrict dialing" settings, two-touch dialing cannot be used. In this situation, you must either cancel Restrict dialing restrictions or nominate the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 in the Restrict dialing settings.

## &lt;Automatic display&gt;

## Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites



This function allows you to set up your FOMA terminal so that when you fold the FOMA terminal with the standby screen on the screen and then open it again, it automatically displays a preset phone number. You can then make a voice or videophone call to that number simply by pressing  or .

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set automatic display for mail address.
- You cannot set automatic display for the UIM phonebook.
- You cannot set automatic display for a phone number stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode.
- The phonebook set in the automatic display function does not appear if you fold and then reopen the FOMA terminal while using another function or entering text, or while the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode.

## Enabling the automatic display function

- 1**     "Display"  "Automatic display"  "ON"
- **To inactivate the automatic display function**  
▶ "OFF"

## Specifying the automatically displayed phone number

- 1** Phonebook detail screen (P.103)  (FUNC)  "Automatic disp."

A star "★" appears next to "Automatic disp."

- **When the phonebook contains two phone numbers or more**

▶ Use  to select a phone number to display automatically

- **To cancel the automatic display setting**

▶ Repeat step 1

The setting is cancelled and the star "★" disappears.

## NOTE

- Press , ,  or  while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen. Press  to display the Mail menu or  to display the i-mode menu.
- The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
  - When PIM lock is set
  - When All lock is set
  - When the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode
  - When Restrict dialing is set for other phonebook entries but not for the entry for which automatic display is set

# Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

## Tone Settings

Changing the Ring Tone .....	Select ring tone	114
What is 3D Sound? .....		116
Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies.....	Sound effect	116
Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls.....	Vibrator	116
Setting the Keypad Tone .....	Keypad sound	117
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging.....	Charge sound	118
Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out .....	Quality alarm	118
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail.....	Mail/Msg. ring time	118
Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker.....	Earphone	119
Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone .....	Manner mode	119
Modifying Manner mode .....	Manner mode set	120

## Display/Lighting Settings

Changing the Display.....	Display setting	121
Displaying Phonebook Images		
When You Receive Calls.....	Disp. PH-book image	125
Setting the Image Display Mode.....	Image display	125
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting .....	Display light	126
Changing the Display Color .....	Display design	127
Changing the Menu Display.....		128
Setting the Neuropointer .....	Neuropointer	130
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls .....	Illumination	131
Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Call Alert.....	Illumination in talk	132
Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls .....	Call time disp.	132
Changing the Font .....	Font	132
Setting the Clock Display .....	Clock display	133
Using Desktop Icons.....	Desktop icon	133
Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen .....	Select icons setting	136

# Changing the Ring Tone

Default setting	Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Chat mail: Pattern 2 MessageR: Pattern 3 MessageF: Pattern 3
-----------------	---

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different ring tones for voice calls, videophone calls, e-mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free. You can also set specific ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups. → P.108

- You can set i-motion animations downloaded from i-mode sites or websites as ring tones.
- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- Melody list → P.374

1



“Incoming call” ▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Phone	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. (“Changing the Display” → P.121)
Video-phone	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming videophone calls. (“Changing the Display” → P.121)
Mail	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication. (“Changing the Display” → P.121)
Chat mail	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming chat mails. (“Changing the Display” → P.121)
MessageR	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming Message Request. (“Changing the Display” → P.121)
MessageF	Sets the ring tone and display for Message Free. (“Changing the Display” → P.121)

2

“Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Melody	Chooses a previously stored ring tone or melody from the “Pre-installed” folder or a melody that was downloaded from an i-mode site or website and stored in the “Inbox” or in a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion that was downloaded to the FOMA terminal or a video clip (i-motion) that was shot using the built-in camera from “Inbox”, “Camera” or a folder you have created. Selects one of the preinstalled i-motion from “Pre-installed”. When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound for the selected i-motion (Chaku-motion).
Voice announce	Chooses between “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
Random melody	Selects a folder containing stored melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
OFF	The FOMA terminal plays no ring tone.

3

## Select ring tone or i-motion

When you select a melody, the FOMA terminal plays the melody. Press , , , , or .

After setting the ring tone, set the display if necessary.

### ■ To check the settings

▶ (Play)

## Pre-installed ring tones and melodies (C: Compatible)

Display	3D sound compatible
Pattern 1 - 3	-
Melody 1	-
Melody 2	C
Melody 3	C
Melody 4	C
Melody 5	C
Melody 6	C
Melody 7	C
Melody 8	C
Melody 9	-
Melody 10	C
Alarm 1	C
Alarm 2	C
Alarm 3	C
Alarm 4	C
Alarm 5	C
Alarm 6	C
Alarm 7	C
Alarm 8	-

Recording patent No.: T-0530175 

## Pre-installed Chaku-motion

“閃光” (Flare) is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “i-motion”.

### NOTE

- An image only i-motion cannot be specified as the ring tone.
- Some i-motion cannot be specified.
- If you copy (export) an i-motion that can be set as ring tone to the miniSD memory card, the copied (exported) i-motion can no longer be set as ring tone (even if you import it back to the FOMA terminal).
- The volume at which the melody is played back during ring tone selection is determined by the “Phone” setting in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” is set, the melody is not played back.
- Melodies with “” or “” before the title are restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played. → P.374
- Setting the ring tone in “Set as ring tone” in “Melody” of Data box changes the settings of this function. → P.375
- Setting the ring tone in “Set as ring tone” in “i-motion” of Data box changes the settings of this function. → P.357
- Depending on the combination of receiving screen, ring tone and precedence setting, either the receiving screen or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.
- You can use “Call setting w/o ID” to set a ring tone for voice calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID. The ring tone used for videophone calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID is determined by the “Video-phone” setting in this function.
- When the Ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → P.111
- If an i-motion (video only) is set in the receiving display, 3D sound is set to OFF for the melody set as the ring tone.
- If you have activated “Call Waiting” when an i-motion is set as the ring tone, the ring tone used when you finish the current voice call is “Pattern 1” and not the i-motion.
- If i-motion is specified as the ring tone for incoming call, the one for the packet communication is “Pattern 2”. The special screen appears for the packet communication regardless of the incoming screen settings.

## What is 3D Sound?

The 3D sound function is a function that uses the stereo speaker (or stereo earphone set) to produce a 3 dimensional and resonating sound. The 3D sound function allows you to enjoy i-appli-based games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sound.

### How to enjoy 3D sound

- To enjoy 3D sound to the fullest, holding the FOMA terminal approximately 20 to 30 cm in distance away from you and facing you will produce the best results.
- If you listen off-center or if you are too close or too far away from the FOMA, the effect may be diminished.
- The 3D effect differs depending upon the individual. If 3D sound bothers you, set “Surround”, “3Dsound” and “SRS\_WOW” (P.116) all to “OFF”.



<Sound effect>

5 4 3 2 1

## Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies

Default setting      Surround: OFF   3Dsound: ON   SRS\_WOW: OFF

Use this function to get a richer fuller sound when the FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for incoming calls or mail, sound effects and i-motion sound.

1 ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Sound effect” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Surround</b>	Sets natural 3-dimensional sound. The sound you are playing sounds like it is further away from the actual position of the 2 speakers.
<b>3Dsound</b>	You can play sound in 3 dimensional stereophonic sound from the stereo speakers.
<b>SRS_WOW</b>	“Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound” → P.116

### Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion that uses sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and through headphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo playback sound played through headphones is enhanced by effects that give a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- An icon in the Movie List display shows which i-motion uses sound effects. → P.339
- “Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies” → P.116

<Vibrator>

5 4 3 2 1

## Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls

Default setting  
All OFF

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns to notify you when you receive a voice call, videophone call, e-mail, Chat mail or Message Request/Free.

1 ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Vibrator” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Phone</b>	Sets vibration for voice calls and 64K data communication.
<b>Video-phone</b>	Sets vibration for videophone calls.

Item	Description
<b>Mail</b>	Sets vibration for i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication.
<b>Chat mail</b>	Sets vibration for chat mail.
<b>MessageR</b>	Sets vibration for Message Request.
<b>MessageF</b>	Sets vibration for Message Free.

## 2 Select the vibration pattern

Item	Description
<b>Pattern 1</b>	Vibrates in pattern 1.
<b>Pattern 2</b>	Vibrates in pattern 2.
<b>Pattern 3</b>	Vibrates in pattern 3.
<b>Melody linkage</b>	The FOMA terminal vibrates in a pattern matched to the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is set for the melody, or if an i-motion is set as the ring tone, pattern 2 is used.
<b>OFF</b>	The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

When you select a vibration pattern, the FOMA terminal vibrates in that pattern. An icon on the standby screen shows which function the FOMA terminal vibrates for.

**V<sub>v</sub>**: Shows that the vibration starts when receiving either voice calls or videophone calls.

**V<sub>m</sub>**: Shows that the vibration starts when receiving either of mail, chat mail, and Message Request/Free. The "Mail/Msg. ring time" settings must all be "ON".

**V<sub>v</sub>**: Shows that both "V<sub>v</sub>" and "V<sub>m</sub>" are available.

### NOTE

- Regardless of the settings for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in "Vibrator", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate if the settings of "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.118) are not ON.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to other than "OFF" for the vibration pattern, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.
- When "Ring volume" is not set to "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of received calls. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- The vibrator vibrates at a set strength regardless of the ring volume setting.

### <Priority sequence for Vibrator>

- If the vibrator settings are duplicated for the phonebook utilities and group utilities, the priority is as follows (where ① has the highest priority):  
 ①The vibrator setting for phonebook utilities    ②The vibrator setting for group utilities    ③The vibrator setting

### <Keypad sound>

## Setting the Keypad Tone



- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
  - Warning tones
  - Battery low warning tone
  - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
  - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad sound is played at the level set in "Volume" during a call, and fixed at the same level while not talking on the phone.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of the settings when:
  - You press (Memo/Check) with the FOMA terminal folded.
  - You shoot a picture (shutter sound, Auto focus lock sound)
  - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
  - You start/finish voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad tone from the "Initial settings" (P.46), you do not need to press "Other settings" ▶ "Keypad sound" in step 1.

## 1 "Other settings" ▶ "Keypad sound" ▶ "ON"

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from emitting the keypad sound  
 ▶ "OFF"

## &lt;Charge sound&gt;

## Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging

Default setting  
ON

This function allows you to set the FOMA terminal so that it emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

● The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of the setting specified in this function when:

- The screen is not standby
- You are dialing
- You receive a call
- You are talking
- The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode
- The FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode
- Standby voice memo is recorded
- Voice announce is recorded
- Data is sent and received
- The FOMA terminal is turned off

1

  “Other settings” ▶ “Charge sound” ▶ “ON”

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from emitting the charge sound  
▶ “OFF”

## &lt;Quality alarm&gt;

## Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting  
High tone

The FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice call or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

● The call may drop out without a warning tone if the signal quality worsens very quickly.

1

  “Talk” ▶ “Quality alarm” ▶ “No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”

## &lt;Mail/Msg. ring time&gt;

## Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail

Default setting  
5 seconds all

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive mail, chat mail or a Message Request/Free, and if so, the duration of the ring tone.

1

  “Incoming call” ▶ “Mail/Msg. ring time” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Mail	Sets the ring duration for i-mode mail and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring duration for chat mail.
MessageR	Sets the ring duration for Message Request.
MessageF	Sets the ring duration for Message Free.

2

## Specify whether to ring the tone

Item	Description
ON	▶ Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds) The FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press  .
OFF	The FOMA terminal does not ring.

## NOTE

- When “OFF” is selected for “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF”, “S” appears on the standby screen.

# Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting  
Earphone

Use this procedure to enable the tone to ring both through the earphone and through the speaker when you use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- 1   **▶“External connection”▶“Earphone”▶“Earphone+Speaker” or “Earphone”**

### NOTE

- When “Earphone” is set to this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal’s speaker if no earphone/microphone is connected.
- Even when “Earphone” is set, the ring tone sounds when a call arrives, and in roughly 20 seconds the ring tone is played through both the earphone and the speaker. However, when the ring tone sounds for procedures other than an alarm notification or incoming voice or videophone call, the ring tone is not played through the speaker in 20 seconds and is only played through the earphone.
- Do not wrap the cord for the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around the FOMA terminal. Note also that leaving the cord for the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near the FOMA terminal during a call may cause interference (noise).

# Switching Off the FOMA Terminal’s Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, this function allows you to stop the FOMA terminal playing ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker with a single touch.

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the following tones are replaced by vibrations:
  - Ring tone<sup>1</sup>
  - Alarm clock, schedule, ToDo and Notify cost limit alarm tones<sup>2</sup>
  - Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded

\*1: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.  
\*2: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Phone” in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.
- In “Manner mode set”, you can choose “Manner mode”, “Super silent” or “Original” as the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set. → P.120

- 1 **When the screen is standby or while you are talking**  (One second or longer)



The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and “” appears on the screen. During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is now set. As well as “”, the information specified in “Manner mode set” is displayed when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode.

-  : Indicates that the FOMA terminal will warn you using “Vibrator”.
-  : Indicates that “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”.
-  ~  : Indicates that “Record msg.” is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages there are.

- **To cancel Manner mode**  
Hold down  for one second or longer when the screen is standby or while you are talking. Manner mode is cancelled and “” disappears. During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is no longer set.

### NOTE

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal still plays the shutter sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal’s camera.
- If you try to play a melody or i-motion including voice when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. If you play a melody or recorded voice, it is played at the volume set in “Phone” in the “Ring volume” setting. If the ring volume is set to “Silent” or “Step”, it is played at the “Level 2” volume.

# Modifying Manner mode

Default setting  
Manner mode

This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations used in Manner mode.

● The following are the default settings of the "Original" manner mode:

- Record message: OFF
- Mail vol.: Silent
- Keypad sound: OFF
- Vibrator: ON
- Alarm vol.: Silent
- Mic sensitive.: Up
- Phone vol.: Silent
- VM tone: ON
- LVA tone: OFF

1

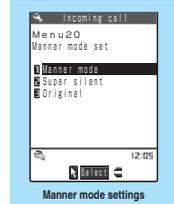


▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Manner mode set"

The manner mode settings screen appears.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description
<b>Manner mode</b>	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, confirmation tones played through the earphone (the confirmation tones sounded when  (Memo/Check) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) are not muted.
<b>Super silent</b>	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and confirmation tones played through the earphone and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
<b>Original</b>	This option allows you to tailor the Manner mode settings to your own preferences. You can specify in advance what volume is set for alarm clock alarm tones and how the FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. "Original manner" → P.120

## Original manner

1

Manner mode settings screen (P.120) ▶ "Original" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Record msg.</b>	Sets the Record msg. "Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P.72
<b>Vibrator</b>	Sets the vibrator. "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.116
<b>Phone vol.</b>	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P.68
<b>Mail vol.</b>	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and Message Request/Free. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P.68
<b>Alarm vol.</b>	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. "Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock" → P.423
<b>VM tone</b>	Sets confirmation tones such as "Record msg." and "Voice memo".
<b>Keypad sound</b>	Sets the keypad tone. "Setting the Keypad Tone" → P.117
<b>Mic sensitiv.</b>	Chooses between "Normal" and "Up" for the microphone sensitivity during calls.
<b>LVA tone</b>	Sets the battery low alarm. "When the battery runs out" → P.45

2

Press (Finish) after changing the settings

## ■ When you set Manner mode

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (shows the Original manner mode settings)
Record Msg. activation	OFF		"Record msg." settings
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" settings
Ring volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication.	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Ring volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and Message Request/Free	Silent		"Mail vol." settings
Alarm clock alarm volume	Silent		"Alarm vol." settings
Schedule/ToDo/Cost limit alarm volume	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" settings
Keypad tones	OFF		"Keypad sound" settings
Microphone sensitivity during calls*	Up		"Mic sensitiv." settings
In-call busy hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "level 1" for the settings other than "Silent".
In-call reply hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at "level 2" when "Step" is set.
Battery low alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" settings Even when set to "ON", the battery low alarm sounds at "level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" in this function.
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at "Level 2" when "Step" is set.
Reading out received mail	"Phone vol." settings Mail is read out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.		

\* : If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of the voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during the call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

### NOTE

- When "Record message" is ON in "Original", the FOMA terminal starts recording message after the ringing time elapses, which is set in "ON" of "Record msg." (P.72). However, if "Record msg." is OFF, the recording starts in eight seconds.
- If the FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls and alarms when Manner mode is set, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting>



## Changing the Display

Default setting

Stand-by display: Surfing Wake-up display: MEN'S KIT  
 Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP Dialing: Standard  
 VP Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard  
 Check new message: Standard

Use this procedure to display your favorite images, such as photographed or downloaded images, on the FOMA terminal display.

- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and receiving call display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound of the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the receiving call display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound of the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- A sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice) cannot be specified as the receiving call display.
- Some i-motion data cannot be specified.

Continued on next page

1



“Display” ▶ “Display setting”

The “display setting screen” appears.

If an option other than i-motion is set in the calling screen, set the ring tone as required.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description	
<b>Stand-by display</b>	“Changing the Standby screen image” → P.124	
<b>Wake-up display</b>	Specifies a message or image displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on.	
	<b>OFF</b>	No images are displayed.
	<b>Message</b>	▶ <b>Enter a message</b> The message can contain up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters.
	<b>My picture</b>	Selects an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.	
<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.	
<b>Dialing</b>	Sets the image displayed when you make a voice call. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
	<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.
<b>Calling</b>	Sets the ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.	
	<b>Select ring tone</b>	“Changing the Ring Tone” → P.114
	<b>Select calling disp.</b>	“Set a calling display or mail receiving display” → P.123
<b>VP Dialing</b>	Sets the display shown when you make videophone calls. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.	
<b>VP Calling</b>	Sets the ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	<b>Select ring tone</b>	“Changing the FOMA Terminal’s Ring Tone” → P.114
	<b>Select calling disp.</b>	“Set a calling display or mail receiving display” → P.123
<b>Mail sending</b>	Sets the image displayed when you send i-mode mail or SMS. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
	<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.

Item	Description	
<b>Mail receiving</b>	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming mails.	
	<b>Select ring tone</b>	Sets the ring tone used when you receive i-mode mail or SMS. "Changing the Ring Tone" → P.114
	<b>Select receiving disp.</b>	"Set a calling screen or mail receiving screen" → P.123
<b>Check new message</b>	Sets the image displayed when you send a message checking for new messages. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets the image downloaded from i-mode sites and websites, or the still image shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.	

## ● Set a calling screen or mail receiving screen

<Example: Set a calling screen for the calling>

- 1** Display setting screen (P.122) ▶ "Calling" ▶ "Select calling disp."  
▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>My picture</b>	Selects an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.	
<b>i-motion*</b>	Selects an i-motion. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion data cannot be specified.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or video clips shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets one of the pre-installed i-motion files.

\*: "i-motion" is not displayed on the mail receiving screen.

### ■ To check the settings



NOTE
● Flash movies can be set in the "Calling display" or "Receiving display", but the ring tone used is the tone set in "Select ring tone".
● When the Ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned for displaying the image. → P.111
<Priority sequence for screen>
● Priority is assigned as follows when display settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
① Auto display                      ② i-appli standby                      ③ Display settings

## Changing the standby screen image

- “Calendar” can be selected only if you have set the date and time in “Set time”.
- The following are 10 preinstalled images.
- The color and image of “Healing Screen” and “OCEAN” change depending on what time it is.



Healing Screen



OCEAN



MEN'S KIT



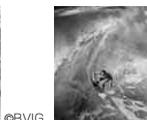
SPRAY



Dragon Quest II



BunBun (Dimo)



Surfing



Piglet



Tropical Drink



Airplane

### 1 Display setting screen (P.122) ▶ “Stand-by display” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>OFF</b>	No images are displayed.	
<b>Calendar</b>	Selects a calendar.	
	<b>Background</b>	You can use this option to select and set the background image for the calendar. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
	<b>No background</b>	Displays the calendar only.
<b>My picture</b>	Selects an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets a pre-installed image.
	<b>Original animation</b>	Sets one of the original animations.
<b>i-motion</b>	Sets an i-motion. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option. Some i-motion cannot be specified.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Sets one of the i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or video clips shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Camera</b>	Sets one of the i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or video clips shot using the built-in camera.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Sets one of the pre-installed i-motion.
	<b>i-appli display</b>	Sets the i-appli standby screen. When the i-appli standby screen is set, a star (★) is displayed. “Setting the i-appli Standby Screen” → P.312

#### ■ When you set the calendar for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily refer to previous calendar dates and activate the schedule.

**■ To check the adjacent months on the calendar**

Press on the standby screen and use to focus on the calendar. Or slide your finger over to place the pointer over the calendar, and the calendar is focused. Press again or highlight the calendar by the pointer. Pressing displays the previous month, and pressing displays the next month. If a "desktop icon" other than "Desktop icons that provide information" (P.135) is set to the standby screen, pressing selects the desktop icon or calendar month selected previously. If a desktop icon was selected, select the calendar. Press again or highlight the calendar by the pointer. Pressing displays the previous month, and pressing displays the next month.

**■ To activate the schedule function**

With the calendar selected, press to launch the schedule function and store a scheduled event for the displayed month.

**NOTE**

- If there is a movie or i-motion set in the standby screen, the movie or i-motion is played when you open the FOMA terminal. Press or to stop playback. When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, only the image is played (no sound). When the playback ends, the first frame of the video clip or i-motion is displayed on the standby screen.
- If a Flash movie is set to the standby screen, opening the FOMA terminal plays the Flash movie (melody is not played). Pressing or stops the playback, and the frame at the time of stop is displayed on the standby screen. When the playback ends, the last frame of the Flash movie is displayed on the standby screen.
- Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen restores the standby screen to the default settings.

<Disp. PH-book image>

**Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls**

Default setting  
ON

Use this procedure to specify whether an image is displayed when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number that is stored in the phonebook and a still image is also stored in that phonebook entry.



**NOTE**

- When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → P.111
- Depending on the priority as well as the combination of receiving screen and ring tone, either the receiving screen or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.
- If the caller does not notify the caller ID, the image is not displayed.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data are not displayed.

<Image display>

**Setting the Image Display Mode**

Default setting

Settings: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Analog 1 (Pict: ON)  
Image set: Pre-installed (Surfing) Called: ON (Image + Number)  
Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF) Background i-αppli: OFF

You can set the message display mode, background, clock, etc. for the image display.



Item	Description
ON	
<b>Stand-by</b>	Specifies whether to fix the image display. Setting "ON" does not flash the display light for image display. The message of incoming call or the animation such as Alarm is not displayed.
<b>Clock type</b>	Selects the clock among "Analog 1", "Analog 2", "Digital 1", "Digital 2" and "OFF", and turns on/off the Pict.

Item	Description		
ON	Image set	Specifies whether to display the background image.	
		OFF	No images are displayed.
		Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode sites and websites or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Called	Specifies whether to display the phone number of the incoming call.	
		ON	Selects the display mode among "Image + Missed call", "Image" and "Missed call".
		OFF	Does not display the phone number.
	Mail	Specifies whether to display the contents of the mail. Selecting "ON" displays the sender, date and time, and subject when you receive a mail. → P.31	
	Connection	Specifies whether to display an image or animation for calling or talking of voice call or videophone call, Infrared data exchange or data communication.	
		ON	Enables you to specify whether to flash the display light (ON/OFF).
		OFF	Does not display any images or animations.
Background i-appli	Specifies whether to use the image display for i-appli.		
OFF	Nothing appears on image display.		

## NOTE

- When OFF is selected for the image display, nothing is displayed on the image display except when you shoot with the built-in camera or use some special functions.
- When you select "Digital 1" or "Digital 2" for "Clock type", the settings of "Clock display" (P.133) are applied to the display style or size. The clock is displayed large ("Big") or small ("Small," "Down Small").
- The "Analog 1" or "Analog 2" for "Clock type" does not always show the exact time.
- When the camera is running or when you receive mail automatically filtered to the protected folder, the sender name, date and time, and subject of the received mail are not displayed.
- Receiving i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS displays an icon expressing the emotion that matches the contents of the received mail. → P.30, 256  
You can also specify for the FOMA terminal to pop up an icon when the specified keyword is included in the received message. → P.285
- When your FOMA receives two mails or more at the same time, the data (mail address or sender name, date and time, and subject) of up to last three mails will be displayed. → P.31

## &lt;Display light&gt;



## Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting

Lighting: ON (lit) + Power saving (5-minute wait) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys (Normal) Brightness: Level 2

Use this procedure to specify the lighting settings for the display, keypad and backlight.

1



▶ "Display" ▶ "Display light" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description		
Lighting	Selects the normal lighting settings for the display light. Selecting "OFF" displays the "💡" icon on the standby screen.		
	ON	Sets the Power Saving mode options.	
		ON	▶ Enter the waiting time (02 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (Power Saving mode). Sets the waiting time before the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saving mode. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press .
		OFF	Disables Power Saving mode.

Item	Description	
Lighting	OFF	Sets the Power Saving mode options.
	ON	<p>▶ <b>Enter the waiting time (02-20 minutes)</b></p> <p>Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (Power Saving mode). Sets the waiting time before the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saving mode. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press .</p>
	OFF	Disables Power Saving mode.
Charging	<p>▶ <b>“Standard” or “All time ON”</b></p> <p>Selects the lighting settings for the display light during charging.</p>	
Area	Selects the backlit area.	
	LCD+Keys (Auto)	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel and keypad. The sensor below the light automatically senses the ambient brightness. The display is lit when it is dark.
	LCD+Keys (Normal)	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel and keypad.
	LCD	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel only.
Brightness	Selects the brightness from Level 3 to Level 1.	

## NOTE

- You can also turn the display light on or off by holding down  for 1 second or longer.
- When “Lighting” is set to “ON”, the display light turns on when a call is received and lights for roughly 15 seconds when you turn the FOMA terminal on, press one of the FOMA terminal keys, or unfold the FOMA terminal. The display light also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select “OFF”, the display light does not turn on. However, the display light turns on during movie shooting regardless of the “Lighting” setting.
- Even if the “Charging” setting is set to “ALL time ON” during charging, if no operations are performed for about 15 seconds, the brightness of the display light is set to “Level 1” to increase charging efficiency.
- When the body of a mail or a Message Request/Free is displayed, the time for which the display light stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- If the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saving mode while it is unfolded,  and  flash at roughly 5 second intervals. Press any of the FOMA terminal’s keys to cancel Power Saving mode.
- If you select “ON” in Stand-by of “Image display” and then fold the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal does not switch to Power Saving mode when the specified waiting time has elapsed.

## &lt;Display design&gt;



## Changing the Display Color

Default setting

Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background 1: OFF Background 2: Pattern 1

Use this procedure to change the design of the text, background, the upper and lower sections of the display, and the software keys.

1



▶ **“Display”** ▶ **“Display design”** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Color pattern	Selects the color pattern from Pattern 1 to Pattern 5. The selected color pattern appears on the display during the selection.
Background 1	Selects the Background1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among “OFF” (not displayed) and “Pattern 1 to 8”. Select this option to give precedence to displaying the icons on the upper part of the screen.
Background 2	Selects the pattern used for background 2 (the background pattern for the software keys) from “Level 1 to Level 3”. The selected pattern appears on the display during the selection.

## NOTE

- If you select an image of 240 dots wide × 345 dots high (Screen) for the standby screen and set Background 1 to OFF, the whole image is displayed.

**NOTE**

- If you select an image of 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert.) for the standby screen and set Background 1 to:
  - OFF, no background is displayed on the upper part of the screen, and the whole image is displayed.
  - Other than OFF, the selected background appears on the upper part of the screen and overlaps the top 25 dots of the image.
- Changing the settings of this function does not change the colors of icons and images. There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to the settings of this function, such as i-mode sites.



# Changing the Menu Display

## Setting the menu display mode <Menu display set>

Default setting | Guidance: Picture & Text | Menu display: Detail | Theme: Pattern1

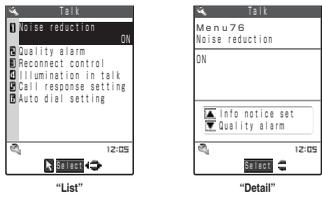
This feature allows you to change the guidance display of the main settings icons selected on the main function selection screen, or to specify whether the branch settings in the “Settings” menu are displayed as a list or in detail. You can also use this procedure to set the background and icons to the main settings selection screen.

- Original menus are displayed as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

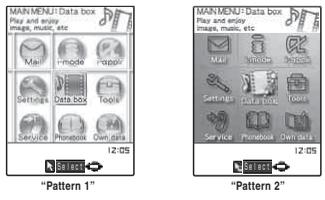
### ■ Guidance displays



### ■ Menu displays



### ■ Themes



- 1 ► “Display” ► “Menu display set”  
The “Menu display set screen” appears.
- 2 **Select any item:**



Item	Description	
<b>Guidance</b>	Sets the guidance display for the main settings selecting among “Picture & Text”, “Text” and “OFF” (not displayed).	
<b>Menu display</b>	Chooses the display mode for the branch settings between “Detail” and “List”.	
<b>Theme</b>	Sets the background and icons used in the main settings selection screen.	
	<b>Pattern1</b>	Sets Pattern1.
	<b>Pattern2</b>	Sets Pattern2.
<b>Original theme</b>	“Changing the main menu screen” → P.129	

## Changing the main menu screen

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image used on the main setting selection screen (main menu).

### 1 Menu display set screen (P.128) ▶ “Theme” ▶ “Original theme”

The “Original theme screen” appears.  
Select an image from the ones in My picture Inbox, Camera, Pre-installed, or a folder you created.



Original theme  
Function menu ▶ P.129

### 2 Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Mail</b>	Sets the mail icon image.
<b>i-mode</b>	Sets the i-mode icon image.
<b>i-appli</b>	Sets the i-appli icon image.
<b>Settings</b>	Sets the settings icon image.
<b>Data box</b>	Sets the data box icon image.
<b>Tool</b>	Sets the tool icon image.
<b>Network service</b>	Sets the network service icon image.
<b>Phonebook</b>	Sets the phonebook icon image.
<b>Own data</b>	Sets the own data image.
<b>Background image</b>	Sets the background image or the color of the multi task group frame. “Multi Tasking” → P.418

#### ■ To set the multitask group frame

▶ “Background image” ▶ (Play) ▶ (Frame color) ▶ Use (Color palette) to select a color from the color palette

When you are selecting the color, pressing (Change) switches the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

#### NOTE

- You can check the image for the selected item by pressing (Play) on the selection screen.
- If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function is set as a menu icon or background image, the original theme will revert to the default theme if you change or remove the FOMA card (UIM).
- You can set a JPEG, GIF or animated GIF image with a file size of 100 K bytes or less and an image size of up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high. If the image is larger than the display area, the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If it is smaller, it is centered.
- An animated GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animated GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

### Function menu (Original theme screen)

### 1 Original theme screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Reset</b>	Restores the selected icon or background image to the default settings.
<b>All reset</b>	Restores all the icons and background images to the default settings.

## Creating an original menu <Create original menu>



Default setting Show own number, Check new message, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

- You can store up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be included in the original menu are the main settings for “Mail”, “i-mode” and “i-αppli”, and the medium and branch settings (functions) for “Settings”, “Data box”, “Tool”, “Network service”, “Phonebook” and “Own data”.
- You cannot store the same function twice.

### 1 “Display” ▶ “Original menu”

The “Original menu screen” appears.

### 2 “<Not recorded>” ▶ Use to select a menu category

- To change the already stored function
  - ▶ Select an item of the stored item

### 3 Select the function you want to register

You can select only from the main items in “Mail/i-mode/i-αppli”.



Function menu▶P.130

#### NOTE

- Trying to register to the item where some function is already stored displays a message asking whether to overwrite the function.

### Function menu (Original menu screen)

### 1 Original menu screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Add to org. menu	Creates an original menu.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → P.133
Reset org. menu	Restores to the default settings.
Release	Removes the selected function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all the functions from the original menu.

## <Neuropointer>

### Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting Pointer: ON Simple: Speed (Standard)

For the better use of the pointer ( : Blue/ : White) controlled by the neuropointer key (), specify whether to turn the pointer on/off, the speed, etc.

- When setting the neuropointer speed from the “Initial settings” (P.46), choose between “Normal” and “High” in “Simple” (P.131).
- The pointer can be used when “” appears on the screen.
- When the pointer is blue (), moving the pointer automatically moves the cursor and selects the text. When the pointer is white (), moving the pointer does not automatically move the cursor or select the text.

### 1 “Other settings” ▶ “Neuropointer”

The “Neuropointer screen” appears.

### 2 Select any item:



Neuropointer

Item	Description
<b>Pointer</b>	Specifies whether to display the pointer (whether to use the neuropointer).
<b>Speed</b>	"Changing the pointer speed" → P.131
<b>Slide</b>	<b>Adjust</b>
	▶ <b>"YES" ▶ Slide your finger over the neuropointer key following the instructions</b> Sets the limits of the neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer as you like.
	<b>Reset</b>
	Restores the slide adjustment to the default settings.

## Changing the pointer speed

### 1 Neuropointer screen (P.130) ▶ "Speed" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Simple</b>	▶ <b>"Normal" or "High" ▶ "YES"</b> Chooses between the two speeds.
<b>Detail</b>	Sets the speed for each screen.
	<b>Standard</b> <sup>*1</sup>
	<b>MainMenu</b>
	<b>T9/Prediction</b>
<b>Software</b> <sup>*2</sup>	▶ <b>Use  to select "I", "L" or "H" ▶ Use  to change the speed</b> The speed can be adjusted from level 0 (left end) to level 11 (right end). Move the key to the right to increase the speed and to the left to decrease the speed.
<b>Reset</b>	Restores the pointer speed to the default settings.

\*1: Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as list and icon selection.

\*2: The settings may be not applicable depending on the i-appli.

## <Illumination>



## Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls

<b>Default setting</b>	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12
------------------------	---

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flashing pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice or videophone calls, mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free.

- You can set different flashing colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from specific phone numbers, e-mail addresses and groups. → P.108
- The flashing pattern for  and  is the same as for the incoming call lamp, but they flash orange.

### 1 ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Illumination" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Set color</b>	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for "Phone", "Video-phone", "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF". The incoming call lamp is turned on with the selected color during the selection.
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes by the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes by the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.
<b>Set pattern</b>	Selects the incoming call lamp flashing pattern.
	<b>Standard</b>
	<b>Melody linkage</b>
<b>Adjust color</b>	Sets the color.
	<b>Edit color name</b>
	<b>Adjust color tone</b>

▶ **Select the color ▶ Enter the color name**  
The color name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.  
"Entering Text" → P.506

▶ **Select the color ▶ Use  to adjust the color tone**

## NOTE

- If "Pattern 1-3" is selected in the Ring tone settings, the incoming call lamp flashes to the melody regardless of the settings of this function.
- When the Ring tone settings are overlapped, the priority sequence will be assigned for the incoming call lamp. → P.111
- If "Melody linkage" is set and there is no vibration pattern stored for melody linkage in the ring tones, the "Standard" pattern is used.
- While the FOMA terminal is exchanging data with the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes green by "Color 5" regardless of the settings of this function.

## &lt;Illumination in talk&gt;

## Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Call Alert

Default setting  
OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice or videophone call.

1



“Talk” ▶ “Illumination in talk” ▶ Select a color

- OFF : The incoming call lamp does not flash.  
 Color 1 to 7 : The lamp flashes by the selected color.  
 Gradation 1 : The lamp flashes and the colors change.  
 Gradation 2 : The lamp lights and the colors change.  
 Gradation 3 : The colors quickly change.

## NOTE

- While recording message, playing the recorded message or holding the line, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

## &lt;Call time display&gt;

## Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls

Default setting  
ON

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal displays the call time during voice and videophone calls.

- If the call time exceeds “19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the count restarts from “0 seconds”.
- The displayed call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- Call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1



“Call time/Charge” ▶ “Call time display” ▶ “ON”

- To not display the call time  
 ▶ “OFF”

## NOTE

- The call time displayed is reset to 0 second each time you switch between voice call and videophone call. However, after switching the calls, if you finish the call with videophone, the call time displayed is the sum of voice and videophone calls.

## &lt;Font&gt;

## Changing the Font

Default setting  
Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

Default setting    Type: Font 1    Thickness: Medium

Use this procedure to change the text shown on the screen and on the image display to your preferred font (typeface).

1



“Display” ▶ “Font” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Type	Selects the font type between “Font 1” and “Font 2”. A sample of the selected font appears on the bottom of the screen.
Thickness	Selects the thickness among “Thin”, “Medium” and “Bold”. A text sample of the selected thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.

## NOTE

- You can only change to "Font 2" for alphabetic letters (full-pitch or half-pitch), numbers (full-pitch or half-pitch), hiragana and katakana (full-pitch or half-pitch), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are displayed by "Font 1". The text used for phone number input and clock display also cannot be changed to "Font 2".
- Changing the settings of this function does not change the fonts displayed on the image display or on the full browser Internet website.

## <Clock display>



# Setting the Clock Display

Default setting

Display: ON Size: Big

You can change the size or type of clock or specify not to display date/clock.

- If the screen is not Standby, the small clock is displayed in the task icon/clock display area on the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings. → P.27

# 1



“Clock” ▶ “Clock display” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Display	Chooses between ON and OFF.	
Size	Big	Displays the date and big clock.
	Small	Displays the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Displays the small clock on the bottom.

## <Desktop icon>

# Using Desktop Icons

Adding frequently called phone numbers and frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons provides a quick and simple way of accessing those numbers and functions.

- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons:
  - Phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, movies, i-motion, “Chara-den” characters, i-appli programs, PDF-formatted documents
  - Camera, ToDo list, access reader, bar code reader, infrared data receive, original menu, dictionary functions
- You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the standby screen. However, a desktop icon for a function such as camera cannot be added twice.
- The pre-installed original animations, melodies or images cannot be added as desktop icons.

## Adding desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to add, the data list screen, or the details screen.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

“Add desktop icon” in the “Phonebook detail screen function menu” → P.104



### ■ Titles of added desktop icons

Displayed icon	Type	Title
	Phone number	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	Mail address	Name stored in the phonebook (Mail address if no name is stored)
	SMS address	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	URL	Page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if no title is stored)

Displayed icon	Type	Title
	Melody	Melody title ("Melody" if no title is stored)
	Image	Image title ("Image" if no title is stored)
	Movie or i-motion	Movie or i-motion title ("i-motion" if no title is stored)
	Chara-den	Chara-den title ("Chara-den" if no title is stored)
	PDF-formatted document	PDF-formatted document title ("Document" if no title is stored)
	i-appli software	Software name
	Camera	The respective function name
	ToDo	
	Access reader	
	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data	
	Dictionary	
	Original menu	

When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters of the title are displayed.

## Using desktop icons to retrieve data or functions

### 1 When the screen is standby▶

The "Desktop icon screen" appears.  
The title of the icon in the current cursor location is displayed.

### 2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to retrieve

#### ■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored

The  icon is shown on the left or right of the screen. You can use  to scroll through the icons.



Desktop icon  
Function menu▶P.134

## Function menu (Desktop icon screen)

### 1 Desktop icon screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit title</b>	▶Enter a title The title can contain up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Reset desktop</b>	Restores to the default settings (Camera only).
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected desktop icon.
<b>Delete all</b>	Deletes all the desktop icons.
<b>Move</b>	▶"Move"▶"YES"▶Use  to move▶  (Put) Moves the selected icon.

#### NOTE

- The function menu appearing from the desktop icon screen is the same as the one from the desktop screen. Desktop screen → P.135

## Checking desktop icon information



1



“Display” ▶ “Desktop icon”

“Desktop icon screen” appears.

2

Select a desktop icon title



### NOTE

- On the desktop icon information display for URLs, you can use to scroll the display and check all the URLs.

## Desktop icons that provide information

Icon	Information provided	Subsequent display/activation details
New	Notifies you that you received mail, including mail received while you were out of service area or while the FOMA terminal was turned off. Selecting the icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon. → P.255	Shows the list display for the Inbox folder containing your latest mail.
CHAT	Notifies you that you received chat mail. Selecting the icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon. → P.255	Shows the Chat screen.
Miss	Notifies you of missed calls. Selecting the icon shows you the number of missed calls.	Displays the “Missed calls” record.
Msg	Notifies you of recorded messages.	Launches “Play/Erase msg.”
VM	Notifies you that some messages have been recorded to Voice Mail Service Center.	Launches “Voice mail”.
Miss	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm clock, scheduled event or ToDo alarm.	Displays the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
Not run	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to automatically launch an i-appli.	Shows the “Auto start” screen.
APPLI	Notifies you that the i-appli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Displays the security error history.
UPDATE	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Shows the update results screen after you enter your security code.
MAX	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the limit you specified.	Shows the Notify cost limit screen.

### NOTE

- If you call the function from the desktop icon that provides information or from the function menu, the desktop icon is erased. However, the “Voice memo” desktop icon is not erased until you play or delete the voice memo.
- To erase all the desktop icons that provide information, hold down for one second or longer (erasing the icons does not mean erasing the contents).
- If you select “Not display” for “Missed calls display” in the “Ringling time” settings, calls that you missed during the time taken for the FOMA terminal to start ringing do not appear in the Received calls record. However, this setting excludes calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook.
- If you receive new mails or chat mails when the destination Inbox is protected for the security, selecting the icon does not pop up the emotion-expressing mail icon.

# Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen

Default setting  
ON

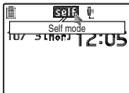
You can use this procedure to select the display icons, date or time on the standby screen using the neuropointer.

- 

**“Other settings”** ▶ **“Select icons setting”** ▶ **“ON”**  
 ■ To make icons not selectable  
 ▶ “OFF”

## Selecting a display icon with the neuropointer

- On the standby screen ▶ Slide your finger over  to display   
 ▶ Point the icon you want to check ▶ 



The icon title appears.  
 You can also select the date or time.  
 You can also use  to select an icon after selecting by neuropointer.

Icon/display	After being selected
	Displays the screen for releasing "PIM lock".
	Displays the screen for releasing "Keypad dial lock".
	Displays the screen for releasing "Keypad dial lock" and "PIM lock".
	Displays the "Inbox".
	Displays "Message Request".
	Displays "Message Free".
	Displays "Check new message".
	Displays "Receive option".
	Displays the screen for releasing "Self mode".
	Displays the screen for releasing "IC Card lock".
	Displays the "Vibrator" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Normal mode (when not in manner mode) "Ring volume" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens are displayed.</li> <li>· Manner mode, Super silent mode Displays a message that it cannot be set.</li> <li>· Original manner mode "Original" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens are displayed.</li> </ul>
	Displays "Manner mode set".
	Displays "Remote observation".
	Displays "Alarm".
	Displays a message that nothing is recorded.
	Displays "Play/Erase msg".
	Displays "Voice mail". If there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, the "10 Voice mail" message appears.
	Displays "Display light".

Icon/display	After being selected
	Displays "Side keys guard".
Date	Displays "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Displays "Alarm clock". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
	Switches and displays the task in operation.
	Displays "USB mode setting".



# Security Settings

## About Your Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal.....	140
Changing Your Security Code.....	<b>Change security code</b> 140
Setting Your PIN Codes.....	<b>PIN setting</b> 141
Release PIN lock.....	142

## Restricting the Phone Controls and Functions

Lock Functions.....	142
Preventing Others From Using Your Terminal.....	<b>All lock/Remote all lock</b> 143
Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule.....	<b>Secret mode/Secret only mode</b> 145
Hiding Your Personal Information.....	<b>PIM lock</b> 147
Disabling the Side Keys.....	<b>Side keys guard</b> 148

## Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls and Transmissions

Locking the Keypad.....	<b>Keypad dial lock</b> 148
Setting the Redial and Received Calls Displays....	<b>Record display set</b> 149
Preventing Unwanted Mail Display.....	<b>Mail security</b> 149
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers.....	<b>Restrictions</b> 150
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers.....	<b>Call setting w/o ID</b> 151
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook.....	<b>Ringling time</b> 152
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook.....	<b>Reject unknown</b> 153
Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc.....	<b>Self mode</b> 153

## Other Security Settings

Other Security Settings.....	154
------------------------------	-----

# Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal

To make the FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code. In addition to this security code for the various FOMA terminal operations, you also have an i-mode password and a Network security code that is used for accessing network services. Take care to use the appropriate access code when using your FOMA terminal.

## ■ Security Code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. → P.140

- If you forget your FOMA terminal security code, you must take the FOMA terminal\*, your current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a drivers license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.

\* The subscriber must take the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo shop in person otherwise service may be denied.

## ■ Network security code

The security code is a 4 digit number that you specify when you apply to use DoCoMo e-sites or use various network services.

- If you forget your security code contact Inquiries on the back cover of this manual. Alternatively, take the FOMA terminal and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a drivers license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset. You can also apply for e-sites from your personal computer if you have a user ID and password.

\* See the back cover of this manual for detail regarding DoCoMo e-sites.

## ■ PIN1 code, PIN2 code

Two pin numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to FOMA card (UIM).

When you first subscribe, these security codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security codes at any time.

The PIN1 code is a 4-to-8-digit number (code) that you enter when you insert the FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user and is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. If the PIN1 code entry set is set to ON, entering the PIN1 codes enables you to make and receive calls and to use the functions.

The PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit security code that is used when you use or request user certificates or perform tasks such as resetting the total call charges.

## ■ i-mode password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to add or remove sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites.

When you first subscribe, i-mode passwords are set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your passwords at any time.

(You may also have other passwords set independently by your Internet service providers.)

- If you forget your i-mode password, you will need to take the FOMA terminal and a form of identification to show that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.

### NOTE

- To prevent improper use of your FOMA terminal, you should change your FOMA terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code and i-mode password to a number of your choice after subscribing.  
Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Avoid using readily predictable numbers (e.g. the last 4 digits of your phone number) and take great care not to disclose your security codes to others.

<Change security code>

## Changing Your Security Code



Default setting  
0000 (4 zeros)

- To change your security code from the "Initial setting" (P.46), you need not press "Lock/Security" > "Change security code" in step 1.

**1** > "Lock/Security" > "Change security code" > Enter your security code > Enter new 4-8 digit i-mode security code > Select "Yes"

### NOTE

- The setting in this function changes the security code used for the FOMA terminal functions.

# Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF	PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros)
-----------------	---	---------------------------

The PIN1 code is a 4-to-8-digit number that you enter when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM).  
 The PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit number that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access or for resetting total call charges. It is used when using Client certificate (Issue of user certificate to use FirstPass), connecting to FirstPass supporting site or resetting total call charges.

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1 code entry set are recorded to FOMA card (UIM). When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use your PIN codes. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- Your FOMA contract (customer copy) gives you your UIM unlock code. The PIN unlock code is an 8-digit number that will unlock a locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PIN unlock code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked. Keep your FOMA contract (customer copy) in a safe place to ensure that you do not lose it.
- If you forget your PIN unlock code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you will need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification to show that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

<When you turn the FOMA terminal on>



<User certificate operations>

<Connection to a FirstPass compliant site>



## Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code number

- To change your PIN1 code, select "ON" in "PIN1 code entry set".

- 1 "Lock/Security" ► "PIN setting" ► Enter your security code

The "PIN setting screen" appears.  
 Security code → P.140



- 2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Change PIN1 code	►Enter 4 to 8-digit PIN1 code currently set►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN1 code►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN1 code again Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	►Enter 4 to 8-digit PIN2 code currently set►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN2 code►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN2 code again Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	You can set PIN1 code to be input when you turn the FOMA terminal on.

## Entering your PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is turned on

When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", the Enter PIN1 code screen appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

### 1 Turn the FOMA terminal on

### 2 Enter 4 - 8-digit PIN1 code



If the PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.

## Release PIN lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row when you need to enter PIN code, a message appears notifying you that the respective PIN1 or PIN2 code has been locked and the Enter PUK code display then appears. If this occurs, you must unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code and then set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

- For more information on your PIN unlock code, refer to the FOMA terminal contract (customer copy) that you received when you subscribed to the FOMA terminal.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

### 1 Enter 8-digit PUK code



### 2 Enter a new 4 - 8-digit PIN1 code

### 3 Enter the new PIN1 code again

#### NOTE

- You can still make emergency calls (to 110, 119 or 118) while you are entering your PIN unlock code.

## Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Ref. page
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	All lock/Remote all lock	P.143
To prevent others from viewing data in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule"	Secret mode/Secret only mode	P.145
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	PIM lock	P.147
To prevent inadvertent use of the side keys	Side keys guard	P.148
To prevent private calls	Keypad dial lock	P.148
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Record display set	P.149
To use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice or videophone calls	Self mode	P.153
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	P.324

# Preventing Others From Using Your Terminal

Default setting  
Release

You can set All lock either using the FOMA terminal or remotely.

- When All lock is applied, none of the functions can be used except for the following:
  - Turning the FOMA on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118).
  - Canceling All lock
  - Receiving remote observation calls
- Setting All lock sets "IC Card lock" to "ON", which inactivates IC Card functions. You cannot set/release "IC Card lock" with All lock set.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel All lock.
- You cannot answer a call while All lock is on.

## Using the FOMA terminal to set All lock

- 1   "Lock/Security" ▶ "All lock" ▶ Enter your security code



All lock is set and "All lock", "  ", and "  " appear on the screen.  
Security code → P.140

## Setting Remote all lock



Default setting	Remote all lock: OFF	Monitoring (minutes): 3	Recv. calls (times): 5
-----------------	----------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal from a pay phone or other phone.

- Remote all lock allows you to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal when it receives the number of missed calls set in "Received calls (times)" from the phone number set in "Accept phone No." or from public phone within the time set in "Monitoring (minutes)".
- Remote all lock can be set with voice or videophone calls.
- You need to notify the caller ID if you call from the number set in "Accept phone number".
- Calls received during another call (including calls received during a call when "Call waiting" is activated) do not trigger the start of the monitoring time and are not counted as received calls.

- 1   "Lock/Security" ▶ "Remote all lock" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "ON" ▶ "Accept phone No."

"Store accept phone No. screen" appears.  
Security code → P.140

- 2 " <Not recorded> " ▶ Enter phone number ▶  (Finish)

- To change the currently stored accept phone number
  - ▶ Choose the Accept phone No. stored setting
  - You can store up to 3 accept phone numbers.



Function menu → P.144

- 3 "Monitoring" ▶ Enter the monitoring time (01-10 minutes)

Sets the monitoring period during which Remote all lock can be set once a call from the accept phone number has been missed.

Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To use the time already displayed, just press .

- 4 "Received calls" ▶ Enter the Received calls (03-10 times)

Sets the number of calls from the accept phone number that will set the remote all lock function.  
Enter a 2-digit number as the number of calls. To set the number currently shown, just press .

- 5  (Finish)

## Function menu (store accept phone No. screen)

**1** “Store accept phone No. screen” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Look-up address</b>	Make inputs by referring to “Phonebook”, “Dialed calls”, and “Received calls”.	
	<b>Phonebook</b>	“Making a Call From the Phonebook” → P.101
	<b>Dialed calls</b>	“Dialing a Previously Dialed Number” → P.54
	<b>Received calls</b>	“Using the Received Calls” → P.65
<b>Pay phone</b>	Sets calls from a pay phone as the accept phone number. “Pay phone” is displayed as the accept phone number.	
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted Accept phone No. If there are no accept phone numbers stored, the Remote all lock function is set to “OFF”.	
<b>Delete all</b>	Deletes all the accept phone numbers. The Remote all lock function is set to “OFF”.	

## Setting All lock remotely

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal by calling the FOMA terminal by using a voice call or videophone call from a phone set as a “Accept phone No.”

- Set “Remote all lock” to “ON” beforehand.
- All lock that has been set remotely can be released as described in “Using the FOMA terminal to release All lock”. → P.145
- Releasing All lock does not release Remote all lock.
- When there are received calls from more than one registered Accept phone No., calls from the first received registered Accept phone No. are counted as Received calls.

**1** Call the FOMA terminal from a phone number set as an “Accept phone No.”

**2** Confirm the call tone and then hang up (missed call)

Repeat steps 1 and 2 within the time set in “Monitoring (minutes)” until you have logged the total number of missed calls set in “Recv. calls (times)”.

**3** Listen to the answer message and then hang up

All lock is set on the FOMA terminal.

### NOTE

- When the phone number set as an “Accept phone No.” or a pay phone is set in “Call rejection”, calls from that number are still counted as calls in Remote all lock.
- If you manually reject a call from the accept phone number or forward the call to the Voice Mail Service Center or the call forwarding number, it is still counted as a call in Remote all lock.
- If the FOMA terminal is turned off or a call from the accept phone number is answered on the FOMA terminal, the received call count is reset.
- Remote all lock can also be set when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.
- All lock cannot be released remotely.

## Setting All lock

- While All lock is set, you cannot make/receive a voice or videophone call.
- While All lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive voice or videophone calls. Once you release All lock, the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- While All lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is reached. Once you release All lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- While All lock is set, you can still use automatic answering to respond to Message Request/Free, i-mode mail, SMS or chat mail, but a screen does not appear for incoming call or call results. Once you release All lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the standby screen.
- If there are desktop icons pasted into the screen, setting All lock removes the icons from the display. When you release All lock, the icons reappear.
- IC card functions are not available while All lock is set.

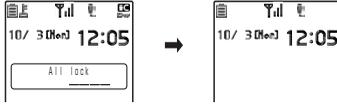
## Using the FOMA terminal to release All lock

- If you fail to release All lock 5 times in a row, the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

### 1 Enter your security code on All lock setting screen▶

All lock is released, and “” and “” disappear from the screen.

Security code → P.140



#### NOTE

- Releasing All lock does not erase “” if IC Card lock is set.
- Even if an incorrect security code is input while releasing All lock, no error message appears. Press  and input a correct security code again.

<Secret mode/Secret only mode>

## Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: OFF Secret only mode: OFF
-----------------	--

This function allows you to prevent others from accessing “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” while the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.

In Secret mode, you can retrieve all the data stored in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule”, including secret data. Secret only mode allows you to retrieve only those “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries that are stored as secret data.

- If you receive a voice or videophone call in Secret or Secret only mode, the current mode is cancelled.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off cancels Secret or Secret only mode.

## Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data



- The procedures for using the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” in Secret or Secret only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

### 1 ▶ ▶ “Lock/Security”▶ “Secret mode”▶ Enter your security code



Secret mode is set and “” appears on the screen. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, “” appears.

Security code → P.140

#### ■ To cancel Secret mode



Secret mode is cancelled and “” disappears from the screen.

### 2 Store the information in the “Phonebook” or “Schedule”

The entry is stored as secret data.

Adding information to the phonebook → P.97

Adding information to your schedule → P.426

1



“Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret only mode” ▶ Enter your security code



Secret only mode is set, “S” flashes on the screen and the number of entries stored as secret data is displayed. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, “D/S” blinks. The standby screen reappears in about 2 seconds.

Security code → P.140

#### ■ To cancel Secret only mode



Secret only mode is cancelled and “S” disappears from the screen.

2

## Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook → P.101

Checking your schedule → P.428

### NOTE

- “S” flashes if you display “Phone number” or “Schedule” in Secret mode or in Secret only mode.
- “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved, modified, deleted or referred in Secret or Secret only mode. When the FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of schedule events stored as secret data by an alarm, but no alarm message is displayed.
- If a “Phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “Two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- If the caller of the incoming call is stored as secret data and notifies the caller ID, the number is displayed. Even if the Secret mode or Secret only mode is released, the number is stored in “Received calls”, but the name is not displayed. Setting Secret mode or Secret only mode displays the name.
- If the Secret mode or Secret only mode is released when you receive mail, not the name but the mail address is displayed. The mail address is not stored in “Received address”.
- The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
  - Automatic display → P.112
  - Restrictions → P.150
  - Utilities → P.108
- If you modify your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” in Secret mode, the modified data becomes secret. Even if you only modify 1 phone number or e-mail address in Secret mode, all the items stored under the modified memory number become secret data.
- Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when you press , when you make a call, or when you receive a call even if you are unable to answer the call. You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret only mode by pressing ▶ ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret mode” or ▶ ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret only mode”.
- If “All lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, releasing “All lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- If you press or in Secret mode or Secret only mode, the FOMA terminal reverts to the standby screen without dialing a call and Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled.
- If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, while viewing the schedule or while viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret only mode, Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled and when you return to the phonebook or schedule display and resume the procedure you were using, the security code entry display appears. When you enter your security code, Secret mode or Secret only mode is set and you can then continue the procedure.
- When you make a call by retrieving secret data, it is not recorded in the “Dialed calls” or “Redial”.

## Changing secret data back to normal data

In Secret or Secret only mode, retrieve the phonebook entry or scheduled event that you want to make non-secret.

Searching the phonebook → P.101

Checking your schedule → P.428

**<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>**

### 1 “Phonebook detail screen” (P.103) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the flashing “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

#### ■ Scheduled events

▶ “Schedule list screen” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Release secret”

The flashing “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

“Function menu (Schedule list screen)” → P.429

<PIM lock>

## Hiding Your Personal Information

Default setting  
Release

Set this function to lock access to FOMA terminal features such as the phonebook, schedule, mail, camera and i-motion so as to prevent other people from viewing, altering or adding new personal information and from changing the FOMA terminal's settings. Once PIM lock is set, all FOMA terminal operations are disabled except for procedures such as viewing pre-installed data, menu operations and incoming and outgoing calls that do not affect stored data.

● Turning off the power does not cancel the PIM lock.

● Setting the PIM lock deletes all the data from “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address”. However, the phone numbers in “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” and “Redial” or the mail addresses in “Received address” and “Sent address” that are stored after setting the PIM lock remain undeleted.

### 1 (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “PIM lock” ▶ Enter your security code



PIM lock is set and “” appears on the screen. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, “” appears.

Security code → P.140

#### ■ Releasing PIM lock

▶ Repeat step 1

PIM lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.

### NOTE

- You cannot delete desktop icons while PIM lock is set. Desktop icons that are not displayed while PIM lock is set, such as “New mail”, “Missed alarm”, “Phone number”, “URL” and “Email address”, reappear when PIM lock is released.
- When PIM lock is set, you cannot play or view i-motion, Chara-den characters or My Picture files or melodies that were not pre-installed. If you set data of this sort that cannot be played or viewed as a ring tone or as the standby screen, the PIM lock uses the default settings while PIM lock is set. If you have set the calendar in the standby screen, the calendar is displayed, but the schedule function is not activated. Also, if you have selected “Background” and set an image that cannot be displayed, the FOMA terminal uses the “No background” screen.
- While PIM lock is set, the substitute image sent to the other party during a videophone call is the “Pre-installed” alternate image.
- While PIM lock is set, you cannot check for “Missed calls” or “New mail” by pressing  (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- If you set “All lock” while PIM lock is set, “” is replaced by “”.
- While PIM lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is reached. Also, no alarm notification is given even if the upper limit specified at “Notify cost limit” is exceeded. Once you release PIM lock, the “Missed alarm” and “Notify cost limit” desktop icons appear on the standby screen.
- While PIM lock is set, you can still use automatic answering to respond to Message Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS, but a screen does not appear for incoming call or call results. Once you release PIM lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the standby screen.

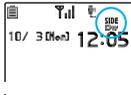
# Disabling the Side Keys

Default setting  
OFF

This function allows you to disable the FOMA terminal's side keys to prevent the keys from being accidentally pressed when the FOMA terminal is folded and put in a bag, etc.

- In the situations listed below, the side keys are enabled regardless of the setting specified here. However,
  - holding down for 1 second or longer with the FOMA terminal folded does not activate the camera.
  - When the FOMA terminal is unfolded
  - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal
  - When a PC or similar device is connected to the external connection port and "" or "" is shown on the display.

## 1 (1 second or longer)



The side keys are disabled (when the FOMA terminal is folded) and "**SIDE**" appears on the screen.

### ■ To enable the side keys when the FOMA terminal is folded

- ▶ Repeat step 1
- The "**SIDE**" icon disappears.

# Locking the Keypad

Default setting  
Release

This function prohibits anyone from making voice or videophone calls by dialing a phone number or sending i-mode mail and SMS by using dial keys. This means that calls can only be made using "Phonebook" entries stored before the keypad is locked or using the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" entries logged after the keypad was locked.

In situations where the FOMA terminal is being used for business purposes for example, you can prevent private calls or mail by storing the required work numbers and mail addresses in the "Phonebook" beforehand and then setting this function.

- While the keypad is locked, you cannot use the following functions or procedures to make voice or videophone calls, compose i-mode mail or write SMS:
  - Keypad entry
  - Received calls
  - Received address
  - Mail member
  - Desktop icons
  - Access reader
  - Bar code reader
  - Recorded message playback
- The following are not possible while the keypad is locked:
  - Adding, editing or deleting phonebook entries
  - Using the "Phone To", "AV Phone To" and "Mail To" functions
  - Sending and receiving phonebook data using infrared data communication
  - Copying and deleting phonebook entries using "UIM operation"
  - Importing phonebook entries from a miniSD memory card
  - Sending the AT command
- Locking the keypad deletes all pre-existing entries in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address". However, all entries logged in those records after the keypad is locked are retained. If the FOMA terminal is set to save the address, subject and message for mail, the address is deleted and the message and subject are retained. If the FOMA terminal is set to save only the address, the mail is deleted.
- Setting this function deletes chat group members.

## 1 "Lock/Security" ▶ "Keypad dial lock" ▶ Enter your security code



Keypad dial lock is set and "**D**" appears on the screen. If "Secret" or "Secret only" mode is set at the same time, "**D/S**" appears. If "PM lock" is set at the same time, "**D/P**" appears.

Security code → P.140

### ■ Releasing Keypad dial lock

- ▶ Repeat step 1
- The "**D**" disappears from the screen.

#### NOTE

- You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the keypad is locked.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

# Setting the Redial and Received Calls Displays

Default setting

Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON

You can use this function to prevent the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address” from being displayed. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls.

1



“Other settings”▶“Record display set”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Security code → P.140

Item	Description
Received calls	Specifies the display setting for the Received calls. Select “OFF” not to display the history.
Redial/Dialed calls	Specifies the display setting for the Redial or Dialed calls. Select “OFF” not to display the history.

## NOTE

- Even when “Received calls” is set to “OFF”, the “Missed calls” or “New mail” icon still appears on the standby screen and on the image display when you have missed a call or mail. However, when you try to view the “Received calls” record from the “Missed call” desktop icon on the standby screen, a message appears notifying you that record display is set to “OFF”. In this case, the desktop icon remains on the screen. Pressing (Home) with the FOMA terminal folded does not display “Missed call” (P.31) but “New mail” (P.31). To erase the “Missed call” and “New mail” desktop icons, hold down for one second or longer.
- You cannot play recorded messages when “Received calls” record display is set to “OFF”.

# Preventing Unwanted Mail Display

Default setting  
No security

This function allows you to apply security measures to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft mailboxes or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Boxes or folders with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- The icon appears next to mailboxes with security set.
- For folders with security set, icons such as or appear before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for the Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address list or Received address list.

## Setting security for individual mailboxes

1



“Mail settings”▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

2

Use to select a checkbox (  )



The selected mailbox is ticked.  
To deselect the ticked mailbox, select it again.

3

After completing the settings, press (Finish)

## Setting security for individual folders

You can also set security for specific folders. Folders with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- 1 “Received folder list screen” (P.264) or “Sent folder list screen” (P.265) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Mail security” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

Security code → P.140

- To cancel the mail security  
▶ Repeat Step 1

### <Restrictions>

## Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting  
All OFF

- You can specify incoming or outgoing restrictions for up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
- You cannot set Restrictions for the UIM phonebook.
- Restrictions are only effective when the caller provides the caller ID. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with “Caller ID request” and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- In Restrictions you cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance for the same phone number, or Call forwarding and Voice mail for the same number.
- These settings cannot be used for phonebook entries stored in “Secret” or “Secret only” mode.
- If you set restrictions for the phone number and then modify or delete that phone number, the restrictions on the selected functions are released. However, setting the “Restrict dialing” restricts the phonebook editing itself, which prevents you from changing the phone number to release the restrict dialing.

## Setting restrictions on dialing and receiving for phone numbers

The same method is used to set restrictions on both dialing and receiving for phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

- 1 “Phonebook detail screen” (P.103) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Restrictions” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the function



A star (★) appears next to the selected function.  
Security code → P.140

### ■ To deselect a selected function

- ▶ Select the function with the star (★)

The function is deselected and the star (★) disappears.

### ■ To set restrictions on both dialing and reception for multiple phone numbers

- ▶ Press (CLR) to return to the phonebook detail screen ▶ Use (Globe icon) to display the desired phone number ▶ Repeat step 1

Once you press (END) to return to the standby screen, you can no longer add further restrictions. To add more restrictions, lift the restrictions that have already been set for the phone number and then set the restrictions again including the unrestricted phone number.

### NOTE

#### <Restrict dialing>

- You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the Restrict dialing is set.
- Setting Restrict dialing prevents you from dialing using all the histories of dialed calls or received calls including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot call numbers other than the specified ones, add to or edit phonebook, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate phonebook by “UIM operation”.
- Setting Restrict dialing deletes histories of Redial/Dialed calls and Sent address list that have been stored before setting. However, you can dial or send mails using histories of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after setting.
- To use “Automatic disp” at the same time as Restrict dialing, set this function for phonebook entries for which “Automatic disp” has already been set.
- Only numbers specified on “Restrict dialing” is displayed in the phonebook.

#### <Call rejection/Call acceptance>

- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the settings of these functions.
- Setting “PIM lock” disables the Call rejection and Call acceptance functions.

**NOTE**

- If you receive a call from a number that is specified on Call rejection or from a number that is not specified on Call acceptance, the number is recorded as "Missed calls" in the call history and the "Missed call" desk top icon is displayed on the standby screen.
  - If you receive a call from a phone number for which Call rejection is set or from a phone number other than the number for which Call acceptance is set, the call is rejected even when the "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" services are "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding services" is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of signal range, the call is handled by the "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding service". When this happens, the phone number for the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" and is not displayed on the stand-by screen as a "Missed call" desktop icon.
  - You can still make calls when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.
- <Call forwarding/Voice mail>**
- Setting "PIM lock" disables Specific call forwarding and Specific voice mail.
  - If you receive a call from the specified phone number, the FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the designated call forwarding number or connected to the Voice mail service center.
  - If no call forwarding number is designated or if you have not subscribed to the "Call forwarding" or "Voice mail", calls from the specified phone number are handled as missed calls.

**Checking the restriction settings**



Use this procedure to check the function settings for a phone number for which "Restrictions" is set. You can also lift the restrictions while checking them.

- 1** **"Restrictions" ▶ Enter your security code**
- The "Restrictions screen" appears.  
Security code → P.140



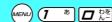
Phonebook restrictions  
Function menu ▶ P.151

**Function menu (Restrictions screen)**

- 1** **"Restrictions screen" ▶ Select a function with a star (★) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Check settings</b>	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
<b>Release</b>	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

**<Call setting w/o ID>**



**Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers**

Default setting  
Accept all/Same as ring tone

This function allows you to accept or reject calls and videophone calls from callers who do not provide the caller ID based on the reason given.

- 1** **"Lock/Security" ▶ "Call setting w/o ID" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item:**
- Security code → P.140

Item	Description
<b>Not supported</b>	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to provide the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or from pay phones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may also provide caller IDs in some cases.
<b>Accept</b>	Accepts received calls. For the ring tone for a receiving call in Not supported, selects one from "Same as ring tone", "Melody", "I-motion", "Voice announce", "Random melody", and "OFF". → P.114 When selecting "Same as ring tone", the ring tone that is set for "Phone" in "Select ring tone" is used.
<b>Reject</b>	Rejects received calls.

Item	Description	
<b>Payphone</b>	Specifies whether to accept calls dialed from pay phones.	
	<b>Accept</b>	Accepts received calls. For the ring tone for a receiving call from a pay phone, selects one from "Same as ring tone", "Melody", "i-motion", "Voice announce", "Random melody", and "OFF". → P.114 When selecting "Same as ring tone", the ring tone that is set for "Phone" in "Select ring tone" is used.
	<b>Reject</b>	Rejects received calls.
<b>User unset</b>	Specifies whether to accept calls made by callers who withhold their caller IDs.	
	<b>Accept</b>	Accepts received calls. For the ring tone for a receiving call in User unset, selects one from "Same as ring tone", "Melody", "i-motion", "Voice announce", "Random melody", and "OFF". → P.114 When selecting "Same as ring tone", the ring tone that is set for "Phone" in "Select ring tone" is used.
	<b>Reject</b>	Rejects received calls.

**NOTE**

- The ring tone you select with this function is the ring tone for a no caller ID voice phone call. If you receive a video-phone call with no caller ID, the ring tone is the same as that specified in "Video-phone" for "Select ring tone".
- If you select "Reject", the FOMA terminal displays the "Missed call" icon when you receive a call without playing the ring tone. (The caller hears the busy tone.)
- Even if you have activated "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", calls from callers set to "Reject" who give User unset as the reason for withholding their caller ID are not connected to the respective services. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the i-mode service area or if the ringing time set for "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is enabled.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

## &lt;Ringing time&gt;

**Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook**

Default setting

Set mute seconds: 0 Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the period for the ring tone for a voice or videophone call of which the caller is not stored in the phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally dialing numbers, such as nuisance calls that only ring for a short period from Received calls record.

- "Set mute seconds" also works at time of incoming voice or videophone call without caller ID or when there is another incoming call during a videophone.
- You cannot set "Set mute seconds" when "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject". → P.153

**1**

▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Ringing time" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Set mute seconds</b>	▶ Enter a mute time (00 to 99 seconds) Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, just press
<b>Missed calls display</b>	Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the missed calls record.

**NOTE**

- Ringing operations include playing the ring tone, vibrating, lighting/flashing the incoming call lamp or displaying the incoming on the image display.
- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the mute time is longer than the ringing time for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the mute time. The same applies to the ringing times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.
- When PIM is locked, no ring tone sounds until the seconds set in "Set mute seconds" elapse even if the incoming call is one from a caller registered in the phonebook.

## Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting  
Accept

Use this procedure to specify whether the FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- Restrictions are only effective when the caller provides the caller ID. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" when "Set mute seconds" or "Ringing time" is set to other than 0 seconds. → P.152

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Reject unknown" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Reject"

Security code → P.140

- To receive a call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook  
▶ "Accept"

### NOTE

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If another number is set to "Call acceptance" in "Restrictions", you cannot receive a call even if "Reject unknown" is set to "Accept".
- When "Reject" is selected in this function and you receive a call from a phone number that is not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a "Missed call" in the "Received calls" and the "Missed call" icon appears on the standby screen. Even if you have activated "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", the caller hears the tone. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the i-mode service area or if the ringing time set for "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the tone and is connected to the "Voice mail service center" or the forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number for the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" and is not displayed on the standby screen as a "Missed call" desktop icon.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.
- While the PIM is locked, you cannot reject a call from the caller who is not stored in the phonebook.

## Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc.

Default setting  
Release

Use this function so that the FOMA terminal cannot make or receive voice or videophone calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mail. This is useful when you want to use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice or videophone calls.

- If you receive a voice or videophone call when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, the caller hears a message that the FOMA terminal is out of signal range or is turned off. If you are using the "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" services, calls are handled in the same way as if the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- While in Self mode, the FOMA terminal does not use desktop icons such as "Missed call" to notify you of calls.
- Data communication using external equipment or infrared communication is not possible in Self mode. However, you can read and write the IC Card data by using Mobile Wallet i-appli.
- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode. Note that making a voice call at an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Self mode" ▶ "YES" ▶

Self mode is set and "self" appears on the screen.

- To cancel Self mode

▶ Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and "self" disappears from the screen.

### NOTE

- Message Request/Free and i-mode mail sent in Self mode are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.

## Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this document, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Services	Ref. page
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC Card lock	P.324
To avoid "nuisance phone calls" such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance call barring	P.460
To ignore calls that has no caller ID	Caller ID request	P.461
To send data securely by using the user certificate service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	P.224
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software update	P.555
To protect the FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	P.559
To accept only necessary i-mode mail	Receive option	P.257
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual"
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept mail from specified domain only	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To accept/reject mail only from the specified sender	Receive Selected Mail Reject Selected Mail	
To accept/reject i-mode mail only	Receive only i-mode mail Reject only i-mode mail	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject short messages (SMS)	Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings	
To check the status of the mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To restrict the size of received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

### NOTE

● Be careful when returning calls from numbers you do not know. In particular sending your caller ID to the other unknown party may cause unnecessary problems.

#### <Nuisance call barring priority sequence>

● Priority is assigned when nuisance call barring function is set at the same time. ① has the highest priority.

- ① Nuisance call barring service      ② Call rejection  
③ Reject unknown or Ringing time/Call setting w/o ID

# ● Camera

Before Using the Camera .....		156
Shooting Still Images .....	<b>Still Images</b>	162
Shooting Movies .....	<b>Movie mode</b>	171
Changing the Shooting Settings .....		177
Using the Bar Code Reader .....	<b>Bar code reader</b>	179
Scanning Text .....	<b>Access reader</b>	182

## Before Using the Camera

You can use the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot photos (still images) and movies.

- The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. → P.378
- You can use the following functions in shooting:
  - "Using the zoom" → P.177
  - "Using the auto timer" → P.178
  - "Turning on the light" → P.178
- You can use the still images or movies you shot as follows:
  - "Displaying Still Images" → P.337
  - "Editing Images" → P.350
  - "Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.382
  - "Printing Stored Images" → P.411
  - "Playing Movies/i-motion" → P.355
  - "Attaching to i-mode mail" → P.250

## Using the camera

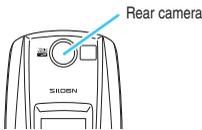
To switch between the front and rear cameras, press  (FUNC) when the screen is the shooting, select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu, and press .

### Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking pictures of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it is displayed on the screen). The Close-up can be shot by Rear camera.

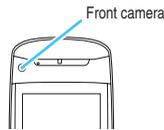
→ P.156

You can also shoot the still images by using Auto Focus. → P.162



### Front camera

Use this camera to take a picture of yourself. The image is displayed as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display: photographed as the mirror images).



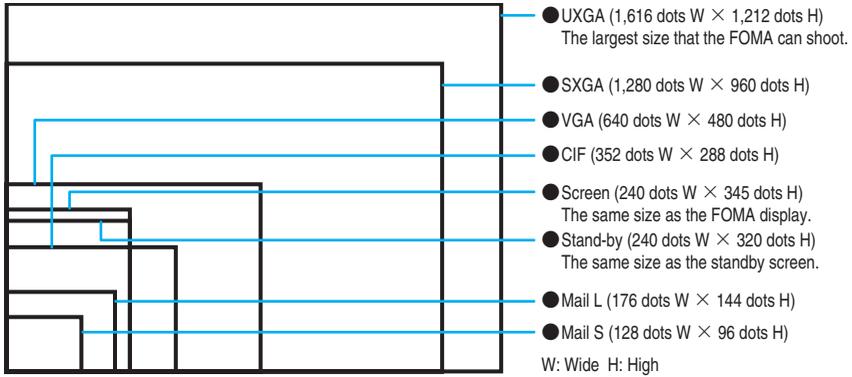
- The camera of your FOMA terminal uses a CCD imaging element, based on the extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color stains may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shot in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens could prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this could damage the lens.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long time.
- Do not leave the camera under the direct sunlight for a long time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. This could lead to the discoloration of the photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.

## Close-up

- To take a close-up photo, select "Close-up" from "Photo mode" (P.174) in "Image quality". The camera is focused on an object 6 cm to 8 cm away from the rear lens.
- Using Access reader or Bar code reader automatically sets "Close-up" to the shooting mode.

## Image size

- The following shows the sizes of images that the FOMA terminal can shoot. Choose the size suiting the purpose:



\* : The image sizes framed above are not the actual sizes.

## Shooting still images

- Up to 720 still images can be saved. This may vary by the image size settings or the number of the downloaded images.
- The following table shows the image sizes and the approximate numbers of images that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		Storage setting	Maximum number of images		
	Rear camera	Front camera		FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
					16M bytes	32M bytes
<b>UXGA</b> (1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 23	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 11	Approx. 44	Approx. 94
<b>SXGA</b> (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 23	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 11	Approx. 44	Approx. 94
<b>VGA</b> (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Normal	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
<b>CIF</b> (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 90	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
<b>Screen</b> (240 dots wide × 345 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 90	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
<b>Stand-by</b> (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 90	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
<b>Mail (L)</b> (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 180	Approx. 445	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 240	Approx. 890	Approx. 1890

Image size	Camera		Storage setting	Maximum number of images		
	Rear camera	Front camera		FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
					16M bytes	32M bytes
<b>Mail (S)</b> (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 180	Approx. 445	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 240	Approx. 890	Approx. 1890

\* : The FOMA terminal defines UXGA as 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high and SXGA as 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high.

## Shooting movies

- Up to 100 movies can be saved. This may vary by the image size settings or the number of the downloaded i-motion.
- The default length of movie shooting is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies by the factors such as the types of objects.
- The maximum number of movies that can be stored varies by the shooting lengths.
- The following table shows the movie sizes and the approximate numbers of movies that can be stored:

Image size	File size setting	Movie type set	Maximum number of movies		
			FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
				16M bytes	32M bytes
<b>Large</b> (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	Restricted(Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted(Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	-	Approx. 1	1
		Video	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 2
		Voice	-	Approx. 2	Approx. 5
<b>Small</b> (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	Restricted(Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted(Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 2
		Video	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 2
		Voice	-	Approx. 2	Approx. 5

\* : The maximum shooting time is defined as 60 minutes.

## Notes on using the camera

### Notes on shooting

- The color tones and brightness levels in still images and movies shot by the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual object.
- If you try to shoot directly the sun or a lamp, the image may appear dark or distorted.
- Take care that your fingers, hair, or the camera strap do not cover the lens when you shoot.
- The shooting uses a large amount of the battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot when the battery is low.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

- If any of the events listed below occurs while you are shooting a movie or taking consecutive photos, your FOMA terminal stops shooting and shows the respective screen. Once you exit the screen, the camera screen reappears so that you can save the images or movies shot before you received the call or alarm, etc. If one of these events occurs while you are adjusting the camera zoom or brightness, the adjusted settings are fixed and the camera menu reappears. If the auto timer is running when the event occurs, the auto timer is canceled:
  - Voice/videophone call or 64K data incoming
  - Alarm clock, scheduled event or ToDo alarm posted
  - Another function called
- Note the following:
  - If you receive mail or a Message Request/Free while using the camera (including while the shooting screen is displayed), the FOMA terminal continues shooting and does not display the Receiving results screen, regardless of the settings of "Receiving display" (P.281).
  - Select "Operation preferred" from "Alarm setting" (P.420) to ensure that the FOMA terminal continues operating and does not stop shooting, changing the camera settings or operating the auto timer when it is time to post a scheduled alarm.
- Even if the FOMA terminal is in "Manner mode" or in "Driving mode", the FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound, Auto Timer tone and AF lock sound. Even if "Earphone" is selected in the "Earphone" settings and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- Moving the FOMA terminal while you are shooting could blur the image. Hold the FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move, or use the Auto Timer while you are shooting. Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Now processing" message is displayed immediately after shooting a still image.
- When you shoot a still image, the FOMA terminal captures the image after you press . After you hear the shutter sound, keep the FOMA terminal steady until it finishes capturing the image and displays the checking screen or while the "Now processing" message is displayed.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the Camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- To save still images or movies you shot to the miniSD memory card, select "miniSD" in "Select to save" (P.165, 173). Furthermore, specify the destination folder on the miniSD memory card in "Select storage" (P.391).
- Setting "Auto save set" (P.164, 173) to "ON" enables you to automatically save the shots to the destination folder specified in "Select to save" without displaying the shooting check screen.
- You cannot run the Camera while "PIM lock" is set.

### ■ Copyright Information

- Take care not to infringe on the copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded using the FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe on the portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens display the icons of the Camera settings.



Function	Icon	Description	Reference page
① Auto focus change		"ON" is set to "AF change".	P.162
		"OFF" is set to "AF change".	
② Focus frame		When "ON" is set to AF change, the Auto focus frame changes as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· White: Before focusing</li> <li>· Dotted white: Focusing</li> <li>· Green: Focused</li> <li>· Dotted red: Focusing failed</li> </ul>	P.163
③ AF operation guidance		Displays the guide to AF change and Focus lock.	P.163
④ Shooting menu		Shows the settings of the shooting. You can call the functions to specify the settings by pressing  or .	P.161
⑤ Zoom		Shows the zoom settings. When the zoom arrows (, ) are displayed, you can zoom in or out by pressing  or .	P.177
⑥ Auto timer		Shows that the auto timer is set.	P.178
⑦ Storage setting		Shoots movies in "Normal" as the image quality.	P.172
		Shoots movies in "Fine mode".	
		Shoots movies in "Long dur. mode".	
		Shoots movies in "Move mode".	
⑧ Movie type set		Shoots movies with video and voice.	P.172
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	
⑨ Shooting status		Shows that the movie is being shot.	P.171
		Shows that the movie shooting is in standby mode.	
⑩ Remaining photography time		Shows the time left (minutes:seconds).	

## ● Guide to the shooting menu

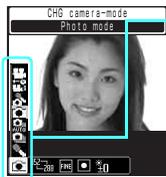
You can change the settings of the following useful functions by using the shooting menu.

- Pressing or displays the shooting menu.
- Press (FUNC) and select "Help", or press , and you can check the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings that can be changed from the shooting menu can also be changed from the function menu.

### 1 Shooting screen Use to change the following settings

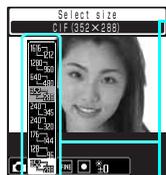
Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.

Items that can be selected in the shooting menu vary according to camera mode.



CHG camera-mode

- Movie mode . . . . . Shoots a video clip.
- Chance capture . . . . . Records a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting.
- Picture voice . . . . . Records a voice to add to a still image you shot.
- Photo mode . . . . . Shoots a still image.
- A-Continuous mode . . . . . Shoots still images continuously at the same time.
- M-Continuous mode . . . . . Shoots still images continuously, one image at a time.
- Voice mode . . . . . Records voice only.  
(When the camera launches: Photo mode)



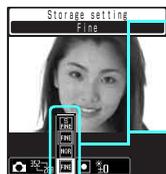
Select size  
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- UXGA . . . . . Shoots in UXGA (1,616 × 1,212).
- SXGA . . . . . Shoots in SXGA (1,280 × 960).
- VGA . . . . . Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
- CIF . . . . . Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
- Screen . . . . . Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
- Stand-by . . . . . Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
- JAVA\* . . . . . Shoots in JAVA (240 × 240).
- Mail (L) . . . . . Shoots in Mail (L) (176 × 144).
- Mail (S) . . . . . Shoots in Mail (S) (128 × 96).

\*: Can be selected only when the camera is run by i-appli.  
(Default: CIF)

Select size  
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- Large . . . . . Shoots in Large size (176 × 144).
- Small . . . . . Shoots in Small size (128 × 96).  
(Default: Large)



Storage setting  
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Super Fine . . . . . Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine . . . . . Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal . . . . . Saves the shot as a small-sized file.  
(Default: Fine)

File size setting  
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- Restricted(Short) . . . . . Shoots up to 290K bytes as the file size.
- Restricted(Long) . . . . . Shoots up to 490K bytes as the file size.
- Local playback . . . . . Shoots up to 800K bytes as the file size.
- Long time . . . . . Shoots for a long time.  
(Default: Restricted(Short))

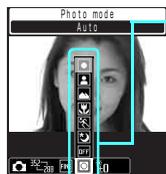
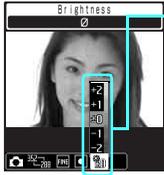
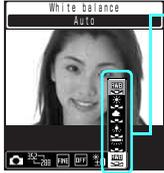


Photo mode  
(Photo mode)

- Auto . . . . . Selects the shooting mode automatically.
- Portrait . . . . . Is the shooting mode for people.
- Scenery . . . . . Is the shooting mode for scenery.
- Close-up . . . . . Is the shooting mode for close-up.  
→ P.156
- Sports mode . . . . . Is the shooting mode for moving objects.
- Night mode . . . . . Is the shooting mode for night view.
- OFF . . . . . Does not use any effects for shooting.  
(Default: Auto (Photo mode, continuous shooting)/  
Portrait (Movie mode))



**Brightness** —————  . . . . . Sets the Brightness of the shot  
(-2/-1/± 0/+1/+2).  
(When the camera launches: ± 0)



**White balance** —————  Auto . . . . . Automatically compensates the tone.  
Fine . . . . . Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.  
Cloudy . . . . Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.  
Light bulb . . Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescence.  
Fluorescent . . Is the mode suitable for shooting under the fluorescence.  
(Default: Auto)

## <Still image> Shooting Still Images

- Use the built-in camera to shoot any images.
- You can shoot with the FOMA terminal folded. → P.166
  - You can print the shots by connecting the FOMA terminal to your printer. → P.411
  - You can save the shots directly to the miniSD memory card.
  - You can automatically save the shots to the folder specified in advance.

### How to shoot a still image

- You can shoot the still images by using Auto Focus on the Rear camera.
- The focus is fixed for the Front camera.
  - You can shoot continuously with Auto Focus. → P.167
  - Press  to turn on/off Auto Focus when the screen is “Photo mode screen” (P.163).
  - Select the shooting method from the following three by switching between ON and OFF:

Method	Auto Focus	Description
<b>AF</b>	<b>ON</b>	When you release the shutter, the focus is automatically locked on the object in the center of the screen. → P.163 The center of the screen is focused.
<b>AF lock</b>		You manually lock the focus before releasing the shutter. → P.163 You can manually focus on the object and change the composition.
<b>Focus fixed</b>	<b>OFF</b>	Shoots without using Auto Focus. → P.163 You do not miss the shutter chance.

**NOTE**

- The ON/OFF settings of Auto Focus changed during the shooting are retained while the camera is run. Auto Focus is always ON when you launch the camera.
- Auto Focus is adjusted 10 cm or further away.
- Turn Auto Focus “OFF” if the object cannot be properly focused because:
  - It is dark
  - The object is poorly contrasted (there is little difference between bright and dark)
  - There are close objects and remote objects in the shooting area
  - There is a light or something in the shooting area
  - The object is moving
  - You are shaking the FOMA terminal

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## Shooting with the FOMA terminal opened <Shoot open>

### 1 When the screen is standby ▶ ▶ ▶

The "Photo mode screen" appears.

You can also run the "Photo mode screen" by holding down for one second or longer when the screen is Standby.

#### ■ To turn on/off Auto Focus



#### ■ To shoot with the FOMA terminal folded

"Shoot closed" → P.166



Function menu ▶ P.164

### 2 Point the camera at the object ▶ or

The focus frame turns into green when the focus is locked. Afterwards the image is shot.

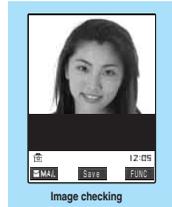
To shoot with AF lock → P.163

#### ■ To shoot with Focus fixed

▶ Set "OFF" to Auto Focus ▶ or

#### ■ To retake the shot

▶ ▶ "YES"



Function menu ▶ P.165

### 3

The shot is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.165).

## Shooting still images with AF lock

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163) ▶ Press to set Auto Focus to "ON"

Confirm that the auto focus icon is "". → P.160

### 2 Point the camera at the object ▶

Pressing again resets the focus lock. When the focus is locked, the Focus frame turns into green. You hear the AF lock sound.

### 3 or

The image is shot.

#### NOTE

- It may take some time to lock the focus. If the focus lock is failed, the FOMA terminal does not emit the AF lock sound, and the Focus frame is dotted red.
- The Photo mode screen can be displayed by following the steps below:
  - ▶ ▶ "Camera" ▶ "Photo mode"
- Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set the Display size to "Fit in display" and shoot an image in Mail (L) (176 × 144) or in Mail (S) (128 × 96), the image may look grainy.
- Do not remove miniSD memory card while you are saving to the miniSD memory card. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the shots.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during the file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you select miniSD from "Select to save" (P.164), turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.390).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- During the shooting, the incoming call lamp lights red. It flashes green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.



## NOTE

### <Shutter sound>

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound. However, if "ON" is selected for "VM tone" in "Original," the sound is played.

### <File restriction>

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

## ● Setting the file size for saving

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Storage setting" ▶ Select any item:

Can also be set from the shooting menu. → P.161

The sizes listed below are for images sent as mail. For saved images, add up to 5K bytes to the sizes below.

Image size Storage setting	UXGA (1,616 × 1,212)	VGA (640 × 480)	CIF (352 × 288)	Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	Mail (L) (176 × 144) Mail (S) (128 × 96) QCIF (176 × 144)* Small (117 × 96)*
	SXGA (1,280 × 960)				
<b>Super Fine</b>	ca 600 KB max.	ca 500 KB max.	ca 500 KB max.	ca 95 KB max.	ca 95 KB max.
<b>Fine (default)</b>	ca 500 KB max.	ca 95 KB max.	ca 50 KB max.	ca 50 KB max.	ca 15 KB max.
<b>Normal</b>	ca 300 KB max.	ca 50 KB max.	ca 35 KB max.	ca 35 KB max.	9,000 bytes max.

\* : Can be set for saving Chara-den as a still image. (P.371)

## Function menu (image checking screen)

### 1 Image checking screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Save</b>	The shot is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.164).
<b>Mirror save</b>	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.164).
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing an i-mode mail message with the still image attached" → P.171
<b>Edit image</b>	▶ <b>Edit the image</b> Adds a frame or effect to the image. "Editing Images" → P.350 You cannot edit an image larger than CIF (352 × 288).
<b>Set as display</b>	■ <b>To specify for screens such as standby, dialing or incoming call</b> ▶ <b>Select a screen</b> ▶ (FUNC) ■ <b>To specify for videophone-related screens (except VP Dialing or VP Calling)</b> ▶ <b>Select a screen</b> ▶ <b>Check the image</b> ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "YES" Sets the still image to the Standby screen, etc. You cannot set an image of SXGA (1,280 × 960) or larger, or VGA (640 × 480) image, the file size of which exceeds 100K bytes.
<b>Change frame</b>	Changing the frame → P.170
<b>Mirror display</b>	Changes the display to the Mirror display. If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.
<b>Display size</b>	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). Cannot be specified if the image size is neither Mail (L) (176 × 144) nor Mail (S) (128 × 96). <b>Actual size (default)</b>   Displays the image in the actual size. <b>Fit in display</b>   Enlarges the image to the display size.
<b>Select to save</b>	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved. <b>Phone (default)</b>   ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase. <b>miniSD</b>   Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.391).
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions. <b>File unrestricted (default)</b>   Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent. <b>File restricted</b>   Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.

Item	Description
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image to retake the shot.

## NOTE

## &lt;Compose message&gt;

- Pressing  (MAIL) when the screen is the image checking screen also enables you to compose i-mode mail with the still image attached.

## &lt;Edit image&gt;

- Selecting "Edit image" changes the display to the Normal display.

## &lt;Mirror display&gt;

- Images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

## &lt;File restriction&gt;

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

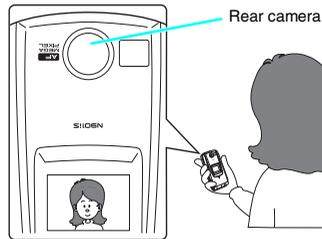
## Shooting with the FOMA terminal folded <Shoot folded>

While the screen is in the standby mode with the FOMA terminal folded, you can run the camera to shoot a still image.

- You cannot shoot in AF lock.
- If Side keys guard is ON, you cannot run the camera by pressing  (CAM) or use the light by pressing  (LIGHT).

Look at the picture on the right. Make sure not to turn the rear camera and the image display upside down but to place the rear camera upward.

You can check the shot on the image display.



### 1 Hold down (CAM) for one second or longer with the FOMA terminal folded

The camera runs in Photo mode. The image size is the one used when you shot last. Open the FOMA terminal to change the image size, zoom or brightness.

#### ■ To use the light



Turns on/off the light.

### 2 Point the camera at the object (CAM)

### 3 Open the FOMA terminal to check and save the shot in the same operation as described in "Shooting with the FOMA terminal opened" (P.163)

## NOTE

- You can also shoot if you fold the FOMA terminal when the shooting screen is displayed.
- Setting "ON" to "Auto save set" (P.164) enables the FOMA terminal to automatically save the shot without opening it. You can change the destination folder in "Select to save".
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or so.
- Setting "ON" to "Auto timer" (P.178) enables you to shoot in Auto timer with the FOMA terminal folded.
- The image is scaled down to fit the Image display.

# Shooting continuously <Continuous mode>

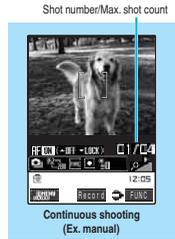
Default setting      Size: CIF (352 × 288)   Shot interval: 0.5 seconds   Shot number: 4

Continuous mode enables you to shoot a series of up to 20 consecutive still images. There are two types of Continuous mode: A-Continuous mode (Auto) and M-Continuous mode (Manual).

- A-Continuous mode enables you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots at the specified interval. Auto Focus can shoot only the first shot. The second shot or later is shot with the focus fixed.
- M-Continuous mode enables you to shoot by the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter. You can change the Auto Focus settings for each shot. ("Shooting Still Images" → P.162)
- CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L) (176 × 144) and Mail (S) (128 × 96) are available as the image size.
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation after putting into the Original animation.
- You cannot shoot continuously with the FOMA terminal folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the continuous shooting.

## 1 Photo mode screen (P.163) or or

- To turn on/off Auto Focus  
▶



Function menu → P.164

## 2 Point the camera at the object or

Locking the focus turns the focus frame into green. After the shooting, the "continuous shooting checking screen" appears displaying four of the shots.

- To shoot with AF lock  
"Shooting Still Images with AF lock" → P.163
- To shoot with Focus fixed  
▶ Press to set "OFF" to Auto Focus or

### ■ To stop the continuous shooting

- A-Continuous mode : → "NO"
- M-Continuous mode : →

The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

### ■ To select the image to save

- ▶ Use to select an image

The icon (check mark) is attached to the selected image.  
Repeat the step to select images.  
To deselect, select the image to cancel.

### ■ To check the images in detail

- ▶ Use to select an image (Detail)
- Use to change the image to check.
- To return to the list, press .
- To save the image displayed in detail, press .
- Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select to save" (P.164).



Function menu → P.168



Function menu → P.169

## 3 Select the saving method

"Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)" → P.168  
Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.164).  
After saving the image, the "continuous shooting checking screen" appears with the saved image removed.

### NOTE

- If CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is automatically fixed at four, which cannot be changed.
- If you receive a call during the continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen appears containing the images you shot up to interruption.

## NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card while you are saving to the miniSD memory card. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the shots.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during the file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you select "miniSD" from "Select to save" (P.164), turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- During the M-Continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights red each time you shoot. The lamp lights red during the A-Continuous mode. It flashes green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- If you automatically shoot strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.

## ● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

### 1 Continuous shooting screen (P.163) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Interval/Number" ▶ Select any item:

"Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5" are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L) (176 × 144) and Mail (S) (128 × 96).

Item	Description
Shot interval	Selects the shot interval among 0.5, 1.0 and 2.0 (seconds). Cannot be set for M-Continuous mode.
Shot number	▶ Enter the number of shots (2-digit) Sets the number of shots between 05 and 20 (5 to 20 shots). The maximum number of shots varies by the image size. Entering the 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots. To set the currently displayed number, press (OK).

### 2 Press (CLR) after changing the settings ▶ (CLR)

## NOTE

- If you change the image size from CIF (352 × 288) to another size, the Shot number is changed to 5.  
If you select CIF (352 × 288) as the image size when the Shot number is set to 5 or more, it is changed to 4.  
If you select Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320) as the image size when the Shot number is set to 11 or more, it is changed to 10.

## Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)

### 1 Continuous shooting checking screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Store selection	Saves the selected still image. ▶ "Save" or "Mirror save" Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.164).
Store all	Saves all the still images. ▶ "Save" or "Mirror save" Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.164).
Store all & anime	Saves all the still images you shot as the Original animation. ▶ "Save" or "Mirror save" ▶ Select the number of Original animation Saves the images to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.164). The images cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card.
Select this	Selects the highlighted still image with <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> attached.
Select all	Selects all the still images with <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> attached.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted still image. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disappears.
Release all	Deselects all the still images. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disappears.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Item	Description			
<b>Mirror display</b>	Changes the display to the Mirror display. If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.			
<b>Select to save</b>	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Phone</b> (default)</td> <td>▶ <b>Select a folder</b> The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>miniSD</b></td> <td>Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.391).</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Phone</b> (default)	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.	<b>miniSD</b>
<b>Phone</b> (default)	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.			
<b>miniSD</b>	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.391).			
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions for the selected still image.			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>File unrestricted</b> (default)</td> <td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>File restricted</b></td> <td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.	<b>File restricted</b>
<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.			
<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.			
<b>Restriction all</b>	Sets the file restrictions for all the still image you shot.			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>File unrestricted</b> (default)</td> <td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>File restricted</b></td> <td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.	<b>File restricted</b>
<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.			
<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.			
<b>Cancel</b>	Deletes all the photographed images to retake the shots.			

**NOTE****<Store all & anime>**

- You cannot select "Store all & anime" if only one image has been shot or if one or more of the photographed images have already been saved.
- You cannot save the shots to the miniSD memory card.

**<Mirror display>**

- Images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

**<File restriction>**

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

**Function menu (Detail checking screen)****1** Detail checking screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description			
<b>Save</b>	Saves the displayed still image.			
<b>Mirror save</b>	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.			
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing an i-mode mail message with the still image attached" → P.171			
<b>Mirror display</b>	Changes the display to the Mirror display. If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.			
<b>Display size</b>	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). Cannot be specified if the image size is neither Mail (L) (176 × 144) nor Mail (S) (128 × 96).			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Actual size</b> (default)</td> <td>Displays the image in the actual size.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Fit in display</b></td> <td>Enlarges the image to the display size.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Actual size</b> (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.	<b>Fit in display</b>
<b>Actual size</b> (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.			
<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the image to the display size.			
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions.			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>File unrestricted</b> (default)</td> <td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>File restricted</b></td> <td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.	<b>File restricted</b>
<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.			
<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.			

**NOTE****<Compose message>**

- Pressing (MAIL) when the screen is the detail checking also enables you to compose i-mode mail with the still image attached.

## NOTE

### <Mirror display>

- Images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

## Shooting framed images <Framed photography>

You can add a frame to the shot when the image size is CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L) (176 × 144) or Mail (S) (128 × 96).

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the preinstalled ones.
- The following are the five preinstalled frames:



### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163) ► (FUNC) ► "Select frame" ► Select a frame

- To cancel the framed photography  
► "OFF"

### 2 Point the camera at the object ► (Camera) or (Camera)

### 3 Check and save the shot in the same operation as described in "Shooting with the FOMA terminal opened" (P.163)

You can change the frame before saving the still image. → P.170

## NOTE

- You can check the selected frame by pressing (Play) on the Select frame screen.
- You can shoot the framed image with the FOMA terminal folded. The selected frame is displayed on the Image display.
- Framed images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the Normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.
- The frame of which size differs from that of the image cannot be selected.
- Exiting the camera removes the frame.

## Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image.

### 1 Frame shooting check screen ► (FUNC) ► "Change frame" ► Select a frame



Frame shooting check

You cannot deselect the frame.

### 2 Check the framed image ► (Camera)

The screen turns to the frame shooting check.

- To cancel the selected frame  
► (Cancel)

## NOTE

- Pressing (FUNC) on the checking screen to select "Set" or "Cancel" also sets or cancels the frame.

## ● Composing an i-mode mail message with the still image attached

If you compose message with the image of which size is Screen (240 × 345) or larger, select to send as it is or to resize the image.

If you compose message with the image of which size is Stand-by (240 × 320) or smaller, the selection screen is not displayed but the Compose message is displayed.

<Example: Select “Compose message” on the Image checking screen>

### 1 Image checking screen (P.163) ► (FUNC) ► “Compose message” ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Attach mail	Sends the photographed image in the current size without resizing.
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.

### 2 Compose the message

Composing and sending i-mode mail → P.235

#### NOTE

- If you attach an image of which size is 10,001 to 500K bytes, the image to send is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (P.164). However, it cannot be saved to the miniSD memory card.
- The image of which size exceeds 10,000 bytes is called large image. If you send a large image to the i-mode terminal, the image is converted to the size in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail when there are already 20 draft mails stored.

<Movie mode>

## Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot a movie with voice.

- You cannot shoot a movie with the FOMA terminal folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the movie shooting.
- If you set “Long time” to the “File size setting” and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the miniSD memory card and then the shooting is finished.
- The shooting time varies by the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot a video clip while you are talking on the phone.

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163) ► (MENU) or (CAM) ►

### 2 Point the camera at the object ► (FUNC) or (CAM)



Starts shooting.

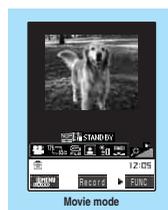
You can zoom in/out during the shooting.

You can check the approximate time left to shoot on the screen.

- If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size setting



The movie checking screen appears.



Function menu ► P.172

### 3 (FUNC) or (CAM) ► (CAM)

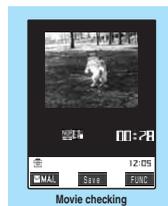
The shooting terminates and the “Movie checking screen” appears.

- To play the movie you shot

► (FUNC) ► “Play”

- To retake the shot

► (CAM) ► “YES”



Function menu ► P.175



Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.173).

#### NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card while you are saving to the miniSD memory card. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If you receive a call during the movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the movie shooting checking screen appears.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the shots.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during the file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you select "miniSD" from "Select to save" (P.173), turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- During the shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes red (it turns green when the "File size setting" is set to "Long time"). It flashes green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- If you press any keys to perform a function such as zoom in/out during the shooting, the sound may be recorded.

### Function menu (Movie mode screen)

#### 1

Movie mode screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Front camera/Rear camera	Switches between Front camera and Rear camera.	
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.	
Select size	Changes the settings in the same way as on the Shooting menu (P.161).	
File size setting		
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for the movie shooting.	
	Normal (default)	Shoots a movie in the standard image quality and duration.
	Fine mode	Shoots a movie in the higher image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	Long dur. mode	Shoots a long movie. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
	Move mode	Shoots a movie with smoother motion. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
Light	Turns on/off the light. Cannot be changed when using Front camera.	
Image quality	Photo mode	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" → P.174
	Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from " - 2 to ± 0 to + 2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. " ± 0" is the default settings when you launch the camera.
	White balance	"Setting the white balance" → P.173
	Color mode set	"Setting the effects on the photographed images" → P.174
	Image tuning	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images" → P.174 Cannot be changed when using Front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. The default setting is "Sound 1".	
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. → P.178	
Movie type set	Normal (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
	Video	Shoots a movie without any voices.
	Voice	Records a voice without movies.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Item	Description	
<b>Auto save set</b>	Turns on/off Auto save set.	
	<b>ON</b>	Does not display the Movie checking screen when you shoot a movie. Saves the movie automatically to the folder specified in "Select to save".
	<b>OFF (default)</b>	Displays the Movie checking screen when you shoot a movie.
<b>Select to save</b>	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.	
	<b>Phone (default)</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
	<b>miniSD</b>	Saves the movie to the destination folder specified in the Select storage (P.391).
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions.	
	<b>File unrestricted (default)</b>	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
<b>Display size</b>	Sets the display mode for the images.	
	<b>Actual size (default)</b>	Displays the image in the actual size.
	<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the image to the display size.
<b>Memory info</b>	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.	
<b>Help</b>	Shows the guide to the shooting.	

**NOTE****<Shutter sound>**

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound. However, if "ON" is selected for "VM tone" in "Original," the sound is played.

**<Movie type set>**

- Cannot be set in voice mode.

**<Auto save set/Select to save/File restriction>**

- Cannot be changed if "Long time" is set to the File size setting.

**<File restriction>**

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

## ● Setting the white balance

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/Movie mode screen (P.171)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Image quality"▶ "White balance"▶ Select any item:

Also can be set from the Shooting menu. → P.161

Item	Description
<b>Auto (default)</b>	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the normal shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
<b>Fine</b>	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
<b>Cloudy</b>	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
<b>Light bulb</b>	Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescence.
<b>Fluorescent</b>	Is the mode suitable for shooting under the fluorescence.

**NOTE**

- If the camera is set to the Photo mode, A-Continuous mode, M-Continuous mode or Picture voice and the Photo mode is not "OFF", the White balance is automatically set to "Auto".
- Selecting "Fine", "Cloudy", "Light bulb" or "Fluorescent" does not correct the colors, which means that the image would be more vivid under the specified conditions than Auto.
- The settings are retained after the shooting is finished, and applied to the videophone shooting. → P.81

## ● Setting the effects on the photographed images

- 1** Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/  
Movie mode screen (P.171)▶ (FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶“Color  
mode set”▶Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Normal</b> (When the camera launches)	Shoots in the normal color settings.
<b>Sepia</b>	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
<b>Monochrome</b>	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

## ● Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

- 1** Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/  
Movie mode screen (P.171)▶ (FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶“Photo  
mode”▶Select any item:

Also can be set from the Shooting menu. →P.161

Item	Description
<b>Auto</b> <sup>*1</sup> (default: Photo mode/ Continuous shooting)	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
<b>Portrait</b> (default: Movie mode)	Is the shooting mode for people.
<b>Scenery</b>	Is the shooting mode for Scenery.
<b>Close-up</b>	Is the shooting mode for close-up. →P.156
<b>Sports mode</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Is the shooting mode for moving objects.
<b>Night mode</b> <sup>*1, *2</sup>	Is the shooting mode for night view.
<b>OFF</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Does not use any effects for shooting.

\*1 : Cannot be set in Movie mode.

\*2 : Cannot be set in Continuous shooting.

### NOTE

- Only the Portrait, Night mode and OFF can be used by the front camera in shooting a still image. Portrait is only available for shooting in Continuous shooting or in Movie mode by the front camera.
- If the camera shakes when you shoot in the Night mode, select another mode.
- The Auto, Scenery, Close-up or Sports mode is restored to Portrait when the camera is switched to the front.
- The Auto, Sports mode, Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when the Photo mode or A-/M-Continuous mode is switched to the Movie mode or Chance capture.
- The Night mode is restored to Auto when the Photo mode is switched to A-/M-Continuous mode.

## ● Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

- 1** Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/  
Movie mode screen (P.171)▶ (FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶“Image  
tuning”▶Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Auto</b> (default)	Avoids the flicker automatically.
<b>Mode 1 (50Hz)</b>	Is the mode for shooting in the 50Hz-frequency area.
<b>Mode 2 (60Hz)</b>	Is the mode for shooting in the 60Hz-frequency area.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →P.378

## Function menu (movie checking screen)

### 1 Movie checking screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Play</b>	Plays the movie you shot.	
<b>Save</b>	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.173).	
<b>Compose message</b>	 <b>Compose the message</b> Composes an i-mode mail message with the shot movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235 You cannot attach a movie of which file size exceeds 500K bytes. "Attaching files" → P.250	
<b>Set as stand-by</b>	Sets the shot movie to the standby screen.	
<b>Display size</b>	Sets the display mode for the movies.	
	<b>Actual size (default)</b>	Displays the movie in the actual size.
	<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the movie to the display size.
<b>Edit title</b>	Edits the movie title.	
<b>Select to save</b>	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.	
	<b>Phone (default)</b>	 <b>Select the destination folder</b> The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
	<b>miniSD</b>	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.391).
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions.	
	<b>File unrestricted (default)</b>	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
<b>Cancel</b>	Deletes the movie to retake the shot.	

#### NOTE

##### <Compose message>

- The movie to send is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.173). The movie cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card.
- Pressing  when the screen is the Movie checking also enables you to compose i-mode mail with the movie attached.

##### <Set as stand-by>

- Cannot be set if the video clip is voice only.

## Capturing important scenes <Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a video clip.

- The start point of the movie will be the available shooting time (the default is roughly 45 seconds) before the end of the movie, and the movie is saved. The part shot before the start point is not saved.
- The shot finished before exceeding the available shooting time is saved from the beginning to the end as well as the Movie mode.

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163) ( ) or

### 2 Point the camera at the object or



Starts shooting.

You can zoom in/out during the shooting.

After the available shooting time runs out, the remaining time display turns to the "00:00" flash.

### 3 or

Finishes shooting.

## 4 Check and save in the same steps as “Shooting Movies” (P.171)

### Adding voice-over to a still image <Picture voice>

Add the voice-over to a still image of Mail (L) (176 × 144) or Mail (S) (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: Shoot a still image and add the voice-over>

1 Photo mode screen (P.163) ▶ (MENU) or ▶

2 Point the camera at the object ▶ or (CAM)

Shoots a still image.

Shooting still images → P.162

The “recording start screen” appears.

You can set the file size by selecting “File size setting” before recording the voice.

3 or (CAM)



Starts recording.

You can check the approximate seconds left to record on the screen.



Function menu ▶ P.176

4 or (CAM)

Finishes recording.

5 Check and save the movie in the same steps as “Shooting Movies” (P.171)

#### NOTE

- You can also create the Picture voice by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” when the screen is the Photo mode.
- If you want to create Picture voice using the existing still image, follow Step 3 and later after following the steps below when the screen is Photo mode:  
 (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “My picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a still image

#### Function menu (recording start screen)

1 Recording start screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Set the following:

Item	Description	
File size setting	Sets the file size for recording.	
	<b>Restricted(Short)</b> (When the camera launches)	You can record up to 290K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to i-mode mail as a typical movie.
	<b>Restricted(Long)</b>	You can record up to 490K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to i-mode mail as a large-sized movie.

### Using Voice mode

- Records your voice without movies.
- If you set “Long time” to the “File size setting” and record the voices, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the recorded voices are saved directly to the miniSD memory card and the recording is finished.

1 Photo mode screen (P.163) ▶ (MENU) or ▶

The “recording start screen” appears.

Function menu → P.172

## 2 or

Starts recording.  
You can check the approximate seconds left to record on the screen.

## 3 or

Finishes recording.  
The "recording check screen" appears.  
Function menu → P.175

## 4

Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.173).

### NOTE

- You can also record in Voice mode by selecting  (FUNC) ▶ "Movie type set" ▶ "Voice" on the "Movie mode screen".
- Voice recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

## Changing the Shooting Settings

Changes the camera settings such as the zoom, Auto timer or image quality.

### Using the zoom

Using the zoom enables you to adjust the image being shot to your desired size.

- You can choose the zoom between 1x and 6x among 16 steps for shooting by the rear camera in Photo mode, continuous shooting and Movie mode. However, you cannot choose the zoom when the image size is UXGA (1616 × 1212) or JAVA (240 × 240).
- You can choose the zoom between 1x and 2x for shooting by the front camera, which cannot be chosen when the image size is CIF (352 × 288).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

## 1 Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/Movie mode screen (P.171) ▶ Use to adjust the zoom

: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.

: Zooms out by one step to 1x (default) each time you press the key.

Hold down  or  to zoom in/out continuously.

Rear/front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Rear camera	SXGA (1,280 × 960)	4 steps	Approx. 1.3x
	VGA (640 × 480)	16 steps	Approx. 2.5x
	CIF (352 × 288)		Approx. 2x
	Screen (240 × 345)		Approx. 2x
	Stand-by (240 × 320)		Approx. 2x
	JAVA (240 × 240)*		Approx. 2.5x
	Mail (L)/Large (176 × 144)		Approx. 4x
	Mail (S)/Small (128 × 96)		Approx. 6x
Front camera	Mail (L)/Large (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2x
	Mail (S)/Small (128 × 96)		

\* : Can be selected only when the camera is run by i-appli.

### NOTE

- "1x" is the default settings when you run the camera. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to "1x".
- Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

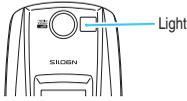
## Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of the FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for 30 seconds or so after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/ Movie mode screen (P.171) ▶ ( )

To turn off the light, press  (  ).



#### NOTE

- You cannot turn on the light when recording a video with sound only.

## Using the auto timer

Setting the Auto timer enables you to shoot an image without holding the FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, continuous shooting and Movie mode.
- The Auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.
- The Auto Focus is available for Photo mode. When you shoot with AF lock, focus on the object before setting the auto timer.

### 1 Photo mode screen (P.163)/continuous shooting screen (P.167)/ Movie mode screen (P.171) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Auto timer" ▶ "ON" ▶ Enter the time for the Auto timer (2-digit)



Enter a 2-digit number between 01 and 15 for the Auto timer.

Entering the 2-digit number automatically sets the Auto timer. To set the currently displayed time, press .

"10 seconds" is the default settings.

## ● If you set the Auto timer

The  icon appears on the screen to show that the Auto timer is set.



Pressing  or  makes the Auto timer tone and it starts running.

The incoming call lamp, ,  and  flash.

The countdown tone sounds roughly five seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, , and  flash rapidly.

During the Auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing  or .

#### ■ To cancel the Auto timer settings

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto timer" ▶ "OFF"

#### ■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶  (Stop) or  (CLR)

#### NOTE

- The Auto timer cannot be used in M-Continuous mode.
- The Auto timer is set to "OFF" when you finish shooting.

# Using the Bar Code Reader

The FOMA terminal can scan JAN codes and QR codes by using the built-in camera. The scanned data can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-appli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook especially in QR code. The FOMA terminal can also scan the image or melody to play or save.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to five scanned bar codes.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning. You can avoid the camera shake by setting your hand to the bottom of the FOMA terminal or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- When scanning bar codes, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 6 to 8 cm away from the scanned code.
- For the quicker and easier access to the bar code reader, add its desktop icon to the standby screen.

## ■ JAN codes and QR codes

### ● JAN codes



A bar code consisting of vertical lines (bars) of various widths and spaces to represent numbers. The FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13).

\* If the FOMA terminal scans the JAN code on the left, it is displayed as "4942857113068".

### ● QR codes



A type of two-dimensional bar codes consisting of the horizontal and vertical patterns to represent numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

\* If the FOMA terminal scans the QR code on the left, it is displayed as "株式会社NTTドコモ" (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

## Scanning codes

### 1 MENU → Tools → "Bar code reader"

The "Bar code reader screen" appears.

### 2 "New"

"Close-up" is automatically set to the shooting mode on the Rear camera.

### 3 Position the JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field



The recognition field is expressed using "R, L, U, D" at the corners of the screen.

Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code is displayed as big as possible inside the recognition field.

#### ■ To change the zoom

☺: Zooms out.

☹: Zooms in.

#### ■ To turn on the light

▶ ☺ (ON) or ☺ (☼)

To turn off the light, press ☹ (OFF) or ☹ (☼).



Function menu → P.180

### 4 Check the scanned data

The focus frame changes as follows during the scanning:

White: Before focusing

Dotted white: Now focusing

Green: Focused

Dotted red: Focusing failed

It may take long to scan the data.

#### ■ To cancel the scanning



#### ■ To scan the data consisting of several QR codes



▶ Repeat steps 3 to 4

The FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

#### ■ To discard the scanned data



▶ "YES"

## NOTE

- The FOMA terminal cannot scan a code if it is not a JAN code or QR code. You may be unable to scan some bar code, depending on the size.
- The FOMA terminal may fail to scan the code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality or the reflection of light.
- If there are already five data stored when you press “New”, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest entry. Selecting “YES” overwrites the oldest entry with the scanned data.
- You can also run the bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered in the screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. The FOMA terminal cannot correctly scan the image or melody. A character that cannot be entered on the text editing screen is replaced with a space character.
- You cannot save a JPEG image of which size exceeds 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or a GIF image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save a progressive JPEG image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. Progressive JPEG image → P.210
- You cannot save the scanned data to the miniSD memory card.

## Function menu (Bar code reader screen)

## 1 Bar code reader screen ▶ ⊖ (FUNC) ▶ Set the following:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → P.133

## Using the scanned data

1   ▶ “Bar code reader” ▶ “Reading data list”

The “Reading data list screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.181

## 2 Select a data

The “Reading data detail screen” appears.

## 3 Select any of the displayed items

- “Add to phonebook” : Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook. → P.97, 98
- “Compose message” : Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered → P.235
- “Add bookmark” : Adds the URL and title to the Bookmark → P.205
- “Start i-appli” : Runs the specified i-appli → P.311
- Melody icon : Plays the melody → P.373
- Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function → P.214
- Mail address : Composes an i-mode mail message using the Mail To function → P.215
- URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function → P.215



Function menu ▶ P.181

## NOTE

- The title of the scanned data would be:
  - If the date and time have been specified
    - Title: yyyyymmdd\_hhmm\_xxxx (Year/month/day\_time\_4-digit)
    - If the same date and time are set more than once, the 4-digit numbers up to “9999” are assigned to the data in numerical order.
  - If the date and time have not been specified
    - Title: 00000000\_0000\_xxxx (xxxx: 4-digit number)
    - The 4-digit numbers up to “9999” are assigned to the data in numerical order. If the number reaches “9999”, it returns to “0000”.

## Function menu (Reading data list screen)

### 1 Reading data list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title</b> Edits the title of the selected data. Can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Result</b>	Displays the Reading data details screen.
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected data.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ "YES" Security code → P.140

## Function menu (Reading data details screen)

### 1 Reading data details screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Save</b>	Saves the scanned data.
<b>Display list</b>	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not recorded yet, a message appears asking whether to delete the data.
<b>Internet</b>	Accesses the site if the URL is selected. "Web To function" → P.215
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message in the scanned data if the "Compose message" is selected. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
<b>Dialing</b>	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function" → P.214
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is selected. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97 "Adding to the UIM phonebook" → P.98
<b>Add bookmark</b>	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to Bookmark if "Add bookmark" is selected. Adds the URL to Bookmark if it is selected. "Adding bookmarks" → P.205
<b>Save image</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ "YES" ▶ <b>Select an item</b> Saves the selected image to My picture of Data box. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
<b>Save melody</b>	▶ "YES" ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ "YES" ▶ <b>Select an item</b> Saves the selected melody to Melody of Data box. If you do not set the melody to the incoming call tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
<b>Start i-appli</b>	Runs the i-appli specified in the scanned data if the "Start i-appli" is selected. "Running i-appli from the Bar code reader" → P.311
<b>Copy</b>	Copies the text included in the scanned data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522

#### NOTE

- If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be read by the bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).
- While the FOMA terminal is in Restrict dialing, in Keypad dial lock or in Self mode, you cannot use the scanned data to make a call or send i-mode mail. Also, you cannot access the Internet while it is in Self mode.  
<Internet><Add bookmark>
- You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

## NOTE

### <Compose message>

- The address cannot be entered if it includes characters that cannot be entered.

### <Dialing>

- Full-pitch/half-pitch numbers and symbols (# \* +) are the characters that can be included in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are included.
- The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

### <Start i-appli>

- You cannot run the i-appli from the scanned data if "Bar code "i-appli To"" in "Set i-appli To" (P.310) is not selected.
- You cannot run i-appli if no application is specified.

## <Access reader>

# Scanning Text

Using its built-in camera, the FOMA terminal can scan the printed text and then add the scanned text data as the Phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose mail. You can also make a call or display the website.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to eight scanned data.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning. You can avoid the camera shake by setting your hand to the bottom of the FOMA terminal or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- When scanning text, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 6 to 8 cm away from the text to scan.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

### ■ Scan mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

<b>Card read</b>	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
<b>URL</b>	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to the Bookmark.
<b>Mail address</b>	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode mail message.
<b>Phone number</b>	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
<b>Free memo</b>	Scans the Japanese or English text to save to the Text memo.

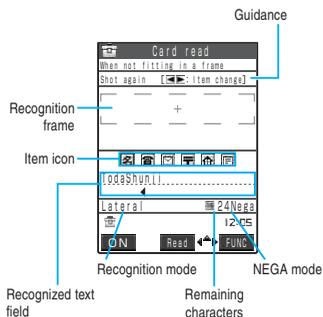
### ■ The number of characters that can be read

The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be read for each item:

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be read
Card read	Name	16 in full-pitch, 32 in half-pitch
	Phone number	26 in half-pitch and additional #, *, +, p (pause)
	Mail address	50 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Postal code	7 in half-pitch
	Address	50 in full-pitch, 100 in half-pitch
	Memo	100 in full-pitch, 200 in half-pitch
Compose message	Recipient	50 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Subject	15 in full-pitch, 30 in half-pitch
	Message	128 in full-pitch, 256 in half-pitch
URL		256 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
Mail address		256 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
Phone number		256 in half-pitch
Free memo		128 in full-pitch, 256 in half-pitch
Dictionary	Japanese	32 in full-pitch, 64 in half-pitch
	English	64 in half-pitch

## ■ Guide to the scanner screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the Scanner screen:



- Guidance** : Shows the operation.
- Recognition frame** : Shows the recognition field.  
The color of the Recognition frame (red, yellow, green) shows whether the image is focused. The green means that the image is properly focused.
- Item icon** : Shows the item to scan.  
Card read mode:  
"Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo"  
Compose message mode:  
"Recipient/subject/message"
- Recognized text field** : Shows the scanned text. (The guidance appears on some screens.)
- Recognition mode** : Shows the recognition mode used for scanning "Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL".
- Remaining characters** : Shows the number of half-pitch characters left that can be scanned.
- NEGA mode** : Appears if the Negative fix is set to the NEGA/POSI mode.

## Scanning text

### <Example: Scan text in Card read mode>

**1** **"Access reader"**

The "Access reader screen" appears.



Function menu▶P.185

**2** **"New"**

The "scanning mode selection screen" appears.  
"Scan mode" → P.182



**3** **"Card read"**

The "Access reader scanning screen" appears.  
"Close-up" is automatically set to the shooting mode on the Rear camera.  
Use to select the icon for the item to store.



Function menu▶P.185

**4** **Display the text in the recognition field**

Focus the text so that the entire text is displayed as big as possible inside the recognition field.

If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

#### ■ To adjust the zoom

: Changes from "Standard" to "Large".

: Changes from "Large" to "Standard".

#### ■ To turn on the light

(ON) or (OFF)

To turn off the light, press (OFF) or (OFF).

5



The FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text is displayed in red. If the screen does not display the whole text, press (Home) or (Memo/check) to check the hidden text.

Pressing (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data details screen appears.

The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:



Candidates



#### ■ To select the string to edit

▶ Use to select the string to edit ▶ Press the number of the candidate

Use to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.

#### ■ To rescan the text

▶ ▶ “YES”

#### ■ To edit in the text editing

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit” ▶ Edit the text

Edits the text in the typical text editing.

To return to the candidate selection, press (FUNC) and select “Select recog. data”.

Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.

6



Fixes as the text.

#### ■ To scan the remaining text

▶ Repeat steps 4 to 6

Ensure that the last two characters of the last text scanned are included in the recognition field.

#### ■ To scan another item

▶ Use to select the item to scan ▶ Repeat steps 4 to 6

In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7



#### (FUNC) ▶ “Store”

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press to return to the Reading data list screen.

### NOTE

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the “Processing” message is displayed on the screen.
- The FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- The FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- If there are already eight data stored when you press “New”, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest entry. Selecting “YES” enables you to overwrite the existing data.
- You can also run the access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered in the screen.
- When you run the Access reader from the Dictionary, choose the reading mode between “Dic. (Japanese)” and “Dic. (English)”.
- If you do not press any keys for three minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.
- If you scan some text and then receive a voice or videophone call or 64K data communication, or you are notified of an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm, or you use another FOMA terminal function before saving the scanned text data, the scanned text is briefly saved while you change to the respective screen. Finishing the operation afterwards that occurred during the saving returns the screen to the Reading data detail. However, if the Alarm setting (P.420) is set to “Operation preferred”, the alarm does not sound.

## Function menu (Access reader screen)

### 1 Access reader screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Set the following:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133

## Function menu (Access reader scanning screen)

### 1 Access reader scanning screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the scanned text. "Entering Text" → P.506	
<b>Store</b>	Saves the scanned data.	
<b>Internet</b>	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function" → P.215	
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the message entered in Free memo mode. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	
<b>Dialing</b>	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode.	
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97 "Adding to the UIM phonebook" → P.98	
<b>Add bookmark</b>	Adds the URL to Bookmark in URL mode. "Adding bookmarks" → P.205	
<b>Search phonebook</b>	Searches the data in the phonebook using the scanned data. "Searching in the Phonebook" → P.101 You cannot search in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.	
<b>Add to memo</b>	Adds the URL to the Text memo in URL mode. Adds the mail address to the Text memo in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the Text memo in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the Text memo in Free memo mode. "Composing Text memo" → P.440	
<b>Reading mode set</b>	Selects the scanning mode among "Card read", "Compose message", "URL", "Mail address", "Phone number" and "Free memo".	
<b>NEGA/POSI mode</b>	Sets the type of printing.	
	<b>Auto setting</b>	Automatically sets the positive or negative.
	<b>Positive fix</b>	Is suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
	<b>Negative fix</b>	Is suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.
<b>Guidance OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>	Displays or hides the guidance.	
<b>Vertical writing<sup>*2</sup></b>	Selects the lateral writing or vertical writing for the Japanese to scan.	

\*1 : "Guidance ON" is displayed if the guidance is not displayed.

\*2 : "Lateral writing" is displayed if you have selected the "Vertical writing".

#### NOTE

- In URL mode, "http://" or "https://" is added to the scanned string following the conditions below:
  - "http://" is added to the beginning of the string if it does not contain "://". However, if the beginning of the string is "/" or "/#", "/" or "/#" is replaced with "http://".
  - The part before "://" is replaced with "http://" including "://" if the string contains "://". However, if the part "://" is "s://" or "S://" it is replaced with "https://".
- When you run the Access reader from the Dictionary, choose the reading mode between "Dic. (Japanese)" and "Dic. (English)".

## Using the text data

1



▶ “Access reader” ▶ “Reading data list”

The “Reading data list screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.186

2

### Select the text data

The “Reading data detail screen” appears.

3

### Select any of the displayed items

“Add to phonebook”: Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook → P.97, 98

“Compose message”: Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered → P.235

\* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.



Function menu▶P.187

## Function menu (Reading data list screen)

1

Reading data list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	You cannot edit on the list screen.
<b>Internet</b>	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function” → P.215
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with all the data entered at once in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the message entered in Free memo mode. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235
<b>Dialing</b>	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → P.97 “Adding to the UIM phonebook” → P.98
<b>Add bookmark</b>	Adds the URL to the Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks” → P.205
<b>Search phonebook</b>	Searches the phonebook using the selected data. “Searching in the Phonebook” → P.101 Searches using the displayed contents in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
<b>Add to memo</b>	Adds the selected data to the Text memo. “Composing Text memo” → P.440 You cannot add the data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
<b>Display detail</b>	Displays the Reading data details screen.
<b>Copy</b>	Copies the text included in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → P.522
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected data.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Security code → P.140 Deletes all the data.

## Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

### 1 Reading data detail screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the text of the selected item. "Entering Text" → P.506 You cannot edit the text when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
<b>Internet</b>	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function" → P.215
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with all the data entered at once if "Compose message" is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the message entered in Free memo mode. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
<b>Dialing</b>	Calls the phone number if it is selected in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in Phone number mode.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, or memo is selected in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected in Compose message mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97 "Adding to the UIM phonebook" → P.98
<b>Add bookmark</b>	Adds the URL to the Bookmark in URL mode. "Adding bookmarks" → P.205
<b>Search phonebook</b>	Searches the phonebook using the selected data. "Searching in the Phonebook" → P.101 You cannot search when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
<b>Add to memo</b>	Adds the selected data to the Text memo. "Composing Text memo" → P.440 You cannot add the data when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
<b>Display list</b>	Displays the Reading data list screen.
<b>Copy</b>	Copies the data input in the Reading data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected data.
<b>Delete all</b>	<b>Enter your security code</b> <b>"YES"</b> Security code → P.140 Deletes all the data.

#### NOTE

- While the FOMA terminal is in Restrict dialing, in Keypad dial lock or in Self mode, you cannot use the scanned data to make a call or send i-mode mail. Also, you cannot access the Internet while it is in Self mode.

#### <Dialing>

- Half-pitch numbers and symbols (# \* +) are the characters that can be included in the phone number. Only the numbers and symbols are dialed as the phone number if any other characters are included.
- The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.



# i-mode

What is i-mode?.....	190
Displaying i-mode Menu .....	<b>i-mode menu</b> 196
<b>Viewing sites</b>	
Viewing a Site.....	197
Viewing and Using Sites .....	201
Registering My Menu Entries .....	<b>My Menu</b> 203
Changing Your i-mode Password.....	<b>Change i-mode password</b> 203
Viewing Websites .....	<b>Internet connection</b> 204
Registering Websites and i-mode Sites to Access Quickly .....	<b>Bookmarks</b> 205
Saving Site Content .....	<b>Save screen memo</b> 207
<b>Downloading images and melodies from sites</b>	
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages....	<b>Save image</b> 209
Downloading Melodies from Sites .....	<b>i-melody</b> 210
Downloading Document (PDF File) from Sites .....	211
Downloading “Chara-den” Characters from Sites .....	213
Downloading Data Files from Sites.....	213
<b>i-mode utility functions</b>	
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions .....	<b>Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions</b> 214
<b>Specifying Your i-mode Settings</b>	
Specifying Your i-mode Settings .....	216
<b>Using the message services</b>	
When You Receive a Message .....	<b>Receive message</b> 218
Checking for Messages .....	<b>Check new message</b> 220
Viewing Messages in the Message Box .....	<b>Message Request/Free</b> 221
<b>Using certificates</b>	
Using SSL Certificate .....	223
Setting FirstPass.....	224
Changing the Certificate Host.....	226

# What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail, connecting to the Internet and connecting to i-mode sites (programs).

## ■ Site (program) connection

This service allows you to access a range of online services provided by your IP (information service provider), such as weather reports and news bulletins, simply by selecting them from the i-mode menu listings. You can also use this service to download and use games and standby screen images.

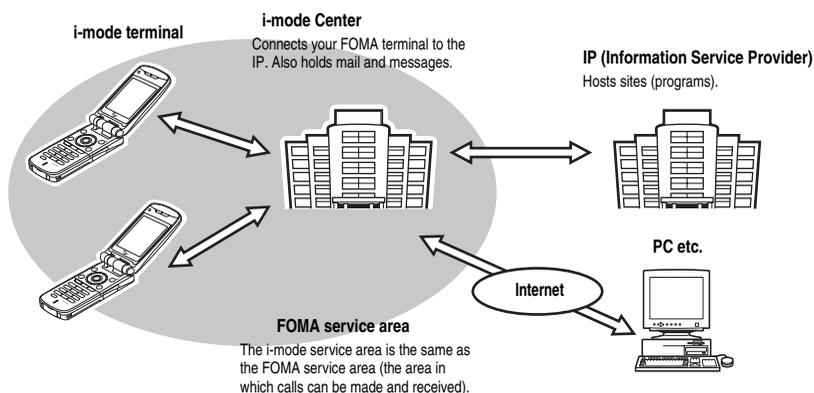
## ■ Internet connection

This service allows you to access a wide range of i-mode-compatible websites by directly entering the URL of the website on your i-mode terminal.

## ■ i-mode mail

This service allows you to exchange e-mail messages up to 5,000 full-pitch characters long not only with other i-mode terminals but with anyone who has an internet e-mail address. You can also use other exciting e-mail functions such as exchanging Deco-mail, still images and movies.

### Service Configuration



i-mode is a charged service to which you must subscribe. For information on subscribing to i-mode, refer to the back cover of the manual.

### NOTE

- New subscribers to FOMA services can access all the services as of the day of their subscription.
- If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to a FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" information used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this event, you will need to re-register. For information on which sites will maintain your "My Menu" data, refer to "お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- The i-mode service charges are based on the amount of information (the number of packets) you send and receive. This Instruction Manual does not provide any specific information on the charges. For information on usage charges etc., refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.
- The i-mode service details are subject to change. Refer to the "FOMA User's Manual" for details.

## Site (program) connection

You can use simple key operations to connect to sites provided by IPs (information service provider) to use their various online services.

For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve concert tickets, read news, use online dictionaries, or download ring tones.

## ● Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode Center, the iMenu screen appears first. From this screen, you can access a variety of other sites such as the “週刊iガイド(What's New!!)”.  
Viewing a site → P.197



The above is a screen image.  
The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on your settings.

Item	Description
<b>マイメニュー</b> <b>(My Menu)</b>	By registering a frequently visited site to My Menu, you can make it easier and quicker to visit the site again next time (P.203). The URLs of charged sites in iMenu are automatically registered. Up to a maximum of 45 sites can be registered.
<b>週刊iガイド</b> <b>(What's New)</b>	This site provides information on coming new or recommended sites and is daily updated on Monday through Friday.
<b>メニューリスト</b> <b>(Menu List)</b>	Lists all the sites by category and area for your convenience. Select an interesting site and connect to it from here.
<b>とくするメニュー</b> <b>(tokusuru menu)</b>	Interesting sales campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information are featured here. This information is updated weekly (Provided by: D2 Communications).
<b>iエリア</b> <b>(i-area)</b>	Provides quick access to information on the area you are currently in and its surroundings, including weather reports, maps and local facilities.
<b>かんたん検索</b> <b>(Simple search)</b> Provides an easy way to locate sites using keyword-based searches from categories such as “Games” and “i-appli”.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· i-appli search Provides a menu giving a targeted overview of sites offering free information on i-appli and gaming sites.</li> <li>· Useful site search Provides a menu that categorizes and briefly introduces useful sites on the menu list that you can access on a routine basis.</li> </ul>
<b>マイボックス</b> <b>(My Box)</b>	A service aimed at members that provides quick access to pre-registered sites or stores that provide services.
<b>オプション設定</b> <b>(Options)</b>	Set your i-mode mail preferences or i-mode password here.
<b>お知らせ&amp;ヘルプ</b> <b>(News &amp; Help)</b>	Announcements from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and rules for using i-mode are available here.
<b>料金&amp;お申し込み</b> <b>(Fee &amp; application)</b>	Go here to check and pay your i-mode charges and to change or upgrade your subscription.
<b>ENGLISH</b>	Can be used to display the iMenu in English.

### NOTE

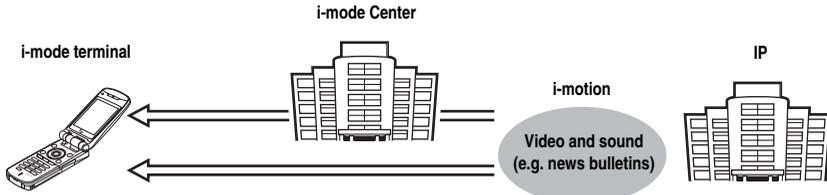
- The sent information “mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers” is used by the IP (information service provider) to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.
- The sender’s mobile phone information “mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers” is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. However, your phone number, address, age, and sex, are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider).
- Some sites may require you to provide additional information fee in order to use the site (i-mode charged site).
- You may have to subscribe separately to use some of the services provided by IPs.
- Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, no packet communication charges apply if you are not exchanging data with the i-mode Center.
- If you subscribe the “Dual Network Service”, part of the iMenu screen changes.

## ● Other useful features

### ■ i-motion

This service allows you to download videos and sounds to an i-mode terminal from i-mode sites and then view the video or set it in your standby screen. → P.316

- To download an i-motion → P.316
- To play an i-motion → P.316
- To set an i-motion for automatic playback → P.318



### ■ Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®\*

This allows you to download an i-motion to your i-mode terminal from an i-mode site and then set that i-motion as the ring tone played and image shown when you receive a call. You can use this to set not just a melody, but a song sung by your favorite artist, as your ring tone. (You cannot set some incompatible i-motion for Chaku-motion.)

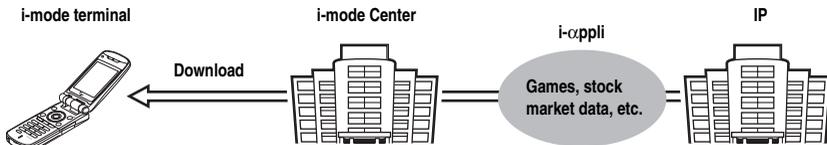
- To set a Chaku-motion → P.114

\* : "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

### ■ i-αppli

By downloading i-αppli from websites, you can make your i-mode terminal even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to your i-mode terminal or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-αppli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth.

- To download an i-αppli → P.301
- To run an i-αppli → P.304
- To launch an i-αppli automatically → P.309



### ■ i-αppli standby screen

This function allows you to set an i-αppli as your standby screen, making it possible to receive mail and make calls directly from the standby screen. This expands the range of uses for your standby screen to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm.

- To set an i-αppli standby screen → P.124, 312

### ■ i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX links up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mail, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make i-αppli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mail in your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

- i-αppli DX → P.300

### ■ 3D Sound

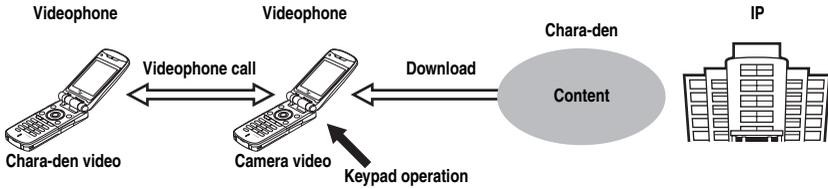
The stereo speaker (or stereo earphones) on a 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal produces a 3 dimensional and resonating sound enabling you to enjoy the rich sound of i-αppli games, ring tones, and i-motion. (Only available with 3D sound compatible content.)

### ■ Chara-den

When you are making or receiving a videophone call and you do not want to send an image of yourself to the other party, "Chara-den" provides you with an alternative in the shape of a cartoon character. You can even make the "Chara-den" character's mouth move in time with sounds and control its movement using your phone's keypad. You can even download your favorite character, shoot it as a still image or movie file and set it in the standby screen or send it as a mail attachment. (You cannot attach an image or movie file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it to phones other than FOMA terminals.)

- To download a Chara-den character → P.213

- To check a Chara-den character → P.367
- To set a Chara-den character → P.369
- To control a Chara-den character → P.368
- To shoot a Chara-den character → P.371



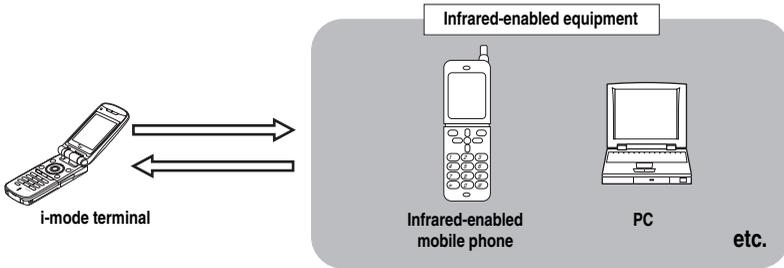
### ■ Infrared data exchange function

i-mode terminal can exchange information such as phonebook entries, mail and bookmarks with mobile phones, PC and other devices equipped with infrared data exchange function.\*

Using an i-appli in conjunction with the Infrared data exchange function allows you to link up with other devices equipped with Infrared data exchange functions, expanding the range of uses for your FOMA terminal. For example, a mobile phone can be used as a TV remote control or as a corporate ID.

\*: Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device has an Infrared data exchange function.

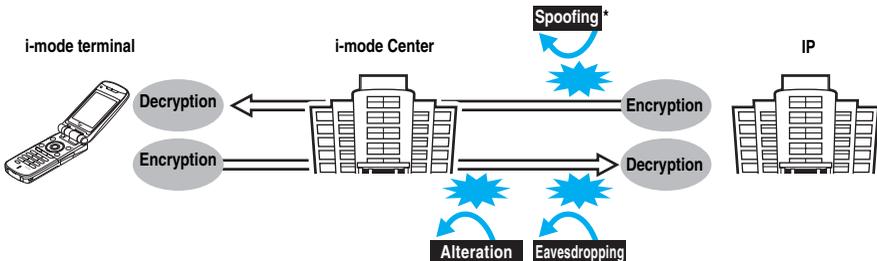
To use the Infrared data exchange function → P.392



### ■ SSL communication

SSL is an encryption technology that is used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from an SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping, site spoofing\*, or altering the data, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information safer. There are 2 types of SSL communication. In one, SSL certification authority (CA) (SSL certificates) stored in the i-mode terminal are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) without requiring the user to perform any special procedures. In the other, user certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages). The type of certificate used depends on the site. → P.199

- To view sites using SSL certificates stored in the i-mode terminal → P.199
- To use FirstPass user certificates → P.224



\* Spoofing: A security attack that allows an adversary to observe all information entered into forms by the victim.

## ■ FOMA card operational restriction function

These functions place restrictions on files such as melodies, images and movies loaded from mail or downloaded from sites when you insert a FOMA card (UIM) containing your data (such as phone numbers and some phonebook data) into an i-mode terminal. When you insert a different FOMA card (UIM) or turn the phone on without inserting the FOMA card (UIM), these functions also prevent the obtained files from being played or viewed.

※ Images and movies shot with the camera function, and files saved in the FOMA terminal from outside memory sources are not subjected to this function.

※ If the files are set (for example ring tone and standby screen settings) in other i-mode terminals, these settings are reset by this function.

## ■ i-melody

You can download the latest songs or your favorite tunes from sites to an i-mode terminal, and then use them as ring tones. → P.210

## ■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animations from an i-mode site or website to an i-mode terminal and then run the animation on your standby screen or receiving screen. → P.209

## ■ Flash™

Flash is an animation technique that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download Flash movies to an i-mode terminal and set them in the standby screen. → P.203

Some Flash movies are able to access the terminal data on your i-mode terminal. Such movies may use the following types of stored data:

- Battery Level
- Ring volume setting
- Reception Level
- Bilingual Settings
- Clock Time
- Model Information

## ■ Download dictionary

You can download dialect or specialist dictionaries from sites to an i-mode terminal and set them as the kanji-conversion dictionary. → P.213

## ■ Message service

Message services allows you to have information that you need automatically delivered to your i-mode terminal.

The message services consist of the Message Request and Message Free services.

<b>Message Request (MessageR)</b>	If you subscribe to a site that offers a message service, the desired information is automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal.
<b>Message Free (MessageF)</b>	The messages are delivered via free packet communication.

How to use message services → P.218, 220

As of October 1, 2004, Message Free is set to “受信する (ON)” as the default setting for all subscribers who signed a new FOMA contract and at the same time applied for i-mode. If you don't want to receive Message Free, you have to set Message Free to “受信しない (OFF)”.

※ For those subscribers other than the above, to receive Message Free you have to change the settings in “オプション設定 (Options)”. The default setting is “受信しない (OFF)”.

If you cannot receive messages because your FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of range (“圏外” displayed), Message Request and Message Free are held at the i-mode Center.

· The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period. If the limit on the holding number or period is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest message.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message Request (MessageR)	300	72 hours
Message Free (MessageF)	300	72 hours

· Use “Check new message” to retrieve Message Request and Message Free held at the i-mode Center. → P.220

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## ■ トクだねニュース便 (Read and Reap News)

This is a service offered by DoCoMo which uses the Message Request function to send information such as news and weather updates to i-mode terminals.

トクだねニュース便 (Read and Reap News) is a charged service to which users must subscribe. Once you have completed the subscription, the service is automatically registered to your My Menu list and you can then view the same information by accessing the service from My Menu.

Viewing messages in Message Request →P.221

## ● i-mode password

You have to enter an “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu, specify your i-mode mail settings, or subscribe to charged i-mode sites. At the time of purchase, the i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) by default, but you should change this number to a 4-digit number of your choice. → P.203

Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.

## Internet connection

You can use your FOMA terminal to connect to the Internet and view i-mode-compatible websites simply by entering the URL of the website that you want to visit.

How to view websites →P.204

### NOTE

- Websites that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly. To be i-mode-compliant, websites must be written using i-mode-compliant tags. For details →P.204
- Operations for websites are the same as those for i-mode sites.
- You can view websites designed for PC in full browser. For more information →P.326

## ■ When you display pages stored in cache

- Cache refers to an area of memory on the FOMA terminal itself in which data from i-mode sites or websites you have visited is temporarily stored. If you press Ⓞ to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or website, the FOMA terminal displays the page stored in cache rather than connecting to the i-mode Center and accessing the page on the actual site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal connects to the site even when you press Ⓞ. Also, even when the page is stored in the cache, if the date and time information for that page has been updated, the FOMA terminal connects to the site and displays the latest data.
- When site data is loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits is not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the message indicating that the SSL page will be displayed.

## ■ Notes on using i-mode

- Contents on sites (programs) or Internet websites (pages) are normally protected by copyright laws. The downloading of documents, pictures, and other data from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal is permitted only when intended for your personal use only. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without the consent of the copyright holder.
- Note that all data saved (mail, Message Request/Free, screen memos, i-appli and i-motion) or stored (bookmarks, etc.) in your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored in the i-mode terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs or other work performed on your i-mode terminal, data downloaded in i-mode, i-appli or i-motion will not be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. Note also that when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent or received mail (images, movies or melodies), screen memos and Message Request/Free messages.
- If a file with restrictions on viewing and playback imposed by the FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or as a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the initial default settings if the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

### ■ Important

Data stored in your bookmarks should be noted in writing or backed up onto a miniSD memory card.

# Displaying i-mode Menu

## Starting i-mode

1



The "i-mode menu screen" appears. The i-mode menu consists of 10 items. You can also display the "i-mode menu screen" by pressing (i-mode) in the standby screen.

■ When is displayed

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as "Til" appears.

■ When is flashing

If you try to connect to an i-mode site (P.197) or website (P.204) or send i-mode mail (P.235) while you are in the service area but you are not already using the i-mode service, the icon flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ When is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), flashes.

Item	Description	See page
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you connect to the i-mode Center. From this screen, you can access a variety of other sites such as the "週刊 iガイド (What's New!!)".	P.191, 197
Bookmark	Allows you to store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	P.205
Screen memo	Shows the screens for i-mode sites stored in your i-mode terminal.	P.207
Last URL	Displays the last i-mode site or website you visited.	P.201
Go to location	Allows you to connect to an i-mode site or website by directly entering the site address.	P.204
Message	Displays received Message Request/Free. The message service automatically delivers requested information to your FOMA terminal.	P.221
Check new message	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode Center to check for new mail or Message Request/Free.	P.220
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to perform operations such as downloading data or requesting user certificate.	P.224
i-mode settings	Enables you to specify the i-mode settings for your FOMA terminal.	P.216
Internet(Full Browser)	Displays a website designed for viewing on PC in full browser.	P.326

### NOTE

- The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- The i-mode menu can still be displayed when you are outside the service area. However, you cannot send or receive information to sites or via the Internet.

## Viewing the iMenu screen

1



### "iMenu"

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the "iMenu screen" (the first i-mode screen) appears.

■ To cancel the download of pages

▶ (CLR) or (Quit)



## Function menu (sites screen)

### 1 Sites screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description						
<b>Add bookmark</b>	Adds the URL for the currently displayed page to your list of bookmarks. "Adding bookmarks" → P.205						
<b>Save screen memo</b>	Saves the currently displayed page as a screen memo. "Saving a screen memo" → P.207						
<b>iMenu</b>	Shows the iMenu screen.						
<b>Bookmark</b>	Shows the Bookmark folder list screen. You can display an i-mode site or website using a bookmark. → P.205						
<b>Screen memo list</b>	Shows the screen memo list screen. "Displaying a screen memo" → P.208						
<b>Reload</b>	Refreshes the displayed page.						
<b>Save image</b>	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P.209						
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Uses a dictionary from the current page. "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P.443						
<b>Enter URL</b>	  <b>Enter URL</b>  <b>"OK"</b>  Enters a URL to connect to the website.						
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook" → P.202						
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133						
<b>Compose message</b>	Allows you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Attach URL</b></td> <td>Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed page inserted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Attach image</b></td> <td> <b>Select the image</b> Composes an i-mode mail with the image of the displayed page attached the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Insert image</b></td> <td> <b>Select the image</b> Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.242</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Attach URL</b>	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed page inserted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	<b>Attach image</b>	 <b>Select the image</b> Composes an i-mode mail with the image of the displayed page attached the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	<b>Insert image</b>	 <b>Select the image</b> Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.242
<b>Attach URL</b>	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed page inserted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235						
<b>Attach image</b>	 <b>Select the image</b> Composes an i-mode mail with the image of the displayed page attached the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235						
<b>Insert image</b>	 <b>Select the image</b> Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.242						
<b>Save schedule</b>	Stores a scheduled event while browsing the currently displayed page. "Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries" → P.424						
<b>Set as home URL</b>	Registers the URL of the displayed page as home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.						
<b>Display home</b>	Displays the page stored as your home URL.						
<b>Title</b>	 <b>Check the title</b>  <b>"OK"</b> Checks the title for the currently displayed page.						
<b>URL</b>	 <b>Check the URL</b>  <b>"OK"</b> Displays the URL for the currently displayed page.						
<b>Certificate</b>	Displays the SSL certificate details when the currently displayed page supports SSL.						
<b>Change CHR code</b>	Changes the character code to redisplay the page that is not displayed correctly.						
<b>Set image display</b>	Specify the image display setting for the page. If "OFF" is selected,  appears instead of the image which cannot be displayed.						
<b>i-motion type</b>	"Setting the downloaded i-motion type" → P.319						
<b>Sound effect</b>	Specifies the settings for Flash movie sound effects.						
<b>Retry</b>	Plays the Flash movie or animation on the currently displayed page again from the beginning.						
<b>Switch to FB</b>	Switches the display mode of the displayed site to the full browser. → P.331						

## NOTE

### <Compose message>

- You can paste URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

### <Set as home URL>

- If you have already set a home URL, a message appears asking whether to replace the current home URL. Select "YES" to replace the current URL or "NO" to retain the current URL.
- Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid/Invalid" setting for "Home URL".

### <Display home>

- "Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch in the standby screen will also display the site set as the home.

### <Title>

- You cannot edit the displayed title.
- You can display titles up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters long.

### <URL>

- You cannot edit the displayed URL.
- If not all the URLs are shown, press  to display the cursor and then use  to move the cursor to view other URLs. Pressing  again hides the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

### <Certificate>

- This setting displays up to 4 certificates. If you have multiple certificates, you can use  to view previous and subsequent certificates.
- When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls 1 line at a time regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

### <Change CHR code>

- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. Note that when you perform the procedure for the 4th time, the site is displayed in the original character code setting.
- Some sites may not display correctly even when the character code is changed.
- If you change the character code when a site is displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- "Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

### <Retry>

- Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

### <Switch to FB>

- Some sites may not be displayed in full browser.

## Displaying SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored in your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase
- DoCoMo CA certificate: Required for connecting to the FirstPass center and stored in the FOMA card (green)
- User certificate Client certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (P:224) in the i-mode menu and stored in the FOMA card (green)

## 1 Display an SSL page



SSL page

The SSL page appears and the "SSL" icon is displayed.

### ■ To cancel display during authentication



### ■ To cancel page loading after authentication



## 2 Move from the SSL page to an ordinary page ▶ "YES"

SSL communication ends and the "SSL" icon no longer appears.

## NOTE

- If a message appears saying, "This site is not certified Do you connect?" when you display an SSL page, the SSL certificate for the site has expired or you are attempting to display a page that is using a different SSL certificate from that used by the FOMA terminal. This messages appears when the SSL certificate for the site has expired or is not supported. When this happens, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES", but you should note that you may not be able to safely send personal information such as your credit card number or contact information. To cancel page display, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press  to return to the original screen.
- To display an SSL-compatible page, set the date and time in "Set time" beforehand.

## Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, Message Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or a list will not fit on the screen, you can scroll up or down to view the rest of the text.

### ■ Scrolling one line at a time

Press  to scroll down one line to view the next list item or line of text.

Press  to scroll up one line to view the previous list item or line of text.

You can also set the number of lines scrolled each time you press  or . → P.216

### ■ Scrolling one screen at a time

Press  (Memo/Check) to scroll down one screen to view the next part of the list or text.

Press  (Home) to scroll up one screen to view the previous part of the list or text.

## iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

### 1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press



### 2 Select "ENGLISH" and then press



Select "日本語" to return to the Japanese display.

#### NOTE

- The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), iエリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) and 料金&お申込 (Fee & application) are not shown on the English iMenu.
- Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New.

## Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item while an i-mode site or website is displayed on the FOMA terminal, a message may appear notifying you that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. When sending information is acceptable, select "YES". If not, select "NO". Press  (Return) or  to return to the previous screen.

- The disclosure notification message is always shown before your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent. Such information is never sent automatically.

#### NOTE

- The sent information "mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" is used by the IP (Internet service provider) to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.
- The sender's mobile phone information "mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" is sent to the IP (Internet service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. However, your phone number, address, age, and sex, are not disclosed to the IP (Internet service provider).

## Reconnecting to the last displayed page <Last URL>

When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last website displayed is stored by the “Last URL” function. You can use this function to reconnect to the last website you visited.



### NOTE

- Each time you display a page, the “Last URL” setting is updated to the URL of the currently displayed page.

## Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes the operations you can use while viewing i-mode sites or websites.

### Image display

Pages at i-mode sites and websites often display images.

- Your FOMA terminal will display GIF and JPEG format images and Flash movies (P.203). However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to display some images regardless of the format used.
- The “ (color)” appears while an image is loading and the image itself appears when loading is completed.
- You can specify whether or not images are displayed in the “Set image display” setting (P.198). If you change the “Set image display” setting in the function menu from “OFF” to “ON” while a page on a website is loading and then use “Reload” (P.202), images are displayed for the “ (color)” icons. If you changed the setting from “ON” to “OFF”, loaded images remain displayed as images and do not revert to icons.

#### ■ Displayed image icons

-  (color): Displayed while an image is loading or when “OFF” is selected in the “Set image display” setting.
-  : Displayed when image loading failed or the image format is not supported.
-  (B/W): Displayed when image loading failed.

### Selecting links and other options

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform operations such as those described below.

- Refer to the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details.

#### ● Links

Displayed pages may include links to related pages.

- You can use the same procedure with links that are set in images.

#### ● Radio buttons

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options.  indicates a selected radio button.

#### ● Checkbox

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options.  indicates that it is selected.

#### ● Text boxes

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text input display appears.

#### ● Pull-down menus

Selection boxes allow you to choose one of a range of options. Some menus show or hidden sub-options that appear as a list when you select an option.

### NOTE

- Depending on how the site was constructed, pull-down menus may include multiple available options that can be selected by checking . Each time you use  to move the focus between  and press , the option () is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press  (Finish) or  to end the procedure.

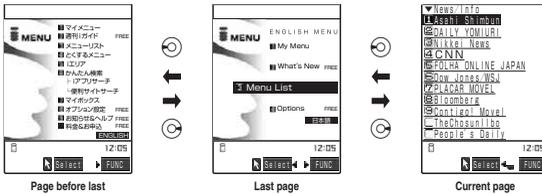
## Selection boxes

Pull-down menus allow you to choose one of a range of options. On some sites, you can see a part of options.

## Jumping to previous pages

Use this procedure to jump forward or back to a page that has been stored in the FOMA terminal's cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

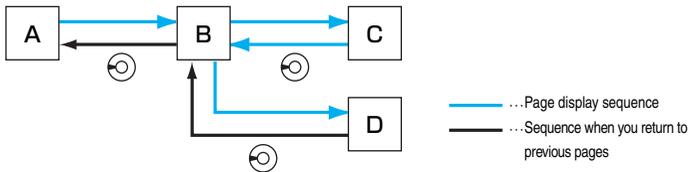
### 1 Press to jump back to the previous page or to jump forward to the next page



#### NOTE

- You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing . However, when you have pressed  to return to an earlier page (from "C" to "B") and then gone from that page to another page (from "B" to "D"), pressing  twice from page "D" will not display page "C", but will take you back to "B" and then to page "A" (see below). The previous page is displayed in order of "D", "B", and "A".

When the page display sequence is "A", "B", "C", "B" and "D"



- Cache → P.195

## Reloading data

Refreshes the displayed page.

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) (FUNC) "Reload"

#### NOTE

- If you use "Reload" in the final completion display for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message appears asking whether to resend the data. Note that selecting "YES" will resend information that has already been sent once.

## Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

Use this procedure to add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a phone number displayed on a site page>

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) (FUNC) "Add to phonebook" "YES"

Adding information to phonebook → P.97

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with phone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

## Working with Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when "" does not appear at the bottom of the screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image display".
- Selecting "YES" in "Use saved data" (P.217) allows you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

### NOTE

- To rerun a Flash movie, select "Retry" from the function menu. → P.198
- Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" in the function menu and then select the "OFF" setting. Even if "Vibrator" is set to "Melody linkage", this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.
- When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using "Display setting", the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, "Retry" is unavailable for repeating the Flash movie.
- When some Flash movies are saved or saved as a screen memo, part of the images may not be saved or they may otherwise differ from the way they appear on the site.

<My Menu>

## Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use "Bookmark" (P.205).

1

**Sites screen (P.197) ▶ "My Menu Registration" ▶ Select the "Input password" box ▶ Enter your 4-digit i-mode password ▶ "Select"**

i-mode password → P.203

### NOTE

- Charged sites in the iMenu list are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

## Viewing sites stored in My Menu

1



**"iMenu" ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ "My Menu" ▶ Select the site you want to view**

### NOTE

- To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.
- Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

## Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe to message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have it reset. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

**1**   **“iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Change i-mode Password”**

**2** **Select the “Current Password” box ▶ Enter your current i-mode password**

The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as “\*”.

**3** **Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter the new password**

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

**4** **Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter the new i-mode password again**

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

**5** **Select “Select”**

■ **If you enter your “Current Password” incorrectly**

A message appears saying that your i-mode password is incorrect.

■ **If you enter different numbers in “New Password” and “New Password (Confirmation)”**

A message appears saying that your i-mode password does not match.

<Internet connection>

## Viewing Websites

This function allows you to view any website simply by entering its URL.

- Websites that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly.
- The FOMA terminal operations available in websites are the same as those available in ordinary i-mode sites.
- A website may be displayed differently in your terminal from when it is viewed on PC.
- You can view a website designed for viewing on PC in full browser. → P.326

**1**   **“Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL” ▶ Select “<NEW>”**

The “Enter URL” screen appears.

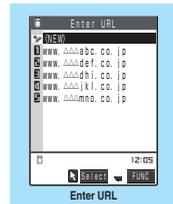
“Entering Text” → P.506

**2** **Enter URL ▶ “OK”**

A message appears warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL. Press  or  to connect to the website with the entered URL.

■ **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with “http://” or “https://”**

A message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.



Function menu ▶ P.205

### NOTE

- Some websites may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing .
- You can add the displayed page as a bookmark or store it as a screen memo, desktop icon or as your home URL.
- To enter a URL while a page is displayed, select “Enter URL” from the function menu and enter the URL.
- You can enter URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long including “http://” or “https://”.

## Viewing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

**1**   **“Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL”**

**2** **Select a URL number ▶ “OK”**

■ **To edit the selected URL**

▶ Select the “Internet address” box ▶ Edit the URL

## NOTE

- Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
- When you enter URLs and connect to sites, visits to the same URL are logged as separate entries.
- The URL history displays URLs up to 22 half-pitch characters long, excluding the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

## Function menu (Enter URL screen)

### 1 Enter URL screen > (FUNC) > Select any item:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted URL.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple URLs.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the registered URLs. Security code → P.140

## <Bookmarks>

# Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmarks folders allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change the titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

## Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each stored bookmark can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) > (FUNC) > "Add bookmark" > "YES" > Select a folder number

#### ■ If there are already 100 bookmarked sites

A message appears asking whether to delete a bookmark before adding the new site. To bookmark the new site, select "YES" and then select the folder and the bookmark to be deleted. To cancel, select "NO".

## NOTE

- Bookmark titles can consist of up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. Longer titles are truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").
- You cannot add or display bookmarks while PIM lock is set.
- Even if you enter the item in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you add the bookmark, the item does not appear when you visit the site from the added bookmark.

## Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

- 1**   **“Bookmark”**  
The “bookmark folder list screen” appears.



Function menu → P.206

- 2** **Select a folder number**  
The “Bookmark screen” appears.

- 3** **Select a bookmark number**



Function menu → P.207

### NOTE

- Page titles in the Bookmarks list are shown in the order they were used.

### Function menu (bookmark folder list screen)

You cannot rename or delete the “Bookmark” folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

- 1** **Bookmark folder list screen**   **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Add folder</b>	 <b>Enter a folder name</b> You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Edit folder name</b>	 <b>Enter a folder name</b> You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>No. of bookmarks</b>	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	Sends all your bookmarks via infrared data communication. “Transferring multiple data at the same time” → P.396
<b>Delete folder</b>	 <b>Enter the security code</b>  <b>“YES”</b> Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder. Security code → P.140
<b>Delete all</b>	 <b>Enter the security code</b>  <b>“YES”</b> Deletes all the bookmarks. However, the bookmark folders are not deleted. Security code → P.140

### NOTE

- You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.
- <Add folder>
- New added folders appear below the existing saved folders.
- To add a folder, you must enter the folder name.
- <Edit folder name>
- You can add a folder with the same name as an existing folder.
- <Delete all>
- This option can still be used even when no bookmarks are stored.

## Function menu (Bookmark screen)

### 1 Bookmark screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Move	▶ Select a folder number ▶ Use (FUNC) to select a checkbox (☐) of a bookmark ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” You can move bookmarks to other folders to organize them by category.
Edit title	▶ Edit title Titles can consist of up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons” → P.133
Compose message	Composes i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235
Send Ir data	“Transferring one data at a time” → P.395
Export this	“Data that can be copied between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card” → P.382
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
Copy URL	Highlight the head of text to copy by using (FUNC) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Highlight the last of text to copy by using (FUNC) ▶ (FUNC) Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted bookmarks.
Delete selected	▶ Use (FUNC) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple bookmarks.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all bookmarks stored in the folder. Security code → P.140

#### NOTE

##### <Edit title>

- If you delete the title and press (FUNC), the URL is added without the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

##### <Delete all>

- “Delete all” deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

#### <Save screen memo>

## Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

### Saving a screen memo

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save screen memo” ▶ “YES”

#### ■ If the memory for saved screen memos is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted screen memos before saving the new screen memo. To save the new image, select “YES”. Then select the image to be deleted.

#### NOTE

- When you save a screen memo of an SSL page, the SSL certificate for that page is also saved.
- Titles for saved screen memo can be up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters long. Longer titles are truncated.
- If you save the same page twice, at the 2nd time it is saved as a new screen memo and does not replace the earlier save.
- If you save as screen memo a site in which an item is already entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box, you cannot view the item when displaying the screen memo.
- When you save a display such as the data acquisition screen, the data for that screen is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion with set playback period may not be saved as a screen memo.
- Other than the data acquisition screen itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 half-pitch characters) can be saved.

# Displaying a screen memo

1



“Screen memo”

The “screen memo list screen” appears.



Function menu → P.208

2

Select a screen memo number

The screen memo (screen memo detail screen) appears.



Function menu → P.209

## NOTE

- Information on the screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.
- If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the screen memo list screen as “No title”.

## Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

1

Screen memo list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit title</b> You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with “”. The “” icon disappears when the protection is removed. The protected screen memo cannot be deleted.
<b>No. of memos</b>	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> of bookmark ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes the selected multiple screen memos.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ “YES” Deletes all the registered screen memos. Security code → P.140

## NOTE

### <Protect ON/OFF>

- Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the storable number of screen memos varies depending on the data size.

### <Edit title>

- If you delete the title, the screen memo is added as “No title”.

### <Delete>

- The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

### <Delete selected>

- The protected screen memos cannot be selected.

### <Delete all>

- The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

## Function menu (screen memo detail screen)

### 1 Screen memo detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description						
<b>Save image</b>	Save the images displayed in a screen memo. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P.209						
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	Add the phone number and e-mail address displayed on the screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97						
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Using dictionaries from the screen memo "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P.443						
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit title</b> You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506						
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with "🔒". The "🔒" icon disappears when the protection is removed. The protected screen memo cannot be deleted.						
<b>Compose message</b>	Allows you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for a screen memo pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached. <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Attach URL</b></td> <td>Composes an i-mode mail with the URL in a screen memo pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Attach image</b></td> <td>▶ <b>Select the image</b> Composes i-mode mail with the URL displayed in a screen memo attached to the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Insert image</b></td> <td>▶ <b>Select the image</b> Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen memo pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.242</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Attach URL</b>	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL in a screen memo pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	<b>Attach image</b>	▶ <b>Select the image</b> Composes i-mode mail with the URL displayed in a screen memo attached to the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	<b>Insert image</b>	▶ <b>Select the image</b> Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen memo pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.242
<b>Attach URL</b>	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL in a screen memo pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235						
<b>Attach image</b>	▶ <b>Select the image</b> Composes i-mode mail with the URL displayed in a screen memo attached to the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235						
<b>Insert image</b>	▶ <b>Select the image</b> Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen memo pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.242						
<b>Save schedule</b>	Stores a scheduled event by browsing the screen memos. "Storing schedule events" → P.424						
<b>URL</b>	Displays the screen memo URL.						
<b>Certificate</b>	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.						
<b>Sound effect</b>	Specifies the settings for Flash movie sound effects.						
<b>Retry</b>	Plays the Flash movie or animation in the screen memo again from the beginning.						
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.						

#### NOTE

##### <URL>

- You cannot edit the displayed URL.

##### <Retry>

- Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

##### <Delete>

- The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

#### <Save image>

## Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

Use this function to save an image displayed on the current site or sent to you in Message Request/Free and then set the saved image in the standby screen or another screen.

- If you save an image or animation attached to or displayed in i-mode mail, screen memos or sites, it can be set in the standby screen or as the wake-up screen.

<Example: When saving an image displayed on a site page>

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Save image" ▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder number

Position the frame  over the image to be saved.

#### ■ When the memory for saved images is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted images and then save the image. To save the new image, select "YES". Then select the image to be deleted.

## 2 “YES” ▶ Select the image

■ To not set the image in the standby screen, etc.

▶ “NO”

### NOTE

- You cannot save JPEG images larger than 1616 dots wide, 1212 dots high or GIF images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save images with a file size larger than 100K bytes.
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between “/” and “.” or in other cases, the file name is saved as “imagexxx” (xxx are numerals).
- If “Set image display” is set to “OFF”, you cannot save the image. The image can also not be saved if “” is displayed.
- If you try to save an image during reception of a large still image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.
- A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension “ifm” is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:
  - Frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), Sub-QCIF (128 × 96), Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
  - Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

### Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored images to the miniSD memory card. You can also transfer and save the image data on PC by using the Data Link Software (P.538) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them to devices other than FOMA terminal.)
- Saved data may be lost due to a reason such as a damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

### Progressive JPEG-format images

The progressive JPEG format is an image format for images to be used on i-mode sites or websites. Images in this format are initially displayed coarsely (at low resolution) and then displayed clearly as more data arrives.

<i-melody>

## Downloading Melodies from Sites

Use this function to set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Select a melody

### 2 “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder



#### ■ When the memory for storing melodies is full

A message appears asking whether to delete a melody before saving the new melody. To save the new melody, select “YES”. Then select the melody to be deleted.

#### ■ To play a melody

▶ “Play”

#### ■ To display melody information

▶ “Property”

### 3 “YES” ▶ Select the image

■ To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ “NO”

## NOTE

- You may not be able to download melodies depending on sites or the melody size.
- Downloaded melodies may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on the FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- The URL in the data acquisition screen is not stored in "Last URL". In this situation, the URL for the page displayed just prior to the data acquisition screen is stored as the last URL.
- Some downloaded melodies may not play correctly.
- When the file name of saved melody consists of only half-pitch alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 half-pitch characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. If there is nothing between the slash and the period or in other cases, the melody is saved as "melodyXXX" (XXX = 3-digit number).
- Downloaded melodies are played at the ring volume setting specified for "Phone" in "Ring volume".
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If you try to save melody during reception of a large still image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.

## Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored melodies to the miniSD memory card. You can also transfer and save the image data on PC by using the Data Link Software (P538) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save melodies in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them to devices other than FOMA terminal.)
- Saved data may be lost due to a reason such as a damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

# Downloading Document (PDF File) from Sites

Use this procedure to download and display a PDF-formatted document on website.

1

## Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Select a document ▶

When the document that requires download of all data is selected, the "document screen" (P.402) appears after all the data is downloaded.

When the document that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.

Operation for viewing a document → P.404

### ■ To cancel download in the middle

▶ (Quit) or (CLR)

When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later. → P.212

### ■ When the Enter password screen appears

Enter the password set to the document.

### ■ To save the document

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Save" ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder to store the document

For the document that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For the document that enables you to download the specified pages, the downloaded data (pages) are saved. You can download the remaining pages later. → P.212

### ■ To close the document

▶ (CLR)

When the document is not saved, the message asking whether to close the document appears. Select "YES" to close the document without saving it and "NO" to save it. To save the document, see "To save the document" above.

## ● Downloading remains of document that was downloaded partly

When you saved the partly downloaded document, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded document that can be checked with icons on the “document list screen” (P.402)

Icon	Description
	All pages are downloaded (no additional download is required).
	The specified pages are downloaded. You can download the remaining data at a time or by specifying pages.
	Only a part of data is downloaded for reasons such as download interruption. You can view the document by downloading the remaining data. (Some documents may not be viewed even if the remaining data is downloaded.)

<For document in which the specified pages have been downloaded (“”)>

### 1 Document list screen (P.402) ▶ Select a document you want to view ▶

The message informing that the document may be downloaded appears and then the “document screen” (P.402) appears.

### 2 ▶ Press on toolbar to display pages not downloaded

When you try to display pages not downloaded, you connect to the site to download the pages. Operation for viewing a document → P.404

#### ■ To specify the pages you want to download

▶ Select the page number indicated on toolbar ▶ Enter the page number you want to view

#### ■ To download all the remaining data at a time

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “DL remaining data” ▶ “YES”

#### ■ To save the downloaded document

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder to store the document

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

<For document in which only a part has been downloaded for reasons such as download termination (“”, “”)>

### 1 Document list screen (P.402) ▶ Select a document you want to view

Before the document is viewed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

### 2 “YES”

You connect to the site and downloading all the remaining data starts. After the downloading, the “document screen” (P.402) appears. (Some document may not be viewed so that the document screen may not appear.)

You can also download all the remaining data by selecting “DL remaining data” → “YES” → “YES” from the function menu in the document list screen.

#### ■ To save the downloaded document

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder to store the document

After the save, the icon changes to “” or “”.

#### NOTE

- It may take time to display some documents.
- A document that does not support the PDF Viewer or contains complicated design may be displayed incorrectly.
- If you attempt to download a document larger than 500K bytes, a confirmation message asking whether to download the document appears.
- You cannot download a document larger than 2M bytes.
- Depending on sites, you may not download a document.
- When the document that you try to download has the same definition file as a document stored in the FOMA terminal (not in miniSD memory card), they are recognized as the same document. Consequently download of the document will not be performed and the document in the FOMA terminal will be displayed.
- If the termination occurs during download of all the remaining data, the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data. Select “YES” to save the downloaded data.
- When you try to download a document with unsupported format, the download may not run and the screen showing only “” may appear. In this case, press to return to the previous screen.

## NOTE

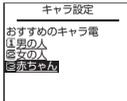
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters can be saved for the file name of saved document. If no file name is specified for the document, characters between the last "/" (slash) of URL and "." (period) are used for a file name. If no characters are between the last "/" and "." or in other cases, "pdfXXX" (XXX are numeric characters) is used for the file name.

## Downloading "Chara-den" Characters from Sites

Use this procedure to download your favorite Chara-den cartoon characters from i-mode sites.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed characters.

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Select a Chara-den character



### 2 "Save" ▶ "YES"



#### ■ If the FOMA terminal's memory for saved Chara-den characters is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted Chara-den and then save the image. To save the new Chara-den character, select "YES". Then select the character to be deleted.

#### ■ To view a Chara-den character

- ▶ "Play"

How to control a Chara-den character → P.368

#### ■ To display Chara-den information

- ▶ "Property"

## NOTE

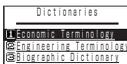
- Some Chara-den characters may not be downloaded depending on the file size.
- If you try to save a Chara-den character during 64K data communication, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while data communication is in progress.

## Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Select a data file



### 2 "Save" ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder



#### ■ To display dictionary information

- ▶ "Information display"

#### ■ When the memory for storing melodies is full

- ▶ Select a dictionary to be deleted ▶ "YES"

New dictionary is registered by overwriting the selected dictionary.

## NOTE

- If you try to save a Facstamp character during 64K data communication, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while data communication is in progress.
- Templates with no decorations at all or that contain images that it is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal cannot be saved.
- If a file is attached to the template, the attached file is deleted.
- The file name used for a template is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute). (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).  
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).
- You may not download data file depending on sites or the file size.

## <Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions>

# Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making calls, sending mail and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with mail sent from a PC.

## Phone To function

Use this function to make a call to a phone number displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message or document (PDF data).

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 half-pitch characters as a phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

### 1 Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Select a phone number



### 2 "Voice phone"



- To make a videophone call  
▶ "32K V-phone" or "64K V-phone"

### 3 "Dial"



- To withhold your caller ID when "Caller ID notification" is set to "ON"  
▶ "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Don't notify"
- To provide your caller ID when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF"  
▶ "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Notify caller"
- To follow the setting of "Caller ID notification"  
▶ "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Cancel prefix"

## NOTE

- You cannot use the Phone To function to make calls while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is set.
- You may use the Phone To function with highlighted information other than a phone number.

## NOTE

- You can also use this function to make calls to phone numbers provided as mail sender or recipient addresses and to phone numbers included in e-mail addresses with the "[phone number]@..." format.
- You cannot use the Phone To function in the full browser screen.

## Mail To function

Use this function to send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document (PDF data) or full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters as an e-mail address.

<Example: Sending mail from the received mail detail screen>

### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ Select a mail address



### 2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.235.

## NOTE

- You cannot use the Mail To function to send mail when "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- If the entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
- You may use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").

## Web To function

Use this function to view a website of the URL displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document (PDF data) or full browser screen.

- Not all sites support the Web To function.
- You can enter up to 512 half-pitch characters as a URL.

<Example: Displaying a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ Select a URL ▶ "YES"



## NOTE

- You cannot view a website with Web To function when "Self mode" is set.
- The URL display differs depending on the site.
- You may use the Web To function with the item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. "for more information").

# Specifying Your i-mode Settings

1



▶ “i-mode settings”

The “i-mode settings screen” appears.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description	
<b>Scroll</b> (default: 1 line)	Selects the number of scrolling lines in the detail screen for a screen memo, Message Request/Free or a page on a site, from “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines”.	
<b>Character size</b> (default: Standard)	Selects the character size of the detail screen for a screen memo, Message Request/Free or a page on a site, from “Standard”, “Small” or “Large”.	
<b>Set image display</b> (default: ON)	Set the image display setting for the detail screen for Message Request/Free, screen memos and pages on a site. When “OFF” is set, “” icon appears instead of an image.	
<b>i-motion setting</b>	Specifies the settings for i-motion.	
	<b>Automatic replay</b>	“Specifying whether an i-motion is played automatically” → P.318
	<b>i-motion type</b>	“Setting the downloaded i-motion type” → P.319
<b>Message auto display</b> (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets for the messages automatically displayed.	
<b>Auto melody play</b> (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening the Message Request/Free.	
<b>Use saved data</b> (default: YES)	“Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies” → P.217	
<b>Message list display</b> (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines in the message list screen.	
<b>Home URL</b>	Sets for using the home URL display function. You can enter up to 256 half-pitch characters for a URL.	
	<b>Invalid</b> (default)	Disables the home URL display setting.
	<b>Valid</b>	Enables the home URL display setting. Select the home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.
<b>Sound effect setting</b> (default: ON)	Sets whether to play the sound effect for the Flash movies in a site or screen memo.	
<b>Check settings</b>	Allows you to check the settings specified in “i-mode settings”.	
<b>Reset last URL</b>	Clears the stored URL history. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.	
<b>Reset</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ “YES”	
	Resets the settings specified in “i-mode settings” to the default settings. Security code → P.140	

## NOTE

### <Scroll>

● When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll one line at a time even if this function is not set to “1 line”.

### <Set image display>

● Even if “ON” is selected, the images may not be downloaded. If so, “” is displayed.

● If “OFF” is set, “” is displayed and data is not received.

### <Sound effect setting>

● Even if sound effects are set to “ON”, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

### <Reset last URL>

● When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or the last URL, selecting “Last URL” displays the iMenu screen.

## Setting the connection timeout <Set connection timeout>

Default setting  
60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

- 1**   ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Set connection timeout” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>60 seconds</b>	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 60 seconds.
<b>90 seconds</b>	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 90 seconds.
<b>Unlimited</b>	Does not automatically stop connecting.

### NOTE

- Even when you select “Unlimited”, the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

## Setting a host different from i-mode host <ISP connection>



Default setting  
i-mode

\* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this procedure to select a different host when you are using a service other than i-mode. If you change to a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts other than “i-mode”.

- 1**   ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Host selection” ▶ Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press  (Edit) ▶ Enter the security code ▶ Select any item:

Security code → P.140  
“Entering Text” → P.506

Item	Description
<b>Title</b>	Sets the title. You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
<b>Host name</b>	Sets the host name. You can enter up to 30 half-pitch characters.
<b>Host address</b>	Sets the host address. You can enter up to 99 half-pitch characters.

- 2** After completing the settings, press  (Finish)

### NOTE

- You cannot change your i-mode host while you are using i-mode. End the i-mode before changing the host.
- Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- To change a stored “User defined host”, use the procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored “User defined host”, select a host you want to delete, select “Delete” from the function menu, enter the security code and select “YES”. If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to “i-mode”.
- If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to “i-mode”.

## Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies <Use saved data>

Use this function to specify whether stored data is used when a Flash movie is running.

- The saved data may be used depending on the particular Flash movie. To enable Flash movies to use the saved data, set “YES” in “Use saved data”. The default setting is “YES”. Such movies may use the following types of stored data:
  - Battery Level
  - Ring volume setting
  - Reception Level
  - Bilingual Settings
  - Date and time
  - Model information

# 1 i-mode setting screen (P.216) ▶ “Use saved data” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
YES	Sets the FOMA terminal to use stored data when running Flash movie.
NO	Sets the FOMA terminal not to use stored data when running Flash movie.

<Receive message>

## When You Receive a Message

When the FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, Message Request and Message Free are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received Message Request and Message Free respectively. However, the number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for Message Request and between 10 and 100 Message Free depending on the amount of data in each saved message.
- You can set your own choice of ring tone for incoming Message Request and Message Free in “Select ring tone” (P.114) and vary the flashing pattern used by the incoming call lamp in “Illumination” (P.131).
- To use the Short Message Service (SMS), see P.294.

### Viewing received new messages

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select “OFF” in “Message auto display” (P.216).



The “ (green)” or “ (purple)” icon flashes and the “MessageR Receiving...” or “MessageF Receiving...” message is displayed.

- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop reception while a message is being received, hold down  for 1 second or longer. However, a message may be downloaded depending on the timing of the cancellation.



- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and Message Request/Free received are displayed in the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display period for the reception results screen may vary depending on the setting of “Mail/Msg. ring time” (P.118).
- To view the Message Request list screen or Message Free list screen, select “MessageR” or “MessageF”.



- If you have received a message while the FOMA terminal is in standby mode, the contents of the received Message Request or Message Free are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the standby screen was retrieved from the Task menu while any of the menu functions was being used, messages are not automatically displayed.
- If you use operations such as scrolling while a Message Request or Message Free is displayed, the message continues to be displayed.
- If none of the FOMA terminal keys are used for 15 seconds, the standby screen reappears.

### ■ When you disable automatic display

The reception results screen appears when you receive a Message Request or Message Free while using the FOMA terminal.

#### NOTE

- Automatic display for Message Request/Free can be selected in “Message auto display”. If you do not want to appear the message automatically, select “OFF”.
- When a new Message Request/Free arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with any Message Request/Free or i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center.

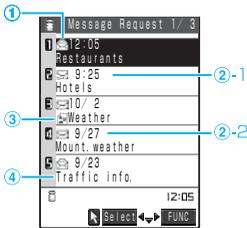
**NOTE**

- Received Message Request/Free are not automatically displayed if PIM lock or All lock is set, if the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, if an i-appli is running, or if the current screen is not the standby screen.
- If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of Message Request/Free when you receive a Message Request/Free, the oldest Message Request/Free that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.
- When the "📧 (red)" or "📧 (red)" icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further Message Request/Free. Remove the protection (P.222, 223) or read the unread Message Request and Message Free until the icons are no longer displayed.
- When the "📧 (green)" or "📧 (purple)" icon appears, there is a Message Request/Free held for you at the i-mode Center. Read some of your unread Message Request/Free or unprotect some messages and then check for new messages.
- When the "📧 (red)" or "📧 (red)" icon appears, the space for your Message Request/Free at the i-mode Center is full. Use "Check new message" to download your Message Request/Free.
- After automatic display, messages are still marked as unread in the Message Request or Message Free list screen. However, if you use an operation such as scrolling the screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read in the Message Request or Message Free list screen.
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and Message Request/Free at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
- If you receive a Message Request/Free when a screen other than the standby screen is shown and "Operation preferred" is selected in "Receiving display (P.281)", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
- If you receive a Message Request/Free when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the image display.
- If you receive a Message Request/Free during i-motion playback, the video and sound may be interrupted.

**How to view the Message Request and Message Free screens**

The Message Request and Message Free screens appear as shown below.

- Some of the icons displayed in the Message Request and Message Free list screens are also shown in the Message Request and Message Free detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

- ① Shows the Message Request/Free status.
  - 📧 : Unread Message Request/Free
  - 📧 : Read Message Request/Free
  - 📧 : Unread and protected Message Request/Free
  - 🔒 : Read and protected Message Request/Free
- ② Shows the message arrival time and date.
  - ②-1 : Only the time is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived today.
  - ②-2 : The date is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived yesterday or earlier.

- ③ Shows any attached or pasted file.
-  : Indicates an attached or pasted melody.
  -  : Indicates multiple attached or pasted melodies, one or more of which is invalid.
  -  : Indicates that all the attached or pasted melodies are invalid.
  -  : Indicates attached or pasted image. This icon is also shown when "OFF" is selected in "Set image display" in the Message detail screen (P.216).
  -  : Indicates multiple attached images, one or more of which is invalid.

 : Indicates that all the attached images are invalid.

 : Indicates Multiple pasted files.

The following icons appear when 1-line display is selected for a list screen:

 : Shows any attached or pasted file.

 : Indicates multiple attached or pasted files, one or more of which is invalid.

 : Indicates that all the attached or pasted files are invalid.

④ Shows the message subject.

<Check new message>

## Checking for Messages

Default setting

Check for all (mail, Message Request and Message Free)

- Message Request and Message Free delivered to the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode Center:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When "OFF" is displayed
  - When the message boxes are full
  - When "Receive option setting" (P.281) is set to "ON"
  - During a videophone call or remote observation
  - When Self mode is set
- Use "Set check new message" (P.283) to specify which items are checked for.

1

  ▶ "Check new message"

The check new message screen appears.

You can also check new messages by following procedures below.

-  ▶ "Check new message"
-  (For 1 second or longer)
-  ▶ "Check new message"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail" → "Message Request" → "Message Free".

The  (blue),  (green) and  (purple) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then downloads your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.

The numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, Message Requests and Message Frees are displayed.

### ■ To cancel the inquiry

▶ Hold down  for 1 second or longer during the inquiry

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and messages.

2

## Check for new i-mode mails, Message Request and Message Free messages

### NOTE

- When the  (green) or  (purple) icon appears, there is a Message Request/Free held for you at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your Message Request/Free is full, the  (red) or  (red) icon appears.
- If icons such as  (red)",  (red)",  (red)" and  (red)" are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail, SMS or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail, SMS and Message Request/Free or read or unprotect (P.222, 223) your unread mail, SMS and Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Mail, SMS, Message Request and Message Free which are read, or the protection is canceled are overwritten sequentially from an old one at the time of reception.

## NOTE

- The table below shows the maximum number of Message Request/Free that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
Message Request	300	72 hours
Message Free	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest message.

- Even if a Message Request or Message Free is stored at the i-mode Center, the “ (green)” or “ (purple)” may not be displayed if the FOMA terminal is turned off, or if “” is displayed.

<Message Request/Free>

## Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a Message Request/Free from the i-mode Center arrives on the FOMA terminal, the “ (green)” or “ (purple)” icon appears at the top of the screen.

1



“Message” ▶ “MessageR” or “MessageF”

The “message list screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.222

2

### Select a message you want to read

The “message detail screen” appears.

To display the next or previous message in the message detail screen, press .  
In the message detail screen, press  to return to the message list screen.



Function menu ▶ P.223

## NOTE

- Keys such as “OK” and “Cancel” may appear in a Message Request/Free. In such cases, the keys can be used in the same way as keys in a site.

## Function menu (Message list screen)

### 1 Message list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Display all</b>	The original display (all items shown in reverse chronological order) is reverted from a sorted or filtered display.	
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts the Message Request/Free in chronological or reverse chronological order.	
<b>Filter</b>	Displays only the Message Request/Free that meets the specified criteria.	
	<b>Unread</b>	Displays only unread messages.
	<b>Read</b>	Displays only read messages.
	<b>Protected</b>	Displays only protected messages.
	<b>Melody</b>	Displays only messages with attached/pasted melodies.
<b>Image</b>	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images.	
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects Message Request/Free.	
<b>Unprotect all</b>	Unprotects all the protected Message Request/Free.	
<b>No. of messages</b>	Displays the number of stored Message Request/Free, unread messages and protected messages.	
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted Message Request/Free.	
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple Message Request/Free with the checkboxes checked.	
<b>Delete read</b>	Deletes read Message Request/Free.	
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Message Request/Free. Security code → P.140	

#### NOTE

##### <Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread messages in chronological order, select "Unread" in the Filter menu and then "Chronological" in the Sort menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list with the Sort display and then exit the screen, when you display the respective list screens again the list will revert to showing all the messages.

##### <Filter>

- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list using the Filter function and then exit the screen, when you display the respective list screens again the list will revert to showing all the messages.
- If "OFF" is selected in "Set image display", you cannot select "Image".
- Selecting "Delete read" or "Delete all" when a list of filtered Message Request/Free is displayed deletes all the currently displayed read or unprotected messages respectively.

##### <Delete>

- This option can delete even unread Message Request/Free.
- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.

##### <Delete selected>

- This option can delete even unread Message Request/Free.
- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.

##### <Delete read>

- The protected read Message Request/Free is not deleted.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete read" deletes only the unprotected Message Request/Free shown in the current list screen.

##### <Delete all>

- This option deletes even unread Message Request/Free.
- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete all" deletes only the unprotected Message Request/Free shown in the current list screen.

## Function menu (Message detail screen)

### 1 Message detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	Add the phone number and e-mail address displayed on Message Request/Free to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.97
<b>Save melody</b>	Saves a melody that is attached to or pasted into Message Request/Free.
<b>Save image</b>	Saves an image attached to Message Request/Free. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P.209
<b>Reload image</b>	Reloads an image when image loading has failed.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects Message Request/Free.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the Message Request/Free displayed in the message detail screen.

#### NOTE

##### <Save melody>

- Select an attached melody to play it.
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- When you save a pasted melody, it is saved under its title, not under the file name. If melody has no title, its file name is appended.
- Some saved melodies may not play correctly.

##### <Reload image>

- Some images may not be displayed correctly even when reloaded.
- Only images in the message body can be reloaded. The attached image is not reloaded. Images with " (black and white)" displayed also cannot be reloaded.

##### <Delete>

- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.

## Using SSL Certificates

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set to valid/invalid.

### 1 (MENU) ▶ (Setting) ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Certificate"



### 2 Select a certificate ▶ Check the details

#### ■ To validate and invalidate SSL certificates

▶ Highlight a certificate ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Valid/Invalid"

#### NOTE

- All the certificates are set to "Valid" at the time of purchase.
- The " (Valid)" icon appears when you select "Valid". The " (Invalid)" icon appears when you select "Invalid".
- If you select "Invalid", you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to "Valid" and this setting cannot be changed.

# Setting FirstPass

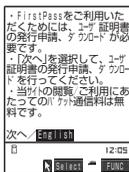
User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

## Connect to the FirstPass Center

Follow the procedure below to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with the FOMA card (blue).
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, you must first set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. → P.47
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

### 1 ▶ “Client certificate” ▶ Check the description ▶ “English”



### 2 “Request your certificate”



#### ■ If you are using FirstPass for the first time

Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.

#### ■ To apply invalidation

Select “Other settings” and then select “Revoke your certificate”.

Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

### 3 Check the description ▶ “Continue”

### 4 Enter the PIN2 code

PIN2 code → P.141

### 5 Check the message ▶ “Download” ▶ Check the description ▶ “Continue” ▶ “Menu”

The confirmation message appears.

The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

#### NOTE

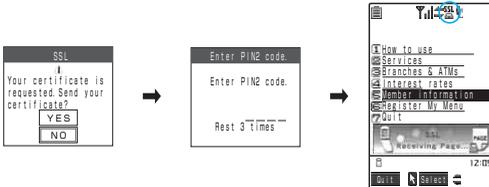
- Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select “Usage regulations (Japanese only)” and read the information carefully.
- You cannot use the following function during connection to the FirstPass Center.
  - Making or receiving videophone calls (making and receiving voice calls is available)
  - Sending or receiving i-mode mail (sending and receiving SMS is available)
  - Check new message (Check new SMS is available)
  - Sending or receiving speed photo mail
  - Reception of Message Request/Free
  - Downloading i-motion
  - Web To function
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.

## NOTE

- If you use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certification again and download it.
- To check a downloaded user certificate, see “Using SSL Certificates” (P.223).
- FirstPass is also available in full browser.

## Using a user certificate to connect to a site

- 1 **Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Confirm user certificate transmission ▶ “YES”**  
▶ Enter your PIN2 code



## NOTE

- If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You can still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting “YES”, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select “NO”. When the “SSL session was terminated” message appears, press **END** to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

### Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo’s digital authentication service. When you use FirstPass, the site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates so that both parties can each conduct client authentication by checking the certificate provided the other party.
- FirstPass can be used either when the FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the CD-ROM bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the PDF-format “FirstPassManual” contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is in Japanese only.) To view the PDF-format “FirstPassManual”, you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended).
- If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional call charges will apply.) Refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the “FirstPass usage regulations” shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you will need to enter your PIN2 code (P.141). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated at an NTT DoCoMo service counter.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

# Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting  
DoCoMo

\* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Sets the host for downloading the user certificate.

1   "Connection setting" ► "Certificate host"

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press  (Edit) ► Enter the security code ► Select any item:

Security code → P.140

Item	Description
Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 half-pitch characters.
Host address	Sets the host address. You can enter up to 99 half-pitch characters.

3 After completing the settings, press  (Finish)

## NOTE

- To change a stored "User setting host", use the procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored "User setting host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

# ● Mail

What is i-mode Mail? .....	228
Displaying Mail Menu.....	<b>Mail menu</b> 234
<b>■ Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail</b>	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail.....	<b>Compose message/Send</b> 235
Composing and Sending Deco-mail .....	<b>Deco-mail</b> 242
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail .....	247
Attaching Files .....	<b>Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail</b> 250
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later.....	<b>Save i-mode mail</b> 251
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists.....	252
<b>■ Receiving and using i-mode mail</b>	
When You Receive i-mode Mail.....	<b>Auto receive mail</b> 254
● Emotion-expressing mail .....	255
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively .....	<b>Receive option</b> 257
Checking for i-mode Mail .....	<b>Check new message</b> 258
Replying to i-mode Mail .....	<b>Reply to mail</b> 259
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients.....	<b>Forward mail</b> 260
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook.....	261
Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail.....	<b>Save melody</b> 261
Saving Images in Image Mail.....	<b>Receive image mail</b> 262
Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail.....	<b>i-motion mail</b> 262
<b>■ Using mailboxes</b>	
Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox.....	<b>Inbox/Outbox</b> 263
<b>■ Using mail records</b>	
Using Mail Records.....	<b>Sent address list/Received address list</b> 279
<b>■ Specifying mail settings</b>	
Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions.....	<b>Mail settings</b> 280
<b>■ Using chat mail</b>	
Composing and Sending Chat Mail .....	<b>Compose chat/Send</b> 286
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group.....	289
<b>■ Using SMS (Short Message)</b>	
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message) ....	<b>Compose SMS/Send</b> 292
When You Receive an SMS (Short Message) .....	<b>Receive SMS</b> 294
Checking for SMS (Short Message) .....	296
Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings.....	<b>Set SMS</b> 296
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM) .....	<b>UIM operation</b> 298

# What is i-mode Mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS.

To use i-mode mail, you must first subscribe to the "i-mode" service. How to send and receive i-mode mail → P.235, 254

● You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode. How to send and receive SMS → P.292, 294

## i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet.

Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

### ■ New i-mode subscribers

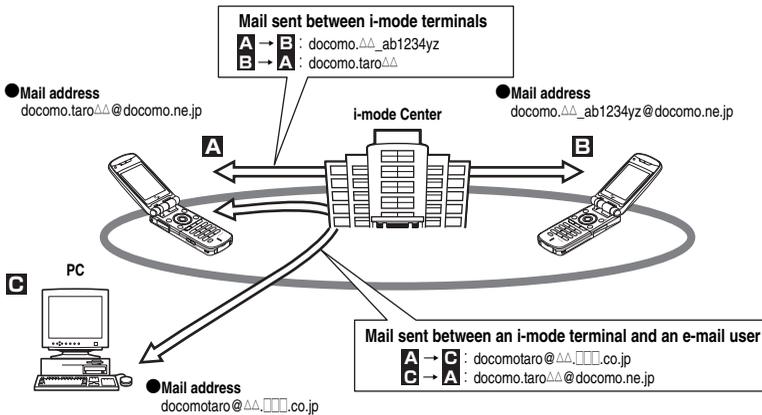
The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To check your own e-mail address>

Menu screen ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ "Confirm Mail Address"

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), only the part before the @ symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including "@docomo.ne.jp", must be used.



- How to send i-mode mail → P.235
- How to receive i-mode mail → P.254

### ■ Receiving mail selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail. → P.257

### ■ Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>

Menu screen ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ Each setting

\* For details, refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

### ■ Changing your mail address <Change Mail Address>

For example, if your address is "docomo.taro\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp", you can change the part that precedes the "@" symbol to your preferred name.

## ■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>

When your phone number is used as your e-mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

## ■ Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Reset Mail Address>

Use this feature to reset your mail address to "[your phone number]@docomo.ne.jp".

## ■ Confirming your mail address <Confirm Mail Address>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

## ■ Mail accept/reject settings

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

- ① Domain-selective reception <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Mail from Selected Domains>
  - Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among au, Vodafone, TU-KA and WILLCOM.
  - Also accepts only mail from specified domains when the mail is not from one of the above providers.
  - ※ You can receive all mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode and i-shot services and the Charge Notice service, as well as e-billing invoice notifications and M-stage Visualnet mail.
- ② Address-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Selected Mail/Reject Selected Mail>
  - This feature allows you to accept or reject mail from specified addresses among all the mail you receive.
- ③ i-mode mail-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive only i-mode mail/Reject only i-mode mail>
  - Use this feature to accept or reject only mail from other i-mode subscribers (rejects mail sent via the Internet).
- ④ Restricting mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
  - This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including movas) once you have received 200 messages from that terminal in one day. The default setting is "Reject", so you can reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders simply by leaving this setting unchanged.
- ⑤ Unsolicited advertising ※ mail rejection <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
  - This feature lets you reject mail marked as “未承諾広告※” that is sent to you without your consent. The FOMA terminal's default setting is "Reject", so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising. (Senders are legally required to include “未承諾広告※” (6 full-pitch Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)
  - \* You cannot set "Domain-selective reception", "Address-specific reception", "Address-specific rejection", "i-mode mail-specific reception" and "i-mode mail-specific rejection" at the same time.
- ⑥ Reject SMS <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings>
  - This function allows you to reject all SMS or only SMS with no caller ID, and to confirm status.

## ■ Checking your mail settings <Confirm Settings>

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

## ■ Restricting mail size <Limit Mail Size>

Use this option to limit the size of accepted mail to a preset size.

## ■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

Use this option to stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

## ■ Preventing nuisance mail

Effective ways of preventing nuisance mail include changing your mail address and using address-specific accept/reject.

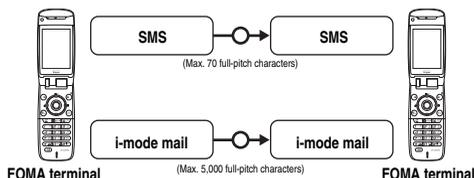
## ● Your SMS (Short Message) address

Your SMS address is your "subscriber mobile phone number".

## ● Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

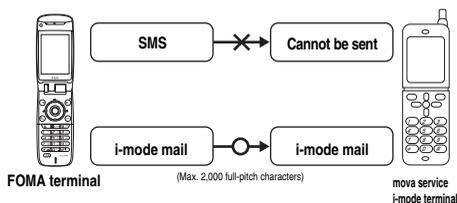
### FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal

You can only exchange SMS with other FOMA terminal users.



### FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

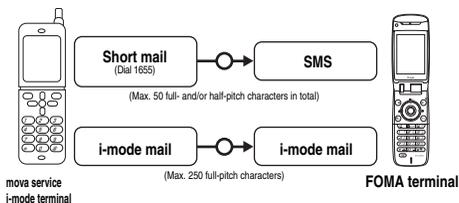
To send messages from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal, use i-mode mail.



※ : You cannot send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal with mova service.

### mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail\* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



\* : Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.

- Short Mail cannot be sent from a FOMA terminal. Dialing 1655 does not enable you to send Short Mail from your FOMA terminal.
- On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

## ● Numbers of characters that can be sent/received

The table below shows the limits on the number of characters that you can send or receive using i-mode mail and SMS.

### ■ i-mode mail

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.)
Subject	15	30
Address	—	50
Message	5,000*	10,000*

\* : The number of characters in the message that you can send or receive decreases if a file (melody, image or i-motion) is attached to the message. Note also that the number characters that can be sent in Deco-mail is no more than half the numbers shown above.

## ■ SMS (Short Message)

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.*1)
Address	—	20 (numbers only)*2
Message	70	160*3

\*1: Half-pitch katakana characters are counted as 1 full-pitch character.

\*2: 21 characters if a half-pitch “+” is included at the beginning.

\*3: Only half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols (excluding 。 [ ] { } [ ] |、・-＊`´˘˙˚˛). (Up to 70 characters when other characters are included.)

### NOTE

- You can send and receive i-mode mail where the message body contains up to 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes), but the number of characters that can be sent and received is reduced depending on the amount of data in any attached files. You cannot send or receive files that are incompatible with i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the “添付ファイル削除 (Attached file delete)” message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message. (The “添付ファイル削除 (Attached file delete)” message is included the count of the number of characters that can be received.)
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either “/” or “//” is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- When you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, the message body can contain up to a maximum of 2,000 full-pitch characters. An i-shot or i-motion mail is sent with the URL of the i-shot or i-motion specified in the mail message. Attached files other than i-shot and i-motion are deleted.
- If the number of characters in the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, all characters that exceed the limit are automatically deleted.
- Except for mail exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the messages as they may not display properly on the receiver side.

## ● If the FOMA terminal cannot receive mail

When mail is delivered to the i-mode Center, it is immediately sent to your FOMA terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, or if you have selected “ON” in “Receive option setting” (P.281), the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. While mail is held at the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times over a set period of time. Using other settings, you can select and receive your mail at the i-mode Center.

### NOTE

#### <i-mode mail>

- The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 M bytes)	720 hours

- Mail that is left at the i-mode Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- The limit on the number of messages that can be held differs depending on the mail file sizes. When the amount of held mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode Center no longer accepts incoming mail and any new mail is returned to the sender together with an error message. When this happens, the “ (red)” icon appears on your i-mode terminal’s screen. If you have selected “ON” in “Receive option setting” (P.281), “ (red)” may not appear on your i-mode terminal when the limit is exceeded.
- You can download mail held at the i-mode Center to your FOMA terminal using “Check new message” (P.258) or “Receive option” (P.257). When the new mail arrives on your FOMA terminal, other held mail and messages are also downloaded at the same time.
- All the mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted once it has been received on your i-mode terminal. The received mail is stored on your i-mode terminal. → P.254
- Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- If you use “Suspend Mail” function, new mail is not held at the i-mode Center.

#### <SMS>

- SMS are held at the SMS Center for a maximum of 72 hours. You can set the holding period for sent SMS using “SMS validity period” (P.281, 294).
- SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- You can receive SMS held at the SMS Center to your FOMA terminal using “Check new SMS” (P.296).
- SMS held at the SMS Center is deleted once it has been received on your FOMA terminal. The received SMS is stored on your FOMA terminal.
- SMS received on your FOMA terminal can be moved or copied to a FOMA card (UIM). → P.298

## Other useful features

### Attachments

#### Attached melodies

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with an attached melody → P.250
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached melody → P.261

#### Attached images

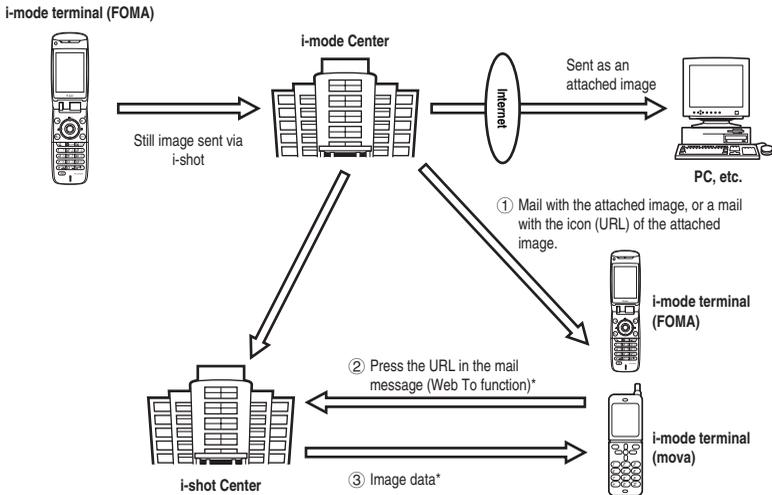
Still images that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website or retrieved from external memory can be attached to i-mode mail and then sent and received on your FOMA terminal. (Note that you cannot attach images when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with an attached image → P.250
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached image → P.262

### i-shot

You can use i-shot to exchange still images shot using a terminal with a camera function as attached files with i-mode terminals (including movas), PCs or third-party mobile phones. A mail that includes the attached file format or the URL (or icon) to view the image and the storage expiration date of the image is sent to the recipient, and pressing the URL can download the image. The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 full-pitch (369 bytes) long. If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

- To send i-mode mail with an attached image → P.250
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached image → P.262



\* : If you receive a mail with the URL of the attached image

- Images are held for up to 10 days at the i-shot Center, after which they are automatically deleted.
- An i-mode terminal can send a still image up to 500K bytes. When an attached image more than 20K bytes is sent to an i-mode terminal, the recipient receives the image automatically compressed in size.

### i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites with phones that support i-motion mail, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

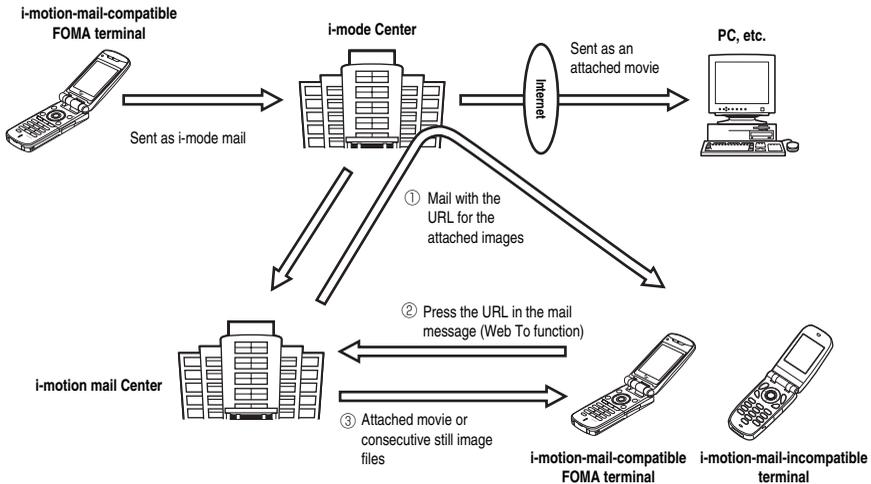
- To send i-motion mail → P.250
- To receive i-motion mail → P.262

## ■ How the service works

Movie files attached to i-motion mail are sent to the i-motion mail Center where they are saved. (If the mail is sent to a PC, the data is sent directly as an attached file.)

When i-motion mail is received by a phone that supports i-motion mail, the URL appears in the message body of the mail and the recipient can then download the movie by pressing the URL.

If you send i-motion mail to a phone that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted into consecutive still images and the recipient receives a mail message containing the URL for the images. The recipient can then download the images by pressing the URL displayed in the mail.



- Images are stored at the i-motion mail center for up to 10 days. If this storage period is exceeded, the images are automatically deleted.
- A terminal that supports i-motion mail can receive a movie up to 500K bytes. The size of downloaded movie is automatically changed to the one that matches the terminal that supports i-motion mail.

## ■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by allowing you to vary the text size or change the background color, etc. when editing mail, or by pasting images into the message body. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.)

If you send Deco-mail to a phone that does not support this function, a URL is included in the message body. The recipient presses on the URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail → P.242
- Compatible phones: 90Xi series, 70Xi series, F880iES\*
- \*: F880iES is only capable of reception.

## ■ Templates

You can use templates pre-installed on the FOMA terminal to send Deco-mails and to receive festive mail messages such as Christmas, birthday and New Year's greetings.

- Using Templates to Create Deco-mail → P.247

## ■ Sending broadcast mail

This feature allows you to send the same i-mode mail message to multiple (up to 5) recipients at once. → P.238

- The communication charges for broadcast mail are the same as if only one message was sent. (However, the charge increases by the amount of data in the additional recipient addresses.)

## ■ Cc/Bcc sending and receiving

As on a PC, you can select "To", "Cc" and/or "Bcc" as the recipient when editing i-mode mail. However, if there is no address in the "To" field, the mail cannot be sent.

- "Change rcv. type" in function menu (new mail screen) → P.237

## ■ Chat mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- If there are multiple parties exchanging chat mail, the communication charges are the same as for broadcast mail.

## NOTE

### <Attachments>

- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send still images shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- If you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal (excluding all the 501 models, R691i, and R209i), you can only send 1 JPEG-format image as an attachment.

### <i-motion mail>

- If you send i-motion mail to an i-mode terminal, each i-motion browser URL for the i-motion stored at the i-motion Center can be accessed and the i-motion can be downloaded 50 times. Once it has been accessed downloaded 50 times, the i-motion can be no longer downloaded.
- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send movies shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- To play an i-motion on a PC, you must have compatible software. See the DoCoMo website for details.

### <Sending broadcast mail>

- The communication charges for broadcast mail are the same as if 1 message were sent to each recipient. However, you are only charged for the data in the additional recipient addresses.

### <Chat mail>

- Communication charges for chat mail with multiple recipients are the same as when broadcast mail is sent.

## ■ Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using the Data Link Software (P.538) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails through damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

## <Mail menu>

# Displaying Mail Menu

1



Pressing (MAIL) in standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Item	Description
<b>Inbox</b>	Shows the Inbox folder screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-appli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS. →P.263
<b>Outbox</b>	Shows the Outbox folder screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-appli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS. →P.263
<b>Draft</b>	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. →P.251
<b>Compose message</b>	Shows the screen used for composing i-mode mail. →P.235
<b>Chat mail</b>	Shows the chat screen. →P.287
<b>Compose SMS</b>	Shows the screen used for composing SMS. →P.292
<b>Check new message</b>	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and receives any i-mode mail held at the Center. →P.258
<b>Receive option</b>	Checks the subject lines of the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center and then selects the i-mode mail to be received or deletes items of i-mode mail before it is received when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". →P.257
<b>Check new SMS</b>	Sends an inquiry to the SMS Center and receives any SMS held at the Center. →P.296
<b>Template</b>	Shows the template screen. →P.248
<b>Mail settings</b>	"Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions" →P.280

# Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- To attach a melody, image, movie or i-motion → P.250
- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail → P.242
- “Entering Text” → P.506

- 1**   “Compose message”

“New mail screen” appears.



Function menu → P.237

- 2** “ **To** ”

“Address screen” appears.

Press  (FUNC) in the new mail screen, you can enter an address by using the address reference input from a function menu (P.237).



Function menu → P.239

- 3** Enter an address

- 4** “ **Subject** ”

“Subject screen” appears.

- 5** Enter a subject

The subject can consist of up to 15 full-pitch characters or 30 half-pitch characters.



Function menu → P.239

- 6** “  ”

“Message screen” appears.

- 7** Enter message body

The message body can consist of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character and shown as “ ↵ ”. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can compose and send the Deco-mail. → P.242

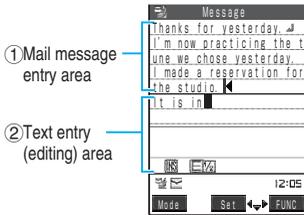
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. → P.247



Function menu → P.240

## ■ Screen shown when you enter an i-mode mail message

The screen when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.



① Mail message entry area

② Text entry (editing) area

① Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.

② Text entry (editing) area: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it.

You can use the Word Prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area. → P.512

## 8 Check the message (Send)



An animation is displayed while the i-mode mail is being sent. Press  to return to the Mail menu screen.

### ■ To interrupt transmission

 (1 second or longer)

Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

## ● Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen



Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press .

Searching phonebook → P.101

The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.

## ● Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail

Select "Save" from the function menu on the new mail screen while composing the message.

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.

Once you have 20 draft i-mode mail messages stored, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail or SMS. You can subsequently re-edit and send i-mode mail saved in the Draft mailbox.

### NOTE

- If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail is not replaced.
- If "Restrict dialing" (P.150) is set, you can only browse the phonebook to retrieve the phone numbers specified in "Restrict dialing". Also, if "Keypad dial lock" (P.148) is set, you cannot enter the address directly.
- When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- If you press the  or  key without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing screen. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original screen without discarding the text.
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Select "NO" to return to the original screen.
- You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses. However, you must set an address in the "To" field to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- If you enter an address that was stored in the phonebook with a "Secret code" assigned (P.105), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not saved in the record of sent mail addresses.

**NOTE**

- Provided the recipient is an i-mode subscriber, you can also send i-mode mail from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- Spaces (blanks) are also counted in the same way as characters.

**Function menu (new mail screen)****1 New mail screen** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Send</b>	Sends i-mode mail.
<b>Preview</b>	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message.
<b>Save</b>	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. "Saving i-mode mail" → P.251
<b>Look-up address</b>	Enters the address by browsing the phonebook, records or mailing lists.
	<b>Phonebook</b> Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Searching for an address in the phonebook" → P.238
	<b>Sent address</b> Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	<b>Received address</b> Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	<b>Mail member</b> Enters e-mail addresses from a mailing list. "Entering mailing list member addresses" → P.239
<b>Add receiver</b>	Adds the address from the phonebook, records or other data. "Adding addresses" → P.238
	<b>Phonebook</b> Adds an e-mail address by searching the phonebook.
	<b>Sent address</b> Adds an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	<b>Received address</b> Adds an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	<b>Enter address</b> Adds an e-mail addresses directly entering each character.
<b>Delete receiver</b>	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only 1 address entered, you cannot delete the address.
<b>Change rcv. type</b>	Changes the address type with an address selected.
	<b>To</b> The recipient's address. Displayed to the recipient. The mail address entered in the "To" field is displayed in other recipients' terminals.
	<b>Cc</b> Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
	<b>Bcc</b> Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
<b>Template</b>	You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → P.247
<b>Attach file</b>	Attaches a melody, image or i-motion data to an i-mode mail message. "Attaching Files" → P.250
<b>Activate camera</b>	Activates camera function. "Shooting Still Images" → P.162 "Shooting Movies" → P.171
	<b>Photo mode</b> Starts up the camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or Mail (S) (128 × 96).
	<b>Movie mode</b> Starts up the camera function so you can shoot a movie. File size setting can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long).
<b>Delete att. file</b>	Deletes the highlighted attachment file.
<b>Del all att. files</b>	Deletes all the attachment files.
<b>Add header</b>	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.
<b>Add signature</b>	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.
<b>Erase message</b>	Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.

Item	Description
Delete	Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

## NOTE

## &lt;Change rcv. type&gt;

- You cannot send i-mode mail with no address set in the "To" field.
- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

## &lt;Add header&gt;&lt;Add signature&gt;

- If you select the "Insert" checkbox in "Header/Signature", the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message. → P.282
- If the combined size of the text (including attached melodies or images) and the pasted header and/or signature exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters, you will not be able to paste the header and/or signature into the mail.

## Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter an address by searching for e-mail addresses in the phonebook.

### 1 New mail screen (P.235) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Look-up address" ▶ "Phonebook" ▶ Select a search method

Searching phonebook → P.101

### 2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

### 3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.235.

## NOTE

- If the phone number or e-mail address is already entered, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing data. Select "YES" to overwrite the previous recipient or "NO" to retain the previous recipient.
- When "Restrict dialing" (P.150) is set, you can only call the phone numbers specified in the "Restrict dialing" settings.

## Adding addresses

You can enter additional addresses so that an i-mode mail message is sent to multiple addresses at the same time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses. If you have already entered 5 addresses or no address is entered, the "Add receiver" option is no longer available in the function menu.

<Example: Looking up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

### 1 New mail screen (P.235) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Add receiver" ▶ "Phonebook"

▶ Select a search method

Searching phonebook → P.101

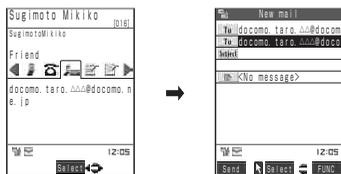
### 2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.

#### ■ To change the entered address

▶ Select the address you want to change ▶ Enter the mail address

You can also change (overwrite) the address by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu.



### 3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.235.

#### NOTE

- If mail could not be sent to a recipient, a message appears notifying you that mail could not be sent to an address.
- If you try to send an i-mode mail message with the same address entered more than once, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated address.
- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

## Entering mailing list member addresses <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add multiple addresses at once.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand.

→ P.252

### 1 New mail screen (P.235) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Look-up address" ▶ "Mail member"

### 2 Select a mail member



The selected mail member is entered into the recipient column.

### 3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.235.

#### NOTE

- When "Keypad dial lock" (P.148) is set, you cannot browse and enter address from mailing lists.
- If a recipient has already been entered and you specify a recipient from a mail member, a message is displayed asking you whether you want to overwrite the recipient. Select "YES" if you want to overwrite the recipient. Select "NO" if you do not want to overwrite the recipient.

## Function menu (address/subject screen)

### 1 Address/subject screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
PI•SB input mode	"Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P.517
Face Mark	"Entering face symbols" → P.517
Upper case <sup>*1</sup>	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → P.515
Full pitch <sup>*2</sup>	"Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P.508
Copy	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.522
Cut	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.522
Paste	"Pasting text" → P.523
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases" → P.520
Space	"Inserting a space (blank)" → P.516
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed" → P.516
Symbols	"Inserting symbols" → P.516
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs" → P.517
Kuten code	"Entering Kuten Codes" → P.523
Overwrite <sup>*3</sup>	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry.

Item	Description
<b>Quote phonebook</b>	"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520
<b>Quote own number</b>	"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520
<b>Access reader</b>	Pastes text information acquired with the "Access reader". "Scanning Text" → P.182
<b>Bar code reader</b>	Pastes text data acquired with the "Bar code reader". "Using the Bar code Reader" → P.179
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.441
<b>Prediction ON<sup>*4</sup></b>	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF. → P.512
<b>CHG input method</b>	Selects an input mode from "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)", or "Mode 3 (T9 input)". You can switch the character input mode only in the Text entry (Edit) screen that is currently displayed. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (Edit) screen reappears, the input mode returns to the one set in "Character input method".
<b>T9 Kanji CHG mode<sup>*5</sup></b>	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. When "T9 change mode" is set to "T9 Kanji CHG mode", "T9 Kana CHG mode" is displayed. Conversely when "T9 change mode" is set to "T9 Kana CHG mode", "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is displayed. You can only switch conversion modes while entering characters when on the character input (edit) screen. Once you have finished entering the characters and the next character input screen is displayed, it returns to the setting specified in "Character input method" → "T9 change mode".
<b>Jump</b>	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.

\*1: "Lower case" appears in the subject screen.

\*2: "Half pitch" appears in the subject screen.

\*3: "Insert" appears when "Overwrite" is selected.

\*4: "Prediction OFF" appears in the subject screen.

\*5: "T9 Kana CHG mode" appears when "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is selected.

## Function menu (message screen)

### 1 Message screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Decorate mail</b>	"Decorating a message" → P.243
<b>PI+SB input mode</b>	"Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P.517
<b>Face Mark</b>	"Entering face symbols" → P.517
<b>Lower case</b>	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → P.515
<b>Half pitch</b>	"Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P.508
<b>Copy</b>	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.522
<b>Cut</b>	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.522
<b>Paste</b>	"Pasting text" → P.523
<b>Common phrases</b>	"Entering common phrases" → P.520
<b>Space</b>	"Inserting a space (blank)" → P.516
<b>Line feed</b>	"Inserting a line feed" → P.516
<b>Symbols</b>	"Inserting symbols" → P.516
<b>Pictograph</b>	"Entering pictographs" → P.517
<b>Quote phonebook</b>	"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520
<b>Quote own number</b>	"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520
<b>Access reader</b>	Pastes text information acquired with the "Access reader". "Scanning Text" → P.182
<b>Bar code reader</b>	Pastes text information acquired with the "Bar code reader". "Using the Bar code Reader" → P.179
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.441

Item	Description
<b>Jump</b>	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.
<b>Property</b>	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
<b>Undo</b>	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.
<b>CHG input method</b>	Selects an input mode from "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)", or "Mode 3 (T9 input)". You can switch the character input mode only in the Text entry (Edit) screen that is currently displayed. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (Edit) screen reappears, the input mode returns to the one set in "Character input method".
<b>Preview</b>	Displays a preview of the message.
<b>Change window</b>	When you are replying to mail while referring to the original message, this option switches between the reference screen and the message screen. "Changing the Active Display" → P.526

#### NOTE

##### <Undo>

- After you press "Undo" and return the text or message decoration to its state one step ago, you cannot cancel "Undo".
- On the message screen, if you press  to return to the new mail screen and then go back to the message screen, you cannot "Undo". (If you select "Preview" on the message screen, after previewing the text, you are able to return.)

##### <Preview>

- When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-appli in an i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions cannot be used.

## Sending an image you shot during a call <Speed photo mail>

This function allows you to take a picture while you are in the middle of a voice call and then send the picture to the other party.

- To use Speed photo mail, the phone number and e-mail address of the person you are talking to must be stored in the phonebook under the same memory number beforehand.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

### 1 In-call screen (P.50) (FUNC) "Speed photo mail" "Photo mode"

#### ■ To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal

▶ "Speed photo mail" ▶ "My picture"

Images that cannot be sent cannot be selected.

You can only send "Mail(L)" or "Mail(S)" images that are 9,000 bytes or less in size when they are attached to mails.

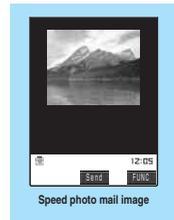
### 2 or ( )

The camera shoots an image.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound as it takes the picture.

You can use the camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. → P.164

"Speed photo mail image screen" appears.



Function menu ▶ P.242

### 3



A send confirmation message appears.

#### ■ When multiple e-mail addresses are registered

▶ Select the e-mail address of the intended recipient



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## NOTE

- This function cannot be used in the following situations:
    - When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are not stored in the phonebook
    - When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode"
    - When the called party has not provided a caller ID (User unset or Not supported, etc.)
    - When Restrict dialing is set and the other party's phone number is not designated in the Restrict dialing settings
    - When PIM lock is set
    - During packet communication using a FOMA terminal as a modem in data communication
    - When the Draft mailbox is full
    - During call waiting
    - When the call was made during software updating
  - Mail sent using this function is stored in the Outbox with your phone number as the subject.
  - If "Image-valid" is not checked in "Attached file" (P281), images in Speed photo mail are deleted on arrival.
  - If "UXGA(1616×1212)", "SXGA(1280×960)", "VGA(640×480)", "CIF(352×288)", "Screen(240×345)" or "Stand-by(240×320)" is selected in "Select size", the setting reverts to "Mail (L)(176×144)" when this function is launched.
  - If you change the "Select size" while this function is running, only the "Mail(L)(176×144)" and "Mail (S)(128×96)" formats can be selected.
- <Priority order for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>**
- If there are multiple e-mail addresses stored for the other party, the addresses shown in the send confirmation display are highlighted in the following priority order (where ① has the highest priority):
    - ① i-mode address (where the "@" symbol is followed by "docomo.ne.jp")
    - ② Phone numbers or addresses without domains (the domain name is the part that follows the "@" symbol)
    - ③ The first address stored in the phonebook

## Function menu (speed photo mail image)

### 1 Speed photo mail image screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

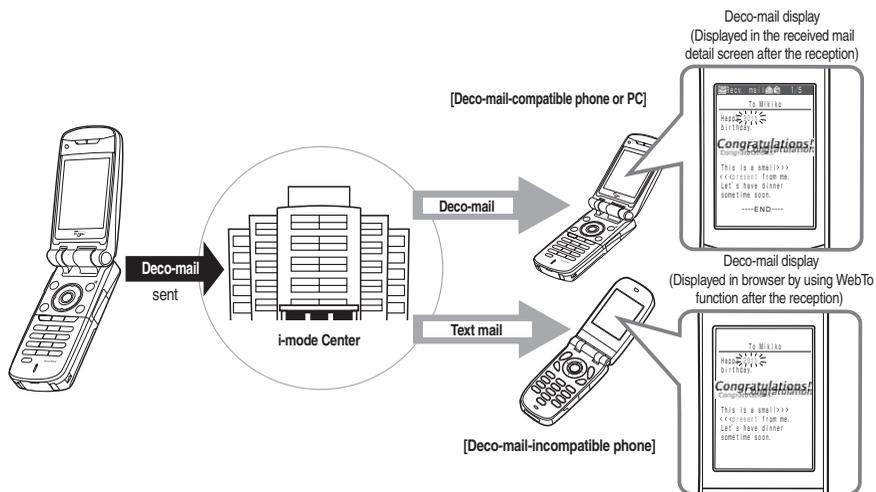
Item	Description			
Save & send	Saves the photographed image in My picture and then sends it as speed photo mail. → P.241			
Compose message	Sends the photographed image as speed photo mail without saving it.			
Set as display	Saves and pastes the photographed image before sending it as speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as "Set as display" in the function menu (image checking screen). → P.165			
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.			
	<table border="1"><tr><td><b>File unrestricted</b> (default)</td><td>Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr><tr><td><b>File restricted</b></td><td>Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr></table>	<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	<b>File restricted</b>
<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.			
<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.			
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and so you can retake the shot.			

<Deco-mail>

## Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, changing the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.
- When you send a Deco-mail to a terminal that does not support Deco-mail, the terminal receives a mail whose message includes URL for viewing the Deco-mail. The recipient can view the Deco-mail with Web To function by clicking the URL. Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the mail may not be received or displayed correctly.



### NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you use "Reply with quote" or "Forward" with Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.

## Composing Deco-mail

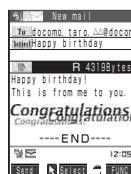
- If you decorate the message in Deco-mail, you can enter fewer characters than in the text mail.
- The following shows the flow of composing Deco-mail:



Select "Decorate mail" from the function menu on the message screen of composing new i-mode mail.



Decorate the message. The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating. You can preview the decoration by selecting "Preview" from the function menu on the message screen.



You can preview the decorated mail before sending. On the screen is displayed the number of bytes available.

## Decorating a message

- 1 Message screen (P.235) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description						
Color	▶ Use  to select a color ▶ Enter message body Selects the color of the entered text from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time  (Change) is pressed.						
Size	▶ Select any item ▶ Enter message body Selects the size of the entered text. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; margin-top: 5px;"> <tr> <td> Large</td> <td>Sets large text.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Standard</td> <td>Sets standard-size text.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Small</td> <td>Sets small text.</td> </tr> </table>	Large	Sets large text.	Standard	Sets standard-size text.	Small	Sets small text.
Large	Sets large text.						
Standard	Sets standard-size text.						
Small	Sets small text.						

Item	Description
	Selects the image to be inserted.
	 Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. → P.337
	 Launches the camera function so you can shoot the image to be inserted. → P.162
	 <b>Enter text to be flashed</b> Makes the entered text flash.
	 Sets the point at which blinking starts.
	 Sets the point at which blinking ends.
	 <b>Enter text to be displayed as subtitle</b> Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as subtitles).
	 Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
	 Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
	 <b>Enter text to be swung</b> Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).
	 Sets the point at which swinging starts.
	 Sets the point at which swinging ends.
	 <b>Enter message body</b> Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.
	 Sets left-justified text.
	 Sets centered text.
	 Sets right-justified text.
	Inserts a line.
	 <b>Use to select a color</b> Selects the background color from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time  (Change) is pressed.
	"Changing the decorations" → P.245
	Deletes all the decorations.

## NOTE

- The last 5 colors of the 256-color palette selected are displayed at the bottom of the 25-color palette.
- If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Edit", specify the extent to be changed and then select "reset".
- If you move the cursor to text set to a different size, the text size setting for that text changes.
- You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message plus the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes.
- You can insert up to 10 images. However, if there are too many images to display, " " may appear before 10 images are reached. When the memory-low warning appears, press .
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit the image and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit display, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image. (This remains valid during re-editing.)
- If you insert an animation, the animation stops after a set time has elapsed.
- The image size for images shot using the camera function is Mail (S)(128 × 96).
- You cannot insert an image when it is prohibited to output that image to devices other than a FOMA terminal or send that image as an attachment.
- Flashing, subtitling or swinging stops once a set time has elapsed.
- If you used "Add header" or "Add signature" in the compose message screen, the pasted header and signature take the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and end of the message respectively. To change the decorations used for the header or signature, select "Decorate mail" and "Edit" in the function menu of Deco-mail screen after pasting them into the message.

**NOTE**

- Some background colors may overlap with a font color of URL for downloading an image or i-motion so that it may be difficult to see the URL.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you deleted the text by holding down  for 1 second or longer, both the text and the decoration data is deleted.
- If a mail is exchanged with PC or other devices other than an i-mode terminal that supports Deco-mail, decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- If a Deco-mail is sent to a terminal that does not support Deco-mail, the mail is held for up to 10 days at the i-mode Center, after which it is automatically deleted.

## Changing the decorations

**1** Message screen (P.235)  (FUNC)  “Decorate mail”    Use  to select the starting point  to select the ending point  Select any item:

Item	Description						
	<p> Use  to select a color</p> <p>Selects the color of the edited text from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time  (Change) is pressed.</p>						
	<p>Changes the size of the text in the specified area.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes to large text.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes to standard-size text.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes to small text.</td> </tr> </table>		Changes to large text.		Changes to standard-size text.		Changes to small text.
	Changes to large text.						
	Changes to standard-size text.						
	Changes to small text.						
	<p>Inserted images cannot be modified. Delete the image in the message screen and then insert the correct image.</p>						
	<p>Changes or cancels flashing for the text in the specified area.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes the blink setting.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Cancels blinking.</td> </tr> </table>		Changes the blink setting.		Cancels blinking.		
	Changes the blink setting.						
	Cancels blinking.						
	<p>Changes or cancels subtitling for the text in the specified area.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes the ticker setting.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Cancels ticker.</td> </tr> </table>		Changes the ticker setting.		Cancels ticker.		
	Changes the ticker setting.						
	Cancels ticker.						
	<p>Changes or cancels swinging for the text in the specified area.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes the swing setting.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Cancels swinging.</td> </tr> </table>		Changes the swing setting.		Cancels swinging.		
	Changes the swing setting.						
	Cancels swinging.						
	<p>Changes the position of the text in the specified area.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes to left-justified text.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes to centered text.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Changes to right-justified text.</td> </tr> </table>		Changes to left-justified text.		Changes to centered text.		Changes to right-justified text.
	Changes to left-justified text.						
	Changes to centered text.						
	Changes to right-justified text.						
	<p>Inserted lines cannot be modified. Delete the line in the message screen and then insert the line again.</p>						
	<p>The specified background color cannot be changed. In the message screen, press  (FUNC) and change the background color by selecting “Decorate mail”, “B.Color” in that order.</p>						
	<p>Cancels decorations to text “Font color”, “Size”, “Blink”, “Ticker” and “Swing” in the specified area, except for the text position.</p>						
	<p>Returns to the message screen.</p>						
	<p>Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (This function is reset when the text entry (editing) screen exits.)</p>						

## Deco-mail pictures

The Deco-mail pictures below are saved in the “Decomail-picture” folder in “My picture”.

- In the message screen, select  (FUNC)  “Decorate mail”   “Decomail-picture” folder.

● The depictions of Deco-mail shown here may differ slightly from what actually appears on the screen.



HELLO!



Good Night



Hey



Cheer Up!



Let's play



Bubble wrap



Sad dogs



Happy cats



Mad!



Skateboard



Motorbike rider



Happy Birthday



Congratulations



Congratulations!



Roar!



A-choo!



Heart 1



Note



Twinkle 1



Food



Trouble



Bee



Pinwheel



Star Line



Cube Line

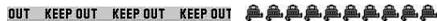


Running dog



Heart 2

Twinkle 2



Keep Out

Happy



Bieah!



Bummer



Fantastic!



Surprise!



Happy



Sad



Hey!



Hi!



Angry!



Sorry



Kingyo



Star



Snow



Sinkansen



Balloon 1



Balloon 2



Cold



Entertainment



Party



Stomachache

# Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using pre-installed templates. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

Templates stored at the time of purchase → P.249

- You can download templates from sites. “Downloading Data Files from Sites” → P.213
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen. → P.249
- The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number characters that can be entered may be fewer than for text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
  - When there is already text entered in the mail message
  - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
  - When there is an attached file
- You cannot select a template that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail.
- “Entering Text” → P.506

## 1 New mail screen (P.235) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Template” ▶ “Load template” ▶ Select a template

### ■ To display a preview of the template

- ▶ Select a template ▶ (Play)
- The template is shown in the preview. → P.249
- During preview display, use (Left Arrow) to display other templates.
- If the template will not fit into the display, use (Up Arrow) to scroll the display.
- To select the template from the preview display, press (Enter).

## 2 (Enter) ▶ Edit the message



After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use “Decorate mail” (P.242) to add arrangement of decorative features.

## 3 Press (Enter)



This confirms the edited i-mode mail message and returns to the new mail screen.

When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-appli in the i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the “Phone To (AV Phone To)”, “Mail To” and “Web To” functions cannot be used.

## 4 (Left Arrow) (Send)

## Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates.
- If the message has any attachments or pasted files other than inserted images, those attachments or pasted files are deleted and the template is saved.
- Text-only mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.

**1** New mail screen (P.235)  $\blacktriangleleft$  (FUNC)  $\blacktriangleright$  "Template"  $\blacktriangleright$  "Save template"  $\blacktriangleright$  "YES"

### NOTE

- The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).  
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).

## Viewing the templates list

**1**   $\blacktriangleright$    $\blacktriangleright$  "Template"  
"Template screen" appears.



Function menu  $\blacktriangleright$  P.248

### Function menu (template screen)

**1** Template screen  $\blacktriangleright$   $\ominus$  (FUNC)  $\blacktriangleright$  Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Compose message</b>	Creates Deco-mail using templates. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" $\rightarrow$ P.247	
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.	
	<b>Chronological <math>\uparrow</math></b>	Sorts the templates in reverse chronological order by save date/time.
	<b>Chronological <math>\downarrow</math></b>	Sorts the templates in chronological order by save date/time.
	<b>By title <math>\downarrow</math></b>	Sorts the templates in ascending order by title.
	<b>By title <math>\uparrow</math></b>	Sorts the templates in descending order by title.
<b>Edit title</b>	$\blacktriangleright$ <b>Edit title</b> Titles can consist of up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" $\rightarrow$ P.506	
<b>Info</b>	Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.	
<b>Memory info</b>	Shows the number of saved templates.	
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted template.	
<b>Delete selected</b>	$\blacktriangleright$ <b>Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) <math>\blacktriangleright</math> <math>\ominus</math> (Finish) <math>\blacktriangleright</math> "YES"</b> Deletes multiple templates.	
<b>Delete all</b>	$\blacktriangleright$ <b>Enter the security code <math>\blacktriangleright</math> "YES"</b> Deletes all the saved templates. Security code $\rightarrow$ P.140	

**NOTE**

**<Compose message>**

- If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

## Previewing a template

### 1 Template screen (P.248) ▶ Select a template

"Template preview screen" appears.



Function menu▶P.249

### Function menu (template preview)

### 1 Template preview screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →P.247
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	▶Select an image▶"YES"▶ Select a folder ■ If the image can be set as a screen such as standby ▶"YES"▶ Select an item Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not want to set the image in a screen such as standby, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

**NOTE**

**<Compose message>**

- If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

**<Edit>**

- The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).

- If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

## Pre-installed templates

- Actual displayed templates may differ slightly from those shown here.



Thank You



Sorry



Cheer Up!



Goody!



Shock!



Happy Birthday



Kind regards



Musician signature



Bear signature



What Are You Doing?



Invitation To Dinner



Heart



Good Night



Hi!!



Flower



Twinkle



Speech Balloon



How Are You?



I Love You



Thank You!

©BVIG

<Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail>

## Attaching Files

### 1 New mail screen (P.235) > (FUNC) > "Attach file" > Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Attach melody</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody Attaches a melody.
<b>Attach image</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image Attaches an image.
<b>Attach i-motion</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-motion Attaches an i-motion.

#### ■ To switch the image list screen

▶ On the image list screen > (FUNC) > "Title name"

The Picture list screen changes to the Titles list screen. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail. To return to the Picture list screen, select "Picture" from the function menu.

#### ■ To display an image

▶ Use to select the desired image > (Play)

Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed. To return to the list display, press .

#### ■ To play a melody

▶ Select a melody you want to play > (Play)

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press , , , to , (Home) or (Memo/Check).

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select "YES" to play the melody.

#### ■ To send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal using i-shot

You can use i-shot to send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal.

If you send an i-shot mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

When you send mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, unless the recipient has receive-divided-mail enabled, he or she can only receive messages up to 184 full-pitch characters long. If the recipient has receive-divided-mail enabled, the recipient can receive up to 2,000 full-pitch characters including the i-shot URL (where the image is held).

#### ■ To re-size and change the file size of an image attached to a mail

To attach an image with a file size larger than 500K bytes that is stored in the My picture Inbox folder, Camera folder or in a folder you have created, select "Size for mail" → "Attach mail" from the function menu in the image list screen and reduce the file size to 500K bytes or less with no change in image size. → P.345

If the file size you are attaching is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, select "Size for mail" → "QVGA scale down" from the function menu and reduce the file size to less than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high). → P.345

A file size of 240 dots wide × 320 dots high is the best size to send to an i-mode compatible terminal.

#### ■ To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail

To attach an i-motion larger than 500K bytes to a mail, select "Trim for mail" from the function menu, and cut the file into sections less than 500K bytes. → P.367

## NOTE

- The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail	Comments
Melody	10	You can attach up to 10 image and/or melody files in all, up to a total size of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters). The maximum number of files varies according to file size.
Image <sup>1</sup>		
Large image <sup>2</sup>	1	You can attach 1 large image, movie or i-motion.
Movie/i-motion <sup>3</sup> (i-motion mail)		

\*1: Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters) or less that was downloaded from a site

\*2: JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters) but no larger than 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 full-pitch characters). Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes.

\*3: Movie or i-motion of 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 full-pitch or 512,000 half-pitch characters)

- If an image selected for "Attach image" is more than the QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), the confirmation message "Large size image Attach to mail?" appears. Select "YES" to attach the image. Select "NO" to cancel the attachment.
- If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.
- When you attach a large still image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters).
- Images that cannot be attached cannot be selected.
- When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing the image is sent so the image can be viewed.
- Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.
- When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.
- You cannot attach movies stored on a miniSD memory card. Import the movie first.
- An image shown in the new mail screen may differ from the image as it is displayed in My picture. Images that are too large may not appear at all in the new mail screen. When this occurs, the image shown in My picture is sent to the recipient. Consequently, to view the image correctly, the recipient must save the image on his or her mobile phone and then view it using My picture.
- You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by clicking the URL. The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 full-pitch (369 bytes) long (when the number of characters that can be received by the mova terminal is 250 full-pitch characters). If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.
- Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it to phones other than FOMA terminals.
- You can attach images shot using the built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".
- If the recipient is not using a FOMA N901iS, melodies you send may not be playable.

<Save i-mode mail>

## Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you sent and saved earlier.

### Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox.

- The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.
- Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

1

### New mail screen (P.235) > (FUNC) > "Save"

If there are no characters in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. If there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

## Sending draft i-mode mail

**1**   **“Draft”**  
 “Draft mail screen” appears.

**2** **Select a mail ▶ Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail**



Function menu▶P.252

### Function menu (draft mail screen)

**1** **Draft mail screen** ▶  **(FUNC)** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>List setting</b>	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
<b>Send Ir data</b>	Sends mail using Infrared data exchange.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	Sends all mails using Infrared data exchange. “Transferring multiple data at the same time” → P.396
<b>Export this</b>	Exports the selected mail to the miniSD memory card.
<b>No. of messages</b>	Shows the number of mails in the Draft mailbox.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted mail.
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES”</b> Deletes multiple mails.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code ▶ “YES”</b> Deletes all mails in the Draft mailbox. Security code → P.140

## Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists

MENU 9 WS 7 P.R. 2004  
**Default setting**  
Not stored

If you store groups of addresses on your FOMA terminal as members in a mailing list, you can then address i-mode mail to multiple addresses simply by selecting a mailing list when you compose the message.

- You can store up to 20 mailing lists with up to 5 e-mail addresses in each list.

**1**   **“Mail member”**  
 “Mail member list screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.253

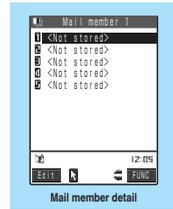
\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## 2 Select a mail member

"Mail member detail screen" appears.

## 3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit) Enter the mail address

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters in each e-mail address.  
To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat step 3.  
"Entering Text" → P.506



Function menu → P.253

### NOTE

- You cannot display mailing lists when PIM lock is set.
- If you attempt to send a mail to mailing list members that have the same address, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated addresses before sending the mail. Select "YES" to delete the addresses before sending the mail.

### Function menu (mail member list screen)

## 1 Mail member list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the members of the mailing list pasted into the recipients field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
Edit member name	▶ <b>Enter the member name</b> Edits the name of the mailing list. Name can consist of up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
Reset member name	Resets the mailing list name to the default name.

### Function menu (mail member detail screen)

## 1 Mail member detail screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Edit address	▶ <b>Enter the mail address</b> Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506	
Look-up address	■ <b>If no address is stored</b> ▶ <b>Select any item</b>	
	■ <b>If addresses are stored</b> ▶ <b>"YES" Select any item</b>	
	Enters the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook and records.	
	<b>Phonebook</b>	Enters an e-mail address by searching from the phonebook entry detail screen. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101
	<b>Sent address</b>	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	<b>Received address</b>	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.	
Delete all	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Deletes all members in the selected mailing list. Security code → P.140	

## When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 i-mode mail and/or SMS in all.
- You can use “Select ring tone” (P.114) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use “Illumination” (P.131) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- The FOMA terminal can also receive i-mode mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal.

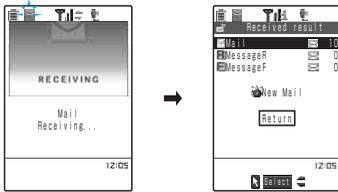
### 1 When you receive an i-mode mail, the “ (blue)” icon flashes and the “Mail Receiving...” message appears

Once the mail has been received, the reception results screen appears showing the number of mails and Message Request/Free received.

Select “Mail” to display the received mail list screen.

If you do not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for 15 seconds, the original screen reappears. The display period for the reception results screen may vary depending on the setting of “Mail/Msg. ring time” (P.118).

The ring tone volume is the volume that was set at “Mail” in “Ring volume” (P.68).



#### ■ When you receive mail from the i-shot service

If you receive i-shot service mail sent from an i-mode terminal with mova service, images arrive as attached files.

#### ■ When you receive a mail with a large image attached

If a large image that is more than 10,000 bytes in size attached to i-mode mail is successfully received automatically, “” is displayed and the received image is stored in My picture. If the image could not be received automatically, select “” in the mail detail display to receive the image and save it in My picture.

When the memory for saved image is full, a message asking you whether to delete unwanted images and then download the image appears. If you want to download the image, select “YES” and select an image to delete.

### NOTE

- When the “ (blue)” icon is flashing, the FOMA terminal is receiving mail. When all the mail has been received, the icon stops flashing and remains on the display.
- When the “ (red)” or “ (red)” icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further mail. Read your unread mail or remove the protection (P.273, 277) until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- If the total number of received i-mode mail and/or SMS stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 messages or the FOMA terminal's storage capacity even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail in the Trash box and old received mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that unread and protected received mail is not deleted. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → P.273, 277
- If you select “ON” in “Receive option setting” (P.281) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is held at the i-mode Center (the “” icon appears at the top of your display). In this situation, you can use “Check new message” (P.258) to receive all the i-mode mail held at the Center, or use “Receive option” to check the subject lines of the i-mode mail held at the Center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. → P.257
- When an extremely large i-mode mail message is sent to you that cannot be accepted by the i-mode Center, it may be returned to the sender together with an error message.
- You can use “Attached file” (P.281) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.
- Once the FOMA terminal has received your i-mode mail, the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted.
- i-mode mail allows you to send and receive mail with melodies or images included as attached files. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the “添付ファイル削除 (Attached file deleted)” message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- When new i-mode mail is delivered to your FOMA terminal, you also receive any other i-mode mail or Message Request/Free that were being held at the i-mode Center.
- If you receive i-mode mail from a phone capable of specifying “To”, “Cc” and “Bcc” recipients, refer to the mail detail screen to see whether your own address was in the “To”, “Cc” or “Bcc” field. → P.267

**NOTE**

- You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive. → P.229
  - When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and Message Request/Free at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
  - If you receive i-mode mail when the standby screen is not shown on the FOMA terminal and "Operation preferred" is set in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
  - If you receive i-mode mail when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the image display.
  - If you receive i-mode mail while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.
  - If you receive an i-mode mail during a chat, you can switch from chat screen to reception result screen to check the mail reception.
- <If you received a mail with a large image attached>**
- If a tools group function (P.418) is active or the FOMA terminal is ringing and you select "", a message appears saying that you cannot retrieve a large still image and the image is not retrieved.  
Quit the active function before retrieving the image.
- <Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>**
- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail. ① has the highest priority.
    - ① The settings specified for each e-mail address in phonebook utilities. → P.108
    - ② The settings specified for each group in group utilities → P.108
    - ③ The "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" settings → P.114, 131

## Viewing new i-mode mail

- Depending upon the Deco-mail's background color, the color of the URL text to download the image or i-motion may overlap and hence unreadable.

### 1 On standby screen "New"



### 2 Select a received mail

**NOTE**

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, either "r" or "l" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- If the size of mail to be sent to you exceeds the value set in "Limit Mail Size" in "Options", the file or data that is attached or pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it.
- The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
- If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions include in a mail message received from a PC.

## Emotion-expressing mail

An icon pops up and shows the emotion matching the contents of the received mail. You can also specify the icon for the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love you		Go for it		Reply
	Hate you		Question		Information

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Remark		Sad		Please
	Fun		Note		Icon unsupported*
	Surprised				

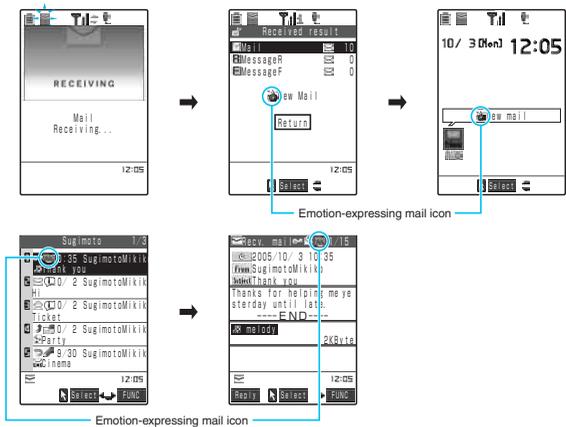
- \* : "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails:
- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange or cable connection
  - Mail copied from miniSD memory card
  - SMS copied or moved from FOMA card (UIM)
  - SMS in FOMA card (UIM)
  - etc.

- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword". → P.285
- The followings are "Disp keyword" icons that appear when you receive a mail that includes the specified keyword.

You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword". → P.285



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied. ① has the highest priority.
  - ① Disp keyword 1      ② Disp keyword 2      ③ Disp keyword 3      ④ Disp emotion
- The icons for the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS are displayed as follows. They are also displayed on the image display. → P.30
- You can pick up the messages with the specified emotion-expressing mail icon by using the filter function. → P.273



## NOTE

- Depending on the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons displayed may not match the contents.
- Emotion-expressing mail icons are not displayed for Message Request/Free.
- The reception date and time, subject and up to 1,000 bytes (500 full-pitch characters) from the beginning in the message are searched for determining an appropriate emotion-expressing mail icon and the subject and all the message texts are searched for "Disp keyword" icon.
- When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only the icon for the newest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.  
However after receiving the mails, all the icons for the received mails are displayed on the received mail list screen.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

# Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

This function allows you to check information such as the titles of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete mail at the Center before you receive it.

● To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P.281).

## When mail arrives

When the FOMA terminal notifies you of mail received from the i-mode Center, it displays the "Mail" icon rather than "SMS (blue)" or "MMS (blue)".

Refer to "Receiving mail selectively" (P.257).

## Receiving mail selectively

1



### "Receive option"

#### ■ If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail menu screen reappears.

If you used this function to show the receive option screen, the "Mail" icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.

The "Mail" icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

2

### Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail



"受信" Accept: Accepts the selected mail.

"削除" Delete: Deletes the selected mail.

"保留" Hold: Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.

Use "Check new message" (P.258) to receive the mail.

#### ■ To delete all mails

▶ "削除"(Delete) at the bottom of the page ▶ "決定"(Set)

#### ■ When there are multiple pages of mail

▶ "前ページ"(Previous page) or "次ページ"(Next page) ▶ Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after "サイズ(Size):XXXバイト(bytes)" are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	i-motion attached.

3

### "受信/削除"(Receive/Delete) ▶ "決定"(Set)

The completion screen appears and mail downloading begins.



#### ■ To cancel selective reception

▶ "キャンセル"(Cancel)

#### ■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting "Receive/Delete" mid-way through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

### NOTE

● You can also access "Receive option" as follows:

● MENU ▶ Mail ▶ "Menu" ▶ "メニューリスト"(Menu List) ▶ "メール選択受信"(Receive option)

● If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be downloaded even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new message" (P.283) if you do not want to receive any mail.

## NOTE

- If the Receive option setting is "ON", you cannot automatically receive mail, the mail ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate.

<Check new message>

# Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting

Check for all (mail, Message Request and Message Free)

- i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your mail is held at the i-mode Center:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When "MAIL" is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When "Receive option setting" (P.281) is set to "ON"
  - During a videophone call or remote observation
  - When Self mode is set
- You cannot check for new mail when "MAIL" is displayed.
- Use "Set check new message" (P.283) to specify which items are checked for.

# 1



## “Check new message”



The check new message screen appears. You can also check new messages by following procedures below.

- (i-mode) ▶ "Check new message"
- (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (MAIL) ▶ "Check new message"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail" → "Message Request" → "Message Free".

The (blue), (green) and (purple) icons flash during checking, and the "Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.

### ■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down for 1 second or longer during the inquiry

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and messages.

# 2

## Check for new i-mode mails, Message Request and Message Free

## NOTE

- If the (blue) icon was displayed, you have i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your i-mode mail messages is full, the (red) icon is displayed.
- If icons such as (red), (red), (red) and (red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail and Message Request/Free or read or unprotect (P.222, 273) your unread mail and Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail and Message Request/Free are then overwritten as new mail and messages arrive, starting with the oldest received items.
- Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the (blue) icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the (MAIL) is displayed.
- You cannot use this function to check for SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to download SMS.

## Replying to i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to send a reply to an i-mode mail message. When replying, you can either compose a new message, compose a reply while referring to the original message, or quote the body of the received message in your reply.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including "Re:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.
- "Entering Text" → P.506

### Replying by composing a new message

#### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ► (FUNC) ► "Reply" ► Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.235.

##### ■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

► "Reply" ► "To sender"

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply" and then "To all".

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

After the reply has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the "✉" icon changes to "✉".

#### NOTE

- The "Fin" icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with e-mail addresses longer than 50 half-pitch characters).
- You cannot reply to mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Re:" in your reply.
- You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

### Replying by referring to received mail

#### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ► (FUNC) ► "Reply with ref"



In "Reply with ref", the top part of the display is the message entry screen, while the lower part shows the received message (reference screen).

##### ■ To switch between the reference and message entry screens

► (FUNC) ► "Change window" or (⇐) (1 second or longer)

"Changing the Active Screen" → P.526

##### ■ To copy the message, subject or address from the reference screen

► Reference screen ► (FUNC) ► "Copy" ► "Message", "Subject" or "Address"

How to copy text → P.522

##### ■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

► "Reply with ref" ► "To sender"

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply with ref" and then "To all".

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

#### 2 Edit the message body and send it

##### ■ To edit the subject

► (FUNC) (returns to the mail reply screen) ► "Subject" ► Enter a subject

If you press (FUNC) to return to the mail reply screen and then display the message entry screen again, the reference screen is not displayed.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 6 to 8 on P.235.

After the reply has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the "✉" icon changes to "✉".

## Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

- Attached files are deleted when you quote i-mode mail.

### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Reply with quote” ▶ Edit the subject and message body and send it

#### ■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶ “Reply with quote” ▶ “To sender”

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply with quote” and then “To all”.

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A single quotation symbol (set to “>” by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation symbols are not shown at the beginning of each line.

To edit the quotation symbol → P.282

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.235.

After the reply has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

#### NOTE

- You cannot reply when 20 mails are stored in the Draft mailbox.
- If you add a quotation symbol to an i-mode mail message and the combined size of the message and the quotation symbol exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters, a message appears informing you that you have exceeded the limit on the acceptable number of characters. Press  to display the message entry screen and then delete text until the message length no longer exceeds the limit.
- If there is a file attached to the i-mode mail messages you are replying to, a message appears notifying you that the attached file will be deleted. Pressing  deletes the file and displays the mail reply screen.
- If you insert an image into the body of a Deco-mail message that is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal or send an attachment, the image is deleted before the message is sent.
- When data such as a melody or specification for starting i-appli is pasted in an i-mode mail message, the pasted data is not quoted when replying to the i-mode mail.

<Forward mail>

## Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

Use this procedure to forward i-mode mail you have received to other people.

- Forwarded mail has “Fw:” automatically inserted in the subject line. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including “Fw:”), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Forward” ▶ Enter an address

#### ■ To enter an address from the phonebook, address lists or mailing lists

▶ Forward mail screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Look-up address”

For detailed information on entering addresses → P.238, 239

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to a total of 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

### 2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

#### NOTE

- You cannot forward mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- When you forward i-mode mail that has “Fw:” (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, “Fw2:” is inserted into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of “Fw:”. Similarly, if “Fw2:” is included, “Fw3:” is inserted in the forwarded mail, and “Fw4:” if “Fw3:” is included and so on up to “Fw99:”. If the “Fw:” in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case “W” (“FW:”), this is discarded and replaced by “Fw:” in the forwarded mail.
- If it is forbidden to attach files to the forwarded i-mode mail or if it is forbidden to send the file attached or pasted into the forwarded i-mode mail to phones other than FOMA terminals, the file and its information is deleted.
- If the image was not downloaded, it cannot be attached.
- When data is pasted in an i-mode mail message, the pasted data is not quoted when forwarding the i-mode mail.

# Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

Use this procedure to add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

<Example: Adding the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

## 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save address”

### ■ When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added

▶ On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

### ■ To add a recipient e-mail address or phone number in a sent i-mode mail

▶ Sent mail detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save address”

If the mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

### ■ To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail

▶ “Sent mail detail screen” or “Received mail detail screen” ▶ Select an e-mail address or phone number you want to add ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook”

## 2 “YES” ▶ “Phone” ▶ “New”

The add new phonebook entry screen appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.

Adding information to phonebook → P.97



### ■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

▶ “YES” ▶ “UIM”

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, “Overwrite” is displayed as the storage method instead of “Add”.

<Save melody>

# Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to save a melody (🎵 or 🎶) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

● You cannot play a melody during a call.

● If the sender was not using a FOMA N901iS, the received melody may not play correctly.

● Select the melody beforehand.

## 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

### ■ To stop the melody

▶ [Stop], [End], [Stop] to [Stop], [Stop] or [Stop]

### ■ To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open mail

▶ Set “Auto melody play” (P.281) to “OFF”

### ■ When the memory for storing melodies is full

A message appears asking whether to delete a melody before saving the new melody. To save the new melody, select “YES”. Then select the melody to be deleted.

## 2 “YES” ▶ Select an item

### ■ To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ “NO”

### NOTE

● If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

## Saving Images in Image Mail

This function enables you to save images (  ) attached to received i-mode mail.

- Select the image beforehand.

### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

If multiple images are attached, all the images are displayed.  
Select the file name for the image to be viewed to view the image.

■ **To change from image display to file name display**

▶ Select the image that you want to see as a file name

To return to image display, select the file name of an image to be displayed.

■ **When the memory for saved images is full**

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted images and then save the image. To save the new image, select “YES”. Then select the image to be deleted.

### 2 “YES” ▶ Select an item

■ **To not set the image in the standby screen, etc.**

▶ “NO”

#### NOTE

- Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, images that are too large may not be displayed at all in some cases.
- Images may be displayed differently in i-mode mail and My picture. Consequently, to view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the “Inbox” folder.
- A JPEG image attached to an i-mode mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically loaded. If it is not automatically loaded, you can load it by selecting “” in the i-mode mail. The image is automatically saved in My picture in Data box.

## Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to browse the i-motion is attached.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

### 1 Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ Select a URL ▶ “YES”

Once the i-motion has been downloaded on your FOMA terminal, the “Data acquisition screen” appears.

■ **To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way**

▶ (Quit)

■ **To save a downloaded i-motion**

▶ Data acquisition screen ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

You can save the downloaded i-motion in your FOMA terminal. → P.317

■ **To display information about the downloaded i-motion**

▶ Data acquisition screen ▶ “Property” → P.318



Data acquisition  
Function menu ▶ P.317

#### NOTE

- If “ON” is selected in “Automatic replay” (P.318), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.
- You cannot use fast playback, frame advance or slow playback when an i-motion is playing during downloading (first playback only).

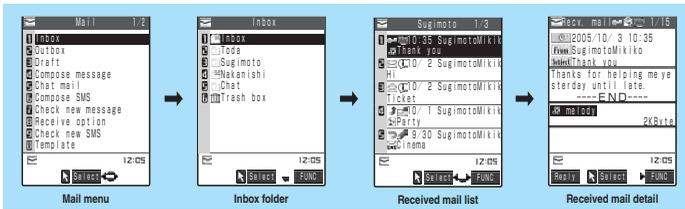
# Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 i-mode received mail and/or SMS and up to 400 sent mail and/or SMS. The number of mail messages that can be saved varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When file sizes are large, the number of messages that can be saved decreases.

- i-mode mail allows you to send messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters and receive mail with messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters.

## Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>



Function menu P.270

Function menu P.273

Function menu P.277

### ■ To view the previous or next mail

▶ Mail detail screen ▶

Press to return to the received mail list screen.

### NOTE

- To view the contents of a folder for which mail security is set, enter your security code. However, if "Mail security" (P.149) is set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail menu, you do not have to enter your security code because you have to enter it to view the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen.
- By selecting "Mail info" from the function menu in the received mail list screen, you can check the sender, the subject and the date and time a message arrived at the i-mode Center before actually opening the mail.
- You can also paste the e-mail address of an i-mode mail sender or one of the broadcast mail recipients into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can then use the pasted desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that e-mail address. However, you cannot paste e-mail addresses with the "", "", or "" icon as desktop icons. Note that for broadcast mail also, only one e-mail address can be pasted in each operation.

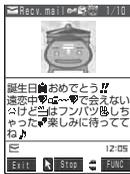
### ■ Mail-connected i-αppli

- i-mode mail sent using a mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the dedicated folder for that mail-connected i-αppli.
- Where the sender used a mail-connected i-αppli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-αppli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.

If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.

- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-αppli activates the software.
- To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

## ■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)



This function is valid only for the mail composed in Japanese. If you receive the mail composed in English, it cannot be read out in English.

- By selecting “Read out message” from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
  - To interrupt reading, press . (Pressing after reading has been stopped restarts the reading from the beginning of the message.) To exit reading-out mode, press (Exit).
  - You can set the voice used to read out received mail using “Read out setting” (P.283).
  - Messages are read out at the volume set in “Phone” in the “Ring volume” setting (P.68). If “Silent” or “Step” is set, messages are read out at the “Level 2” volume.
  - While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the screen, as shown in the figure. If the sender’s address and image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.
- While a message is being read out, you can scroll around the message by pressing or . Also, holding down for 1 second or longer turns the display light on or off. Pressing any of the FOMA terminal’s other keys or folding the FOMA terminal stops the reading.
- If you select “Read out message” from the function menu while the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking you whether the FOMA terminal should read out the message.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading ends and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in “Receiving display” takes effect. Also, if the specified time for an alarm is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in “Alarm setting” takes effect.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some messages received as mail from PC, etc.

## Guide to the folder list screens

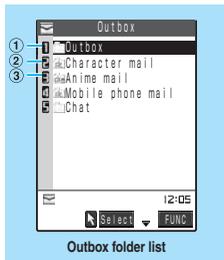
The following is a guide to the conventions used in the folder list screens.

- Mail can be saved in any of the folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Inbox”, “Chat” and “Trash box” folders, but you can add folders using the function menu and mail-connected i-αppli.
- Mail can be saved in any of the folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Outbox” and “Chat” folders, but you can add folders using the function menu and mail-connected i-αppli.
- The Draft mailbox does not contain any folders.



Inbox folder list  
Function menu⇒P.270

- ① : Contains no unread mail.
- ② : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli (P.301)
- ③ : Contains unread mail.
- ④ : Contains no unread mail and security (P.270) is set.
- ⑤ : Contains unread mail and security is set.
- ⑥ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mail
- ⑦ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli with security set
- ⑧ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli with security set and containing unread mail
- ⑨ : Trash box folder
- : Trash box folder with security set

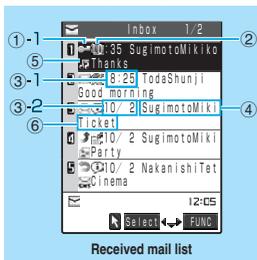


Outbox folder list  
Function menu→P.270

- ① : Sent mail folder
- ② : Sent mail folder with security (P.270) set.
- ③ : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli (P.301)
- ④ : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli with security set

## Guide to the mail list screens

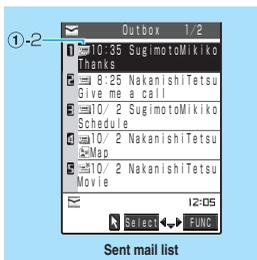
The following is a guide to the conventions used in the mail list screens.



Received mail list  
Function menu→P.273

① Shows the mail status.

- ①-1 Received mail
  - : Unread mail
  - : Read mail
  - : Forwarded mail
  - : Replied-to mail
  - : Unread protected mail
  - : Read protected mail
  - : Forwarded protected mail
  - : Replied-to protected mail



Sent mail list  
Function menu→P.275

①-2 Sent mail

- : Mail sent successfully
- : Mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

② Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the message

(e.g.) : Emotion-expressing mail icons → P.255

③ Shows the time and date of transmission

③-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received today.

③-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

④ Shows the sender/recipient. For a sender/recipient stored in the phonebook, this can be changed to show the e-mail address, phone number or name. If the sender's address is stored in the phonebook and an image is also stored, "" is displayed.

⑤ Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2-line display>

- : SMS
- : SMS with SMS report received
- : SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM)
- : Attached melody
- : Multiple attached melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted.
- : All the attached melodies were invalid or deleted.

-  : Attached image
-  : Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted.
-  : All the attached images were invalid or deleted. Or there are too many attached images to be displayed on the mail detail screen.
-  : Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.
-  : Large image downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.
-  : Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.
-  : Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.
-  : Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.
-  : An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.
-  : Before downloading a large image or i-motion pasted to a Deco-mail, the type of file was found to be unknown.
-  : An i-appli can be launched from the message body.
-  : Mail sent or received by a mail-connected i-appli
-  : Multiple pasted files. Also shown when the data is pasted along with i-appli To.
-  : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

<1-line display>

-  : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.
-  : Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.
-  : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.
-  : One or more files attached, including one or more large files
-  : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.
-  : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.
-  : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

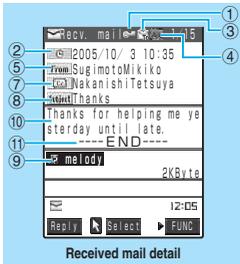
- ⑥ Shows the message subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, “No title” is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, “SMS report” is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, “Noticecall voicemail” is displayed.

#### NOTE

- If the date and time are not set (P.47), the date and time in the received mail list screen and sent mail list screen are shown as “-/-”.
- When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen or sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display each time you press .

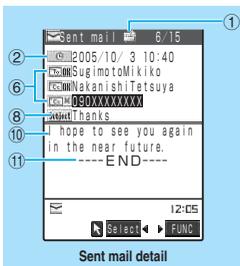
## Guide to the mail detail screens

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the mail detail screens.



Received mail detail

Function menu → P.277



Sent mail detail

Function menu → P.278

① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the mail list screen on P.265.)

② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).

③ Shows the sending type of received mail.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.

: Received mail broadcast by the sender.

: Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.

④ Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the received message

(e.g.) : Emotion-expressing mail icons → P.255

⑤ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.

: Sender's e-mail address

: E-mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters, etc.)

⑥ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.

Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.

: Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.

: Recipient to which broadcast mail was successfully sent.

: Recipient to which broadcast mail was not successfully sent.

: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.

: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.

⑦ Shows received mail with multiple recipient addresses specified (not including the current FOMA terminal user). Up to 4 recipients can be shown.

: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.

: The sender sent a copy of a message to the recipient as broadcast mail.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

The "", "", or "" icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ⑤, ⑥ and ⑦.

To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook.

→ P.97

⑧ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, is displayed ("" if the SMS is in the FOMA card (UIM)) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report" for SMS reports). When an SMS report has been received, the icon is also displayed.

⑨ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).

: Pasted melody. If the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.

: Multiple pasted files. Also displayed when a file is pasted along with i-appli To.

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.



: An attached image was deleted.



: A large image file was loaded and then deleted. Also shown when the data has been edited or overwritten after retrieval.



: An attached melody was deleted.

Attached file icons → P.265

- ⑩ Shows the mail message.
- ⑪ Shows the end of the message body.

On the following situations, the e-mail address and not the “Name” is displayed, even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When “Restrict dialing” (P.150) is set and the phone number is not designated in the “Restrict dialing” settings
- When details are displayed in Secret only mode for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

## Changing the mail character size or list display mode

### Changing the mail character size

On the mail detail screen, you can change the size of the text in the message body.



Small

⌂ (1 second or longer)



⌂ (1 second or longer)



Standard

⌂ (1 second or longer)



⌂ (1 second or longer)



Large

#### NOTE

- If you move to a display other than a mail detail screen, the character size automatically reverts from Small or Large to Standard. When you return to the mail detail screen, the character changes back to Small or Large.
- When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in “Character size” (P.280) also changes.
- The character size can be changed in the same way in the mail message reading out screen (P.264).

### Changing the mail list screen display mode (1 line/2 lines)

You can switch between 1-line display and 2-line display using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail settings” in the Mail menu. → P.280



2-line mode

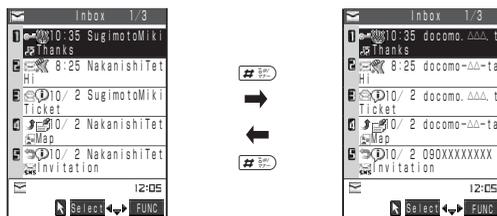


1-line mode

## ● Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the mail list screen, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

### ● Mail list screen (2-line mode)



### ● Mail list screen (1-line mode)



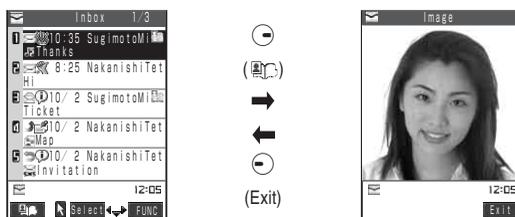
#### NOTE

- You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the function menu in the received mail list screen, sent mail list screen or draft mail list screen and then selecting “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.

## ● Mail that shows faces

When you are viewing a mail list screen, the “” is displayed for received mail when the sender’s address is stored in the phonebook along with an image.

You can then view the stored image by selecting the mail with the “” icon and pressing ( ).



## ● Checking the number of received or sent mail messages

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select “Memory info” from the function menu in the folder list screen.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the mail list screen for the mail in folder you want to check and then select “No. of messages” from the function menu.

## ● Display light function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal's display light comes on for around 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the display light stays on in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.118).) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the display light stays on varies depending on the length of the message. The display light does not turn on if "Lighting" is set to "OFF" in "Display light" (P.126).

### Function menu (Inbox folder/Outbox folder screen)

- You can add up to 22 folders.
- You can specify automatic sorting of received i-mode mail and SMS into added folders.
- You cannot delete or rename the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

## 1 Inbox folder/Outbox folder screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Add folder</b>	▶ <b>Enter a folder name</b> Adds a new folder. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Auto-sort</b>	Automatically sorts received i-mode mail and SMS into folders in the Inbox or Outbox according to e-mail address, phone number and phonebook group settings, etc. "Automatic sorting settings" → P.271
<b>Edit folder name</b>	▶ <b>Enter a folder name</b> You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Mail security</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ "YES" Sets or cancels folder security. "Setting security for individual folders" → P.150 Security code → P.140
<b>Delete folder</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ "YES" Security code → P.140
<b>Sort folder</b>	▶ <b>Select a location</b> Sorts the folders.
<b>Memory info</b>	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
<b>Open folder</b>	Displays list of the mails in the selected folder.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	Sends all the mail in the selected folder using Infrared data exchange. "Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.396
<b>Delete read<sup>*1</sup></b>	Deletes all the read mails.
<b>Delete all<sup>*2</sup></b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ "YES" Deletes all mails. Security code → P.140

\*1: Only displayed in the Inbox folder screen.

\*2: "Delete all" is also displayed in the Outbox folder screen.

### NOTE

#### <Add folder>

- When you download a mail-connected i-appli, an i-appli mail folder is automatically created.

#### <Auto-sort>

- You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders in automatic sorting.
- If "Mail security" (P.149) is set for the "Inbox" or "Outbox" in the Mail menu, "🔒" appears next to "Inbox" and "Outbox" in the Mail menu. In this situation, you have to enter your security code.
- If Mail security (P.270) is set for an added folder, you must enter your security code after step 1.

#### <Edit folder name>

- You cannot edit the names of mail-connected i-appli folders.

#### <Mail security>

- You cannot delete or edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

**NOTE**

**<Delete folder>**

- You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or a folder for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the “Auto-sort” settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

**<Sort folder>**

- You cannot sort the “Inbox”, “Outbox”, “Chat” or “Trash box” folders and you cannot run “Sort folder” when any of these folders is selected.
- You cannot run “Sort folder” when only one folder was added.

**<Delete read>**

- This option does not delete read SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.

**<Delete all> (on the Outbox folder screen)**

- This option does not delete SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.

**<Delete all> (on the Inbox folder screen)**

- This option also deletes unread mail. However, this option does not delete SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.

**Automatic sorting settings**

- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below, with ① having the highest priority. Note that mail for mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless “Sort all” is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the “Chat” folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
  - ① Sort all   ② Subject sort   ③ Reply/Send impossible   ④ Address/Number sort
  - ⑤ Mail member   ⑥ Phonebook group
- Mail received or sent before the automatic sorting settings are specified remain stored in their original folders.
- Select a folder as a sort destination before sorting.

**1 Inbox folder screen (P.264) or Outbox folder screen (P.265) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Auto-sort” ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Address sort</b>	Sets an e-mail address to be used for automatic sorting.
	<b>Look-up address</b>
	<b>Phonebook</b> Sets the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook and records. Sets an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. “Making a Call From the Phonebook” →P.101
	<b>Received address</b> Sets an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	<b>Sent address</b> Sets an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	<b>Look-up group</b> ▶ <b>Select a group</b> Sets the mail address of the selected group.
	<b>Look-up member</b> ▶ <b>Select a mail member</b> Sets the mail address of the selected mail member.
<b>Enter address</b> Sets an e-mail addresses directly entering each character. “Entering Text” → P.506	
<b>Subject sort</b>	▶ <b>Enter a subject</b> Sets a received mail subject as an auto-sort criterion. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Reply impossible<sup>*1</sup></b>	Sets an e-mail address to which you cannot reply or you could not send a mail as an auto-sort criterion.

Item	Description
<b>Sort all</b>	This can only be set for mail-connected i-appli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-connected i-appli folder.
<b>Edit addr/subj</b>	Edits a previously specified e-mail address or mail subject.
<b>List setting</b>	Selects the list format of mail addresses that will be automatically sorted, from "Name" or "Address".
<b>Release</b>	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
<b>Release selected</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
<b>Release all</b>	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

\*1: If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, "Send impossible" is displayed.

#### NOTE

- If auto-sort criteria is already stored and you store a different set of criteria in the same folder, a message is displayed asking you if you want to change the settings. Select "YES" to change the settings. Selecting "NO" returns you to the previous screen.
  - The mails that has been sent as broadcast message are not sorted to folders for which "Address sort" or "Send impossible" is set.
- <Address sort (Look-up group)>**
- You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).
- <Address sort (Enter address)>**
- Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. However, if the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.
- <Subject sort>**
- If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" folder.
  - Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
  - You cannot use this function to sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
  - You cannot use this option to sort SMS.
- <Reply impossible>**
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
  - "Reply impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.
- <Send impossible>**
- "Send impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.
- <Sort all>**
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
  - "Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-appli mail folder for received and sent i-appli mail respectively.
  - Setting "Sort all" disables all other sort settings.
- <List setting>**
- You can also switch between the "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the Auto-sort settings screen.

## Function menu (received mail list screen)

### 1 Received mail list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description		
<b>Move</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves the selected mail to another folder.		
<b>Search mail</b>	Searches for mail using a specified sender or subject.		
	<b>Search sender</b>	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.	
		<b>Phonebook</b>	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. “Making a Call From the Phonebook” → P.101
		<b>Received address</b>	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
		<b>Sent address</b>	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
		<b>Enter address</b>	Specifies an e-mail addresses directly entering each character.
<b>Search subject</b>	▶ Enter a subject		
<b>Display all</b>	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all “Chronological ↑”).		
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.		
	<b>Chronological ↑</b>	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.	
	<b>Chronological ↓</b>	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.	
	<b>By address ↓</b>	Arranges mail in ascending order by the sender’s e-mail address or phone number.	
	<b>By address ↑</b>	Arranges mail in descending order by the sender’s e-mail address or phone number.	
	<b>By subject ↓</b>	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.	
	<b>By subject ↑</b>	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.	
<b>Filter</b>	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.		
	<b>Unread</b>	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.	
	<b>Read</b>	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.	
	<b>Protected</b>	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.	
	<b>Melody</b>	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies or with pasted melodies.	
	<b>Image</b>	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted downloading information for large images.	
	<b>i-motion</b>	Displays only mail with an attached i-motion “  ”.	
	<b>i-appli</b>	Displays only i-mode mail that includes i-appli startup information.	
	<b>SMS</b>	Displays only SMS.	
	<b>keyword</b>	▶ Select a “Disp keyword” (1 to 3) icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected “Disp keyword” icon added. “Setting Keyword” → P.285	
	<b>Emotion</b>	▶ Select a “Disp emotion” icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected “Disp emotion” icon added.	
<b>List setting</b>	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.		
<b>Read all</b>	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.		
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects mail.		
<b>Unprotect all</b>	Unprotects all protected mail.		

Item	Description
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395
<b>Export this</b>	"Data that can be copied between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card" → P.382
<b>UIM operation</b>	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P.298
<b>Mail info</b>	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.
<b>No. of messages</b>	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
<b>Move trash box</b>	▶ <b>Use</b>  <b>to select a checkbox</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>(Finish)</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted mail.
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Use</b>  <b>to select a checkbox</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>(Finish)</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b>
<b>Delete read</b>	Deletes read mails.
<b>Delete all SMS-R</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Deletes all SMS reports. Security code → P.140
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Deletes all the received mails. Security code → P.140

## NOTE

## &lt;Move&gt;

- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

## &lt;Search mail&gt;

- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.

## &lt;Sort&gt;

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread mail in the received mail list screen in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu and then "Unread" in the Filter menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the received mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail.

## &lt;Filter&gt;

- If you view mail in the Filter function, exit the display and then view the received mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this screen by selecting "Display all".

## &lt;List setting&gt;

- You can also switch between the "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the received mail list screen.

## &lt;Read all&gt;

- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

## &lt;Protect ON/OFF&gt;

- If you exceed the limit on the number of received mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (P.263), precedence is given to deleting mail in the "Trash box" folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the "Trash box" folder, read and unprotected received mail is deleted starting with the oldest message.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot protect mail in the "Trash box" folder.

## &lt;Unprotect all&gt;

- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Unprotect all", protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

## &lt;Move trash box&gt;

- This option moves mail to be deleted to the "Trash box" folder. Mail moved to the "Trash box" folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the "Inbox" folder is full, mail in the "Trash box" folder is the first mail to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.
- If you move unread mail to the "Trash box" folder, it is marked as read.
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Move trash box", only the currently displayed mail can be moved to the "Trash box" folder.

**NOTE**

- If you select "Move trash box" from the received mail list screen function menu and select the mail to be moved to the "Trash box" folder, a message appears confirming that the moved mail will be given priority in automatic deletion when the limit on the permitted number of saved messages has already been reached and new mail is received. Select "YES" to move the mail to the "Trash box" folder.

**<Delete>**

- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

**<Delete selected>**

- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

**<Delete read>**

- You cannot use this option to delete read i-mode mail or SMS that are protected.

**<Delete all SMS-R>**

- You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

**<Delete all>**

- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

**Function menu (sent mail list screen)**

**1 Sent mail list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description												
<b>Move</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Use</b>  <b>to select a checkbox</b> ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  <b>(Finish)</b> ▶ "YES" Moves the selected mail to another folder.												
<b>Search mail</b>	Searches for mail using a specified receiver or subject. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;"><b>Search receiver</b></td> <td>Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Phonebook</b></td> <td>Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Sent address</b></td> <td>Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Received address</b></td> <td>Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Enter address</b></td> <td>Specifies an e-mail addresses directly entering each character. "Entering Text" → P.506</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Search subject</b></td> <td>▶ <b>Enter a subject</b> "Entering Text" → P.506</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Search receiver</b>	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.	<b>Phonebook</b>	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101	<b>Sent address</b>	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.	<b>Received address</b>	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.	<b>Enter address</b>	Specifies an e-mail addresses directly entering each character. "Entering Text" → P.506	<b>Search subject</b>	▶ <b>Enter a subject</b> "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Search receiver</b>	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.												
<b>Phonebook</b>	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101												
<b>Sent address</b>	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.												
<b>Received address</b>	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.												
<b>Enter address</b>	Specifies an e-mail addresses directly entering each character. "Entering Text" → P.506												
<b>Search subject</b>	▶ <b>Enter a subject</b> "Entering Text" → P.506												
<b>Display all</b>	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").												
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;"><b>Chronological ↑</b></td> <td>Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Chronological ↓</b></td> <td>Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>By address ↓</b></td> <td>Arranges mail in ascending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>By address ↑</b></td> <td>Arranges mail in descending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>By subject ↓</b></td> <td>Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>By subject ↑</b></td> <td>Arranges mail in descending order by subject.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Chronological ↑</b>	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.	<b>Chronological ↓</b>	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.	<b>By address ↓</b>	Arranges mail in ascending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.	<b>By address ↑</b>	Arranges mail in descending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.	<b>By subject ↓</b>	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.	<b>By subject ↑</b>	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.
<b>Chronological ↑</b>	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.												
<b>Chronological ↓</b>	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.												
<b>By address ↓</b>	Arranges mail in ascending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.												
<b>By address ↑</b>	Arranges mail in descending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.												
<b>By subject ↓</b>	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.												
<b>By subject ↑</b>	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.												

Item	Description	
<b>Filter</b>	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.	
	<b>Protect</b>	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
	<b>Melody</b>	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies.
	<b>Image</b>	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images.
	<b>i-motion</b>	Displays only i-mode mail with attached movies or i-motion.
	<b>SMS</b>	Displays only SMS.
	<b>Failed</b>	Displays only i-mode mail and SMS that could not be sent.
<b>List setting</b>	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".	
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects mail.	
<b>Unprotect all</b>	Unprotects all protected mail.	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395	
<b>Export this</b>	"Data that can be copied between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card" → P.382	
<b>UIM operation</b>	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P.298	
<b>No. of messages</b>	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.	
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the highlighted mail.	
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple mails.	
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the sent mails. Security code → P.140	

**NOTE****<Move>**

- You cannot move SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

**<Search mail>**

- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.

**<Sort>**

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the protected mail in the sent mail list screen in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu and then "Protect" in the Filter menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the sent mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail.

**<Filter>**

- If you view mail in the Filter function, exit the display and then view the sent mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this screen by selecting "Display all".

**<List setting>**

- You can also switch between the "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the sent mail list screen.

**<Protect ON/OFF>**

- If you exceed the limit on the number of sent mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (P.263), unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

**<Delete>**

- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

**<Delete selected>**

- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

**<Delete all>**

- This option does not delete i-mode mail or SMS that is protected.

## Function menu (received mail detail screen)

### 1 Received mail detail screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Reply</b>	"Replying by composing a new message" → P.259
<b>Reply with quote</b>	"Replying by quoting the received message" → P.260
<b>Reply with ref</b>	"Replying by referring to received mail" → P.259
<b>Forward</b>	"Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients" → P.260
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects mail.
<b>Move</b>	► <b>Select a folder</b> Moves a mail to another folder.
<b>Copy</b>	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text" → P.522
<b>Save address</b>	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → P.261
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → P.261
<b>Save data</b>	Saves a melody or image that is attached to or pasted into mail. "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail" → P.261 "Saving Images in Image Mail" → P.262
<b>Save insert image</b>	► <b>Select an image</b> ► <b>"YES"</b> ► <b>Select a folder</b> ► <b>"YES"</b> ► <b>Select an item</b> Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder and pressing  .
<b>Save schedule</b>	Stores a scheduled event by browsing an i-mode mail message. → P.426
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133
<b>Save template</b>	Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template" → P.248
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.441
<b>Property</b>	► <b>Select an image</b> Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
<b>URL</b>	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
<b>Read out message</b>	Has the FOMA terminal read out the message in an i-mode mail. → P.264
<b>Chat</b>	Launches Chat. → P.287
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395
<b>Export this</b>	"Data that can be copied between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card" → P.382
<b>UIM operation</b>	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P.298
<b>Scroll</b>	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
<b>Character size</b>	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".
<b>Delete att. file</b>	Deletes the attached file. Note that the file saved in the "Inbox" folder for the My picture is not deleted.
<b>Move trash box</b>	Moves the mail to the "Trash box" folder.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the received mail displayed in the received mail detail screen.

#### NOTE

##### <Move>

- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

##### <Delete att. file>

- You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

##### <Move trash box>

- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.

## Function menu (sent mail detail screen)

### 1 Sent mail detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	▶ <b>Edit the address, subject or message body</b> ▶ (Send) Re-edits the message. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Resend</b>	Resends the message.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	Protects or unprotects mail.
<b>Move</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> Moves a mail to another folder.
<b>Copy</b>	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text" → P.522
<b>Save address</b>	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → P.261
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → P.261
<b>Save data</b>	Saves a melody or image that is attached to mail. → P.261, 262
<b>Save insert image</b>	▶ <b>Select an image</b> ▶ "YES" ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ "YES" ▶ <b>Select an item</b> Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder and pressing (OK).
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133
<b>Save template</b>	Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template" → P.248
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.441
<b>Property</b>	▶ <b>Select an image</b> Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
<b>Disp. SMS report</b>	Displays the SMS report for an SMS. → P.293
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395
<b>Export this</b>	"Data that can be copied between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card" → P.382
<b>UIM operation</b>	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P.298
<b>Scroll</b>	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
<b>Character size</b>	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".
<b>Delete att. file</b>	Deletes the attached file. Note that the file saved in the "Inbox" folder for the My picture is not deleted.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.

#### NOTE

##### <Resend>

● Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.

● When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is saved as a sent mail.

##### <Disp. SMS report>

● If there is no SMS report for the selected message, this function cannot be used.

● Even when "ON" is specified in "SMS report request", no SMS report is provided for mail that cannot be sent (that does not reach the recipient).

# Using Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- E-mail addresses stored in the phonebook as secret data in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” are not recorded in the address lists.
- If you received or sent mail while mail security was set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail screen, the e-mail address of the sender or the recipient is not added to the address list.

## Checking an address list

Use this procedure to check the Sent address or Received address list.

### <Example: Viewing the received address list screen>

**1** **“Received calls”** **“All calls”** **(Change)**

“Received address list screen” appears.

You can also display the received address list screen by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer.

#### ■ To display the sent address list screen

**“Dialed calls”** **(Change)**

You can also display the sent address list screen by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer.



**2** **Select a sender**

“Received address detail screen” appears.



**3** **Check the details**

### NOTE

- You cannot display the Sent or Received address list when “OFF” is selected for “Redial/Dialed calls” and “Received calls” in “Record display set”.
- The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:
  - : i-mode mail transmission successful.
  - : i-mode mail transmission failed.
  - : SMS transmission successful.
  - : SMS transmission failed.
- The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:
  - : i-mode mail received.
  - : SMS received.
- When “PIM lock” or “Keypad dial lock” is set, the registered Sent/Received address lists are deleted. After the setting, they are newly registered.

## Function menu (sent address/received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

- Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others seeing them.

### 1 Sent address/received address list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → P.261
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133
<b>Compose message*1</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the e-mail address pasted into the recipient's field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235
<b>Dialing</b>	Uses the Phone To function to call the phone number in the phonebook entry that contains the e-mail address. → P.214
<b>Received calls*2</b>	Switches to the received calls screen (or redial screen (list)). → P.54, 65
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted e-mail address.
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES"
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address list. Security code → P.140

\*1 : If an SMS is selected, this option changes to "Compose SMS", which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient.

"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → P.292

\*2 : "Dialed calls" is displayed in the sent address list screen.

#### NOTE

##### <Received calls>

- The displayed received calls screen is "All calls" (shows the entire received calls record).

#### <Mail settings>

## Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

Use this procedure to set the mail functions on your FOMA terminal.

### 1 ▶ ▶ "Mail settings"

"Mail settings screen" appears.

### 2 Select any item:



Item	Description
<b>Scroll</b> (default: 1 line)	Selects the number of lines that are scrolled when you press  on the mail detail screen, from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
<b>Character size</b> (default: Standard)	Selects the size of characters displayed in the mail detail screen, from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".
<b>Mail list disp.</b> (default: 2 lines Name)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. Select one item from "2 lines Name", "2 lines Address", "1 line Subject", "1 line Name" or "1 line Address".

Item	Description	
<b>Message display</b>	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.	
	<b>Standard</b> (default)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
	<b>From message</b>	Displays the message from the message body onwards.
<b>Auto melody play</b> (default: ON)	Set whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.	
<b>Header/Signature</b>	"Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Symbols" → P.282	
<b>Mail security</b>	"Setting security for individual mailboxes" → P.149	
<b>Receiving display</b>	Sets whether to give display priority to receiving and reception results screen if a mail, Message Request, or Message Free is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.	
	<b>Alarm preferred</b> (default)	Shows the receiving and reception results screen.
	<b>Operation preferred</b>	Gives priority to the screen being used rather than showing the receiving and reception results screen.
<b>Receive option setting</b>	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.	
	<b>ON</b>	Does not automatically receive mail.
	<b>OFF</b> (default)	Receives mail automatically.
<b>Attached file</b> (default: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Melody-valid <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Image-valid)	▶ Use  to select a checkbox  (Finish)	
	Sets whether to receive attached files. When <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> is selected, files attached to mail are also received. Set "Melody-valid" and "Image-valid".	
<b>Speed photo auto disp.</b> (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to "OFF" and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.	
<b>Read out setting</b> (default: Female 1)	Select a voice for reading a received mail from "Female 1 or 2", "Male 1 or 2" or "Robot".	
<b>Chat</b>	"Specifying the chat settings" → P.291	
<b>Emotion/Keyword notice</b>	"Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail" → P.285	
<b>SMS report request</b>	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.	
	<b>ON</b>	An SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
	<b>OFF</b> (default)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
<b>SMS validity period</b> (default: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting "None", "1 day", "2 days" or "3 days". Set "None" not to store SMS at the SMS Center.	
<b>SMS input character</b>	Sets the SMS body character input method.	
	<b>Japanese</b> <b>(70char.)</b> (default)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	<b>English</b> <b>(160char.)</b>	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.
<b>Check settings</b>	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings".	
<b>Reset</b>	Resets the settings specified in "Mail settings" to the default settings. → P.286	

**NOTE**

&lt;Scroll&gt;

- The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

## NOTE

### <Character size>

- You can also change the character size on the mail details screen by pressing  $\odot$  or  $\odot$  for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the mail detail screen or Read out mail screen by selecting "Character size" from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- When you switch to a screen other than the mail detail screen, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the mail detail screen, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.

### <Message display>

- If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers may be displayed even when you select "From message".

### <Auto melody play>

- Even when you select "ON" in this option, you may be unable to play melodies sent from devices other than a FOMA N901iS correctly.

### <Receiving display>

- When you are receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-αpli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear when you receive mail or Message Request/Free even if you have set "Alarm preferred".

### <Receive option setting>

- This setting applies to i-mode mail only. SMS, Message Request, and Message Free are all downloaded automatically regardless of what this setting is set to.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. You also cannot activate chat.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. i-mode mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode Center, and "i" is displayed. To receive mail, use "Check new message" or select the "Receive option".
- If you use "Check new message", all messages will be downloaded even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new message" (P.283) if you do not want to receive any mail.
- You cannot receive SMS by selecting SMS.

### <Attached file>

- If you receive an attached file when the checkbox () is deselected, the attached file is deleted at the i-mode Center. You cannot retrieve the attached file from the i-mode Center.
- If you select the "Melody-valid" check box, you can receive melodies, but melodies sent from a phone other than the FOMA N901iS may not play correctly.
- When the "Image-valid" checkbox () is unchecked, an image inserted to a Deco-mail or still image in a speed photo mail is deleted at the i-mode Center.

### <SMS report request>

- You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. You can also check the report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

## Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Symbols

Default setting

Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail message. This function also allows you to insert a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

- "Entering Text" → P.506

1

**Mail settings screen (P.280) ▶ "Header/Signature" ▶ Select the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature ▶ Select the header or signature box ▶ Enter your header or signature**

The screenshot shows the 'Header/Signature' settings screen. It has a title bar 'Header/Signature' with a back arrow. Below it are three input fields: 'Header' with an 'Insert' checkbox, 'Signature' with an 'Insert' checkbox, and 'Quotation marks' with a '>' symbol. At the bottom, there is a status bar showing '12:05' and navigation buttons for 'EXIT', 'SEARCH', and 'BACK'.

Enter the header, signature and quotation symbol in the respective fields. A header or signature can consist of up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.

- **To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically**
  - ▶ Deselect the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature

## 2 Select the Quotation mark box ▶ Enter the quotation mark ▶ (Finish)

A quotation symbol can consist of up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

### NOTE

- Even if you select the "Insert" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-appli.

## Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new message>

Default setting  
All (Check new message)

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by "Check new message". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "Message Request" and/or "Message Free".

- A deselected checkbox () denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

## 1 (MENU) ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Set check new message"

## 2 Use (OK) to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish)

### NOTE

- If you do not want your Message Request/Free distributed, deselect the relevant checkbox ()

## Setting the voice used for reading out mail

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS reports (P.293), mail with no message body, mail that consists solely of an i-appli-activation URL or pasted melody, or Deco-mail with no message.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or during 64K data communication.

## 1 Mail settings screen (P.280) ▶ "Read out setting" ▶ Select a voice

### Rules used for reading out mail

This function is valid only for the mail composed in Japanese. If you receive the mail composed in English, it cannot be read out in English.

The read out mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

#### ■ Symbols, special characters and pictographs

- Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.

\* The FOMA terminal may be unable to correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

#### ■ Numbers

- The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

E.g.: 1234 → "Sen nihyaku sanju yon"

#### ■ Monetary amounts

- If a currency symbol (e.g. "¥" (full-pitch or half-pitch character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.

If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will only recognize the string as a monetary amount if the commas are used every 3 digits.

E.g.: ¥12345      ] — "Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en"  
      ¥12,345

## ■ Phone numbers

- If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers and not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by "Tel:" as phone numbers.

E.g. Tel: 12-3456-7890 → "Teru ichini san'yongoroku nanahachikyu zero"

Ordinary phone numbers			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone numbers			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XX(XXXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free numbers			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

\* "X" indicates a number.

## ■ Times

- Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as times. If the hours component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minutes component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as a time. If "AM" or "PM" is added before or after the number, it is read out after the number.

"Hour": "Minute" ("Hour" = 0-29; "Minute" = 00-59) E.g. 23:15 → "Nijusanji jugofun"
AM "Hour": "Minute" or "Hour": "Minute" AM ("Hour" = 0-12; "Minute" = 00-59) E.g. AM 5:05 → "Gozen goji gofun"
PM "Hour": "Minute" or "Hour": "Minute" PM ("Hour" = 0-12; "Minute" = 00-59) E.g. PM 5:05 → "Gogo goji gofun"

## ■ Dates

- Numbers separated by a slash (/) or period (.) are read out as dates. If "M", "T", "S" or "H" (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

"Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-9999; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g.: 2005/10/3 2005/10/03 2005.10.3 2005.10.03 } — "Nisengonen jugatsu mikka"
"M" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "M" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. M10/04/20 → "Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka"
"T" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "T" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. T8.10.15 → "Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi"
"S" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "S" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. S50.3.6 → "Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika"
"H" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "H" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. H17.10.3 → "Heisei jushichinen jugatsu mikka"

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, times and dates can also be used with full-pitch characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, times or dates are read out, if the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly when read out. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, times or dates read out correctly, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item. 0-9, A-Z (upper case), colon (:), ¥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (half-pitch or full-pitch)

## ■ Symbols

- The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

\$(dollars) → doru	%(percent) → paasento	¥(yen) → en	° (degrees) → do
℃ (degrees) → do	¥ (yen) → en	\$ (dollars) → doru	%(percent) → paasento

ミリ (mm) → miri	キロ (kilograms) → kiro	センチ (cm) → senchi	メートル (meters) → meeteru
グラム (grams) → guramu	トン (tons) → ton	アール (ares) → aaru	ヘクタール (hectares) → hekutaaru
リットル (liter) → rittoru	ワット (watts) → watto	カロリー (calories) → karorii	ドル (dollars) → doru
セント (cent) → sento	パーセント (percent) → paasento	ミリバール (millibars) → miribaaru	ページ (pages) → peeji
mm (millimeters) → mirimeeroru	cm (centimeters) → senchimeetoru	km (kilometers) → kiromeetoru	mg (milligrams) → miriguramu
kg (kilograms) → kiroguramu	cc (cc) → siisii	m <sup>2</sup> (square meters) → heihoumeetoru	

## Other

- Alphabetic letters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
- Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
- Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.
- Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically. Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:
  - Compose your e-mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
  - Use punctuation marks when composing mail.

## Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail <Emotion/Keyword>

Default setting | Disp emotion: ON | Disp keyword: OFF

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- “Emotion-expressing mail” → P.255

### 1 Mail settings screen (P.280) ▶ “Emotion/Keyword notice”

“Emotion/Keyword screen” appears.

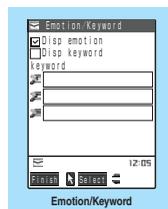
#### ■ To use “Disp emotion”

▶ Select the checkbox () of “Disp emotion”

The checkbox is checked () , and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

#### ■ To use “Disp keyword”

▶ Select the checkbox () of “Disp keyword” ▶ Enter one keyword or more. The checkbox is checked () , and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in “keyword”, the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (up to 3 keywords are available).



Function menu ▶ P.285

### 2 (Finish)

## Function menu (Emotion/keyword screen)

### 1 Emotion/Keyword screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

#### NOTE

- Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

## Resetting your mail function settings <Reset>

- 1 Mail settings screen (P.280) ▶ “Reset” ▶ Enter the security code ▶ “YES”**  
Security code → P.140

<Compose chat/Send>

## Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- You cannot launch Chat in the following situations:
  - When “ON” is selected in “Receive option”
  - If your Inbox is full of saved mail
  - When PIM lock is set
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

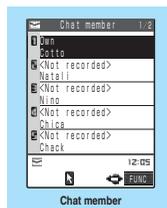
## Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

- 1**   **“Chat mail” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chat member”**

“Chat member screen” appears.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see “Refer address” in the function menu list on P.286.



Function menu ▶ P.286

## Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

- 1 Chat member screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Refer address</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If no address is stored</li> <li>▶ Select any item</li> <li>■ If addresses are stored</li> <li>▶ “YES” ▶ Select any item</li> </ul> Enter the chat member’s mail address from the phonebook or history.
	<b>Phonebook</b> Enters an e-mail address from the phonebook. “Making a Call From the Phonebook” → P.101
	<b>Sent address</b> Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	<b>Received address</b> Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
<b>Change member</b>	“Changing chat session members” → P.287
<b>Add chat group</b>	“Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group” → P.289
<b>Display setting</b>	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.
<b>Delete all</b>	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

**NOTE**

**<Edit>**

- You cannot add an e-mail address that is already registered for another chat member.
- If the added e-mail address is registered in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. If the address is not registered in a chat group but registered in the phonebook, up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 half-pitch characters of the address are displayed.

**<Refer address (Phonebook)>**

- If you enter a registered chat member e-mail address by searching it in the phonebook, the member's name and image are also changed.

**<Display setting>**

- If you display your own details, your e-mail address is not shown.

**<Delete><Delete all>**

- You cannot delete yourself.

**● Changing chat session members**

**1 Chat member screen (P.286) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change member” ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
Chat group	Selects the member to be changed from the group list or member list.
	Group list ▶ Select “Chat group”
	Member list ▶ Use (FUNC) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)
Mail member	▶ Select a mail member

**NOTE**

- If there are some chat members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat members. Select “YES” to replace all the members, or “NO” to cancel replacement.
- If you receive chat mail from a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, it does not appear the chat screen. If you exit chat without deleting the chat mail, the next time chat is selected the mail is not displayed in the chat screen but is saved as i-mode mail.

**Composing and sending chat mail**

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail message.

**1 (MENU) (Mail) “Chat mail”**

“Chat screen” appears.

**2 (Send) Enter your message ▶ (Send)**

You can send up to 250 full-pitch characters or 500 half-pitch characters from the chat screen.  
When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.  
To send another message, repeat step 2.

**■ If message transmission fails**

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

**■ To end a chat mail session**

Ending a chat session → P.288



Function menu ▶ P.288

**NOTE**

- If “Mail security” is set for the “Inbox”, “Outbox” or “Chat” folder in the Mail menu or for a folder that contains chat mail, you must enter your security code.
- If the FOMA terminal's memory for received mail is full with unread and/or protected mail, you cannot launch chat. Delete some unwanted mail, read some unread mail or unprotect some protected mail and then try again.
- Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- Sent and received chat mail is stored in the “Chat” folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the “Chat” folder.
- The subject used for chat mail you send is “チャットメール” (half-pitch characters).

## NOTE

- Chat mail received in the chat screen is marked as read in the "Chat" folder.
- If you try to send chat mail without entering a message, a confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to send the chat mail without a message, or "NO" to cancel chat mail transmission.
- If you receive ordinary i-mode mail while chat is running, the reception results screen does not appear.

## Function menu (Chat screen)

### 1 Chat screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶ (Finish)
Chat member	"Selecting chat session members" → P.286
Broadcast address	"Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail" → P.288
Reload	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area.
View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.
Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.
Quit	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received, and unsent chat mail and then quits chat.

## NOTE

### <Broadcast address>

- You cannot set this option for more than 6 chat members.

### <Reload>

- If you receive mail other than chat mail, the chat screen is not reloaded.

### <Delete read>

- This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected chat mail.

### <Quit>

- To quit chat without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".
- If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox screen and Inbox screen respectively. However, when "Sort all" is selected, it is saved in the specified folders.
- If you did not delete the chat mails at the end of a session, when starting the next session the mails appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order.
- When closing the chat mail screen, you can delete all chat mail. You can also delete chat mail from the i-mode mail list screen.

## ● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

- You can use this function only when the FOMA terminal with the broadcast mail address to be added supports the chat mail function.

### 1 Chat screen (P.287) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Broadcast address" ▶ "YES" ▶ Use to select a checkbox ( ) ▶ (Finish)

- When all the addresses are for chat session members  
▶ "Broadcast address" ▶ "OK"

## Receiving chat mail <Chat mail recv.>

If you receive chat mail while chat is not running, the  icon appears on the FOMA terminal's standby screen. Selecting this icon launches chat so that you can start using it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 full-pitch characters (or 500 half-pitch characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat mail screen.
- If you launch chat by selecting  or by selecting "Chat" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, the chat session members and recipients change as follows:

- When the sender's e-mail address was set in the list of chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a chat session are again set. However, if you launched chat from the received mail detail screen, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you selected "CHAT", members are added as specified in "Select receiver", and when the sender's e-mail address is not included, it is added to the list of recipients.
- If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member but is registered in a chat group, all the members of the chat group to which the sender belongs are set as chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
- If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member and is not registered in a chat group, only the sender's e-mail address is set as a chat session member.

## 1 On standby screen ▶ "CHAT"



### ■ When the sender is not registered as a chat session member

▶ "YES"

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat session members and launch chat. Select "YES" to change the current chat session members and launch chat.

### ■ To remain the currently specified chat members

▶ "NO"

The current chat session member settings are retained and the Mail menu screen appears.

## 2 The chat session begins

Received chat mail appears in the latest message area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it appears in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

### NOTE

● The FOMA terminal recognizes mail as Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:

- The subject line includes "チャットメール" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters).
- The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a chat member or chat group.
- When it is not mail-connected i-appli.
- When it is not Deco-mail.
- When it is not SMS.

● You cannot use Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function in the chat mail screen. You can use those functions in the mail screen that you opened from Inbox.

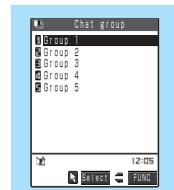
# Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group

Registering proposed chat session members in a chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 chat groups.
- You cannot register the same chat session member in more than 1 chat group.
- When you register a chat session member in a chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.
- You cannot register chat session members while PIM lock is set.

## 1 ▶ "Chat group"

"Chat group list screen" appears.



Function menu▶P.290

## 2 Select a chat group

"Group member list screen" appears.

## 3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit) Enter the mail address

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters in each e-mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat steps 2 and 3.

"Entering Text" → P.506

### ■ To enter a mail address from the phonebook

▶ Address entry screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Quote phonebook" ▶ Select a

search method ▶ Select a mail address you want to enter

"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520



Group member list  
Function menu ▶ P.290

### NOTE

- When you store an i-mode mail address for a chat group member, you must store the full address including "@docomo.ne.jp". However, if you want to store an address "phone number @docomo.ne.jp", enter only phone number.
- The first 8 characters of the registered e-mail address are set as the member name. If the registered e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. The registered image is also set if it is stored on the phonebook.

### Function menu (chat group list screen)

## 1 Chat group list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Active chat</b>	Sets the chat group as the chat session members and launches chat.
<b>Edit group name</b>	▶ <b>Edit a group name</b> Edits a group name. Name can consist of up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Reset group name</b>	Resets the group name to the default.

### Function menu (group member list screen)

## 1 Group member list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Edit</b>	▶ <b>Enter the mail address</b> Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506	
<b>Refer address</b>	■ <b>If no address is stored</b> ▶ <b>Select any item</b>	
	■ <b>If addresses are stored</b> ▶ <b>"YES" ▶ Select any item</b>	
	Enter the group member's mail address from the phonebook or history.	
	<b>Phonebook</b>	Enters an e-mail address by searching from the phonebook entry detail screen. The registered name and image are stored in the phonebook. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101
<b>Sent address</b>	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.	
<b>Received address</b>	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.	

Item	Description
Change member	<p>■ If no member is registered</p> <p>▶ “Mail member” ▶ Select a mail member</p> <p>■ If a member is registered</p> <p>▶ “Mail member” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a mail member</p>
Member setting	“Setting member details” → P.291
Delete	Deletes the highlighted mail address of the group member.
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter the security code ▶ “YES”</p> <p>Deletes all the members in the selected group.</p> <p>Security code → P.140</p>

#### NOTE

##### <Change member>

- If there are some group members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat group members. Select “YES” to replace all the members, or “NO” to cancel replacement.
- If a chat group member with the same e-mail address is registered in another chat group, a confirmation message appears. Select “YES” to delete the previously registered member and add the new member. Selecting “NO” cancels the operation.

## ● Setting member details

- 1 Chat member list screen (P.290) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Member setting” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description						
Edit member name	<p>▶ Enter the member name</p> <p>Edit a member name. You can enter up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>“Entering Text” → P.506</p>						
Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Inbox</b></td> <td>Selects an image stored in the Inbox.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Camera</b></td> <td>Selects an image shot using the FOMA terminal’s camera.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Pre-installed</b></td> <td>Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Cotto”, “Natali”, “Nino”, “Chica”, “Chack” and “Nana”.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.	<b>Camera</b>	Selects an image shot using the FOMA terminal’s camera.	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Cotto”, “Natali”, “Nino”, “Chica”, “Chack” and “Nana”.
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.					
<b>Camera</b>	Selects an image shot using the FOMA terminal’s camera.						
<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Cotto”, “Natali”, “Nino”, “Chica”, “Chack” and “Nana”.						
<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Set voice</b> (default: Female 1)</td> <td>Select a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Set voice</b> (default: Female 1)	Select a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.					
<b>Set voice</b> (default: Female 1)	Select a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.						

#### NOTE

##### <Edit member name>

- If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are set as the member name.

##### <Set image>

- You cannot change the background color.

## Specifying the chat settings

- 1 Mail settings screen (P.280) ▶ “Chat”

“Chat setting screen” appears.

- 2 Select any item:



Item	Description	
<b>Sound setting</b>	Sets the tone sounded in the chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects a melody or ring tone from the pre-installed folder.
	<b>Voice announce</b>	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in "Voice announce".
	<b>OFF</b>	No notification tone sounds.
<b>Chat image</b> (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest message area.	
<b>Read out chat</b> (default: OFF)	Sets whether to read out new chat mail in the chat screen.	
<b>User setting</b>	"Setting user details" → P.292	

**NOTE****<Sound setting>**

- The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat group member.

## ● Setting user details

### 1 Chat setting screen (P.291) ▶ "User setting" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Name</b>	▶ <b>Enter a user name</b> Enters a user name. Name can consist of up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506	
<b>Image</b>	Selects the image you want to display on the chat screen. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
	<b>Camera</b>	Selects an image shot using the FOMA terminal's camera.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from "Cotto", "Natali", "Nino", "Chica", "Chack" and "Nana".
<b>Voice</b> (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from "Female 1 or 2", "Male 1 or 2" or "Robot".	

**NOTE**

- You cannot change the background color.

**<Name>**

- If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, "Own" is used.

**<Compose SMS/Send>**

## Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

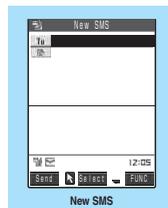
## Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

1



### “Compose SMS”

“New SMS screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.294

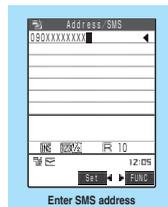
2

“ To ”

“Enter SMS address screen” appears.

You can only enter 1 SMS recipient.

You can look up an address by pressing (FUNC) and selecting “Look-up address” from the function menu (P.294).



Function menu▶P.239

3

### Enter the phone number of the recipient

#### ■ If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

▶Enter + (hold down the ( ) key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party’s mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

#### ■ To change the entered recipient

▶New SMS screen▶Select an address▶Enter the phone number

You can also change (overwrite) the address by selecting “Look-up address” from the function menu on the new SMS screen.

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks (X) or hash symbols (#)
- When it includes “+” as second or later character.
- When it includes a space

If you try to send an SMS to a phone number preceded by “184”, “186”, “#31#” or “X31#”, a message appears asking whether to send the message with the Notify caller ID prefix deleted. Select “YES” to delete the “184”, “186”, “#31#” or “X31 #” prefix and send the SMS.

4

“ ”

“SMS message screen” appears.

5

### Enter message body

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the message entry screen are as specified in the “SMS input character” settings (P.294). If “Japanese” input is selected, you can enter up to 70 full-pitch or half-pitch characters in all. If “English” input is selected, you can enter up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols (excluding [ ] { } [ \ , . \* ~ ^ ~ ~]).

Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can use the “Enter address” function menu (P.239) while entering a message.



Function menu▶P.240

6

(Send)

An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent. Select “OK” to return to the Mail menu screen.

Editing sent and unsent SMS → P.278

## SMS (Short Message) reports <SMS report request>

If “ON” is selected in “SMS report request” (P.294), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

To view an SMS with an SMS report ( ), select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by “SMS SMS report” in the subject line.

## NOTE

- You cannot send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal with mova service.
- If you exceed the limit (P.263) on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail is not deleted.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- If you press the  or  key on the new SMS screen without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing screen. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original screen without discarding the text.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in half-pitch alphanumeric input mode.

## Function menu (New SMS screen)

### 1 New SMS screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Send</b>	Sends an SMS.	
<b>Preview</b>	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.	
<b>Save</b>	Saves the SMS you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 SMS and i-mode mail in all. You can send saved SMS later.	
<b>Look-up address</b>	Enters a recipient by browsing the phonebook and records. → P.238	
	<b>Phonebook</b>	Enters a phone number by searching the phonebook. "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P.101
	<b>Sent address</b>	Enters a phone number from the Sent address list.
	<b>Received address</b>	Enters a phone number from the Received address list.
<b>SMS report req.</b>	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.	
	<b>ON</b>	SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
	<b>OFF</b> (default)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
<b>SMS valid. per.</b> (default setting: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center. Set "None" not to store SMS at the SMS Center.	
<b>SMS input char.</b>	Sets the SMS body character input method.	
	<b>Japanese</b> (default)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	<b>English</b>	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.
<b>Erase message</b>	Only the message body is deleted.	
<b>Delete</b>	The SMS being edited is deleted.	

## NOTE

- If you set "SMS input character", "SMS report request" or "SMS validity period" in the mail settings screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid per." set in the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.

<Receive SMS>

## When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

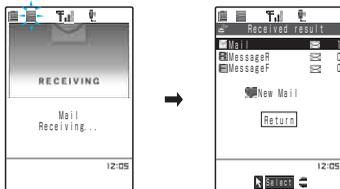
- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 SMS and/or i-mode mail in all.
- You can use "Select ring tone" (P.114) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P.131) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- Short mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received on the FOMA terminal as SMS.

# 1 When you receive an SMS, the “ (blue)” icon flashes and the “Mail Receiving...” message appears

Once the mail has been received, the reception results screen appears showing the number of SMS, i-mode mails and Message Request/Free received.

Select “Mail” to display the received mail list screen.

If you do not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for 15 seconds, the original screen reappears. The display period for the reception results screen may vary depending on the setting of “Mail/Msg. ring time” (P.118). The ring tone volume is the volume that was set at “Mail” in “Ring volume” (P.68).



## NOTE

- If the total number of received i-mode mail messages stored on the FOMA terminal (total i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that unread and protected received mail is not replaced. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. →P.273, 277
- Once you reach the limit on the number of unread or protected received mail messages that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS), you can no longer receive mail and “ (red)” appears on the screen. To enable the FOMA terminal to receive SMS, delete received mail stored on the FOMA terminal, read unread mail or remove the protection from protected mail until the “ (red)” icon is no longer displayed. Then use “Check new SMS”.
- When you receive multiple SMS at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set for the last item of mail received.
- If you receive short mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal, the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- If you receive SMS when the standby screen is not shown on the FOMA terminal and “Operation preferred” is set in “Receiving display”, the FOMA terminal does not ring. When “Alarm preferred” is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
- If you receive SMS when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the image display.
- If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

### <Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive SMS. ① has the highest priority.
  - ① The settings specified for each phone number in phonebook utilities →P.108
  - ② The settings specified for each group in group utilities →P.108
  - ③ The “Select ring tone” and “Illumination” settings →P.114, 131

## Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- “SMS report” is displayed as the subject for received SMS reports.
- For Voice Mail notices, “Noticecall voicemail” is displayed.

# 1 On standby screen ▶ “ ”



# 2 Select a received SMS

## NOTE

- If a received SMS includes special European characters that are not half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols, or full-pitch characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The phone number of the sender of the current SMS is highlighted. Pressing  while the number is highlighted makes a voice or videophone call to that number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.
- SMS report is sent to you only when the FOMA terminal is set to receive SMS report in "SMS report request" (P.281). You can also view the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" (P.278) from the function menu in the sent mail detail screen.

## Forwarding and replying to received SMS (Short Message)

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject.  
"Replying by composing a new message" → P.259

## NOTE

- You cannot reply to an SMS by referring to or quoting the received message.
- If you reply to short mail sent from a mova, a message appears after you send the reply saying that the message could not be sent.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support caller ID notification (Not supported).
- You cannot forward or reply to an SMS report or "Noticecall voicemail" message.
- If you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the  remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the   icon does not appear.

## Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the FOMA terminal's memory is full.
- You cannot check for new SMS when  is displayed.

1



“Check new SMS”

“SMS Checking” is displayed while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, the message informing that the inquiry has done appears. Press .

If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic downloading begins. In some cases, automatic downloading may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

### ■ To cancel the inquiry

 (1 second or longer)

Depending on the timing of the cancellation, SMS may be downloaded anyway.

## NOTE

- When an icon such as  (red) or  (red) is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot accept any further i-mode mail or SMS. Delete unwanted mail, read unread mail or remove the protection (P.273, 277) until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- This function cannot be used to receive i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. To receive your i-mode mail or Message Request/Free, use “Check new message”.

<Set SMS>

## Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings

Default setting  
DoCoMo

### Specifying the SMS (Short Message) center setting

\* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

**1**   **“Connection setting”** ▶ **“SMS center selection”** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>DoCoMo</b>	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
<b>User setting</b>	▶ <b>Enter the SMS center address</b> ▶ <b>“International” or “Unknown”</b> Uses another provider's SMS center.
<b>Reset</b>	▶ <b>Enter the security code</b> ▶ <b>“YES”</b> Deletes the “User setting” data and resets the setting to “DoCoMo”.

**NOTE**

● If the entered SMS Center address includes “#” or “X”, you cannot select “International”.

**SMS (Short Message) rejection settings**

Default setting  
Accept

Specifies the SMS rejection settings. You can restrict SMS using one of the following methods.

- “Reject all”: SMS can be rejected regardless of whether a caller ID is provided.
- “Reject SMS with no caller ID”: Enables you to reject SMS sent from mova service i-mode terminals and PHS or ordinary phones without a caller ID.

**1**       

You are connected to the SMS Center.

■ **To connect to the SMS Center via the iMenu screen**

▶ iMenu screen ▶ ENGLISH ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ “Other Settings” in Receiving Mail ▶ “Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings” ▶ SMS Center “\*20184”

**2 Listen to the guidance** ▶ **Select any item:**

You are connected to the SMS Center.

Item	Description
	Rejects all SMS.
	Only rejects SMS with no caller ID.
	Releases rejection settings.
	Exits the SMS rejection settings.

※ : Rejecting all SMS or rejecting SMS that do not have caller ID are effective ways to stop nuisance SMS.

**NOTE**

- The rejection does not apply to SMS messages sent under the “mopera Mail Notification”, “Visualnet Conference Notification” and “FOMA Mail Notification” services provided by DoCoMo.
- You can only set to reject SMS in the FOMA terminal with which you do not want to receive the SMS. You cannot connect to the SMS Center when you are using a mova terminal or dual network service with a mova terminal.
- You are automatically disconnected from the network if you press , ,  or  in step 2 or after 3 incorrect operations.
- This setting does not incur communication or packet fees.

## Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.

### Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

- 1   "Inbox" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "UIM operation" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Move to UIM</b>	Moves SMS stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
<b>Copy to UIM</b>	Copies SMS stored in FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

#### NOTE

- When you move or copy received or sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the moved SMS appears in the Inbox or Outbox folder respectively.
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, sent mail list screen or sent mail detail screen.
- SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be protected. If you move or copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the messages are unprotected on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you already have 20 SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM), the ,  (blue) or  (red) icon appears and no further SMS can be moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

### Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

- 1   "Inbox" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "UIM operation" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Move from UIM</b>	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
<b>Copy from UIM</b>	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

#### NOTE

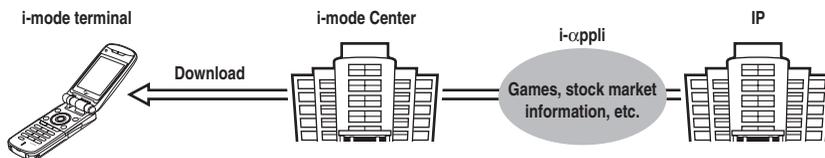
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, sent mail list screen or sent mail detail screen.

# i-appli

What is an i-appli? .....	300
Downloading i-appli from Sites .....	301
Running i-appli .....	304
Launching i-appli Automatically .....	309
Running i-appli from Sites or Mail .....	<b>i-appli To function</b> 310
Setting the i-appli Standby Screen .....	<b>Stand-by set</b> 312
Organizing i-appli .....	313

# What is an i-appli?

By downloading i-appli from i-mode sites, you can make your i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-appli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-appli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-appli that enable you to store data from the i-appli directly into the phonebook or your schedule and i-appli linked to Data box such as saving and downloading images.



- To download an i-appli → P.301
- To run an i-appli → P.304
- To launch an i-appli automatically → P.309

## NOTE

- Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- Some software applications use the FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but can also be set to run without communicating.

## Using stored data

Some i-appli software can browse, store or use the data stored on an i-mode terminal (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information). The stored data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Loading images from the Data box
- Saving images in the Data box

## ● i-appli DX

i-appli DX links up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mail, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make i-appli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mail in your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

→ P.307

## Using stored data

Some i-appli DX software can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-appli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icon information), but also information such as mail, redial records, received call records and ring tones. The stored data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls records
- Browsing the latest Received calls records
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (Phone, Video-phone, Mail, Message and Chat mail)
- Loading images from the Data box
- Saving images in the Data box
- Changing screen settings (standby screen, dialing, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail and receiving Message Request/Free)
- Saving i-motion
- Browsing the Inbox/Outbox

## NOTE

- Regardless of the software communication settings, an i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of the connections differs depending on the software.
- To launch an i-αppli DX, the date and time must be set. → P.47

## ● What is mail-connected i-αppli?

Mail-connected i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that uses i-mode mail to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of games, etc., using software to make the FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use.

The i-αppli mail used for mail-connected i-αppli may not be displayed correctly.

## ● What is Mobile Wallet i-αppli?

Mobile Wallet i-αppli enables you to use useful functions such as downloading electronic money or ticket, etc. and browsing the balance or records in your mobile phone, by reading and writing data in an IC card.

- “What is Mobile Wallet?” → P.322

## NOTE

- Using Mobile Wallet i-αppli sends the information stored in your IC card to an information service provider (IP) of the subscribing service.

## ● Other useful features

### ■ i-αppli standby screen

In the i-αppli standby screen, you can use an i-αppli as the standby screen and still receive mails or make calls. This expands the range of uses for your standby screen to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm. → P.312

- This function can be used by software that supports i-αppli standby screens.

### ■ i-αppli auto start

This feature allows you to automatically launch a software application by specifying a time, date or day of the week. There are also software applications that can be launched automatically at set intervals specified in the software beforehand. → P.309

### ■ Using camera

Some software applications allow you to take pictures using the i-mode terminal's built-in camera. → P.156

- This function can be used by software that supports the camera function.

### ■ Infrared data exchange

This feature allows a software application running on the FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function. This further expands the uses of the FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices. → P.392

- This function can be used by software that supports the Infrared data exchange function.
- Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device has an Infrared data exchange function.

### ■ Infrared remote control

This allows software applications to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. → P.398

For example, the pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control) enables you to use your terminal as an AV remote control device that works with a TV time table. → P.308

- This function can be used by software that supports the infrared remote control function. Software that is compatible with the controlled device is also required.

## Downloading i-αppli from Sites

Use this procedure to download software from an i-mode site and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 200 downloaded software applications (up to 5 mail-connected i-αppli programs). However, depending on the application sizes, the actual number of downloadable i-αppli programs varies between 10 and 200.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, folders for the mail-connected i-αppli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli and cannot be changed.

- If there are already 5 dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αpli, delete one or more of the existing dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αpli to create some available space for the new download.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αpli if you have already saved a mail-connected i-αpli that uses the same Inbox and Outbox folders.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αpli while mail security is set.
- Mail sent and received using a mail-connected i-αpli is automatically sorted into the dedicated folders created when that mail-connected i-αpli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mails.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αpli without deleting its folders and then download the mail-connected i-αpli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αpli.

## ● If there is memory available for more saved items

### 1 Select software

When downloading is completed, the “Completed” message appears. For software that is immediately launched from the site (P.303), the software starts up without displaying a completion message.

#### ■ To interrupt data downloading in progress

▶ During downloading ▶ 

#### ■ If a software setting screen appears

▶ Set the software ▶  (Finish)

Software settings → P.305

### 2 “YES”

When you launch the software, “” appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αpli DX starts up, “” appears.

#### ■ To prevent the software launching

▶ “NO”

#### ■ To cancel software launching

▶ While the software is starting up ▶ 

#### NOTE

- Some software may not be downloaded depending on sites or size of i-αpli software.
- Some i-αpli software automatically opens communication after being downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using “Network setting” in “Software setting”.
- You cannot switch tasks while downloading is in progress.
- If you download an i-αpli DX or an i-αpli that uses the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message appears notifying you that the i-αpli uses the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- When you are downloading i-αpli information or an i-αpli from an SSL site, the “” appears. → P.199
- At the time of purchase, the default “Display software info” setting is “Not display”. Selecting “Display” allows you to view the software information before downloading. When you press , a message appears asking whether to download the software. Select “YES” to start the download.
- During downloading, a message appears asking whether to send the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers. Select “YES” to start the download. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. Select “NO” to cancel downloading.
- If you download software that uses the FOMA terminal’s communication functions or that can be set as a standby screen, the Software setting screen appears. After selecting the settings for the downloaded software, press  (Finish) or .
- Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download a Mobile Wallet i-αpli even when there is space available in the software storage area. Following the instructions in the confirmation screen, delete the displayed software and then try downloading the Mobile Wallet i-αpli again. Depending on the type of software downloaded, some of the software may not be available for deletion. For some software, the user has to launch the software and delete data on the IC card before deleting the software program itself.
- If you again download software you have downloaded once using a different FOMA card (UIM), a message appears asking whether to overwrite the software. Select “YES” to start the download. When downloading finishes, the software downloaded using a different FOMA card (UIM) is deleted.
- The term “i-αpli mail” refers to mail sent by a mail-connected i-αpli and mail that has been sent to you to be used in a mail-connected i-αpli. i-αpli mail contains i-αpli data that enables the mail to be automatically saved in i-αpli mail folders.
- You can display 3-dimensional images in i-αpli by loading the 3D polygon\* engine.  
\* : Uses combinations of polygons to display 3D images with depth.

## ● When the memory for saved software is full

If you have already saved 200 software applications or if there is insufficient space available in the memory, a message appears asking whether to delete some applications before saving the new software. Delete some of the saved software to create space for new software downloads.

### 1 “YES”

- To not delete software
- ▶ “NO”

### 2 Use to select a checkbox ( ) ▶ (Finish)



When you delete software and there is memory available

With each software that you select, the “Shortage” and bar indicator decrease. Continue selecting software to be deleted until the “Shortage” and bar indicator reach zero.

### 3 “YES”

Downloading restarts.

## Viewing i-αppli information during downloading <Display software info>

Default setting  
Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether the software description is displayed for checking when you download software.

### 1 ▶ ▶ “i-αppli settings” ▶ “Disp. software info” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Display</b>	Displays the software information screen during downloading.
<b>Not display</b>	Does not display the software information screen during downloading.

## i-αppli that is launched immediately from a site

Unlike ordinary i-αppli, some i-αppli software is immediately launched from an i-mode site.

- These i-αppli are not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloading and do not appear in the software list screen.
- A message may appear while the software is running to ask whether to use the FOMA terminal's communication functions.
- These i-αppli cannot be launched as an i-αppli standby screen.
- After the software quits, a message may appear asking whether to store the software.
- Some i-αppli software cannot be stored on a FOMA terminal.
- Once the i-αppli has been stored on a FOMA terminal, it can be launched in the same way as an ordinary software.

# Running i-appli

## Launching an i-appli

1



“Software list”

“Software list screen” appears.

You can also display the software list screen by pressing and holding (i-mode) for 1 second or longer.



Function menu▶P.304

2

Select software you want to launch

## Quitting an i-appli

1



“YES”

### ■ For software developers

When an i-appli software is created and does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of “i-appli info”▶ “Trace info”. The trace information is displayed in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy the trace information by selecting “Copy info” from the function menu. To delete the trace information, select “Delete info” from the function menu.

### NOTE

- To launch an i-appli DX, first set the date and time in “Set time”.
- To launch software automatically, set “Auto start setting” to “ON” and specify a time in “Auto start time”. → P.309
- If you receive an i-mode mail, Message Request or Message Free while software is running, “ (blue)”, “ (green)” or “ (purple)” appears. To display the received i-mode mail, Message Request or Message Free, either exit the software or use the multi task function. (You cannot use the multi task function to display Message Request/Free messages.)
- Melodies played while software is starting up are played at the volume set in “Phone” in “Ring volume”. Note that these melodies cannot be played during a call.
- i-appli that supports 3D surround sound can be used to play melodies with rich and vibrant sound. → P.116
- If you receive a call while a software application is starting up, the software is paused. The software screen reappears when the call ends.
- Some i-appli allows you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the i-appli. However, you cannot use the Web To function from the i-appli standby screen.
- i-appli mail used by mail-connected i-appli may not be displayed correctly in some cases.
- Do not remove the battery pack while software is running as this will prevent the FOMA terminal from saving the data up to that point.
- Images used in i-appli\* and data entered by the user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.  
\* : Here, “images used in i-appli” refers to images shot when a camera-linked i-appli launches the camera function, images retrieved using an i-appli Infrared data exchange function, images downloaded by an i-appli from an i-mode site or website or images loaded by an i-appli from the Data box.  
If the camera was activated from an i-appli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-appli.
- If there is no trace information, the “Trace info” option is not displayed.
- If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
- Some i-appli software programs may not make sounds.
- If the camera was activated from an i-appli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-appli.
- If the camera is activated by using an i-appli, settings such as the image size, image quality and frame may be specified depending on the software.
- You can use an i-appli to activate the bar code reader and read JAN codes and QR codes. The read data are used by the software.

## Function menu (Software list screen)

1

Software list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Set i-αppli To	"Enabling software launching with i-αppli To" → P.310	
Auto start time	"Setting the launch date/time" → P.309	
Software setting	Specifies the software settings.	
	<b>Stand-by set</b>	"Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen" → P.312
	<b>Network set</b>	When "Check every start" is selected, you can select whether to communicate every time you launch an i-αppli. ▶ (Finish)
	<b>Stand-by net</b>	Sets whether the i-αppli set as standby screen communicates. ▶ (Finish)
	<b>Icon info</b>	Specifies whether the use of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-αppli is running. ▶ (Finish)
	<b>Change mld./img.</b>	Specifies whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages, images such as those used in the standby screen or when mail is sent or received or menu icons to be changed when an i-αppli DX is running. When "ON" is set, the ring tone, image or menu icon is automatically changed. When "Check every change" is set, you can select whether to change the ring tone or image every time an i-αppli attempt to change such item automatically. ▶ (Finish)
<b>See P.book/hist.</b>	Sets whether to allow you to look up the phonebook, newest Dialed and Received calls records, and the newest unread mail when an i-αppli DX is running. When "ON" is set, the phonebook and records are automatically looked up. ▶ (Finish)	
Software desc.	"Checking the information for i-αppli" → P.305	
Upgrade	"Upgrading i-αppli" → P.313	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133	
Delete	"Deleting i-αppli" → P.314	
Delete selected	"Deleting i-αppli" → P.314	
Delete all	"Deleting i-αppli" → P.314	

## NOTE

## &lt;Software setting (Network set)&gt;

- If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

## &lt;Software setting (Icon info)&gt;

- If you specify software that is set for the i-αppli standby screen to "ON" for this function, as the icons for unread messages and mail, battery level, manner mode and in/out of service area are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to a third party.
- If this function is set to "OFF", some software programs that require the icon information may not work.

## Checking the information for i-αppli

- 1 Software list screen (P.304) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Software desc." ▶ Check the software information



## NOTE

- The software name displayed by this function cannot be changed.
- On the software list screen, software types and settings can be checked by the following icons.

- : i-appli DX → P.300
- : Mail-connected i-appli
- : “Stand-by set” (P.312) can be set.
- : “Auto start time” has been set. → P.309
- : “Stand-by set” has been set.
- : “Auto start time” and “Stand-by set” have been set.
- : Downloaded by a SSL page
- : Mobile Wallet i-appli → P.323

## Checking the security error history

When an i-appli or i-appli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

- 1   ► “i-appli info” ► “Security error history”  
“Security error history screen” appears.

- 2 **Check the details of the security errors**



### Function menu (Security error history screen)

- 1 **Security error history screen** ►  (FUNC) ► **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Copy info	Copies the security error details.
Delete info	Deletes the security error details.

## Launching software from another software application

Use this function to launch a software application from the currently active software. Downloading software that launches the specified application enables you to launch that application without having to return to the software list screen.

- You must first download software capable of launching other applications.
- If the software application to be launched is not specified, specify the application.
- If the software application to be launched is specified but is not stored on the FOMA terminal, you must download the application beforehand.

- 1 **Select an item for selecting software** ► “YES”

## NOTE

- If the URL of the software to be launched is specified in the software launch setting, a message appears asking whether to launch the specified software. Select “YES” to quit the currently active software and launch the specified software. To return to the current software, select “NO”.

## Pre-installed software

The FOMA terminal comes with 4 software applications (“ドラゴンクエストII 前編” (DRAGON QUEST II first volume), “N ゴルフ～3D～” (N Golf-3D-), “G ガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control) and “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash)) pre-installed.

● Note that looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.

● If you delete pre-installed i-appli software on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー” site.

How to connect to “みんなNらんど” → P.197

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using is not the one used for downloading, FOMA card operational restriction function will apply. → P.39

● The “Software setting” items for pre-installed software are set as follows at the time of purchase:

※ Only the “Network set” setting can be changed.

	ドラゴンクエストII 前編 (DRAGON QUEST II first volume)	N ゴルフ～3D～ (N Golf-3D-)	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G guide program table remote control)	電子マネー「Edy」 (“Edy” electronic cash)
Stand-by set	-	-	-	-
Network set	ON	ON	ON	ON
Stand-by net	-	-	-	-
Icon info	-	-	-	-
Change mld./img.	-	-	-	-
See P.book/hist.	-	-	-	-

### ● Playing ドラゴンクエストII 前編 (DRAGON QUEST II first volume)

The first volume of “ドラゴンクエストII” (DRAGON QUEST II), the second chapter of the most popular roll playing game.

The three descendants of the hero in the first chapter defend the world against the coming evil.

● The “ワールドマップ” (World Map) PDF document for “ドラゴンクエストII” (DRAGON QUEST II) is pre-installed in your FOMA terminal. → P.405

#### 1 Software list screen (P.304) ▶ “ドラゴンクエスト2 前編”

#### 2 “START” ▶ “ぼうけんのしょをつくる” ▶ Select “ぼうけんのしょ” to use ▶ Specify “なまえ”, “ひょうじそくど” and “おとのおおきさ”

The game starts.

■ To display how to play in detail

▶ On the game screen ▶ (オプション) ▶ “たびのこころえ”



#### ■ ドラゴンクエストII 後編 (DRAGON QUEST II second volume)

Only the first volume of “ドラゴンクエストII” (DRAGON QUEST II) is pre-installed. If you want to play the second volume, download it by following the prompts after you finish playing the first one.

- The packet communication performed for downloading the ドラゴンクエストII 後編 (DRAGON QUEST II second volume) is charged separately.
- The data of the first volume must be carried over into the second volume to play it. Be careful not to delete the data accidentally.

### ● Playing N ゴルフ～3D～ (N Golf-3D-)

Select the desired player and try all 18 holes in this realistic 3D golf course.

#### 1 Software list screen (P.304) ▶ “N ゴルフ～3D～”



■ To display how to play in detail

▶ On the title screen ▶ (ヘルプ)

## 2 “START”

## 3 “MATCH PLAY”, “STROKE PLAY” or “TRAINING”

Specify the related settings and start the game.

### ● Using “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)

As for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control), the TV program table and AV remote control functions were set to one. It is a convenient application. The TV program information on time to know always anywhere can be acquired easily. Program title, contents of program and start/end time and a G code® can be known. If a favorite program is registered into a registration list, schedule registration can be performed and alarm can be sounded at the time of a program start. Furthermore, it is possible to search program information with keywords, such as a genre of a TV program and favorite talent.

Moreover, remote control operation of television, video, and a DVD player can be performed.

Separate packet communication charges apply to the use of this product.

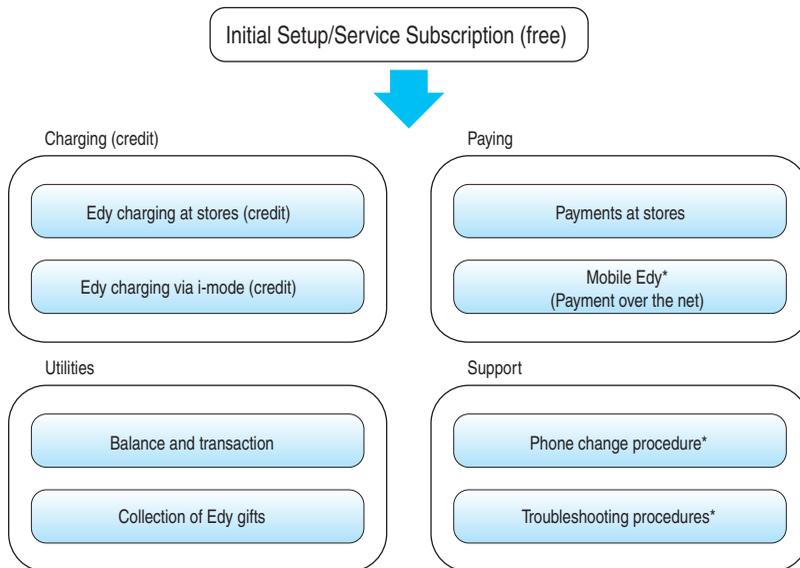
Refer to “Using the Infrared Remote Control Function” (P.398) for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control).

### ● Using “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash)

The “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) service is a simple and straightforward prepaid electronic cash service that anyone can use. The “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) service is provided by bitWallet, Inc. To use the service, you must confirm the terms and conditions of use and go through the initial setup procedure.

“What is Mobile Wallet?” → P.322

#### ● Service details



\* Services that require subscription in advance

For detailed information on the “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) services, the stores where the service can be used, and information on Edy procedures when you change, damage or lose your FOMA terminal, visit the Edy website or i-mode site, or contact the phone number given below.

#### NOTE

- Packet communication charges apply when you use i-mode communication such as “初期設定 (Initial setting)” and the i-oppli “主なメニュー (Main menu)”.
- Even if you changed your FOMA terminal to a new model, the Edy function of the previous phone still can be used. Please be careful when discarding a FOMA terminal capable of using Edy.

## NOTE

- If "OFF" is selected in "Network set" for an i-appli or if the FOMA terminal is set to Self mode, no i-mode communication is possible and "初期設定 (Initial setting)" and functions in i-appli "主なメニュー (Main menu)" cannot be used.
- Users using domain-selective reception should add "bitwallet.co.jp" to their list of approved domains because the Mobile Edy service (payments over the Internet) can only be used when the FOMA terminal is able to receive transaction initiation mail from the Edy Center.
- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the FOMA terminal.

## Contact information for Edy service inquiries

bitWallet, Inc.

- For information on Edy, visit the Edy website or i-mode site.

Website: <http://www.edy.jp>

i-mode site: <http://imode.edy.jp>

- In the event of difficulties with any of the Edy procedures:  
Edy emergency number: 0570-081-999 (not available with PHS)  
Operating hours: 9.00 am to 9.00 pm (daily)  
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing not to make a call to a wrong number.



## Launching i-appli Automatically

Use this function have software applications launch automatically. You can set the date, time and the day of the week for automatic launching.

- To use automatic launching, the date and time must be set in "Set time" (P.47).
- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 applications.

### Enabling automatic launching <Auto start setting>

Default setting  
OFF

1



▶ "Auto start set" ▶ "ON" or "OFF"

### Setting the launch date/time <Auto start time>

Default setting  
All OFF

Use this setting to specify the date and time when the software is automatically launched.

- Software does not start up automatically in the following situations:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - When All lock or PIM lock is set
  - When the i-appli menu is active
  - When an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching
  - When software updating is scheduled for the same time as automatic launching

1

Software list screen (P.304) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Auto start time" ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (  )



- To enable the time interval set for the software

▶ Check the "Time interval set" checkbox

- To set the launch date and time

▶ Check the "Start time set" checkbox

2

(Finish) ▶ Set the launch date and time



- To set the launch date and time

▶ Select an item for "Date setting" ▶ Enter the launch date and time

- To set repeated automatic launch times

▶ Select an item for "Repeat" setting ▶ "Daily" or "Weekly"

If you selected "Weekly", use  to select a checkbox (  ) and press (Finish).

3

(Finish)

**NOTE**

- If you set the “Time interval set” and “Start time set” for the same software application and those automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the software will launch automatically for the first launch time but not for the second.

## Checking whether an i-αpli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether an i-αpli automatically started up at the specified time. You can also use this procedure to check software that failed to start up from an IC card function.

### 1 “i-αpli info” ▶ “Auto start info”



The screen shows information such as the software application name, the automatic launch time and whether or not the software was launched. “Start ○” indicates that the software started up automatically, “Start ×” indicates that it did not start up automatically and “Start-” indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.

**NOTE**

- If the software could not be launched automatically, the “ (Not run soft)” icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the auto start info screen. Select the software to launch it. Desktop icons → P.133
- The information is also stored when the application could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another software application.
- “Auto start info” may include the information for the software you did not realize its launch.

## <i-αpli To function> Running i-αpli from Sites or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-αpli from a function other than i-αpli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

### Enabling software launching with i-αpli To <Set i-αpli To> Default setting All activated

Use this setting to specify whether i-αpli software can be launched from i-mode sites, mail, the Infrared data exchange function, bar code reader or IC card function.

- This setting can be specified separately for each software application.

### 1 **Software list screen (P.304) ▶ “Set i-αpli To” ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Site “i-αpli To”</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  (Finish) Allows software to be launched from a page on a site.
<b>Mail “i-αpli To”</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  (Finish) Allows software to be launched from an i-mode mail.
<b>Ir “i-αpli To”</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  (Finish) Allows software to be launched with the Infrared data exchange function.
<b>Bar code “i-αpli To”</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  (Finish) Allows software to be launched from the bar code reader.
<b>IC-Card “i-αpli To”</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶  (Finish) Allows software to be launched with the IC card function.

## Launching i-appli from a site

When an i-appli software launch specification is displayed on a site, this setting allows the software to be launched from the site.

- This function cannot be used with some sites.

- 1 **Sites screen (P.197) ▶ Select an item for launching the software ▶ “YES”**

## Launching i-appli from a mail

When an i-appli software launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, this setting allows the software to be launched from the i-mode mail.

- 1 **Received mail detail screen (P.267) ▶ Select an item for launching the software ▶ “YES”**

### NOTE

- If multiple data items are pasted into the mail, the pasted data itself may not be displayed.
- If an i-appli launch specification is included in an i-mode mail message, the i-appli launch specification cannot be quoted when you reply with a quote or forward the message. You cannot quote a launch specification to launch an i-appli by forwarding mail using the Data Link Software or the Infrared data exchange function.

## Launching i-appli with the Infrared data exchange function

This setting allows the i-appli software to be launched when an i-appli launch signal is received during Infrared data exchange.

- 1   ▶ **“Receive Ir data” ▶ “Receive” ▶ Receive the i-appli launch signal**

## Launching i-appli from the bar code reader

This setting allows the software to be launched from a bar code when a bar code scanned by the bar code reader includes an i-appli software launch specification.

- 1   ▶ **“Bar code reader” ▶ “New” ▶ Scan the bar code**
- 2 **Select an item for launching the software ▶ “YES”**

## Launching i-appli with the IC card function

This setting allows the software to be launched from an IC card function when the FeliCa icon on the FOMA terminal is held over a unit (reader/writer).

- Software does not start up in the following situations:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - When the software you are trying to launch is not installed
  - When “IC-Card i-appli To” is not set
- When IC Card lock is set, you cannot launch i-appli with the IC card function. When you launch i-appli with other function than IC card while IC Card lock is set, you cannot use the IC card function with the i-appli.

- 1 **Hold the FeliCa icon “” on the FOMA terminal over the unit (reader/writer)**

# Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

Use this function to set a selected i-αppli software as the standby screen on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli standby screen is shown, the “” or “” icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

- Only 1 i-αppli can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- The “Web To function” (P.215) cannot be used from the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some software applications cannot be set as the standby screen.

## 1 Software list screen (P.304) (FUNC) “Software setting” “Stand-by set” “ON” (Finish)

### NOTE

- The “” icon is displayed for software set in the standby screen.
- If software that communicates is set as the standby screen, it may not run correctly when problems such as poor signal quality occur.
- If you select “OFF” for “Stand-by net” in “Software setting”, you may not be primed with timely provision of information.
- When an i-αppli standby screen is set, the image set for the “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” (P.121) is not shown.
- If you display the standby screen while a menu function is running, the standby screen selected in “Display setting” appears even when an i-αppli standby screen has been set.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off and then on again while you are setting an i-αppli standby screen, a message appears asking whether to launch the i-αppli standby screen.
- If you set “All lock” (P.143) or “PIM lock” (P.147) while the i-αppli standby screen is shown, the i-αppli standby screen quits and the standby screen set in “Display setting” appears. Once you release “All lock” or “PIM lock”, the i-αppli standby screen reappears.

## Switching the i-αppli standby screen to the αppli mode

Use this procedure to launch the software application set in the i-αppli standby screen.

### 1 On i-αppli standby screen

The i-αppli starts up and the “” or “” icon at the bottom of the screen changes to a flashing “” or “” icon.



### NOTE

- Some software applications allow you to return from αppli mode to the i-αppli standby screen by using the FOMA terminal's keys while the i-αppli standby screen is shown. However, you cannot return to the i-αppli standby screen while another menu function is running.

## Deselecting the i-αppli standby screen <Deselect i-αppli standby screen>

### 1 Deselecting the i-αppli standby screen during αppli mode

1 During αppli mode (1 second or longer) or Select any item:

Item	Description
Cancel	Cancels i-αppli standby screen deselection.
Ended	Quits without deselecting the i-αppli standby screen and restarts the i-αppli standby screen.
Terminated	Deselects the i-αppli standby screen.

## ● Deselecting the i-αppli standby screen while it is shown

**1**   ▶ “i-αppli settings” ▶ “End stand-by display” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
End	Quits without deselecting the i-αppli standby screen and restarts the i-αppli standby screen.
Terminate	Deselects the i-αppli standby screen.

### NOTE

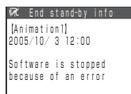
- If you deselect the i-αppli standby screen, the image set for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears in the standby screen.

## ● Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurs that causes the i-αppli standby screen to be deselected, you can use this setting to check the recorded information showing the name of the software in which the error occurred, the time of the error and the reason.

**1**   ▶ “i-αppli info” ▶ “End stand-by info”

The software name, error date and time and the reason for the error are displayed.



### NOTE

- No information is recorded if the i-αppli standby screen ends normally (at normal exit).
-  (FUNC) may appear. Pressing  (FUNC) and selecting “Copy info” copies the information. To delete the information, select “Delete info” and then select “YES”.

## Organizing i-αppli

- With some software applications, the information service provider (IP) may access software stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the software. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or use the software in a standby screen. You can only delete the software or view the software information. To use the software again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the software.
- With some software applications, the IP may send data to software stored on your FOMA terminal.
- When an IP sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to software stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the  icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.

## ● Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

- You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-αppli that rename mail folders in the following situations:
  - When mail security is set
  - When folder security is set
  - When the dedicated Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-connected i-αppli to be upgraded is being used

**1** Software list screen (P.304) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Upgrade” ▶ “YES”

### NOTE

- When there is insufficient memory available, a message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted software before saving the upgraded software. → P.303
- If the software is not upgraded, a message appears after the software information has been downloaded notifying you that your current software is the latest version.

## NOTE

- When an SSL page is used, a message appears notifying you that SSL communication will begin.
- Before upgrading, a message may be displayed notifying you that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be used.
- Some software is upgraded automatically while it is running. In such cases, a message appears asking you whether to upgrade.

## Deleting i-appli <Delete i-appli>

You can use these functions to delete individual saved software application or all the software applications.

### 1 Software list screen (P.304) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Delete	Deletes the highlighted i-appli.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple i-appli programs.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the registered i-appli programs. Security code → P.140

## NOTE

- If you try to delete software that is set in the i-appli standby screen (software marked with "") or software that has been set to launch automatically (software marked with ""), the current status of the software and a message asking whether to delete the software appear.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-appli, a message appears asking whether to delete the corresponding dedicated folders for the mail-connected i-appli. Select "NO" to delete only the mail-connected i-appli or "YES" to delete the mail-connected i-appli, the dedicated Outbox and Inbox folders for the mail-connected i-appli and all the mail stored in those folders. Note that you cannot delete the dedicated Outbox and Inbox folders for the mail-connected i-appli if they are being used, if security is set for the folders, or if they contain a protected mail.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-appli, any incoming i-appli mail that is received while the software to be deleted is selected may also be deleted.
- Some Mobile Wallet i-appli programs that support the IC card function require you to launch the application and delete data on the IC card before the software itself can be deleted. You cannot delete this type of software by performing "Delete". (Selecting "Delete selected" or "Delete all" deletes other software.) Delete the IC card data before deleting the software.
- Some Mobile Wallet i-appli programs that support the IC card function cannot be deleted.

# i-motion

What is an i-motion? .....	316
Downloading i-motion .....	<a href="#">Download i-motion</a> 316
i-motion Settings .....	318

# What is an i-motion?

An i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can set an i-motion as a ring tone. Chaku-motion → P.114

## i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site or the file type.

i-motion		Description
Type	Replay type	
<b>Normal type (Can be saved*)</b>	Playable after downloaded (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be played after the whole data is downloaded.
	Playable during download (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time.
<b>Streaming type (Cannot be saved)</b>	Played during download (Up to 2M bytes)	Downloaded and played at the same time. The data is deleted after played. Cannot be played repeatedly or stored on the FOMA terminal.

\* : Some i-motion cannot be saved.

### NOTE

- The FOMA terminal plays i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
- The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

## Downloading i-motion

### Downloading and playing i-motion from the sites

**1**   ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Menu List” ▶ Select the option for the site

### 2 Select i-motion

“The Data acquisition screen” appears when the data download is completed.

#### ■ To cancel the download

▶  (Quit)

#### ■ Normal-type i-motion

Use the “Automatic replay” settings in “i-motion settings” (P.318) to specify whether normal i-motion is automatically played during the download. Some i-motion may be played after they are downloaded.

#### ■ Streaming-type i-motion

You cannot download streaming i-motion if “Normal type” is selected in “i-motion type setting”.

When you receive a message “Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay”

- “Normal type” is selected in the “i-motion type setting” (P.319) in “i-motion setting”. Press  to return to the site screen, select “i-motion type” from the function menu, change the settings to “Normal type”, and then download the i-motion again.

When you receive a message “Replay streaming?”

- Selecting “YES” plays the i-motion. Selecting “NO” brings you back to the site screen.
- To cancel the playback in progress after you have selected “YES”, press  (Quit).

### 3

## “Play”

Plays the downloaded i-motion.

“Operation during the i-motion playback” → P.359



Function menu → P.317

### NOTE

- i-motion without title is shown in the data acquisition screen as “No title”.
- Some sites and i-motion do not allow the playback during the download.
- Even if you stop the playback of the normal type during the download, the downloading continues.
- Even if “ON” is selected for “Automatic replay” setting, the data played during the download is not automatically played after the download is finished.
- If “OFF” is selected for “Automatic replay” setting, the i-motion is not automatically played after the download is finished, and the data acquisition screen appears.
- Some i-motion is restricted to be played. “” is displayed at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. If this is the case, i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played. “i-motion information” → P.358
- When downloading and playing the data, the reception status may affect the replay or motion.
- Some i-motion cannot be correctly played.
- When you download and play normal-type i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow. When streaming, you cannot pause the playback either. Press  (Quit) to stop the playback.
- If data retrieval is interrupted due to problems with the reception, or if the retrieved data exceeds the limit on the permitted amount of data, and the FOMA terminal can display “Play”, “Save” or “Property” on the data acquisition screen, a message appears saying that the data could not be downloaded, and then the data acquisition screen appears.
- The reception status may affect the replay or motion during the download. After the data acquisition is completed, you can play the normal-type i-motion repeatedly, but not the streaming-type.

## Function menu (data acquisition screen)

### 1

Data acquisition screen   (FUNC)  Set the following:

Item	Description
Save screen memo	Saves the displayed data acquisition screen to the screen memo. “Saving a screen memo” → P.207

### NOTE

#### <Save screen memo>

- You can also play an i-motion from a “screen memo” (P.207) as which the data acquisition screen is saved. However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of:
  - i-motion restricted to be played
  - Streaming-type i-motion
  - Incomplete i-motion
- i-motion saved to screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of the Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or stand-by display functions with these i-motion.

## Saving i-motion

When “Save” can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.

- Some i-motion cannot be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion can be saved, and the number 100 includes the movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion that can be saved varies between 3 and 100 depending on the amount of the i-motion data.
- i-motion folder → P.336

## 1 Data acquisition screen (P.317) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES”

### ■ To cancel the saving

▶ “NO”

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

### ■ When the memory used for saving i-motion is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary i-motion and then save the new i-motion.

To save the i-motion, select “YES”, and then select an i-motion to delete. Select “NO” to cancel the saving. Selecting “NO” returns you to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

## 2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the i-motion was saved.

### NOTE

- An i-motion without title is listed as “movie”.
- You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site to the standby screen. → P.124  
Some i-motion cannot be set to the standby screen.
- You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

## Viewing i-motion details

Use this procedure to check the details of the i-motion, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

## 1 Data acquisition screen (P.317) ▶ “Property”

The “i-motion info” screen appears. Use  to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining count of the replay, the playback period and the time limit.

After checking the information, press .

## i-motion Settings

The i-motion settings are divided into Automatic replay and i-motion type.

### Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion <Automatic replay>

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:

- Downloading i-motion from the site
- Downloading i-motion from the Received mail screen
- Displaying the Screen memo of the data acquisition screen
- The “Automatic replay” setting is available only for normal-type i-motion. Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the setting.

i-motion types → P.316

## 1 i-mode settings screen (P.216) ▶ “i-motion setting” ▶ “Automatic replay” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion is played during the download.
OFF	Displays the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

### NOTE

- If you select “OFF” and then select a normal-type i-motion on the screen memo list screen or download a normal-type i-motion from a site, the FOMA terminal displays the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion.
- Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played even if “OFF” is selected.

Sets the i-motion type when you download a new one from the site.

- 1 i-mode settings screen (P.216) ▶ “i-motion setting” ▶ “i-motion type”**  
▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Normal type</b>	Downloads only normal-type i-motion.
<b>Norm•Streaming type</b>	Downloads normal-type and streaming-type i-motion.

### NOTE

- When you want to download a streaming-type i-motion, you need to select “Norm•Streaming type” in the “i-motion type setting”. If it is not selected, you receive a message that you need to change the i-motion type settings, and cannot download the streaming-type i-motion.



# ● Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa

What is Mobile Wallet? .....	322
Launching Mobile Wallet i-appli.....	323
Locking the IC Card Functions .....	<b>IC Card lock</b> 324

# What is Mobile Wallet?

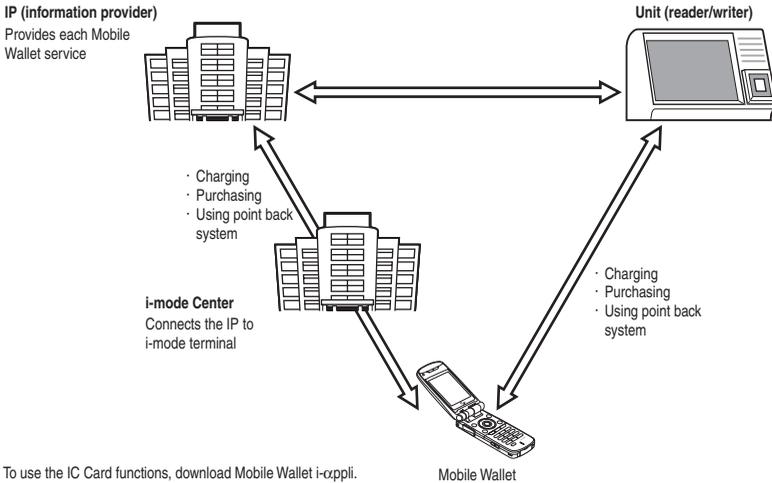
"Mobile Wallet" is a term for the useful i-mode function (i-mode FeliCa) using the IC Card function of the i-mode terminal or for the i-mode terminal equipped with the IC Card.

FeliCa is a type of contactless IC Card technology that enables you to read/write data simply by holding the card over a unit.

Just hold the Mobile Wallet over the unit (reader/writer\*) in a shop, and you can use your phone as electronic cash to pay, as an airline ticket or as a point card. The FOMA terminal makes your life more convenient.

Mobile Wallet is more useful than the existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC Cards in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC Card of your phone or check the account balance or transaction history.

\*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards



\* To use the IC Card functions, download Mobile Wallet i-oxppil.

- The procedures for applying for and using the Mobile Wallet services differ depending on the IP (information provider) used. Contact the IP directly for the specific information. See the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for the important notes on using the Mobile Wallet services.
- You should make a note of the names of the FeliCa services you use and their contact details in case data on the IC card is corrupted or lost when the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, replaced or otherwise mishandled. (When the FOMA terminal is sent for repairs, users are usually asked to erase their personal data.) Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your IC card. When the data on the IC card are erased, lost or corrupted, the problem is dealt with differently depending on the Mobile Wallet service used. Contact your IP (information provider) beforehand for details.
- When your mobile phone is upgraded or exchanged after repairing at a DoCoMo shop, the data stored on the IC card cannot be copied to the new phone. The problem is dealt with differently depending on the Mobile Wallet service used. Contact your IP (information provider) beforehand for details.
- Take great care not to lose your Mobile Wallet. If you lose your Mobile Wallet, contact your IP (information provider) for the information on the Mobile Wallet services you have used. IC Card functions can be restricted by All lock/Remote all lock or IC Card lock. → P.143, 324

# Launching Mobile Wallet i-αppli

## Launching Mobile Wallet i-αppli to read/record IC card data

Launches Mobile Wallet i-αppli from the software list screen. Using the Mobile Wallet i-αppli to read/record the data on IC Card enables you to use useful functions such as electronic money, charging train tickets, or checking your balance or transaction history on your mobile phone.

- Take care to manage your security codes and service passwords carefully.
- The events listed below will interrupt the transfer of data between the application and the IC Card. When this happens, the data that has been transferred is discarded. The action required when the call ends differs depending on the service being used:
  - Incoming call while the i-αppli is running
  - Battery death

**1**   **“Software list”**  
The “Software list screen” appears.

**2** **Select a Mobile Wallet i-αppli**  
Runs the Mobile Wallet i-αppli.

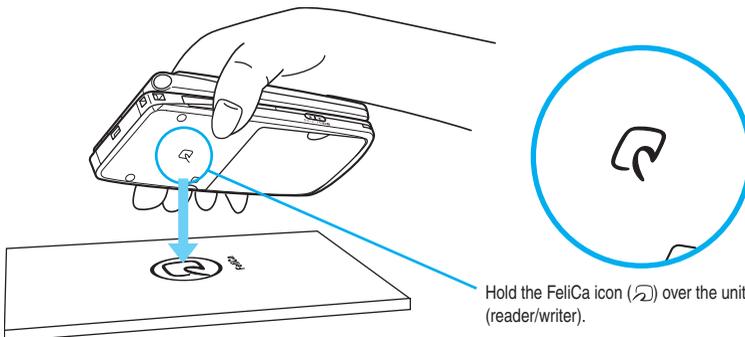
- **To cancel the running**
  - ▶ While the Mobile Wallet i-αppli runs ▶ 

## Using the Mobile Wallet

This function allows you to use your FOMA terminal as a train ticket or to make purchases using electronic cash simply by holding the FeliCa icon (  ) on the FOMA terminal over the unit (reader/writer). This function can be used without launching an application.

- While you are talking on the phone or accessing i-mode, you cannot run the Mobile Wallet i-αppli but can use the Mobile Wallet by holding the FeliCa icon over the unit (reader/writer).
- Holding the FeliCa icon over the unit (reader/writer) may launch a Mobile Wallet i-αppli.

**1** **Hold the FeliCa icon  over the unit (reader/writer) to use the desired service**



### NOTE

- Attach the battery pack when using the Mobile Wallet. You can still hold the FeliCa icon over the unit (reader/writer) and use the IC card functions when the FOMA terminal is turned off or the battery pack has deteriorated, but you cannot launch a Mobile Wallet i-αppli. Leaving the FOMA terminal uncharged for a long period after you have used the battery pack or the low-battery alarm has sounded may prevent you from using the FOMA terminal later. Always charge the battery pack in such situations.
- Do not shock the FOMA terminal when you hold the FeliCa icon over the unit (reader/writer). If the unit (reader/writer) does not recognize the FeliCa icon, get the FOMA terminal closer to the unit and move it little by little horizontally.
- While IC Card lock is set, some Mobile Wallet i-αppli may not be able to download, upgrade, or delete the data.

# Locking the IC Card Functions

Default setting  
OFF

Lock the IC Card functions using IC Card lock so that they cannot be used by other people without your consent.

- Locking the IC Card functions prevents anyone from using the IC functions.
- Turning off the power does not unlock the IC Card functions.
- The All lock and Remote all lock can also lock the IC Card functions. "Preventing Others From Using Your FOMA Terminal" → P.143

## Setting/releasing IC Card lock

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "IC Card lock" ▶ Enter your

### security code

IC Card lock is set and "IC" appears on the screen.

#### ■ To unlock IC Card

▶ Repeat step 1

IC card is unlocked and "IC" disappears from the screen.

Security code → P.140



### NOTE

- You cannot set or release IC Card lock:
  - While you are talking on the phone
  - While multiple tasks run
  - During All lock/Remote all lock
- Removing the battery pack sets the IC Card lock automatically. If this is the case, attaching the battery pack releases the IC Card lock automatically.
- Even if the IC Card lock is set by IC Card lock or Remote all lock and the FOMA terminal is turned off because the battery runs out, the IC Card lock continues to be set.

# ● Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for Viewing on PC

Full Browser 326

i-mode is not available to use home URL, bookmark and other data that are registered in full browser. Furthermore, the settings for full browser are invalid for i-mode.

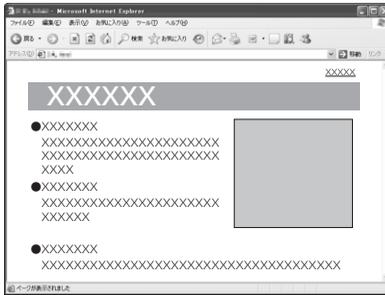
# Displaying Website Designed for Viewing on PC

You can enjoy viewing website designed for viewing on PC with the full browser function. Some websites that are not displayed correctly with i-mode can be displayed correctly. However, such websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly depending on the site.

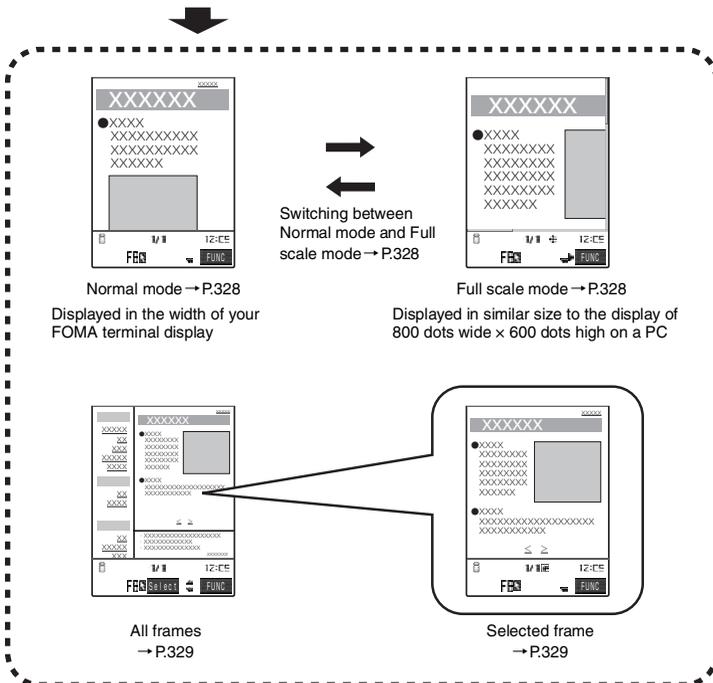
- The packet communication fee for using the full browser function is charged separately from the charge of "Pake-Houdai".
- You can view website composed of frames<sup>\*1</sup>. You can also select a frame to display it. → P.329
- You can view a TLS/SSL<sup>\*2</sup>-compliant website in the full browser mode.

\*1 : The "frame" used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for the framed photography.

\*2 : TLS and SSL are authentication/encryption technology that are used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a TLS/SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.



Website for PC



# 1 Internet (Full Browser)

"Full Browser menu screen" appears.



## 2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Home	Displays website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering a home URL appears.
Bookmark*1	Displays the website registered as bookmark.
Last URL	Displays the website that was displayed last time.
Enter URL*2	Enters a URL to display the website.
Full Browser settings	Performs or confirms the full browser settings. →P.332

\*1 : For how to use bookmarks, see the descriptions for i-mode bookmark operation. →P.205

\*2 : For information on how to enter a URL, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. →P.204

### ■ When the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears

The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use full browser) is "OFF".

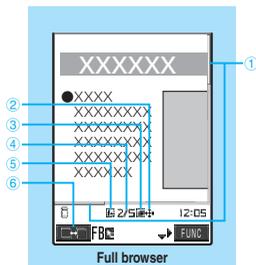
When "OFF" is set to "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears. Read the displayed notes carefully and perform the setting.

When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message screen, "Access setting" (P.332) changes to "ON" and the setting will be retained.

#### NOTE

- It may take time to display some websites.
- You cannot save the page in full browser to the screen memo.
- You cannot switch the mode to i-mode when you are viewing website in the full browser mode.
- Full browser does not support Flash movie and PDF.
- You cannot download and save data such as image in full browser.
- You cannot use the Phone To function in full browser.
- Be sure to insert a FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- You cannot view the site with home URL in full browser even if pressing  (Home) in the standby screen.
- When "Access setting" is set to "ON" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "OFF".
- Thin font is used for characters on a website screen when it is displayed in full browser, regardless of the "Font" setting (P.132).

## Full browser view



Function menu →P.331

- ① Scroll bar  
Indicates the current location in the displayed page. →P.328
- ②  Full scale mode  
Appears when the Full scale mode is used. →P.328
- ③  Selected frame display icon  
Appears when the selected frame is displayed. →P.329
- ④ 2/5 Number of activated multi windows  
Indicates the order and number of activated windows. →P.329
- ⑤  flashes when the other frame is in communication during viewing the selected frame (P.329).  flashes when the other frame is in communication during viewing in the multi window (P.329).
- ⑥  Change window icon  
Pages are switched by pressing this icon when the multiple websites are open.

## ● Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Normal mode and Full scale mode in the full browser screen.

- You can set the default mode with “Full Browser settings” (P.332).
- You can switch the current display mode between Normal mode and Full scale mode by using the function menu.

### ■ Normal mode

Website is displayed in the width of FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing website (horizontal scrolling is not needed).

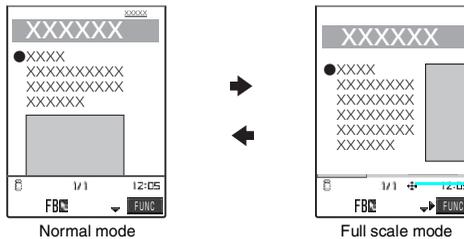
### ■ Full scale mode

Website is displayed in similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC. You can view the website by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

## 1 Full browser screen (P.327) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change disp. mode”

The display mode is switched to Full scale mode when the screen is displayed in Normal mode. When in Full scale mode, it is switched to Normal mode.

When you switch the display mode between Normal mode and Full scale mode, the top of the current page is displayed in the Normal mode and the upper left area is displayed in the Full scale mode.



Full scale mode

Indicates the full scale mode in which you can scroll in 4 directions of up, down, left or right.

## ● Scrolling

When the whole page is not displayed in the full browser screen, you can view the remaining part by scrolling.

### ■ To scroll using

Press to scroll down by lines, and to scroll up by lines in the full browser screen (in Normal mode and Full scale mode).

Press to scroll right, and to left in the full browser screen. Pressing and holding or scrolls the screen continuously in the direction (only in Full scale mode).

### ■ To scroll the screen using (Home) and (Memo/Check)

Press (Memo/Check) to scroll down one screen, and (Home) to scroll up one screen in the full browser screen. Furthermore, pressing and holding (Memo/Check) for 1 second or more enables you to jump to the bottom of the page and (Home) to jump to the top of the page.

### ■ To scroll using Neupointer

Slide to move the cursor to the direction you want to scroll. When the cursor reaches the edge of screen, the cursor changes to “” (depending on the scroll direction). Keeping moving the cursor scrolls the screen continuously.

For Normal mode, you can scroll the screen in 2 directions of up and down.

For Full scale mode, you can scroll the screen in 4 directions of up and down, or right and left.

## ● Returning to the previous page/going to the next page

Press to return to the previous page that was displayed before the current page, and then press to display again the page that was displayed before pressing (only in Normal mode).

Use the function menu to return to the previous page or go to the next page in Full scale mode.

## Using multi window

You can open up to five websites simultaneously in the full browser mode.

- Switch the multi-opened websites one by one.

### NOTE

- You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.

## 1 Full browser screen (P.327) ► (FUNC) ► “Open new window” ► Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Bookmark<sup>*1</sup></b>	Displays a website registered as bookmark.
<b>Enter URL<sup>*2</sup></b>	Enters a URL to display the website.
<b>Display home</b>	Displays the website registered as home URL.
<b>Link</b>	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.

\*1 : For information on how to use bookmark, see the pages describing the bookmark for i-mode → P.205

\*2 : For information on how to enter a URL, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → P.204

The website specified opens with new window.

### ■ To display other page

Pressing (◀) (⏪) changes the page to be displayed.

### ■ To close the opened page

► Display the page you want to close ► (FUNC) ► “Close window” ► “YES”

### NOTE

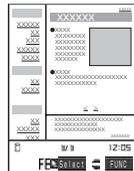
- You can switch to display the websites from the function menu.
  - Full browser screen (P.327) ► (FUNC) ► “Change window” ► Select the title of the page you want to display
- Some websites contain a link set to open the websites using new windows. When you select such link, the website will open with a new window.

## Displaying page composed of frames

You can display website composed of frames that is designed for viewing on PC.

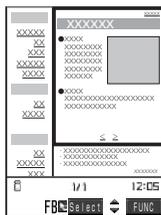
- You can select a frame to display it.
- You can select a frame by using Neupointer.

## 1 Full browser screen (P.327) ► Display a page composed of frames

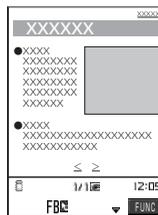


## 2 Use (Neupointer) to select the frame ►

The selected frame appears.  
You can select a frame by using Neupointer.



All frames



Selected frame

- To return to the all-frames screen  
▶ (FUNC) ▶ “All frames”

#### NOTE

- Pressing (CUR) also returns to the all-frames screen.
- For the websites including several frames, all frames may not be displayed (resulting in the frames without characters or images).

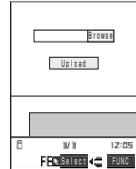
## ● Uploading image

Upload an image that is stored in your FOMA terminal to website.

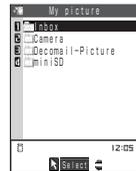
- A website that enables image upload is taken as an example in the description below. Procedures for uploading images and screen details depend on website. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

### 1 Full browser screen (P.327) ▶ Display a website to which you will upload an image ▶ “Browse”

The folder list screen appears.



### 2 Select a folder which stores an image you want to upload

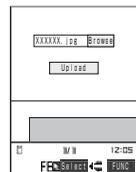


### 3 Select the image you want to upload



### 4 “Upload”

The selected image is uploaded.



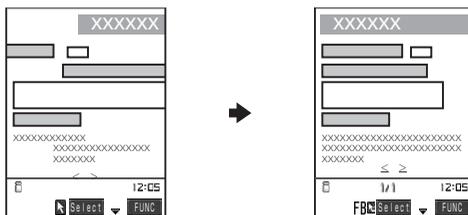
#### NOTE

- The way of uploading image varies depending on website.
- You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- Only JPEG and GIF images are available for uploading.
- Some websites may not support uploading function.
- You cannot upload an image that you are not allowed to output to a device other than FOMA terminal.

## ● Switching to full browser from i-mode

Display the website not viewed correctly in i-mode by changing to full browser.

### 1 Website screen displayed in i-mode ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Switch to FB” ▶ “YES”



You can switch to full browser to correctly display a website designed not for i-mode but for PC. Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.

#### NOTE

- You cannot switch the mode to i-mode when you are viewing website in the full browser mode.
- If the display mode is changed to full browser during character entry, the entered character information is cleared.
- The packet communication fee for using the full browser function is charged separately from the charge of “Pake-Houdai”.

#### Function menu (full browser screen)

### 1 Full browser screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Add bookmark</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Adds a bookmark.
<b>Bookmark</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen.
<b>Enter URL</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Enters a URL to display the website.
<b>Reload</b>	Refreshes the displayed page.
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed page pasted in the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235
<b>Change CHR code</b>	Changes the character code to redisplay the page that is not displayed correctly.
<b>Set as home URL</b>	Registers the URL of the displayed page as home URL. One URL can be registered.
<b>Display home</b>	Displays the page registered as home URL.
<b>Title</b>	Displays the title of the displayed page.
<b>URL</b>	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
<b>Certificate</b>	Displays the detail of TLS/SSL certificate of the displayed page that supports TLS/SSL.
<b>Set image display</b>	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “  ” appears instead of the image.
<b>Retry</b>	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
<b>Cookie settings</b>	“Setting cookie” → P.333
<b>Delete cookies</b>	“Deleting cookie” → P.333
<b>Referer setting</b>	“Setting Referer” → P.334
<b>All frames</b>	Returns to the all frames screen.

\*1 : For information on how to use bookmark, see the pages describing the bookmark for i-mode → P.205

\*2 : For information on how to enter a URL, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → P.204

Item	Description	
<b>Open new window</b>	Displays a website with a new window.	
	<b>Bookmark</b> *1	Displays the website registered as bookmark.
	<b>Enter URL</b> *2	Enters URL to display the website.
	<b>Display home</b>	Displays the website registered as home URL.
	<b>Link</b>	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.
<b>Change window</b>	Switches to other window when displaying multiple websites.	
<b>Close window</b>	Closes the displayed window.	
<b>Change disp. mode</b>	Switches the display mode of the full browser screen between Normal mode and Full scale mode. → P.328	
<b>History back</b>	Takes one page back from the page currently displayed.	
<b>History forward</b>	Returns to the screen that was displayed before performing "History back".	

\*1 : For information on how to use bookmark, see the pages describing the bookmark for i-mode → P.205

\*2 : For information on how to enter a URL, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → P.204

## Setting full browser

### 1 Full Browser menu screen (P.327) ▶ "Full Browser settings" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Access setting</b>	Sets whether to use full browser. → P.327
<b>Home URL</b>	Sets home URL.
<b>Scroll</b>	▶ "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" Sets the number of lines to be scrolled in website.
<b>Set image display</b>	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "🖼️" appears instead of the image not displayed.
<b>Cookie settings</b>	"Setting cookie" → P.333
<b>Delete cookies</b>	"Deleting cookie" → P.333
<b>Referer setting</b>	"Setting Referer" → P.334
<b>Display mode setting</b>	"Changing display mode" → P.328
<b>Script setting</b>	▶ "Valid" or "Invalid" Sets whether to validate JavaScript when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless "Script setting" is set to "Valid".
<b>Window open guard</b>	▶ "Valid" or "Invalid" Sets whether to automatically open new window by using JavaScript. Setting to "Valid" does not open the window automatically.
<b>Check settings</b>	Displays the detail of full browser settings.
<b>Reset last URL</b>	Clears the stored "Last URL". No "Last URL" remains after this operation is performed.
<b>Reset</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ "YES" Returns the full browser settings to the default.

#### NOTE

- If the scroll setting is changed while the full browser screen is displayed in Full scale mode, no change is made for horizontal scrolling.

## ● Confirming full browser settings

### 1 Full Browser menu screen (P.327) ▶ “Full Browser settings” ▶ “Check settings”

The full browser settings are shown.

# Check settings	
Access Setting	ON
Scroll	1 line
Image	ON
Cookie setting	Valid
Cookie Conf.	Both
Referer setting	Send
Display mode	Normal
Script setting	Valid
Win-open guard	Valid
0	12:05

#### NOTE

- The item “Cookie Conf.” is displayed only when “Valid(notify)” is set for “Cookie setting”.

## Cookie

Default setting  
Valid(notify)

Using cookie\* enables you to effectively access the website that you have seen once.

- You can set or delete cookie from the full browser settings or function menu in full browser screen.

\*: Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service.

If cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending cookie.

However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the cookie setting for their correct display and use.

## ● Setting cookie

### 1 Full Browser menu screen (P.327) ▶ “Full Browser settings” ▶ “Cookie settings” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Valid	Always validates cookie. No confirmation is made when cookie is sent or received.	
Invalid	Always invalidates cookie.	
Valid(notify)	<b>Sending</b>	Enables you to choose whether to send cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.
	<b>Receiving</b>	Enables you to choose whether to receive cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when cookie is sent and the information is sent.
	<b>Sending/receiving</b>	Enables you to choose whether to send or receive cookie every time you connect to a page.

#### NOTE

- Expired cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- The cookie information is deleted when “Reset” is performed.
- Although “Cookie settings” is set to “Invalid” if the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced with another one, the cookie information is saved.
- You cannot display or delete cookies separately.
- When “Valid (notify)” is set, some websites may continuously display message screens asking whether to send and receive (update) cookie.

## ● Deleting cookie

### 1 Full Browser menu screen (P.327) ▶ “Full Browser settings” ▶ “Delete cookies” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

Cookie is deleted.

You can set whether to send Referer\*.

- \* : Referer is a source of link information. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site.  
Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer.  
However, you may not access the linked destination in some websites unless Referer is sent.

## ● Setting Referer

**1** Full browser menu screen (P.327) ▶ “Full Browser settings” ▶ “Referer setting” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Send</b>	Sends Referer.
<b>Unsend</b>	Does not send Referer.
<b>Notify</b>	Confirms whether to send Referer.

### NOTE

- When “Notify” is set, the message asking whether to send Referer appears continuously depending on the website.

# ● Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files

<b>■ Mastering a still image</b>	
Data Box .....	336
Displaying Still Images.....	<b>My picture</b> 337
Editing Images .....	<b>Edit image</b> 350
<b>■ Mastering movies</b>	
Playing Movies/i-motion.....	<b>i-motion</b> 355
Editing Movies .....	<b>Edit movie</b> 363
<b>■ Mastering Chara-den</b>	
What is Chara-den?.....	367
<b>■ Mastering melodies</b>	
Playing melodies.....	<b>Melody</b> 373
<b>■ Mastering memory card</b>	
miniSD memory card .....	378
Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card.....	382
Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card .....	<b>SD-PIM</b> 383
Copying data stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.....	385
Managing miniSD memory card .....	386
Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Reader/Writer.....	387
<b>■ Mastering various data</b>	
Working With Folders and Files.....	389
Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding.....	<b>Forwarding image</b> 392
<b>■ Transferring data by Infrared data exchange/cable connection</b>	
Forwarding data by Infrared data exchange/cable connection .....	<b>Infrared data exchange/OBEX</b> 392
Transferring one data by one .....	395
Transferring multiple data at the same time .....	396
Setting Infrared data exchange mode .....	<b>Infrared data exchange mode</b> 397
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function .....	398
<b>■ Mastering PDF viewer</b>	
Viewing Document (PDF File) .....	<b>My document</b> 402
<b>■ Transmitting data</b>	
Printing Stored Images .....	<b>PictBridge print</b> 411

## Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and the still images or movies shot by the built-in camera, or the data downloaded from the mails or the websites are categorized into the folders.

- My picture can contain a maximum of 720 images including the ones you shot, i-motion a maximum of 100 movies including the ones you shot, Melody a maximum of 400, Chara-den a maximum of 10 including the preinstalled ones, and My document a maximum of 400 PDF documents.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document, respectively.
- The data stored in My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document can be moved to another folder in the same item.

Item	Folder	File format	Content	
My picture	Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF <sup>*1</sup>	All images can be saved here. Images imported from miniSD memory cards and image transferred using the infrared communication function are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.	
	Camera			
	Decomail-picture			
	Pre-installed			
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)			
	Original animation	-	Animations created from continuous shot and original animations	
	miniSD	Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images exported from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from PC to miniSD memory card
		Image Box	JPEG, GIF	GIF animations exported from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from PC to miniSD memory card
	Frame	IFM	Preinstalled frames Can save downloaded frames.	
	Stamp	IFM	Preinstalled marker stamps Can save downloaded marker stamps.	
Face stamp	FSD	Preinstalled facestamps Can save downloaded facestamps.		
i-motion	Inbox	MP4	All the movies or i-motion can be saved here. Movies and i-motion imported from miniSD memory cards and image transferred using the infrared communication function are saved to the Inbox. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.	
	Camera			
	Pre-installed	MP4	Preinstalled i-motion	
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)	MP4	Movies and i-motion can be saved here as to Inbox and Camera folders.	
	miniSD	MP4, ASF <sup>*2</sup>	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion exported from the FOMA terminal, movies transferred from PC	
	Playlist <sup>*3</sup>	-	-	

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →P.378

Item	Folder	File format	Content
Melody	Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies transferred using infrared communication are saved to Inbox.
	Pre-installed	MFi	Preinstalled melodies and sound effects
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies can be saved here as to Inbox.
	Voice announce	-	Voice recorded using Voice announce function
	Playlist <sup>3</sup>	-	-
Chara-den		AFD	Preinstalled Chara-den Can save downloaded Chara-den.
My document	Inbox	PDF	PDF documents stored at the time of purchase All documents (PDF) can be saved here. PDF documents transferred using infrared communication are saved to Inbox.
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)		PDF documents can be saved here as to Inbox.
	miniSD	PDF documents exported from the FOMA terminal, PDF documents transferred from PC to miniSD memory card	

\*1 : SWF is a file format for Flash movie.

\*2 : ASF format is play-only.

\*3 : Playlist is a folder used for playing a program. You cannot save data here or delete the folder.

### Important

- It is recommended that you copy the data stored in Data box to miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using miniSD memory card or by using the Data Link Software (P.538) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for this. Please save the data to miniSD memory card, or use Data Link Software to save the data to your PC just in case.

## <My picture>

# Displaying Still Images

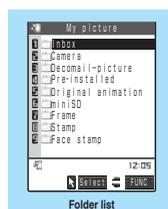
Still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, downloaded from websites or stored on miniSD memory cards are displayed in My picture of the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if it is larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or if the size exceeds 600K bytes. Also, progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high cannot be displayed. Progressive JPEG image → P.210

1

  "My picture"

The "folder list screen" appears.

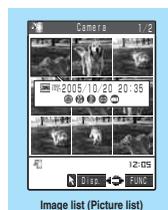


Function menu → P.389

2

## Select a folder

The "image list screen (Picture list)" appears.  
Image list screen → P.338



Function menu → P.341

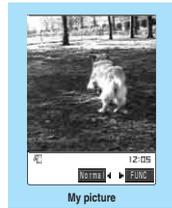
### 3 Select an image

The "My picture screen" appears.  
Use to display the previous or next image.

#### ■ To switch between actual size and large size

▶ Press

Images up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high in size can be displayed in the actual size. Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high in size are zoomed in before is pressed. Images up to 240 dots wide × 270 dots high in size cannot be resized. The zoomed-in image can be scrolled by neuropointer.



Function menu▶P.343

#### NOTE

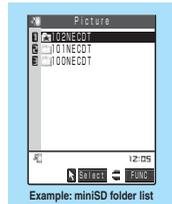
- While displaying in the actual size, you cannot change to the previous or next image by using or display the function menu screen.
- Original animation cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" settings. If "Step" is set, Flash movies are played at the "Level 2" volume.

## Displaying images stored on miniSD memory

### 1 Folder list screen (P.337)▶"miniSD"▶"Picture" or "Image Box"

The "miniSD folder list screen" appears.

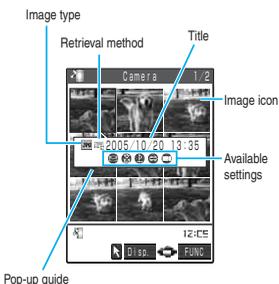
### 2 Select a folder▶Select an image



Example: miniSD folder list

Function menu▶P.390

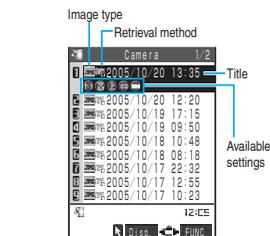
## Guide to the Picture list and Title list



#### ■ Picture list

Nine icons\* of images stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen, and the title of the selected image is displayed in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the way the image was saved, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

\*: Four images are displayed simultaneously for the images stored on miniSD memory card (Picture).



#### ■ Title list

The titles of the nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the way the image was saved, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

## Image type icons

Icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Blue)/ (Navy blue)	JPEG-formatted image (Can be attached to normal mail/Can be attached to large mail/Cannot be attached to mail) <sup>*1</sup>
(Pale blue)/ (Blue)/ (Navy blue)	GIF-formatted image (Can be attached to normal mail/ Cannot be attached to mail (10,001 to 100K bytes)/Cannot be attached to mail (640 dots wide × 480 dots high or larger, 480 dots wide × 640 dots high or larger, 100K bytes or larger) <sup>*1</sup>
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp <sup>*1</sup>
	FSD facestamp
	SWF Flash movie <sup>*1</sup>
	MP4 movie/i-motion <sup>*1</sup>
	MP4 i-motion with sound effect or ASF i-motion <sup>*2</sup>
	MP4 i-motion with playback restriction <sup>*3</sup>
	AFD Chara-den
	Image to which FOMA card operational restriction applies

\*1 : The “” icon is added to the icons of data with file restriction. You cannot send the data by mail or by Infrared data exchange, but can send if you set the restriction to the image shot by the FOMA terminal.

\*2 : The “” icon (blue note) indicates an i-motion with sound effects. If it is orange, it means that the i-motion can be saved only to miniSD memory card.

\*3 : “” turns to “” when the playback period for the i-motion expires.

## Retrieval method icons

Icon	Description
<b>No icon</b>	Preinstalled data
	Data downloaded from website, mail or i-appli
	Data you shot with camera
	Data downloaded from miniSD memory card, Bar code reader or PC, or by Infrared data exchange
	Chara-den shots
	Frame/Marker stamp/Facestamp
	Data clipped from document

## Settings icon

Is not displayed when the data is stored on miniSD memory card (Image Box).

Icon	Description
	Can be attached to i-mode mail (larger than 500K bytes/10,001 to 500K bytes/10,000 bytes or smaller) If the data size exceeds 500K bytes, you need to reduce the size to be attached to mail. “Reducing the image size to be attached to mail” → P.345 “Trimming the movie to be attached to mail” → P.367
	Can be attached to Deco-mail To attach the data to Deco-mail, save it to Decomail-picture.
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be specified as Ring tone

Icon	Description
	Can be transmitted via infrared data exchange
	Can be exported to miniSD memory card

### ■ Titles and file names

Still images or movies shot by the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.

Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm (Year/Month/Day Time)

File name: yyyyymmddhhmmxxx (xxx (3-digit number) is added for still image.)

\_\_\_\_\_ Date and time

\*Still image: the time when the data is saved Movie: the time when the shooting is finished

Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion, melodies and "Chara-den" characters.

The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.

The title is displayed on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

If the file name you tried to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "movie".

### ■ Data that can be edited

Folder	Icon	Data	Can be edited?
My picture	 (Pale blue)  (Blue)  (Navy blue)	JPEG image* <sup>1</sup>	Yes
		Chara-den shot* <sup>2</sup>	
	 (Pale blue)  (Blue)  (Navy blue)	JPEG image with file restriction* <sup>3</sup>	No
	 (Pale blue)  (Blue)  (Navy blue)	GIF image	
	 (Pale blue)  (Blue)  (Navy blue)	GIF image with file restriction	
		Frame, Marker stamp	
		Facestamp	
		Flash movie	
	Image to which FOMA card operational restriction applies		
i-motion		Movie shot with the built-in camera* <sup>3</sup>	Yes
		Movie or i-motion downloaded via Infrared data exchange* <sup>4</sup>	
		Chara-den movie* <sup>2</sup>	
		i-motion downloaded from website	No

\*1 : Editing Images → P.350

\*2 : You cannot edit still images or movies shot on Chara-den if they are file-restricted.

\*3 : You can edit still images or movies shot with the built-in camera even if they are file-restricted.

\*4 : Some movies or i-motion cannot be edited.

## ● Setting the Image list display mode <Viewer settings>

● Original animations and miniSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title.

**1**   **“Display”** ▶ **“Viewer settings”** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Picture</b> (default)	Changes to the picture list.
<b>Title</b>	Changes to the title list.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## Function menu (image list screen)

● The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

### 1 Image list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description			
<b>Edit image</b>	"Editing Images" → P.350			
<b>Edit title</b>	<p> <b>Edit the title</b></p> <p>Edits the title of the highlighted image. "Entering Text" → P.506 Can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. As for miniSD memory card (Picture), can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.</p>			
<b>Display image</b>	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).			
<b>Set as display</b>	<p>A star ★ is added next to the item specified if it is not specified for a videophone-related screen.</p> <p>■ <b>To specify for screens such as standby, dialing or incoming call</b>  <b>Select an item</b></p> <p>■ <b>To specify for videophone-related screens (except VP Dialing or VP Calling)</b>  <b>Select an item</b>  <b>Check the image</b>   <b>"YES"</b></p>			
<b>Image info</b>	"Image information" → P.344			
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing a message with an image attached" → P.345			
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395			
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133			
<b>Export</b>	"Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.349			
<b>Add image to PB</b>	Saves the selected image to the phonebook. → P.97			
<b>Size for mail</b>	"Reducing the image size to be attached to mail" → P.345			
<b>Positioning</b>	"Setting the position when setting an image" → P.346			
<b>Clipping area</b>	"Setting the area when setting an image" → P.347			
<b>Edit file name</b>	<p> <b>Edit the file name</b></p> <p>Edits the file name of the highlighted image. Can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. "Entering Text" → P.506</p>			
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions for the highlighted image.			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>File unrestricted</b> (default)</td> <td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>File restricted</b></td> <td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	<b>File restricted</b>
<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.			
<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.			
<b>Move</b>	<p> <b>Select the destination folder</b></p> <p>Moves the highlighted image to another folder.</p>			
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted image.			
<b>Delete all</b>	<p> <b>Enter your security code</b>  <b>"YES"</b></p> <p>Deletes all the images in the folder. Security code → P.140</p>			
<b>Multiple-choice</b>	"Selecting multiple data" → P.390			
<b>Memory info</b>	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.			

Item	Description	
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts images.	
	<b>Chronological</b> ↑ (default)	Displays images in chronological order from lower to upper.
	<b>Chronological</b> ↓	Displays images in chronological order from upper to lower.
	<b>By title</b> ↓	Displays images in "Number (123) → Alphabet (Aa) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji (亜)" order.
	<b>By title</b> ↑	Displays images in "Kanji (亜) → Hiragana (あいう) → Alphabet (aA) → Number (123)" order.
	<b>By size</b> ↑	Displays images in ascending order by size.
	<b>By size</b> ↓	Displays images in descending order by size.
	<b>By source</b>	Displays images in order by saving method.
<b>Title name</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Switches between Picture and Title name.	
<b>Composite image</b>	"Making a composite image from 4 images" → P.347	
<b>PictBridge print</b>	Prints JPEG images by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer. → P.411	
<b>Facestamp demo</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow the facial movements, "👤" is displayed. If not, "👤" is displayed.	
<b>Decorate mail</b> <sup>*3</sup>	"Composing Deco-mail" → P.346	
<b>DPOF setting</b> <sup>*4</sup>	"Specifying how to print images stored on miniSD memory card" → P.413	
<b>Import</b> <sup>*4</sup>	"Copying images stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → P.350	
<b>Copy</b> <sup>*4</sup>	▶ <b>Select the destination folder</b> Copies the highlighted image to another folder.	
<b>Move</b> <sup>*4</sup>	▶ <b>Select the destination folder</b> Moves the highlighted image to another folder.	

\*1 : If you selected the Title name, Picture is displayed. By default, Picture is displayed.

\*2 : Displayed only when the folder is Face stamp.

\*3 : Displayed only when the folder is Decomail-picture.

\*4 : Displayed only for images saved in miniSD memory card.

#### NOTE

- Icons on the Image list screen show whether an image can be set to the screen, attached to mail, pasted in Deco-mail, transferred by the Infrared data exchange or saved to miniSD memory card. → P.339

#### <Edit title>

- You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on miniSD memory card.
- You cannot edit the titles of the preinstalled images.

#### <Set as display>

- The images in Inbox, Camera or User-created folders can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Checking, On hold, Holding, Substitutive image, Record message, Preparing VP Msg., and VP voice memo screens.
- The images in Pre-installed folder can be set to the Stand-by display or to the Wake-up display.
- You cannot specify the following images to the screens:
  - Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
  - Images whose sizes exceed 100K bytes
- Some images may not be displayed in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.
- Some images cannot be set to the screens.

#### <Add image to PB>

- You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot use this option while Restrict dialing or Keypad dial lock is set.
- You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

#### <Edit file name>

- You cannot edit the names of the following images:
  - Preinstalled images
  - Still images of file-restricted Chara-den shots
  - Images that is prohibited to be output to devices other than the FOMA terminal
- You cannot use half-pitch spaces for file names.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## NOTE

### <File restriction>

- You cannot restrict the following images:
  - Images other than JPEG or GIF
  - Still images of file-restricted Chara-den shots

### <Delete this/Delete all>

- The preinstalled images cannot be deleted.
- If you try to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
  - The screens restore to the default.
  - Original animation is released.
  - The User icon for Schedule turns to .
- Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to mail is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to mail is also deleted.

### <Sort>

- "By source" sorts the images in the following order:
  - Downloaded images or images retrieved from i-appli, etc. → Still images shot by camera → Images retrieved using Infrared data exchange or copied from miniSD memory card → Chara-den shots

## Function menu (My picture screen)

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

### 1 My picture screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description				
<b>Edit image</b>	"Editing Images" → P.350				
<b>Set as display</b>	 <b>Select an item</b> Sets the selected image to the Standby screen, etc.				
<b>Image info</b>	"Image information" → P.344				
<b>Compose message</b>	"Composing a message with an image attached" → P.345				
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395				
<b>Set image disp.</b>	Specifies the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high). <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td><b>Normal</b> (default)</td> <td>Displays the image in the actual size.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Fit in display</b></td> <td>Enlarges the image to the display size.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Normal</b> (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.	<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the image to the display size.
<b>Normal</b> (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.				
<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the image to the display size.				
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133				
<b>Export</b>	"Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.349				
<b>Add image to PB</b>	Saves the displayed image to the phonebook. → P.97				
<b>Positioning</b>	"Setting the position when setting an image" → P.346				
<b>Clipping area</b>	"Setting the area when setting an image" → P.347				
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the displayed image.				
<b>Retry</b>	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.				
<b>PictBridge print</b>	Prints JPEG images by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer. → P.411				
<b>Facestamp demo</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Checks the facestamp follow. Demo is displayed normally. If a stamp can follow the facial movements,  is displayed. If not,  is displayed.				
<b>Decorate mail</b> <sup>*2</sup>	"Composing Deco-mail" → P.346				
<b>DPOF setting</b> <sup>*3</sup>	"Specifying how to print images stored on miniSD memory card" → P.413				
<b>Import</b> <sup>*3</sup>	"Copying images stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → P.350				

\*1 : Displayed only when the folder is Face stamp.

\*2 : Displayed only when the folder is Decomail-picture.

\*3 : Displayed only for images saved in miniSD memory card.

**NOTE**

● Icons on the Image list screen show whether an image can be set to the screen, attached to mail, pasted in Deco-mail, transferred by the Infrared data exchange or saved to miniSD memory card. → P.339

**<Set as display>**

● Can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Checking, On hold, Holding, Substitutive image, Record message, Preparing VP Msg., and VP voice memo screens.

● You cannot specify the following images to the screens:

- Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
- Images whose sizes exceed 100K bytes

● Some images may not be displayed in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

● Some images cannot be set to the screens.

**<Add image to PB>**

● You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or less and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

● You cannot use this option while Restrict dialing or Keypad dial lock is set.

● You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

**<Delete this>**

● If you try to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon in Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens restore to the default.
- The Original animation is released.
- The User icon of Schedule turns to "🕒".

● Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to mail is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to mail is also deleted.

## ● Image information

You can check the following:

Item		Content
File name		Displays the file name.
Format		Displays the file format. The format of Flash movies is not displayed.
File size		Displays the file size by K byte.
Saved at		Displays the date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) when the file was saved.
File restriction		Displays "File restricted/File unrestricted".
Transfer for Repair <sup>*1</sup>		Shows whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs. The downloaded images are Permitted to be moved.
Show Size		Displays the file display size (wide × high in dots).
Base		Displays from where the file was downloaded.
Set as display		Displays where the image is set. When no image is set, "No set" is displayed.
DPOF setting <sup>*2</sup>	Print Sheets	Displays the specified number of prints. When it is not set, "No set" is displayed. When 100 or higher is specified, " * * " is displayed.
	Date	Displays ON/OFF of Date.

\*1 : Is not displayed for miniSD memory card.

\*2 : Displayed only for miniSD memory card (Picture).

## ● Composing a message with an image attached

- Resizes the image so that it can be attached to mail if the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes.

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Compose message”

- If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes

▶ Select one of the following ▶ Check that the image size or file size is changed

Item	Description
<b>Attach mail</b>	Reduces the file size to 500 K bytes or less without changing the image size.
<b>QVGA scale down</b>	Reduces the image size to up to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.
<b>QVGA trim away</b>	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims the center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

### 2 Compose the message

Composing and sending i-mode mail → P.235

#### NOTE

- By “QVGA trim away”, you cannot change where to be trimmed, but the center is to be trimmed.
- JPEG image from 10,000 bytes to 500K bytes is called Large image. If you send a Large image to the FOMA terminal, the image is converted to the size in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
  - There are already 20 draft mails stored
  - Flash movie is to be attached
  - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes
  - The image is prohibited to be output to devices other than the FOMA terminal

## ● Reducing the image size to be attached to mail

Resizes the image so that it can be attached to mail if the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes.

You cannot operate this function if the image is GIF, or JPEG other than the above.

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Size for mail” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Attach mail</b>	Reduces the file size to 500 K bytes or less without changing the image size.
<b>QVGA scale down</b>	Reduces the image size up to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.
<b>QVGA trim away</b>	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims the center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

### 2 Check the edited image ▶ “YES”

#### NOTE

- The resized image is newly saved to the folder where the original is stored.
- By “QVGA trim away”, you cannot change where to be trimmed, but the center is to be trimmed.
- The following show the title and file name of the saved image:
  - Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
  - File name: yyyyymmddhhmmXXX (XXX: 3-digit number)

## ● Composing Deco-mail

Composes Deco-mail attaching an image in “Decomail-picture”.

- Resizes the image so that it can be attached to Deco-mail if the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when attached to Deco-mail.

### 1 Folder list screen (P.337) ▶ “Decomail-picture” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Decorate mail”

- If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when attached to Deco-mail

▶ Select one of the following ▶ Check that the image size or file size is changed

Item	Description
<b>Add to decorate mail</b>	Reduces the file size without changing the image size.
<b>Sub-QCIF scale down</b>	Reduces the image size to up to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds the limit when attached to Deco-mail, it is also reduced.
<b>Sub-QCIF trim away</b>	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims the center of the image up to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high. If the file size exceeds the limit when attached to Deco-mail, it is also reduced.

### 2 Decorate mail

Composing and sending Deco-mail → P.242

#### NOTE

- “Add to decorate mail” may not be displayed depending on the image size or file size.
- By “Sub-QCIF trim away”, you cannot change where to be trimmed, but the center is to be trimmed.
- You cannot compose Deco-mail when:
  - There are already 20 draft mails stored
  - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 9,000 bytes

## ● Setting the position when setting an image

Positions the image when it is smaller than the image display area.

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Positioning” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Center</b>	Displays the image in the center of the image display area.
<b>Top</b>	Displays the image at the top of the image display area.
<b>Bottom</b>	Displays the image at the bottom of the image display area.

<Example: The Standby screen>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

#### NOTE

- The specified display position is valid for the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking. However, the specified display position may not function for some image sizes.

## ● Setting the area when setting an image

Sets the area where the image is displayed when it is larger than the image display area.

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Clipping area” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Center	Displays the center of the image.
Upper	Displays the upper part of the image.
Lower	Displays the lower part of the image.

<Example: Calling>



Center part displayed



Upper part displayed



Lower part displayed

#### NOTE

- The specified clipping area is valid for the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking. However, the specified clipping area may not function for some image sizes.

## ● Making a composite image from 4 images

- You cannot specify images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Composite image”

### 2 Select the position ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select four images in total



#### ■ To cancel the specified image

- ▶ Select the image to cancel ▶ “Release this” on the folder selection screen

### 3 (Finish)

#### ■ To retry creating the composite image

- ▶ (Cancel)

#### NOTE

- The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
- The four images are integrated without being resized.
- You can check the selected image by pressing (Play) when the screen is the selection, but the image cannot be displayed in the actual size.

## Creating animations <Original animation>

Use this function to create an animated cartoon made of up to 20 frames using stored images.

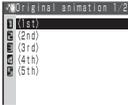
● You can create up to 20 animations.

**1**   ▶ “My picture” ▶ “Original animation”

The “Original animation list screen” appears.

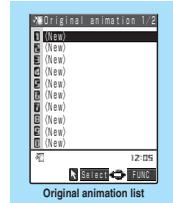
**2** “<New>”

**3** Select a frame ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat



■ To cancel the specified image

▶ Select the frame to cancel ▶ “Release this” on the folder selection screen



Function menu ▶ P.348

**4**  (Finish)

### NOTE

- You can check the selected image by pressing  (Play) on the selection screen.
- Only the frames with an image specified are played in order.
- You can specify JPEG images whose sizes are 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller.

### Function menu (Original animation list screen)

**1** Original animation list screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title</b> Edits the title of the selected original animation. Can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Org. animation</b>	Newly creates Original animation when “<New>” is selected. Edits the original animation when the existing one is selected.
<b>Display image</b>	Plays the selected original animation. (Displays the original animation playback screen)
<b>Set as display</b>	▶ <b>Select an item</b> Sets the selected original animation to the Standby screen, etc.
<b>Image info</b>	Checks the settings of the original animation. If there are no settings, “No set” is displayed.
<b>Release animat.</b>	Cancels the selected original animation.

### NOTE

<Set as display>

- Can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking.

## Playing the original animation

### 1 Original animation list screen (P.348) ▶ Select an original animation

The "Original animation playback screen" appears. If there are two original animations or more, use  to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback  
Function menu▶P.349

### Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

### 1 Original animation playback screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Set as display</b>	▶ <b>Select an item</b> Sets the selected image to the Standby screen, etc.
<b>Set image disp.</b>	Specifies the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
	<b>Normal</b> (default)      Displays the image in the actual size.
	<b>Fit in display</b> Enlarges the image to the display size.
<b>Retry</b>	Plays the animation from the beginning.

#### NOTE

##### <Set as display>

- Can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking.

## Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

Use this procedure to export (copy) images stored in the folders to miniSD memory card.

- The exported images are saved to the destination folder specified by "Select storage" (P.391).
- Icons on the Image List screen show which images can be exported.

<Example: Image list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Export" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Export one</b>	Exports one highlighted image.
<b>Export selected</b>	▶ <b>Select images</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Exports two selected images or more.
<b>Export all</b>	Exports all the images.

#### NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the export. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot export the preinstalled images.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved to the new folder.
- The following shows the file name after exported:
  - File name: NEC\_mmmm (mmmm = 0001 to 9999)

**NOTE**

- You cannot export an image when:
  - It is not JPEG or GIF
  - It is a still image of file-restricted Chara-den shot
  - It is prohibited to be output to devices other than the FOMA terminal
  - There is too little space available on the miniSD memory card
  - The miniSD memory card is not supported
  - An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
  - The file size exceeds 600K bytes after exported
  - miniSD memory card is being inserted
- When you export images to a miniSD memory card, the file sizes may increase.
- If the clock is not set and you export an image timestamped "----/-- --:--:", the file saving time is "2004/01/01 00:00".

## Copying images stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Use this procedure to import (copy) images stored on miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

- The imported images are saved to the Inbox folder of My picture.

**<Example: Image List screen for miniSD memory card (Picture)>**

### 1 Image list screen (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Import" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Import one</b>	Imports one highlighted image.
<b>Import selected</b>	▶ <b>Select images</b> ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Imports two selected images or more.
<b>Import all</b>	Imports all the images.

**NOTE**

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the import. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot import Flash movies.
- You cannot import an image whose file size exceeds 600K bytes.
- You cannot import images larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high. Also, progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high cannot be imported. Progressive JPEG image → P.210
- The title of the imported image would be:
  - The one specified on miniSD memory card.
  - The file name if the title is not specified on miniSD memory card.
- The file name of the imported image is used as it is or changed to "yyymmddhhmmxxx" (date and time, and 3-digit number (xxx)).

## <Edit image> Editing Images

Use this procedure to edit the images you shot or imported.

- The following are the editing methods:

Type	Details	Size that can be edited	Ref. page
Frame	Frames an image.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high <sup>1</sup>	P.352
Retouch	Applies special effects such as sepia tones to images.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high <sup>2</sup> Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high <sup>2</sup>	P.351
Marker stamp	Pastes marker stamps such as hearts into images.	1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high <sup>3</sup> 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high <sup>3</sup>	P.353
Character stamp	Pastes entered text stamps into images.	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high <sup>2</sup>	P.354
Trim away	Trims an image down to the desired size.	Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high <sup>2</sup>	P.354
Brightness	Adjusts the image brightness.		P.351
Rotate	Rotates the image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90 or 180 degrees.		P.351
Change size	Resizes the image.		P.351

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Type	Details	Size that can be edited	Ref. page
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high <sup>*2</sup> Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high <sup>*2</sup>	P.351
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the display light.		P.351

\*1 : You cannot frame an image if the size is not 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).

\*2 : Some editing methods may not be performed due to the image size.

\*3 : Editable after reducing up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high

● Images that can be edited → P.340

● When “Edit image” is selected in the Image checking screen function menu, only the “Frame”, “Retouch”, “Refresh skin tone” and “Correct backlight” are available.

## 1 My picture screen (P.338) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit image”

The “Edit image screen” appears.

## 2 (FUNC) ▶ Select the editing method → P.351

## 3 Check the edited image ▶ (OK)

## 4 (OK) ▶ “YES” or “NO”

Selecting “YES” overwrites the original image.

Selecting “NO” saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.



Function menu ▶ P.351

### NOTE

- Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
- Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.
- The edited image is regarded as the one shot by camera.
- If the image size is 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high, it is automatically reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high before editing.

### Function menu (Edit image screen)

## 1 Edit image screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Frame</b>	“Adding frames” → P.352	
<b>Retouch</b>	Applies effects to the image.	
	<b>Sharp</b>	Sharpens the outline of the image.
	<b>Blur</b>	Softens the outline of the image.
	<b>Sepia</b>	Makes the sepia-tone image.
	<b>Emboss</b>	Brings out the image in relief.
	<b>Negative</b>	Makes the negative image.
	<b>Horizontal flip</b>	Reverses the left and right in the image (mirroring).
<b>Marker stamp</b>	“Pasting marker stamps” → P.353	
<b>Character stamp</b>	“Pasting character stamps” → P.354	
<b>Trim away</b>	“Trimming” → P.354	
<b>Brightness</b>	▶ Use (FUNC) to adjust the brightness	
	Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to ±0 to +2.	
<b>Rotate</b>	Rotates the image.	
	<b>90° to right</b>	Rotates the image 90° clockwise.
	<b>90° to left</b>	Rotates the image 90° counterclockwise.
	<b>180°</b>	Rotates the image 180°.

Item	Description	
<b>Change size</b>	Resizes the image to the maximum not larger than the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio.	
	<b>VGA (640 × 480)</b>	640 dots wide × 480 dots high (VGA)
	<b>CIF (352 × 288)</b>	352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF)
	<b>QVGA (320 × 240)</b>	320 dots wide × 240 dots high (QVGA)
	<b>QCIF (176 × 144)</b>	176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF)
	<b>Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)</b>	128 dots wide × 96 dots high (Sub-QCIF)
	<b>Stand-by (240 × 320)</b>	240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert.)
	<b>Screen (240 × 345)</b>	240 dots wide × 345 dots high
	<b>VGA Vert. (480 × 640)</b>	480 dots wide × 640 dots high (VGA Vert.)
	<b>CIF Vert. (288 × 352)</b>	288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF Vert.)
	<b>QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)</b>	144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF Vert.)
<b>Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)</b>	96 dots wide × 128 dots high (Sub-QCIF Vert.)	
<b>Correct backlight</b>	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the display light.	
<b>Refresh skin tone</b>	Corrects the skin parts.	
<b>Compose message</b>	“Composing a message with an image attached” → P.345	
<b>Save</b>	Saves the edited image.	

## ● Adding frames

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the preinstalled ones (P.170).

### 1 Edit image screen (P.351) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Frame” ▶ Select a frame

The image is displayed in the selected frame.  
Use ⏪ to change to another frame.

#### ■ To cancel the selected frame

▶ ⏪ (Cancel)

#### NOTE

- The orientation of the downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. The image can be framed only if the size and orientation of the frame are the same as those of the image.
- If the size of the image that was trimmed or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

## ● Pasting marker stamps

- You can use the downloaded marker stamps in addition to the preinstalled ones.
- You can rotate, enlarge or reduce marker stamps.
- The following are the preinstalled marker stamps:

Cross	+	Heart1	♥	Heart2	♥
Kiss	💋	Tear	💧	Flame	🔥
Lightning	⚡	Sorry	🙇	Note	🎵
Flower	🌸	Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger	😡
Right	➡	Below	⬇️	Left	➡
Above	⬆️	Here	📍	No.1	①
No.2	②	No.3	③	Party	🎉
OK	◯	NG	✖	Person	🚶
Car	🚗	Asleep	z z	Question	?
Surprise	!	Shine	☀	Whirlpool	🌀
Punch	👊	Nose	👃	-	-

### 1 Edit image screen (P.351) ▶️ (FUNC) ▶️ “Marker stamp” ▶️ Select a marker stamp

#### ■ To edit a marker stamp

▶️ (FUNC) ▶️ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>90° to right</b>	Rotates the marker stamp 90° clockwise.
<b>90° to left</b>	Rotates the marker stamp 90° counterclockwise.
<b>180°</b>	Rotates the marker stamp 180°.
<b>Scale up</b>	Doubles the size of the marker stamp.
<b>Scale down</b>	Reduces the size of the marker stamp half.

### 2 Position the marker stamp ▶️ (FUNC)

👁 or neuropointer is available to position the marker stamp.



#### ■ To use another marker stamp

▶️ (Add) ▶️ Repeat steps 1 to 2

#### NOTE

- You can only use downloaded stamps measuring 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Larger stamps are handled as GIF images.
- You can repeatedly enlarge or reduce a marker stamp.
- You cannot enlarge the marker stamp bigger than the edited image. You also cannot reduce the width or height of the marker stamp to 1 dot or less.

## ● Pasting character stamps

Default setting      Character color: Black   Font: Gothic style   Character size: Standard size

- Can contain up to 3-15 full-pitch or 6-30 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters that can be entered differs depending on the image size and character size.
- You can change the character stamp color, font and size.

### 1 Edit image screen (P.351) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Character stamp” ▶ Enter the text

- To edit a character stamp
  - ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Character input	▶ Enter the text Reenters the text.
Character color	▶ Use  to select the color Sets the color of the character stamp. To use another color palette, press  (Change).
Font	Chooses between “Gothic style” and “Pop style” for the font.
Character size	Chooses the character size among “Enlargement size”, “Standard size”, and “Reduction size”.

### 2 Position the character stamp ▶

 or neuropointer is available to position the character stamp.



**NOTE**

- The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting.

## ● Trimming

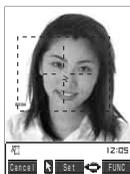
### 1 Edit image screen (P.351) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Trim away” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
CIF (352 × 288)	Trims the image to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF).
QVGA (320 × 240)	Trims the image to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high (QVGA).
QCIF (176 × 144)	Trims the image to 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)	Trims the image to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high (Sub-QCIF).
Stand-by (240 × 320)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert.).
Screen (240 × 345)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 345 dots high.
CIF Vert. (288 × 352)	Trims the image to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF Vert.).
QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)	Trims the image to 144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF Vert.).
Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)	Trims the image to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high (Sub-QCIF Vert.).
Background (240 × 270)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 270 dots high for the menu background.
Menu icon (64 × 63)	Trims the image to 64 dots wide × 63 dots high for the menu icon.
Chat (80 × 80)	Trims the image to 80 dots wide × 80 dots high for Chat.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## 2 Determine where to trim

 or neuropointer is available to adjust the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

## Playing Movies/i-motion

Use this procedure to play movies you have shot, i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites and movies stored on miniSD memory cards from the "i-motion" in the Data box.

- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal → P.316
- After starting the replay of video clip or i-motion, only the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. → P.360, 540

### 1 "i-motion"

The "folder list screen" appears.



Folder list  
Function menu → P.389

### 2 Select a folder

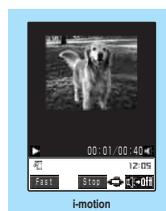
The "movie list screen (Preview)" appears.  
Movie list screen → P.356



Movie list (Preview)  
Function menu → P.356

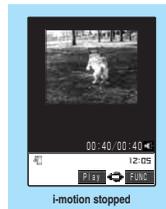
### 3 Select a movie

The "i-motion screen" appears and movie playback begins.  
Use  to play the previous or next movie.  
Operation during the i-motion playback → P.359



i-motion

When playback ends, the "i-motion stopped screen" appears.



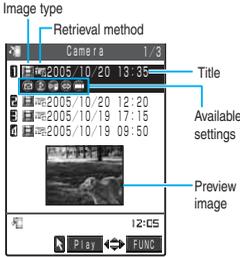
i-motion stopped  
Function menu → P.360

**NOTE**

- If you try to play an i-motion or movie with sound when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message may appear asking whether to play the movie. Selecting "YES" plays the movie with sound. Selecting "NO" plays the video without any sound. If you try to play voice-only i-motion (i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice) or if the turn of voice-only i-motion comes around during continuous playback or play list playback, the playback will be canceled or stopped.
- The video or sound in a movie may stop in mid-movie if you receive mail or a Message Request/Free during movie or i-motion playback.
- You may not be able to play movies that were not shot on FOMA N901iS.

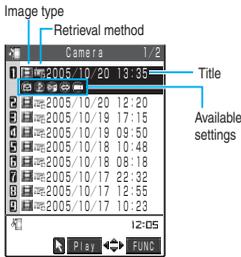
**Guide to the Preview screen and Title list**

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings → P.339
- Titles and file names → P.340



**Preview screen**

The display shows four movies listed by title with a preview image from the selected movie displayed below the titles. Icons show the image types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each movie. Preview images are not displayed for movies with no video such as a sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice).



**Title list**

The titles of the nine movies are listed on the screen. Icons show the image types, retrieval methods, and the options that can be set for each movie.

**Function menu (movie list screen)**

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

**1 Movie list screen (FUNC) Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Edit i-motion</b>	"Editing Movies" → P.363
<b>Edit title</b>	<p>▶ <b>Edit the title</b></p> <p>Edits the title of the highlighted movie. "Entering Text" → P.506</p> <p>■ <b>Inbox, Camera, User-created folders</b> Can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.</p> <p>■ <b>miniSD memory card</b> Can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.</p>

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Item	Description	
<b>Set as ring tone</b>	Sets the selected movie as the ring tone.	
	<b>Phone</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
	<b>Video-phone</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for videophone calls.
	<b>Mail</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
	<b>Chat mail</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
	<b>MessageR</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.
	<b>MessageF</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.
<b>Stand-by display</b>	Sets the selected movie to the standby screen.	
<b>i-motion info</b>	"i-motion information" → P.358	
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the selected movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395	
<b>Export</b>	"Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.362	
<b>Move folder</b>	▶ <b>Select the destination folder</b>	
	Moves the highlighted movie to another folder.	
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	Using Desktop Icons → P.133	
<b>Edit file name</b>	▶ <b>Edit the file name</b>	
	Edits the file name of the selected movie. Can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. "Entering Text" → P.506	
<b>File restriction</b>	Sets the file restrictions for the highlighted movie.	
	<b>File unrestricted</b> (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
<b>Reset title</b>	Restores the title to the default.	
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted movie.	
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ "YES"	
	Deletes all the movies in the folder. Security code → P.140	
<b>Multiple-choice</b>	"Selecting multiple data" → P.390	
<b>Memory info</b>	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.	
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts movies.	
	<b>Chronological</b> ↑ (default)	Displays movies in chronological order from lower to upper.
	<b>Chronological</b> ↓	Displays movies in chronological order from upper to lower.
	<b>By title</b> ↓	Displays movies in ascending order by saving method.
	<b>By title</b> ↑	Displays movies in descending order by saving method.
	<b>By size</b> ↑	Displays movies in ascending order by size.
	<b>By size</b> ↓	Displays movies in descending order by size.
	<b>By source</b>	Displays movies in ascending order by saving method.
<b>Listing</b>	Specifies how to list the movies.	
	<b>Title</b> <sup>*3</sup>	Changes to the title list.
	<b>Title + image</b> <sup>*3</sup> (default: Phone)	Changes to the preview display.
	<b>Name</b> <sup>*1</sup> <sup>*4</sup>	Changes to the title list (file name list).
	<b>Name + image</b> <sup>*1</sup> <sup>*4</sup> (default: miniSD)	Changes to the preview display.
	<b>Title</b> <sup>*2</sup> <sup>*4</sup>	Changes to the file name list.

Item	Description
Import <sup>*4</sup>	"Copying movies stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → P.363
Copy <sup>*4</sup>	▶ <b>Select the destination folder</b> ▶  Copies the selected movie to another folder.
Move <sup>*4</sup>	▶ <b>Select the destination folder</b> ▶  Moves the selected movie to another folder.

\*1 : The name is either file name or title.

\*2 : If you have selected the title list, the "File name" is displayed.

\*3 : Displayed only for the movies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

\*4 : Displayed only for the movies or i-motion stored on miniSD memory card.

#### NOTE

##### <Set as ring tone>

- You can only set a movie or i-motion with the Set as ring tone "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".

##### <Stand-by display>

- Deleting the movie or i-motion that was set to the Standby screen restores the Standby screen to the default settings.
- You cannot set the movie or i-motion to the Standby screen when:
  - The movie or i-motion is voice only or text only
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly on the Standby screen.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from the i-motion set to the Standby screen.

##### <Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
  - The movie file size exceeds 500K bytes
  - There are already 20 draft mails stored
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - It is a movie of file-restricted Chara-den shot
  - The i-motion is prohibited to be output to devices other than the FOMA terminal
- You can trim the movie to the size that can be attached to i-mode mail. → P.367

##### <Sort>

- "By source" sorts the images in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
  - Downloaded i-motion or i-motion retrieved from i-appli, etc. → Movies shot by camera → Movies retrieved using Infrared data exchange or copied from miniSD memory card → Chara-den shots

## i-motion information

You can check the following:

Item	Description
File name	Displays the file name.
Format	Displays the file format.
Default title	Displays the original title.
Creator	Displays the creator of the file. If there is no information about the creator, "Unknown" is displayed.
Copyright	Displays the copyright of the file. If there is no information about the copyright, "Unknown" is displayed.
Saved at	Displays the date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) when the file was saved.
File size	Displays the file size by K byte.
Display size	Displays the file display size (wide x high in dots).
Received from	Displays from where the file was retrieved.
Description	Displays the file description. If there is no description, "Unknown" is displayed.
File restriction	Displays File restricted/File unrestricted.

Item	Description	
Replay restriction	If there are count restrictions	Displays "Remaining play count/Total play count".
	If there are period restrictions	Displays "Date file stored ~ Date of play period".
	If there are span restrictions	Displays "Playable date ~ Date of play span".
	If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted" is displayed.
Video	Displays "Included/Not included/Unplayable" for video.	
Audio	Displays audio information "AMR/AAC/Not included/Playable/Unplayable (MP4)/Unplayable (ASF)".	
Text	Displays "Included/Not included/Unplayable" for text.	
Ring tone	Displays whether the ring tone is "Available/Unavailable". When a ring tone is set, the setting is displayed.	
Receive display	Displays whether the receive display is "Available/Unavailable". When a receive display is set, the setting is displayed.	

## Operations available during i-motion playback

You can use the operations shown below during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control keys	Action
	Pauses/resumes playback.
	Adjusts the volume.
	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion.*1
	Fast forward
	Mute (disabled when there is no audio)
for 1 second or longer	Skip back*2
for 1 second or longer	Skip forward*2
to pause playback and then	Frame advance (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)
to pause playback and then select "Slow" from the function menu	Slow playback
	End

\*1 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the Data acquisition screen (P.317).

\*2 : May not be available for some i-motion.

### NOTE

- The default i-motion volume is "level 4". The volume can be chosen between "level 0" and "level 6", and the setting is retained next time the i-motion is played.
- The volume set for i-motion does not affect the ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- Seek (skip back/forward) can be used while movies are playing (including slow playback and fast forward) and while movies are paused. Sound is muted during seeking (skip back/forward).
- Seek (skip back/forward) is unavailable when:
  - The playback is stopped
  - A streaming i-motion is played
  - It is an i-motion that can be played during downloading
  - The file has no seek points
  - The interval between seek points is too long
  - The file has a seek point only at the beginning of the file
  - The file is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data
- Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip back/forward) or during frame advance playback.

## Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

If an underlined phone number, e-mail address or URL is displayed on the bottom of the screen when the playback ends, you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (P.214). If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When the playback ends, select “Add to phonebook” from the function menu.

- Adding data to the phonebook → P.97



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

### Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

## 1 i-motion stopped screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description												
<b>Normal play</b>	If the playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the pause.												
<b>Slow</b>	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select “Normal play” from the Function menu while the movie is paused.												
<b>Fast</b>	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select “Normal play” from the Function menu while the movie is paused.												
<b>Stop</b>	Exits i-motion and returns to the Movies list screen.												
<b>Position to play</b>	▶ (Play) ▶ Select the point where the playback is to begin Begins the playback from the specified position.												
<b>Edit i-motion</b>	“Editing Movies” → P.363												
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current movie attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235												
<b>Set as ring tone</b>	Sets the current movie as the ring tone. <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Phone</b></td> <td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Video-phone</b></td> <td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for videophone calls.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Mail</b></td> <td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Chat mail</b></td> <td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>MessageR</b></td> <td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>MessageF</b></td> <td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Phone</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.	<b>Video-phone</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for videophone calls.	<b>Mail</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.	<b>Chat mail</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.	<b>MessageR</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.	<b>MessageF</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.
<b>Phone</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.												
<b>Video-phone</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for videophone calls.												
<b>Mail</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.												
<b>Chat mail</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.												
<b>MessageR</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.												
<b>MessageF</b>	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.												
<b>Stand-by display</b>	Sets the selected movie to the Standby screen.												
<b>Set repeat play</b>	Specifies whether to play the i-motion continuously in the file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on this FOMA terminal). After starting to play a video clip or i-motion, the only sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>ON</b></td> <td>Plays the i-motion continuously in the file order in the folder.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>OFF (default)</b></td> <td>Plays only the selected i-motion.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>ON</b>	Plays the i-motion continuously in the file order in the folder.	<b>OFF (default)</b>	Plays only the selected i-motion.								
<b>ON</b>	Plays the i-motion continuously in the file order in the folder.												
<b>OFF (default)</b>	Plays only the selected i-motion.												
<b>i-motion info</b>	“i-motion information” → P.358												
<b>Send Ir data</b>	“Transferring one data at a time” → P.395												
<b>Export</b>	“Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card” → P.362												
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	“Using Desktop Icons” → P.133												
<b>Set image disp.</b>	Sets the display mode for the images. <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Actual size (default)</b></td> <td>Displays the image in the actual size.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Fit in display</b></td> <td>Enlarges the image to the display size.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Actual size (default)</b>	Displays the image in the actual size.	<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the image to the display size.								
<b>Actual size (default)</b>	Displays the image in the actual size.												
<b>Fit in display</b>	Enlarges the image to the display size.												
<b>Import*</b>	“Copying movies stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal” → P.363												

\* : Displayed only for movies or i-motion saved in miniSD memory card

## NOTE

### <Slow>

- Movies are muted during slow playback.
- You cannot use slow playback with a streaming-type i-motion that is playing while you are downloading the i-motion.

### <Fast>

- Movies are muted during fast playback.
- You cannot use fast playback with a streaming-type i-motion that is playing while you are downloading the i-motion.

### <Position to play>

- You may not be able to select the playback position for some movies and i-motion.

### <Set as ring tone>

- You can only set a movie or i-motion with the Set as ring tone "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".

### <Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
  - The file size exceeds 500K bytes
  - There are already 20 draft mails stored
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - It is a movie of file-restricted Chara-den shot
  - The i-motion is prohibited to be output to devices other than the FOMA terminal
- You can trim the movie to the size that can be attached to i-mode mail. → P.367

### <Stand-by display>

- Deleting the movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen restores the standby screen to the default settings.
- You cannot set the movie to the standby screen when:
  - The movie or i-motion is voice only or text only
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly on the standby screen.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from the i-motion set to the standby screen.

### <Set repeat play>

- The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing the i-motion. (If "ON" is set, the movie or i-motion is played repeatedly next time it is played.)
- Setting Set repeat play to "ON" automatically skips data that cannot be played. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from i-motion.
- If you try to play i-motion, etc. on which the playback is restricted, a message appears indicating the restriction, and then the repeat play may be stopped.

### <Set image disp.>

- "Fit in display" is available only when stopping (pausing) i-motion in Data box.

## ● Playing movies in your preferred order <Play movie playlist>

- 1** Folder list screen (P.355) ▶ Highlight "Playlist" and press **⊖** (FUNC) ▶ **"Edit playlist"** ▶ Select the number to which the movie is to be added ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a movie ▶ Repeat



## Function menu (Playlist folder)

- 1** Highlight “Playlist” in i-motion “folder list screen” and then press **⊖ (FUNC) ▶** Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Add folder</b>	▶ <b>Enter a title</b> Adds a folder. Can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Edit folder name</b>	Cannot change the name “Playlist folder”.
<b>Delete folder</b>	Cannot delete the Playlist folder.
<b>Edit playlist</b>	Creates playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing movies in your preferred order” → P.361
<b>Release playlist</b>	Releases the highlighted playlist.

## Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

Use this procedure to export (copy) movies stored in the i-motion Inbox folder, Camera folder and user-created folders to miniSD memory card.

- The exported movies are saved to the destination folder specified by “Select storage” (P.391).
- You cannot export a movie if the file is restricted.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

- 1** **Movie list screen (P.355) ▶ ⊖ (FUNC) ▶ “Export” ▶** Select any item:

Starts exporting.  
It may take long to export depending on the amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until export is completed.

Item	Description
<b>Export one</b>	Exports the highlighted movie.
<b>Export selected</b>	▶ <b>Select a movie</b> ▶ ⊖ (Finish) ▶ <b>“YES”</b> Exports two selected movies or more.
<b>Export all</b>	Exports all the movies.

### NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the export. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and movies are saved to the new folder.
- The following shows the file name after exported:
  - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal)
- You cannot export a movie when:
  - It is a movie of file-restricted Chara-den shot
  - It is prohibited to be output to devices other than the FOMA terminal
  - There is too little space available on the miniSD memory card
  - The miniSD memory card is not supported
  - An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
    - miniSD memory card is being inserted
- If the clock is not set and you export a movie timestamped “----/-- --:--”, the file saving time is “2004/01/01 00:00”.

## Copying movies stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Use this procedure to import (copy) movies stored on miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

- The imported movies are saved to the Inbox folder of i-motion.

<Example: Movie list screen for miniSD memory card>

### 1 Movie list screen (P.355) ► (FUNC) ► “Import” ► Select any item:

Starts importing.

It may take long to import depending on the amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until the import is completed.

Item	Description
<b>Import one</b>	Imports one highlighted movie.
<b>Import selected</b>	► Select a movie ► (Finish) ► “YES” Imports two selected movies or more.
<b>Import all</b>	Imports all the movies.

#### NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the import. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot import a movie when:
  - It is not MP4
  - It is MP4 but cannot be played
- \* You may be unable to import some movies even when none of the above applies.
- Movies larger than 800 K bytes are truncated to the first 800 K bytes.
- The title of the imported movie would be:
  - The one specified on miniSD memory card.
  - The file name if the title is not specified on miniSD memory card.

<Edit movie>

## Editing Movies

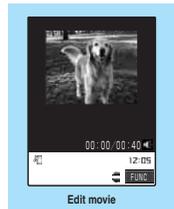
- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing a movie.
- Movies that can be edited → P.340

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

### 1 Movie list screen (P.355) ► (FUNC) ► “Edit i-motion”

The “edit movie screen” appears.

### 2 (FUNC) ► Select the editing method → P.364



Function menu ► P.364

#### NOTE

- Editing a movie may impair the movie quality or increase/decrease the file size.
- If you receive a call, fold the FOMA terminal or the battery runs out during confirming the edited movie, the information currently set is saved. However, the information is not saved if the FOMA terminal's memory for movies is full.
- The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

## Function menu (edit movie screen)

**1** Edit movie screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Trim i-motion	"Trimming a part of the movie" → P.364	
Trim for image	▶ (Play) ▶ Press (Start) when you want to trim the frame ▶ (Set) ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder Trims the selected frame as a still image.	
Rerecord sound	Erases the soundtrack so that new sound can be recorded. "Rerecording sound" → P.364	
Edit ticker	"Adding tickers to movies" → P.365	
Trim for mail	"Trimming the movie to be attached to mail" → P.367	
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the edited movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.235	
File restriction	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.

**NOTE**

## &lt;Compose message&gt;

- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
  - The file size of the edited movie exceeds 500K bytes
  - There are already 20 draft mails stored

**1** Trimming a part of the movie

**1** Edit movie screen (P.363) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Trim i-motion" ▶ (Start)

Starts trimming.

**■ To start trimming at a scene mid-way through the movie**

▶ (Play) ▶ Play the movie to the frame you want to trim ▶ (Start)

**2** Press (Start) when it is the last frame you want to trim ▶ (End)

The trimmed section of the movie is played. The playback stops automatically when it ends.

**■ To check the trimmed section again**

▶ (Play)

**3** (Start) ▶ (Start) ▶ "YES"

**NOTE**

- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during the movie trimming.
- When an i-motion is trimmed, the playback time may become longer.

**1** Rerecording sound

**1** Edit movie screen (P.363) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Rerecord sound" ▶ (Start)

Starts rerecording.

**■ To rerecord sound mid-way through the movie**

▶ (Play) ▶ Play the movie to the frame you want to record ▶ (Start)

**2** Press (End) after recording

The movie playback continues. Press (Start) and (End) to record again.

### 3 Press to finish rerecording

■ To check the rerecorded movie

▶  (Play)

### 4 ▶▶“YES”

#### NOTE

● Rerecording sound onto movies with tickers erases the tickers.

## ● Adding tickers to movies

Default setting

Font color: Black Background color: White Font size: Normal Word alignment: Left  
Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF

Use this procedure to add new tickers to a movie or edit the existing tickers.

● You can edit up to 5 tickers per movie. Each ticker can contain up to 20 full-pitch characters.

● “Entering Text” → P.506

### 1 Edit movie screen (P.363)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit ticker”▶“New”

### 2 (Start)▶ Enter the ticker text

■ To start the tickers at a scene mid-way through the movie

▶ ▶ Press  when you want to add tickers to the frame▶  (Start)

### 3 Set the effects of tickers

Item	Description	
Font color	▶ Use  to select the color Sets the text color. To use another color palette, press  (Change).	
Background color	▶ Use  to select the color Sets the background color. To use another color palette, press  (Change).	
Font size	Chooses between “Normal” and “Large” for the font size.	
Word alignment	Sets the text position. The settings are valid only when the Scroll is set to “OFF”.	
	Left	Displays the ticker on the left of the screen.
	Center	Displays the ticker on the center of the screen.
	Right	Displays the ticker on the right of the screen.
Blink	Specifies whether to flash the tickers.	
Underline	Specifies whether to underline the tickers.	
Scroll	Sets the scrolling mode.	
	OFF	Cancels scrolling.
	Scroll in	▶ Select the scrolling direction among “Right to left”, “Left to right”, “Bottom to top” and “Top to bottom”
	Scroll out	
	Scroll in & out	
Finish setting	Exits the ticker effects settings.	

### 4 Select “Finish setting” when you finish setting

## 5 Press **⏻** when you want to end the tickers **⏻** (End)

When you select "Add ticker", if a point is reached during playback at which previously recorded tickers begin, a message appears asking whether to set that point as the end point for the edited tickers. Choosing "YES" adds a new ticker. Choosing "NO" returns the screen to the Ticker list. Repeat Steps 2 to 5 to add another ticker.

### ■ If the Ticker list appears

▶ **⏻** (Finish)

To check the movie with the inserted tickers, press **▶** (Play).

To edit the tickers, press **⏻** (Edit).

Editing tickers → P.366

Go on to Step 7.

## 6 Press **⏻** (FUNC) when you finish editing ▶ "Finish editing"

## 7 Press **⏻** ▶ **⏻** "YES"

### NOTE

- If you edit the ticker, the edited data cannot be specified as the ring tone.
- The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
- If 6 or more tickers are used in a movie that was retrieved using Infrared data exchange or data communication, the 6th and subsequent tickers are deleted during editing. If a ticker contains more than 20 full-pitch characters, the 21st and subsequent characters are deleted and unsupported effects are also deleted.
- Ticker effects that are not supported by the FOMA N901iS may be deleted or modified.

## ● Editing added tickers

- If you attempt to edit tickers in a movie to which tickers have already been added, a message appears warning you that the ticker data may be deleted.

## 1 Edit movie screen (P.363) ▶ **⏻** (FUNC) ▶ "Edit ticker" ▶ "YES" ▶ "Edit"



The Ticker list screen appears.

### ■ To check the ticker details

▶ Select a ticker ▶ Check the details ▶ **⏻** CLR

## 2 **⏻** (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Change text	Edits the ticker text.
Change effect	Changes ticker effects such as the font color, background color and scroll.
Change start po.	Resets the ticker starting point.
Change end point	Resets the ticker ending point.
Add ticker	▶ " <b>&lt;Available&gt;</b> " ▶ Add the ticker
Delete ticker	Deletes the selected ticker.

## 3 Press **⏻** (Finish) when you finish editing

### NOTE

- You cannot edit the tickers when no tickers have been added.

## ● Trimming the movie to be attached to mail

**1** Edit movie screen (P.363) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Trim for mail” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Mail (L)	Trims a movie larger than 490K bytes to 490K bytes or smaller.
Mail (S)	Trims a movie larger than 290K bytes to 290K bytes or smaller.

**2** (Start) ▶ Press (Start) when you want to start trimming ▶ (Start)

Starts trimming.

The playback stops automatically when the size becomes able to be attached to mail.

■ To check the trimmed movie

▶ (Play)

**3** (YES) ▶ (YES)

### NOTE

- Movies whose sizes are 290 K bytes or larger, which are shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera, can be trimmed using “Trim for mail”.
- The movie with ticker cannot be trimmed.
- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during the movie trimming.

## What is Chara-den?

“Chara-den” is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character to your party's FOMA terminal in a videophone call instead of the image from your own FOMA terminal camera.

### Display Chara-den

Default setting

Set image disp.: Fit in display

Substitute image: Dimo

- Downloading “Chara-den” characters → P.213
- The following are the preinstalled Chara-den characters:



Dimo

© BVIG



Cotto



Natali

**1** (MENU) ▶ (Data box) ▶ “Chara-den”

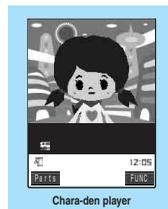
The “Chara-den list screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.369

## 2 Select Chara-den

The "Chara-den player screen" appears.

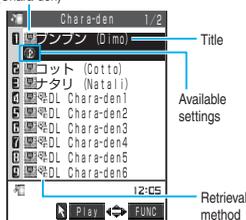


Chara-den player  
Function menu → P.370

## Guide to the Chara-den list

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings → P.339
- Titles and file names → P.340

Image type (Chara-den)



The titles of the nine Chara-den characters are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image (Chara-den) type, the way the image was saved, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

## Using Chara-den characters

This function allows you to play a Chara-den character by choosing from preinstalled actions.

### 1 Chara-den player screen (P.368) ▶ Check the Action list



The actions shown in the list differ depending on the type of character. The number such as "1" or "#1" displayed on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during the Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

#### ■ To check the action details

▶ Select the action ▶ (Detail) ▶ Check the details ▶ (Exit)

### 2 Using Chara-den characters

#### ■ To change the Action mode

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change action"

This command switches to Parts action mode when "☒" is displayed and to Whole action mode when "☒" is displayed.

☒ (Whole):

The action mode in which the entire Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

☒ (Parts):

The action mode in which the parts of the Chara-den character (head, hands, feet, etc.) move.

#### ■ To use the keypad to select actions during the Chara-den playback

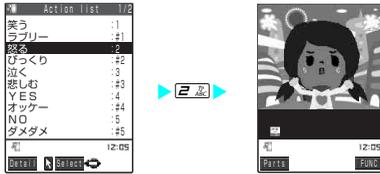
The keypad keys that can be pressed to make the displayed character perform actions are as follows:

"Whole": One-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or #1 to #9 to #9

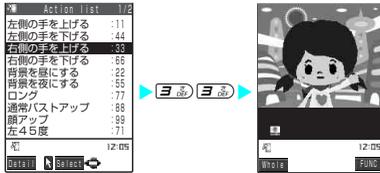
"Parts": Two-digit number on the right side of the action name (11 to 99)

<Example: Anger in Whole action mode>

\*The Chara-den is displayed normally (not mirror).



<Example: Raise the right hand in Parts action mode>



■ To have the character's mouth synchronize your voice



Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking.

If you use the Function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.

Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

1 Chara-den list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description			
Chara-den call	▶ Enter the phone number ▶ (TEL), (CALL) or (FUNC) Makes a videophone call with the selected Chara-den character as the substitute image. Pressing (FUNC) allows you to search phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.			
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.			
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie" → P.371			
Edit title	▶ Edit the title Edits the title of the selected Chara-den. Can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506			
File property	"Chara-den information" → P.370			
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data saved and available space.			
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133			
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Chara-den.			
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Security code → P.140			
Multiple-choice	"Selecting multiple data" → P.390			
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for the images.			
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Actual size</td> <td>Displays the image in the actual size.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Fit in display (default)</td> <td>Enlarges the image to the display size.</td> </tr> </table>	Actual size	Displays the image in the actual size.	Fit in display (default)
Actual size	Displays the image in the actual size.			
Fit in display (default)	Enlarges the image to the display size.			
Reset title	Restores the title to the default.			

**NOTE**

**<Memory info>**

● The displayed file size is only an approximation.

**<Delete this><Delete all>**

● If you try to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as the substitute image for videophone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. Selecting "YES" to delete the character replaces the substitute with preinstalled Chara-den "Dimo". If you have already deleted "Dimo", a preinstalled still image is transmitted as your substitute image.

● If you try to delete a Chara-den character stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. Selecting "YES" to delete the character also deletes the Chara-den stored in the phonebook.

**Function menu (Chara-den player screen)**

**1 Chara-den player screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Chara-den call</b>	▶ <b>Enter the phone number</b> ▶ (EF), (☎) or (●) Makes a videophone call with the selected Chara-den character as the substitute image. Pressing (☎) allows you to search phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
<b>Substitute image</b>	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.
<b>Rec. Chara-den</b>	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie" → P.371
<b>Switch Chara-den</b>	▶ <b>Select the character</b> Selects the type of the character to display.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133
<b>Action list</b>	Displays the Action list.
<b>Change action</b>	Changes the Action mode. → P.368
<b>Chara-den info</b>	Displays the information about the current Chara-den character.
<b>Set image disp.</b>	Sets the display mode for the images.
	<b>Actual size</b> Displays the image in the actual size.
	<b>Fit in display (default)</b> Enlarges the image to the display size.

**● Chara-den information**

You can check the following:

Item	Information provided
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
Rec. file restriction	"File restricted/File unrestricted" after the image is shot
File restriction	"File restricted/File unrestricted" Unrestricted Chara-den becomes restricted after it is downloaded.
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size by K byte
Received from	From where the file was received The blank is displayed for the preinstalled Chara-den.
Saved at	The date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) when the file was saved
Substitute image	The settings of the substitute image If there are no settings, "No setting" is displayed.

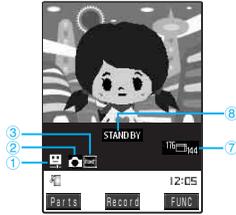
**NOTE**

● "Rec. file restriction" indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using "Chara-den" is edited, exported to miniSD memory card or attached to i-mode mail.

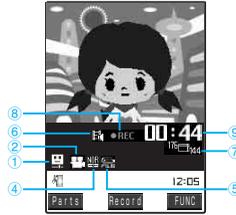
\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

# Saving Chara-den character as image or movie <Rec. Chara-den>

## ■ Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



Recording a still image



Recording a movie

① Shows the currently selected action mode.

: Whole

: Parts

② Shows the recording mode.

: Photo mode

: Movie mode

③ Shows the "Storage setting" (image).

: Super Fine

: Fine

: Normal

④ Shows the "Storage setting" (movie).

: Normal

: Prefer img qual

: Prefer time

: Prefer motion spd

⑤ Shows the "File size setting".

: Restricted (Short)

: Restricted (Long)

: Local playback

⑥ Shows the "Movie type set".

: Video + voice

: Video

⑦ Shows the "Select size".

: QCIF (176 × 144)

: Small (117 × 96)

⑧ Shows the recording status.

: Stand-by

: Recording

⑨ Shows the remaining recording time in the "min:sec" format (not shown until recording begins).

## ● Shooting still images

### 1 Chara-den player screen (P.368) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Rec. Chara-den"

The "Record Chara-den screen (Image)" appears.

### 2 Perform the action ▶

Performing the action → P.368

■ To perform the Parts action

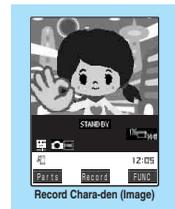
▶ (Parts)

■ To retake the shot

▶ (CLR)

### 3

The recorded still image is saved to the Camera folder of My picture.



Function menu ▶ P.372

#### NOTE

- The FOMA terminal makes no shooting tones when:
  - "Phone" in ring volume is set to "Silent"
  - The manner mode or super silent mode is set
  - "Phone vol." in original manner mode is set to "Silent"

## Function menu (Rec. Chara-den screen)

### 1 Rec. Chara-den screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Switch Chara-den</b>	▶ <b>Select a Chara-den character</b> Changes the Chara-den character to record.	
<b>Substitute image</b>	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.	
<b>Action list</b>	Displays the Action list.	
<b>Change action</b>	Changes the Action mode. → P.368	
<b>Set image disp.</b>	Sets the display mode for the images.	
	<b>Actual size</b>	Displays the image in the actual size.
	<b>Fit in display</b> (default)	Enlarges the image to the display size.
<b>Movie mode*1</b>	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.	
<b>Select size*2</b>	Sets the image size to record.	
	<b>QCIF (176 × 144)</b> (default)	Records the image in 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
	<b>Small (117 × 96)</b>	Records the image in 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.
<b>Movie type set*3</b>	Sets the movie shooting mode.	
	<b>Video + voice</b> (default)	Records movies with both images and sound.
	<b>Video</b>	Records movies without any voices.
<b>Storage setting*3</b>	Sets the image quality and duration for the movie shooting.	
	<b>Normal</b> (default)	Records movies in the standard image quality and duration.
	<b>Prefer img qual</b>	Shoots movies in the higher image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	<b>Prefer time</b>	Shoots long movies. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
<b>Storage setting*2</b>	<b>Prefer motion spd</b>	Shoots movies with smoother motion. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	Sets the file size for storing the image of QCIF (176 × 144) or Small (117 × 96). File size → P.165	
<b>File size setting*3</b>	Sets the file size for shooting movies.	
	<b>Restricted (Short)</b> (default)	You can shoot up to 290K bytes. Select this option to shoot a typical movie and attach it to i-mode mail.
	<b>Restricted (Long)</b>	You can shoot up to 490K bytes. Select this option to shoot a large-sized movie and attach it to i-mode mail.
	<b>Local playback</b>	You can shoot up to 800K bytes.

\*1 : The default is "Photo mode". When you are using Movie mode, Photo mode is displayed here.

\*2 : Cannot be set in Movie mode.

\*3 : Cannot be set in Photo mode.

#### NOTE

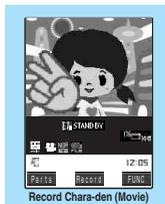
##### <Switch Chara-den>

- If you change the Chara-den character, the Action mode is set to Whole.

## Recording a movie

### 1 Record Chara-den screen (Image) (P.371) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Movie mode”

The “Record Chara-den screen (Movie)” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.372

### 2 Perform the action

Performing the action → P.368

#### ■ To perform the Parts action

▶ (Parts)

#### ■ To check the recorded movie

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Check w/ playing”

#### ■ To retake the shot

▶ (CLR)

### 3

The recorded movie is saved to the Camera folder of i-motion.

#### NOTE

- If you perform the action during the shooting, the keypad sounds may be recorded.
- The image size is QCIF (176 × 144) only. The size cannot be changed.
- The FOMA terminal makes no shooting tones when:
  - “Phone” in ring volume is set to “Silent”
  - The manner mode or super silent mode is set
  - “Phone vol.” in original manner mode is set to “Silent”
- Sounds can be recorded when you use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

## <Melody>

### Playing melodies

Plays the preinstalled melodies, sound effects or the melodies downloaded from the websites in the “Melody” folder of Data box.

### 1 The “folder list screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.389

### 2 Select a folder

The “Melody list screen” appears.  
Melody list screen → P.374



Function menu ▶ P.375

### 3

## Select a melody

The "Melody screen" appears and the melody playback begins. Use  to play the previous or next melody. "Operation during the melody playback" → P.375



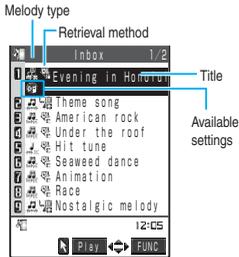
Function menu → P.376

### NOTE

- Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" settings. Played at "level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set.
- If you try to play the melody when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. Selecting "YES" plays the melody.
- You can select only "Pre-installed" during PIM lock.
- You can enjoy rich-sound melody with 3D sound compatible melody. → P.116
- You can enjoy the melodies stored on the FOMA terminal by using the built-in stereo speaker or flat-plug stereo earphone (optional) as if it were a music player. → P.377

## Guide to the Melody list

- The "  " icon is added to the icons of melodies with file restriction.
- Melodies with "  " or "  " before the title may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played, though the entire melody can be played in "Melody" of Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of these melodies.



The titles of the nine melodies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the melody type, the way the melody was saved, and the settings that can be specified for the melody.

### ■ Melody type icon

	MF/SMF melody
---	---------------

### ■ Saving method icons

No icon	Preinstalled melody
	Melody downloaded from website
	Melody retrieved from Bar code reader or PC, or by Infrared data exchange

### ■ Settings icon

	Can be attached to i-mode mail (10,000 bytes or smaller)
	Can be specified as Ring tone
	Can be transmitted via infrared data exchange

## ■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.

The title is listed on the Melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.

If the file name contains an inappropriate character, it is turned to “melodyxxx” (xxx: 3-digit number).

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

## Operation during the melody playback

You can use the operations shown below during the melody playback:

Control keys	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
	Adjusts the volume
	Stops the playback
	End

- After you adjust the volume, pressing or waiting for roughly two seconds turns the display to the melody screen.
- Adjusting the volume during the playback is only a temporary change. When the melody is finished, the volume is restored to the level specified in Ring volume.

### Function menu (Melody list screen)

The function menu of the Melody list screen varies by the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list screen function menu for Inbox or User-created folders → P.375
- Melody list screen function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announcement → P.376
- Changing the settings of “Set as ring tone” also changes the settings of “Select ring tone”.

## 1 Melody list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

### ■ Melody list screen function menu for Inbox or User-created folders

Item	Description	
<b>Edit title</b>	<p> <b>Edit the title</b></p> <p>Edits the title of the selected melody. Can contain up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506</p>	
<b>Edit file name</b>	<p> <b>Edit the file name</b></p> <p>Edits the file name of the selected melody. Can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. “Entering Text” → P.506</p>	
<b>Play melody</b>	Plays the selected melody (Displays Melody screen).	
<b>Set as ring tone</b>	<p> <b>Select an item</b></p> <p>Sets the selected melody as the ring tone.</p>	
<b>File restriction</b>	<b>File unrestricted</b>	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	<b>File restricted</b>	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	“Using Desktop Icons” → P.133	
<b>Compose message</b>	Composes an i-mode mail message with the selected melody attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	“Transferring one data at a time” → P.395	
<b>Melody info</b>	“Melody information” → P.377	
<b>Memory info</b>	Displays the amounts of Melody data saved and available space.	
<b>Reset title</b>	Restores the title to the default.	

Item	Description
<b>Delete</b>	Deletes melodies stored in the folder.
	<b>Delete this</b> Deletes the highlighted melody.
	<b>Delete selected</b> ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Press  (FUNC) to select all or release all.
	<b>Delete all</b> ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Security code → P:140
<b>Sort</b>	Sorts melodies.
	<b>Chronological ↑</b> Displays melodies in chronological order from lower to upper.
	<b>Chronological ↓</b> Displays melodies in chronological order from upper to lower.
	<b>By title ↓</b> Displays melodies in ascending order by title.
	<b>By title ↑</b> Displays melodies in descending order by title.
	<b>By size ↑</b> Displays melodies in ascending order by size.
	<b>By size ↓</b> Displays melodies in descending order by size.
	<b>By source</b> Displays melodies in order by saving method.
<b>Move</b>	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves the selected melody to another folder.

**NOTE**

- <Edit file name>**
  - You cannot edit the name of the melody file restricted but the one transmitted by Infrared data exchange or OBEX.
- <Compose message>**
  - MFI-formatted melody (whose melody type icon is “” or “”) cannot be attached regardless of the retrieving method or File restriction.
  - You cannot attach melodies whose file size exceeds 10,000 bytes.
- <Melody info>**
  - You may be unable to attach the melody to mail even if the file is unrestricted.
- <Memory info>**
  - The displayed file size is only an approximation.
- <Delete>**
  - If you try to delete a melody that has been set as Ring tone or Alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If you select “YES” to delete the melody, the corresponding Ring tone or Alarm tone restores to the default.
- <Sort>**
  - If you exit a sorted Melody List, the melodies are listed in reverse chronological order next time you display the Melody list.
  - “By source” sorts the melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were shown before you selected “By source”:
    - Melody downloaded from website or i-appli → Melody retrieved by Infrared data exchange

**■ Melody list screen function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce**

Item	Description
<b>Play melody</b>	Plays the selected melody.
<b>Set as ring tone</b>	▶ Select an item Sets the selected melody as the ring tone.

**Function menu (Melody screen)**

**1 Melody screen** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Set as ring tone</b>	▶ Select an item Sets the current melody as the ring tone.

Item	Description
<b>Add desktop icon</b> *1	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.133
<b>Compose message</b> *1	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current melody attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→P.235
<b>Melody info</b> *1	"Melody information"→P.377

\*1 : Is not displayed for Pre-installed or Voice announce.

## ● Melody information

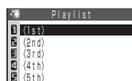
You can check the following:

Item	Information provided
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size by K byte
File restriction	File restricted/File unrestricted
File classification	Melody file type MFI or SMF
Transfer for Repair	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs
Received from	From where the file was received
Preservation date	The date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) when the file was saved
Vibrator linkage	"ON/OFF" of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	"ON/OFF" of Illumination linkage
Ring tone set	The settings of the Ring tone If there are no settings, "No set" is displayed.

## ● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Play playlist>

You can select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

- 1 Folder list screen (P.373)▶ Highlight "Playlist" and then press (FUNC)▶ "Edit playlist"▶ Select the number to which the melody is to be added▶ Select a folder▶ Select a melody▶ Repeat**



**■ To release the added melody**

- ▶ Select the melody to release▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen

- 2 (Finish)**

The "Folder list screen" appears.

Selecting the Playlist folder starts the program playback and the stored melodies are played repeatedly.

### NOTE

- The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

### Function menu (Playlist folder)

- 1 Highlight "Playlist" in Melody "folder list screen" and then press (FUNC)▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Add folder</b>	▶ Enter a title Adds a folder. Can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text"→P.506
<b>Edit folder name</b>	Cannot change the name "Playlist folder".

Item	Description
<b>Delete folder</b>	Cannot delete the Playlist folder.
<b>Edit playlist</b>	Creates playlist or edits the existing playlist. "Playing melodies in your preferred order" → P.377
<b>Release playlist</b>	▶ "YES" Releases the playlist.

## miniSD memory card

The miniSD memory card is a further miniaturized version of the SD memory card that can be inserted into the FOMA terminal and used as external memory. By loading a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the card with a PC that supports miniSD memory cards.

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. This FOMA terminal supports up to 256M-byte miniSD memory card (on the market). (As of June, 2005)

- You can export data such as phonebook entries, mail, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card, or import data that has been stored on a miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. Still images and movies stored on miniSD memory cards can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- When you insert a miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal, the "SD" icon appears on the screen.
- When you are operating data on a miniSD memory card or importing/exporting data, the incoming call lamp flashes green.
- See the following sites for the latest miniSD memory card:  
i-mode : "iMenu" - "メニューリスト" - "ケータイ電話メーカー" - "みんなNらんど"  
PC : NEC mobile website <http://www.n-keitai.com>

### Notes

- \* Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal. → P.386

Note the following for the miniSD memory card:

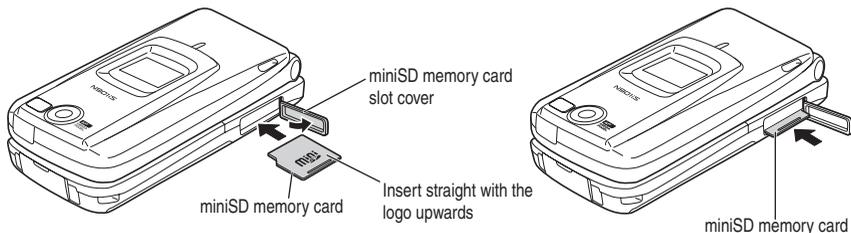
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing a miniSD memory card.

### Inserting and removing miniSD memory card

Insert the miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal's card slot.

#### ● Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting a miniSD memory card.



#### 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

## 2 Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place

Insert the miniSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side upwards. When fully inserted, the card will lock into place.

## 3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

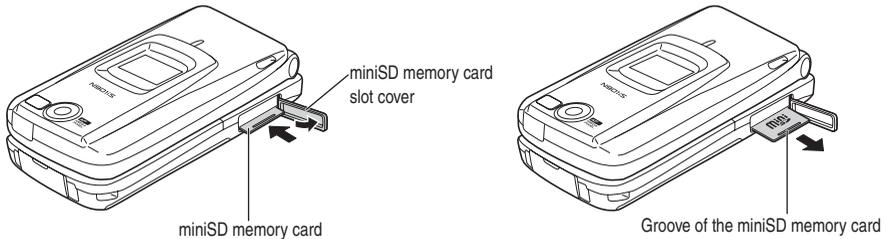
When you turn the FOMA terminal on after inserting the miniSD memory card, the “” icon appears on the screen.

### NOTE

- If there is a problem with the miniSD memory card or it is incorrectly formatted, the “” icon is displayed.

## Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing a miniSD memory card.



## 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

## 2 Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards

When you push the miniSD memory card in and then release it, the card pops out slightly. Take care that the card does not fly out of the slot.

## 3 Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

## 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

### NOTE

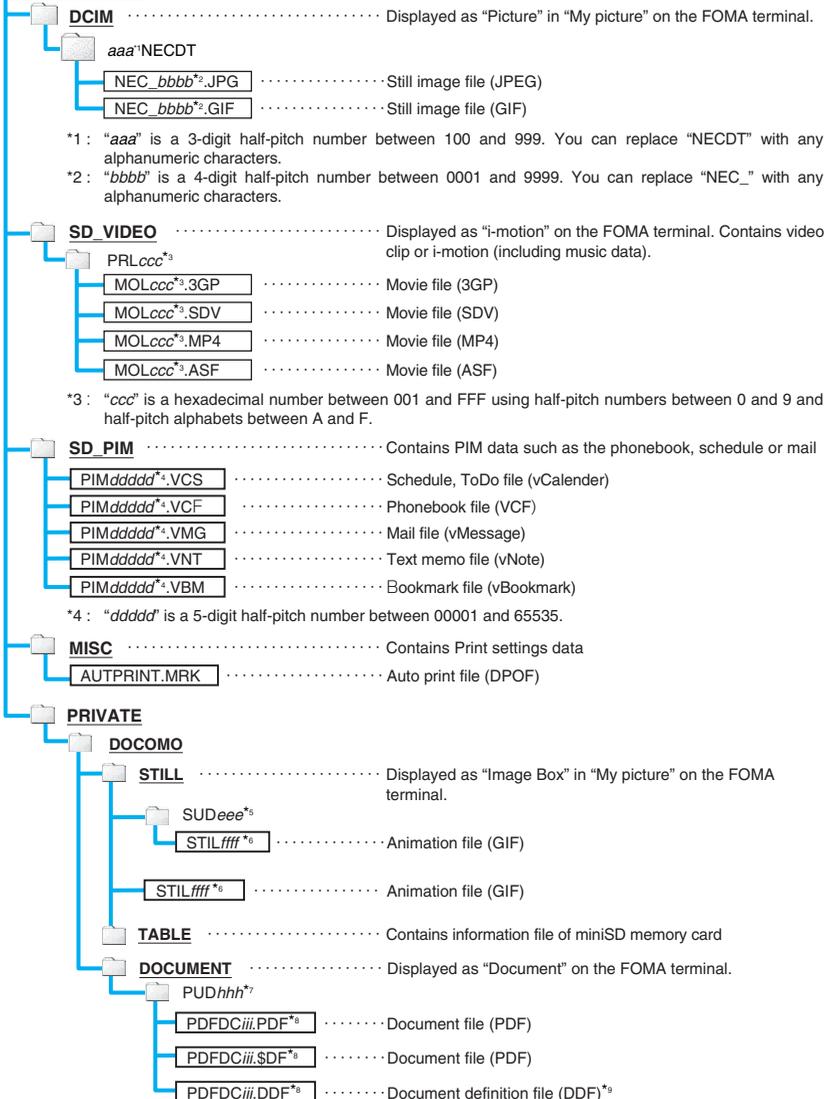
- Do not insert or remove a miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. This could damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
- The miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during the insertion or removal.
- After removing a miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case provided. Storing the miniSD memory card in another case could result in the miniSD memory card being unusable.
- Check that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the miniSD memory card at an angle could damage the card).
- It may take long to select or display data on the miniSD memory card.

## Folders in miniSD memory card

When data is copied from FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card, the folders shown below are created and data is saved in the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and folders are automatically named as shown below.

- When copying data from PC or other devices to miniSD memory card, create folders and name files as shown below:

### miniSD memory card



\*5: "eee" is a 3-digit half-pitch number between 001 and 999.

\*6: "ffff" is a 4-digit half-pitch number between 0001 and 9999.

\*7: "hhh" is a 3-digit half-pitch number between 001 and 999.

\*8: "iii" is a 3-digit half-pitch number between 001 and 999.

\*9: Displayed only when viewed on a device such as PC.

## NOTE

- The SD\_PIM folder is not displayed until you export PIM data such as the phonebook.
- When you copy two data or more to the SD\_PIM folder, "yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm" (year/month/day hour:minute) is automatically applied to the title name.
- On some PCs, folder names and file names may be displayed in lower case.
- When you save the file edited on PC if it uses the characters different from the folder or file name described on P.380, it may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N901iS.
- Turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.391).
- Do not use a PC to delete or move folders on the miniSD memory card as this may prevent the FOMA N901iS from reading data on the card.
- If you save data that is not supported by the FOMA N901iS on a miniSD memory card, the FOMA N901iS will be unable to recognize the data.
- You may not be able to display or play data that was saved to a miniSD memory card from another device. Also, you may not be able to display or play on another device the data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card.
- Before purchasing USB reader/writer or PC card adapter for miniSD memory card, ask the manufacturer of the miniSD memory card if it is available for your FOMA terminal.
- The miniSD memory cards formatted on a device other than the FOMA N901iS may not operate normally.

## ● Number of files that can be stored on a miniSD memory card

The number of files that can be stored on a miniSD memory card varies by the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card. The table below shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. Adding and changing a folder to export allows the miniSD memory card to contain more files. Note that the maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the file sizes.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files that can be saved to each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
DOCUMENT	999	999

Use "Categories screen function menu" (P.384) to check the memory capacity and available capacity of the miniSD memory card. The displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the miniSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card when you attempt to export phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, text memos, mail or bookmarks, a message appears stating that the data cannot be transferred due to the lack of space. In the cases of images, movies, and i-motion, "Export" on the function menu is grayed out. Insert another miniSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data on the card and copy the data again.
- When the number of the files in the folder to which the file is to be exported has already reached the limit and when you try to export:  
<Still image, video clip/i-motion or PDF document>  
A new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder.  
<Phonebook, etc. to SD\_PIM>  
You receive a message that the folder is full of data, and cannot export the file to the miniSD memory card.
- Once a miniSD memory card is full, you cannot perform tasks such as adding more folders for images, movies or i-motion, editing titles or copying or moving files. Delete any unnecessary data and then try again.

## Data that can be copied between the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card

The following table shows the data that can be copied between the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card:

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, miniSD or User-created folder
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, miniSD or User-created folder
Phonebook	Name, reading, phone number, mail address, memo, address, birthday, still image, memory number <sup>*1</sup> , Secret store <sup>*2</sup> , group number, group name
Schedule	Date (from), date (to), summary, contents, Secret store <sup>*2</sup> , Category <sup>*3</sup> , alarm, repeat
ToDo	Contents, category <sup>*4</sup> , completion date, period, change status, priority, alarm
Text memo	Make date, last update date, category, contents
Received mail <sup>*5</sup> , Sent mail <sup>*5</sup> , Draft mail, SMS	Unread/read, message type, saved in, sender, receiver, title, receive/send date, message, attach
Bookmark <sup>*5 *6</sup>	URL, title
Document	PDF data stored in Inbox, miniSD or User-created folder

\*1 : Cannot be copied by "Import & add one".

\*2 : Secret store shows if it is stored as secret data.

\*3 : Category is the Icon info setting set in Schedule.

\*4 : Category is set in ToDo.

\*5 : The folder name remains the same after exporting all of Received mail, Sent mail and Bookmark.

\*6 : If a bookmark is copied from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, the one for i-mode is saved to the "Bookmark" folder in "i-mode menu". The one for full browser is saved to the "Bookmark" folder in "Internet (Full Browser)".

### NOTE

- If you try to export Schedule with User icon, the "Category" info is not transferred.

## Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. → P.378

Use the procedures described here to export (copy) data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card.

"Export this" and "Export all" are the methods to export data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card.

- See P.349 and 362 for exporting still image or movie.

### ■ To export one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Export this" or "Export" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to export.

#### <Example: Export one data stored in the phonebook>

"Export this" in the "Phonebook list screen function menu" → P.103

### ■ To export all the data stored on the FOMA terminal

"Export" in the "Categories list screen function menu" → P.384

### NOTE

- If you export mail that includes the i-appli launch settings, the i-appli launch information in the mail is deleted.
- If a secret data is exported, the secret is canceled when the data is saved.
- When all the data are exported, the secret data are also copied.
- When all the phonebook data entries are exported, the "Own number" data is also saved.
- When mail is exported, some types of attached file may be deleted.
- While exporting SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "Out of service". You cannot make or receive calls, use i-mode or use data communication.
- If you export one entry in "Own number" but do not "Display all data", the name, reading, own number and the first stored mail address are saved as phonebook. If you "Display all data", all the stored data are saved as phonebook.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

# Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. →P.378  
Use this function to display the data stored on a miniSD memory card.

- Previewing images and movies →P.337, 355

1



The "Categories screen" appears.

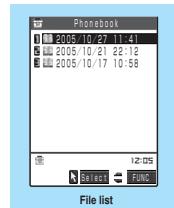


Function menu →P.384

2

## Select an item

The "file list screen" appears.



Function menu →P.384

3

## Select a file

The "data list screen" appears.



Function menu →P.385

4

## Select a data

The "data detail screen" appears.



Function menu →P.385

### NOTE

- You cannot view files stored on the miniSD memory card while PIM lock is set.
- When you display Deco-mail with an image attached, the sentences are displayed, describing the image.
- The "📧" icon is displayed for the bookmark added on the website screen, and the "📧" icon for the one added on the Full browser screen.

## Function menu (Categories screen)

**1** Categories screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>miniSD info</b>	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.
<b>Export from phone</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Exports all the data entries for the selected item to the miniSD memory card. Security code → P.140
<b>miniSD format</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Formats the miniSD memory card. Security code → P.140
<b>Check miniSD</b>	Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking miniSD memory card may fix the problems.

## NOTE

**<Check miniSD>**

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the miniSD check. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- The incoming call lamp flashes green during the miniSD check.
- If you press (Quit) or or receive a voice/videophone call, the miniSD check will be canceled and then “” will be displayed.
- If the miniSD check is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. Check miniSD again.
- It may take long to check the miniSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- Some data may not be recovered depending on the miniSD memory card.

## Function menu (file list screen)

**1** File list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title</b> Edits the title of the selected file. Can contain up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Import &amp; add</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Imports and adds the data stored in the selected file to the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.140
<b>Import &amp; overwrite</b>	■ <b>Phonebook</b> ▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” or “NO” ■ <b>Schedule, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark</b> ▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” Imports the data stored in the selected file to overwrite the corresponding data on the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.140
<b>Export from phone</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Exports all the data for the selected item from the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.140
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected file.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Deletes all the files saved for the selected item. Security code → P.140
<b>miniSD info</b>	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the miniSD memory card.

**NOTE**

&lt;Delete this&gt;&lt;Delete all&gt;

● If the file is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete it.

**Function menu (data list screen)****1 Data list screen** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Import &amp; add one</b>	Imports and adds the selected data to the FOMA terminal.
<b>Import &amp; add all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Imports and adds all the data to the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.140
<b>Import &amp; OW all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” Imports all the data to overwrite the corresponding data on the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.140
<b>miniSD info</b>	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the miniSD memory card.

**Function menu (data detail screen)****1 Data detail screen** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Import &amp; add one</b>	Imports and adds the displayed data to the FOMA terminal.
<b>miniSD info</b>	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the miniSD memory card.

**Copying data stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal**

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. → P.378

Use this procedure to import (copy) data stored on miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal and add or overwrite.

“Import & add” is divided into “Import & add” that adds all the data in the file, “Import & add one” that adds one selected data in the file, and “Import & add all” that adds all the displayed data.

The “Import & overwrite” options consist of “Import & OW all” and “Import & overwrite”, which replace the existing data with all the entries in one file.

**■ To add the stored data to one file**

“Import & add” in the “Function menu (file list screen)” → P.384

**■ To add one selected data**

“Import & add one” in the “Function menu (data list screen)” → P.385

“Import & add one” in the “Function menu (data detail screen)” → P.385

**■ To add all the data**

“Import & add all” in the “Function menu (data list screen)” → P.385

**■ To overwrite the existing data**

“Import & overwrite” in the “Function menu (file list screen)” → P.384

“Import & OW all” in the “Function menu (data list screen)” → P.385

## NOTE

- "Import & overwrite" and "Import & OW all" overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal with the data to import. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the import, the import is canceled. The already imported data are stored.
- The data is added to group 00 of the phonebook when:
  - Group numbers and names on miniSD and on the FOMA terminal are different during the "Import & add all" or "Import & add"
- If you import one received mail when the Inbox is full, it overwrites the oldest unprotected read mail.
- If you import one sent mail when the Outbox is full, it overwrites the oldest unprotected mail.
- When you import a large image or movie that is attached to received or sent mail, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding mail. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- "Import & add all" cannot import:
  - Schedule with the same date, time and repeat settings (including if there are no repeat settings) as those of the existing one
  - Bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
- You cannot import the data in the phonebook when "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is specified.
- It may take long to read or write the data on the miniSD memory card if there are many files stored.
- You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication during the import (except when importing still image, movie or i-motion).

## Managing miniSD memory card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. →P.378

### Formatting a miniSD memory card

- \* Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting a miniSD memory card erases all the data stored on the card. When you format the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

**1**

**Categories screen (P.383) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "miniSD format" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"**

## NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the format. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- The data saved to the miniSD memory card is not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
- During the format, the incoming call lamp flashes green.
- If you press (Quit) or  or receive a voice/videophone call, the format is canceled and " " is displayed. Format the card again.

# Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Reader/Writer

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with miniSD memory card inserted, and you can read/write the data on the miniSD memory card.

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. →P.378

● To use the FOMA terminal as miniSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)

## 1 USB mode setting screen (P.388) ▶ “miniSD mode”

Specifying “miniSD mode” displays “”.

## 2 Connect the FOMA terminal and your PC using FOMA USB Cable

“” is displayed when miniSD mode is set, miniSD memory card is inserted and FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

The miniSD memory card appears in the “My Computer” window on the PC as storage memory (external storage device). The miniSD memory card is not recognized by the PC as a reader/writer while data is being transferred between the miniSD memory card and the FOMA terminal.

To remove the FOMA USB Cable (optional), use the method to remove safely on each Operating System.

How to connect and how to remove →P.470

### NOTE

- You cannot set this function while the data is being read from or written to the miniSD memory card. (“Reset” does not reset the settings.)
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the PC while data is being transmitted between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being transmitted between the PC and the miniSD memory card.

### Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. An improper connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Ensure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and that there is a stable power supply to the PC.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable (optional) while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being copied between the PC and FOMA terminal. Removing the cable could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.

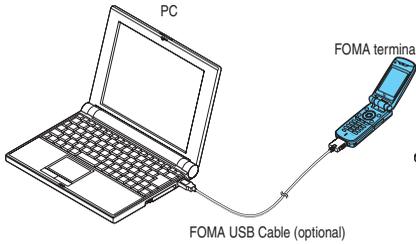
## Setting USB mode <USB mode setting>

Default setting  
Communication mode

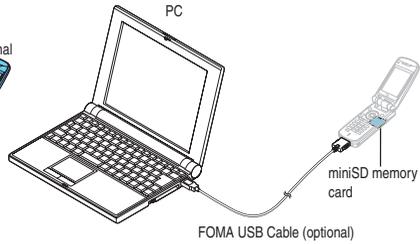
Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC or printer.

● USB mode is divided into “Communication mode”, “miniSD mode” and “Print mode”.

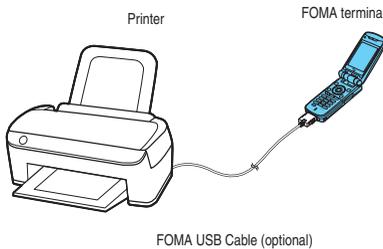
<Communication mode>



<miniSD mode>



<Print mode>



### 1 “External connection” ▶ “USB mode setting”

The “USB mode setting screen” appears.



### 2 Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Communication mode</b>	<p>Uses the external connection terminal for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange by cable connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>“ <p style="writing-mode: vertical-rl; transform: rotate(180deg);">Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files</p> </li></ul>

# Working With Folders and Files

Use these procedures to add folders on the My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document screens for organizing the files. You can also add folders on the miniSD folder list screens of My picture, i-motion and My document.

- My picture folder list screen → P.337
- i-motion folder list screen → P.355
- Melody folder list screen → P.373
- My document folder list screen → P.402
- miniSD folder list screen → P.338

## Creating, editing and deleting folders

Folder list screen function menu → P.389

### Function menu (folder list screen)

- Function menu displayed when the Playlist folder of i-motion or Melody is selected → P.362, 377



### Folder list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Example: Folder list screen function menu in My picture

Item	Description
<b>Add folder</b>	▶ <b>Enter the folder name</b> Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. You can name the folder the same as the existing one. A folder cannot be added if the folder name is left entirely blank. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Edit folder name</b>	▶ <b>Edit the folder name</b> Edits the name of the added folder. Can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Delete folder</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ "YES" You can delete a folder containing data. Security code → P.140
<b>Delete all image**1</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ "YES" Deletes all the images and original animations you saved. Security code → P.140

\*1 : Not displayed on the i-motion, Melody and My document folder list screen.

### NOTE

#### <Edit folder name>

- You can edit only the name of the User-created folder.

#### <Delete folder><Delete all image>

- You can delete only the User-created folders.
- If you try to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all image" to delete an image or movie that has been set in a display, original animation or user icon of Schedule, or if you try to use "Delete folder" to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set in a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
  - The screens restore to the default.
  - The playlist registration of Original animation is erased.
  - The User icon of Schedule turns to "🕒".
- Even if the original image is deleted by "Delete folder" or "Delete all image", the same one attached to mail is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to mail is also deleted.
- If the original movie is deleted by "Delete folder", the same one attached to mail is also deleted.

**Function menu (miniSD folder list screen)**
**1 miniSD folder list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Edit folder name</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title</b> Edits the folder title. Can contain up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
<b>Create folder</b>	▶ <b>Enter a title</b> Creates a folder.
<b>Delete folder</b> *1	Deletes the highlighted folder.
<b>Select storage</b>	Specifies a folder to save the data. "Specifying the destination folder on the miniSD memory card" → P.391
<b>DPOF Print</b>	"Printing Stored Images" → P.411

\*1 : Only Delete folder is displayed for Image Box.

**NOTE**
**<Create folder>**

● You cannot create a folder when the "Picture" contains 900 folders, when "Document" contains 999 folders, and when miniSD of i-motion contains 4,095 folders, on the miniSD memory card.

● You cannot create a folder in the "Image Box" on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.

**<Delete folder>**

● A message appears whether to delete the folder if the folder:

- Is read-only on PC
- Is the destination folder
- Contains a file

● If you delete the destination folder, the destination becomes the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal.

**Selecting multiple data**

You can delete multiple images or movies at the same time, or move them to another folder within the item. You can also copy the images or movies stored on the miniSD memory card to another folder.

**1 Image list screen (Picture) (P.337) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Multiple-choice"**

The "Multiple-choice screen" appears.

**2 Use  to select an image **

If it is Title list, use  to select the checkbox (□), and press .

"Multiple-choice screen function menu" → P.390

"miniSD memory card Multiple-choice screen function menu" → P.391



Function menu ▶ P.390

**Function menu (Multiple-choice screen)**
**1 Multiple-choice screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>Title name</b> *1	Switches between Picture and Title name.
<b>Delete</b> *2	Deletes the selected images and movies.
<b>Move</b>	▶ <b>Select the destination folder</b> Moves the selected images or movies to another folder.
<b>Select all</b>	Selects all the images and movies.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Item	Description
Release all	Cancels all the selected images and movies.

\*1 : If you selected the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. By default, Picture is selected, which is displayed only when the folder is "My picture".

\*2 : Only the Delete option is displayed for Chara-den.

## Function menu (miniSD memory card Multiple-choice screen)

### 1 miniSD memory card Multiple-choice screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Title name* <sup>1</sup>	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Delete	Deletes the selected images.
Copy	Select the destination folder Copies the selected images to another folder.
Move	Select the destination folder Moves the selected images to another folder.
Select all* <sup>2</sup>	Selects all the images and movies.
Release all	Cancels all the selected images and movies.

\*1 : If you selected the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. By default, Picture is selected, which is displayed only when the folder is "My picture".

\*2 : Is not displayed when the folder is "My picture".

### Specifying the destination folder on the miniSD memory card

Default setting
Most recently created folder

Specify the destination folder to contain images and movies on the miniSD memory card. You can specify any folders under "miniSD" of My picture or i-motion.

- The icon is displayed for the destination folder.
- Images and movies exported to the miniSD memory card are saved to the respective destination folders.
- Turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal.

### 1 miniSD folder list screen (P.338) (FUNC) "Select storage" "YES"

#### NOTE

- You cannot specify a folder in the "Image Box" as the destination folder.

### When the memory is insufficient or there are too many stored items

If there is insufficient available memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full when you try to save still images or movies you shot to the FOMA terminal or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from an i-mode site or Internet website, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save the new data.

#### 1 Select "YES" on the message

- To not save the data  
 "NO"

#### 2 Select multiple data to delete

Selecting multiple data → P.36

#### 3 (Finish) "YES"

(Finish) is not displayed until the memory is allocated enough to save the data.

## NOTE

- When you attempt to delete an image or a movie that has been set to screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the image, movie or melody. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding screen or ring tone restores to the default.

<Forwarding image>

## Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting  
ON

When you are exporting phonebook data to a miniSD memory card or using the Infrared data exchange or data exchange (OBEX) to transmit phonebook data, you can use this setting to prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent.

1



▶ "Forwarding image" ▶ "ON" or "OFF"

<Infrared data exchange/OBEX>

## Forwarding data by Infrared data exchange/cable connection

The Infrared data exchange or cable connection allows your FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received mail with another FOMA terminal or PC.

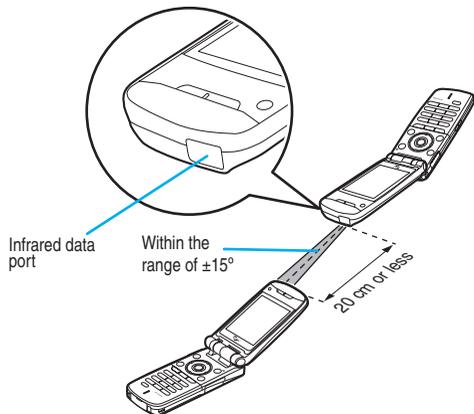
- The Infrared data exchange with another FOMA terminal or PC supporting the feature forwards one data at a time or multiple data at the same time. The "IR" icon is displayed during the Infrared data exchange.
- Connect your FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can receive one data at a time from PC using OBEX (protocol for data communication), or exchange multiple data at the same time between FOMA terminal and PC. The "USB" icon is displayed while the cable is connected.
- You can forward the following:
  - Phonebook
  - ToDo
  - Draft mail
  - Still image\*
  - i-mode bookmark
  - Personal data including own number
  - Sent mail
  - Text memo
  - Movie/i-motion\*
  - Full browser bookmark
  - Schedule
  - Received mail
  - Melody\*
  - PDF-formatted document\*

\* : You cannot send all the data of Melody, Still image, Movie/i-motion or PDF-formatted document by Infrared data exchange.

## When you forward data by Infrared data exchange

Note the following when you forward data by Infrared data exchange:

- Set the receiving FOMA terminal ready to receive and position it not longer than 20 cm from the sending FOMA terminal.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during the exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the Infrared data ports.
- If the data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions and retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed in direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.



## When you forward data by cable connection

Note the following when you forward data by cable connection:

- To forward data, you need the software such as "FOMA N901iS Data Link Software".  
"Data Link Software" → P.538
- Set "Communication mode" to "USB mode setting" before forwarding data. → P.388

### Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. An improper connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Install N901iS communication settings files (driver). → P.471
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is charged enough. Also check that the PC is turned off.
- All the data on the FOMA terminal may be erased if an error occurs while forwarding all from PC to the FOMA terminal. Before forwarding all, check the cable connection, the battery level or PC power.

## Note on forwarding data

### Before forwarding data

- You cannot forward data while another function is running. Start forwarding after exiting all the functions. You cannot run another function while forwarding data.
- You cannot forward data while making/receiving voice/videophone calls, using i-mode, packet communication or 64K data communication. → P.536
- You cannot forward data during "PIM lock", "All lock" or "Self mode". You cannot send/receive data in the phonebook during "Keypad dial lock".
- You cannot receive data in the phonebook while "Restrict dialing" is set. However, you can send the data with "Restrict dialing" and the data in "Own number".
- Whether you can forward data depends on the status of the FOMA terminal of your party. If you forward to the terminal different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of the received mail or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive the Deco-mail correctly.
- The data forwarding function by Infrared data exchange or cable connection conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may not be able to exchange data with the terminal or PC that does not support IrMC1.1. Some data may not be forwarded correctly even if the terminal or application of your party supports IrMC1.1.
- When you forward still image, melody, movie or i-motion by cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the forwarding software supporting FOMA N901iS.
- You may not be able to forward data by Infrared data exchange if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

### During the forwarding

- The FOMA terminal is Out of Area, which means you cannot make/receive a voice/videophone call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call immediately after starting the forwarding. If this is the case, the forward will be canceled. After the forwarding is finished, the Out of Area status may continue for some time.
- During the Infrared data exchange, the exchange will be canceled to display a message asking whether to continue the communication when:
  - The receiving device does not receive the data within 30 seconds or so
  - The sending device cannot find the receiving device any more
 Selecting "YES" enables you to retry the communication. Selecting "NO" will cancel the communication. If you do not select "YES" or "NO" within 30 seconds or so, the Infrared data exchange will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to forward depending on the amount of data. The receiving device may not be able to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to forward the phonebook because the stored images are also forwarded. To shorten the sending time, you can set "OFF" to "Forwarding image", so that the images in the phonebook are not forwarded.

### Data forwarded

- The data received by this FOMA terminal are saved or deleted as follows:

Data	Destination/Order
Still image/image	The first in the Inbox folder.
Movie/i-motion	
Melody	
PDF document	

Data	Destination/Order	
<b>Phonebook</b>	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "699". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009" ("two-touch dialing" (P.112)).	
<b>Own number data</b>	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "699".	
<b>Schedule</b>	In the date order of the received schedules.	
<b>ToDo</b>	The first in the ToDo list.	
<b>Received mail</b>	The Inbox folder in the date order of the received mails.	
<b>Sent mail</b>	The Outbox folder in the date order of the sent mails.	
<b>Draft mail</b>	The Draft folder in the date order of the draft mails.	
<b>Text memo</b>	The first <Not recorded>.	
<b>i-mode bookmark</b>	<b>Receive one</b>	The first in the Bookmark folder of i-mode menu.
	<b>Receive all</b>	The Bookmark folder of i-mode menu in the same order as in the sender.*
<b>Full browser bookmark</b>	<b>Receive one</b>	The first in the Bookmark folder of Internet (Full Browser).
	<b>Receive all</b>	The Bookmark folder of Internet (Full Browser) in the same order as in the sender.*

\* : May not be saved in the same order, depending on the sender's phone type.

- If you receive all the still images, all the images stored in the phonebook are deleted.
- If you receive all the entries of the phonebook, the still images stored in the phonebook you received are stored in "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved and the phonebook is created.
- The titles of still images, movies, i-motion or PDF documents can contain up to 9 full-pitch characters or 18 half-pitch characters. The titles of melodies can contain up to 50 half-pitch characters. If the length of the title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in mail or phonebook.
- You cannot send or receive:
  - UIM phonebook, SMS
  - Frame data, Flash movie
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, document with FOMA card operational restriction
- You cannot receive:
  - Image other than JPEG or GIF
  - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, document whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- A message appears indicating that you cannot save the data when:
  - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule or ToDo data while the clock is not set
  - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no available space on the memory
- Note the following when you forward the phonebook data:
  - The data to be forwarded are name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, memo, birthday, still image and icon info setting. All the phone numbers and mail addresses are forwarded.
  - The secret code cannot be forwarded.
  - If the phonebook stored as the secret data is forwarded by infrared data exchange, the "Secret mode" or "Secret only" mode is canceled before the forwarding.
  - When all the phonebook entries are forwarded, they are sent in the memory number order.
  - The "Own number" data is sent when all the phonebook entries are forwarded. The personal data of "Own number" stored on the receiving device are overwritten excluding the phone number.
  - Some pictographs or symbols may not be displayed correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- Note the following when you forward the mail data:
  - A large image or i-appli launch information is deleted when you send the mail. The file restriction data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even the file-restricted mail can be sent if it is a sent mail or draft mail with still image or movie shot by the built-in camera, or received via cable connection, or imported from miniSD memory card. The data pasted on the mails are deleted when the mails are forwarded.
  - If there is no enough space in the Inbox, mails in the Trash are deleted and the received one is saved to the Inbox. If the size of the received mail is larger than the available space, the mail overwrites the oldest unprotected mail that has been already read.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →P.378

- The sent mail overwrites the oldest unprotected sent mail in the Outbox.
- You cannot forward the folder for the mail linkage i-appli received mail. All the mails in the folder are saved to the Inbox.
- Some pictographs or symbols used in the mail message may not be displayed correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- If you receive an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes attached to mail, the file is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding mail. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- You cannot quote the data attached to i-mode mail.

## Transferring one data at a time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send a data from the FOMA terminal to PC by cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the number of data being sent. Transferring a PDF document may pop up the bar twice even if the data is properly transferred.

### Sending one data at a time by Infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

Select "Send Ir data" from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen.

- You can send only one data at a time.

<Example: Send one phonebook data>

#### 1 Phonebook detail screen (P.101) ► (FUNC) ► "Send Ir data"

Searching in the phonebook → P.101

#### 2 Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ► "YES"

Make sure that your party is ready to receive data.  
The data starts being sent.  
A message appears indicating that the sending is completed.

■ To cancel the sending

► "NO"

■ To exit during the sending

► (Quit)

### Receiving one data at a time by Infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data>



#### 1 (MENU) ► (L-1) ► "Receive Ir data"

The "Receive Ir data screen" appears.

#### 2 "Receive" ► Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ► Receive data from the FOMA terminal of your party

The data starts being received.  
The communication level bar may not be displayed depending on your party.



Function menu ► P.398

#### 3 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the receiving is completed.  
The received data will be erased if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so after you receive the data.

■ To not save the received data

► "NO"

#### NOTE

- Even if you select "Receive", you may receive all Ir data. If this is the case, operate the FOMA terminal following the Receive all instructions.

## Receiving one data at a time by cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies by the transferring software. Follow the instructions to the software for more details.

### 1 “Write one” by using the transferring software on PC

### 2 Send data from PC

A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator showing the communication speed.

### 3 “YES”

A message appears indicating that the receiving is completed. After the data is received, if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so, the received data is discarded.

- **To not save the received data**  
▶ “NO”

## Transferring multiple data at the same time

Exchange multiple data at the same time between your FOMA terminal and PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all the data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including the protected mail or secret data, are erased. However, the frames or Flash movies are not erased. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient.  
Session number → P.396
- The progress bar shows the communication speed of sending the data. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient.

## Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number and then both enter the same number.

## Sending multiple data at the same time by Infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select “Send all Ir data” from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen.

<Example: Send all data stored in the phonebook>

### 1 Phonebook list screen (P.102) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Send all Ir data”

Searching in the phonebook → P.101

### 2 Enter your security code ▶ Enter session number

Security code → P.140  
Session number → P.396

### 3 Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ▶ “YES”

Make sure that your party is ready to receive all data.  
All the data start being sent.  
A message appears indicating that the sending is completed.

- **To cancel the sending**  
▶ “NO”
- **To exit during the sending**  
▶ (Quit)

## Receiving multiple data at the same time by Infrared data exchange <Receive all Ir data>

- 1 Receive Ir data screen (P.395) ▶ “Receive all”**
- 2 Enter your security code ▶ Enter session number**  
 Security code → P.140  
 Session number → P.396
- 3 Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ▶ “YES”**  
 ■ **To cancel the receiving**  
 ▶ “NO”
- 4 Receive all data from the FOMA terminal of your party**  
 All the data start being received.  
 ■ **To exit during the receiving**  
 ▶  (Quit)
- 5 Press “YES” on the Overwrite confirmation screen**  
 A message appears indicating that the received data is stored completely.  
 ■ **To cancel the receive all Ir data**  
 ▶ “NO”

## Sending and Receiving multiple data at the same time by cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies by the transferring software. Follow the instructions to the software for more details.

<Example: Send all data from the FOMA terminal to PC>

- 1 Use the transferring software on PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal**  
 You need to enter the session number on PC.  
 Enter a 4-digit number for the session number.
- 2 Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal ▶ Enter session number on the FOMA terminal**  
 The data are transferred. When the transfer is finished, you receive a message that it is completed.  
 Security code → P.140  
 Session number → P.396

<Infrared data exchange mode>

## Setting Infrared data exchange mode

Receive the i-αpli launch settings data from the Infrared data exchange device supporting i-αpli launch, and you can run the software.

- Download the software from the website in advance. → P.301

- 1 Receive Ir data screen (P.395) ▶ “Receive” ▶ Receive i-αpli launch settings data from the Infrared data exchange device**  
 Receiving the i-αpli launch settings data runs the software.  
 The operations after the launch vary by the software.  
 ■ **To cancel the receiving**  
 ▶  (Cancel) or  (Cancel)

### NOTE

- If the software was not found, a message appears indicating that it was not found.

## Function menu (Receive Ir data screen)

### 1 Receive Ir data screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select the following:

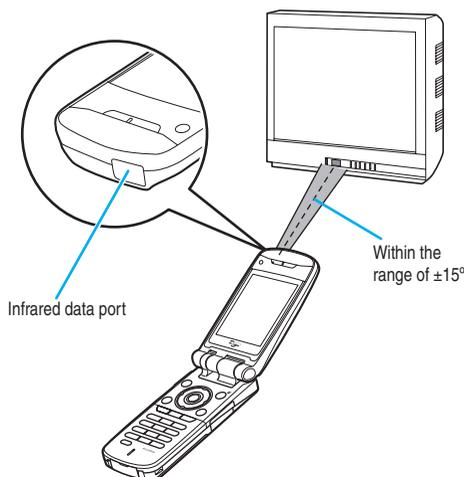
Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133

## Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- Download the appropriate software for the product you want to control. Note that even the correct software may not support the product, which cannot be controlled by the FOMA terminal.
- You can download the remote control software from iMenu site.
- You cannot use the Infrared Remote Control during the Self mode.

### Using remote control

- Point the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal directly at the remote control sensor on the TV, etc. while using it as a remote control. The remote control is effective within four meters away from the product. This may vary by the ambient light level.



### Using "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program guide remote control)

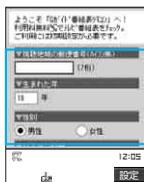
"Gガイド番組表リモコン" is a useful application containing the program guide and AV remote control function.

You can get the information about the TV program easily anytime and anywhere. You can find the program title, contents, time and G code<sup>®</sup>. Registering any program to the list means setting the schedule, and the alarm can be sounded when the program starts. You can search the information by any keywords such as the genre or your favorite TV personality. You can control TV, video or DVD player remotely. The infrared record scheduling is available for DVD/hard disk recorder (some models do not support this).

- You can select any program easily because it supports Electronic Program Guide (EPG).
- When you use "Gガイド番組表リモコン" for the first time, agree to the license agreement and set the default settings.
- You are charged for the packet communication.
- See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for more details.

## Initial settings

### 1 Run “Gガイド番組表リモコン” ▶ Set your data



Running an i-appli → P.304

Enter a 7-digit number correctly for the postal code. This will display the program guide of the area of the specified postal code.

Sets “視聴地域の郵便番号” (a postal code of your region), “生まれた年” (year of birth), “性別” (sex)

### 2 “TV1登録” ▶ Select the manufacturer of the product ▶ (設定)



If you press (設定) while you select the manufacturer, you can test the remote control function to turn on/off the device.

Repeat the steps to set other manufacturers.

### 3 (設定) ▶ “利用規約を読む” ▶ Read the agreement ▶ (戻る) ▶ “はい” or (同意)



### 4 Select the TV station ▶ (設定)



The channels of the checked TV stations are displayed on the TV guide.

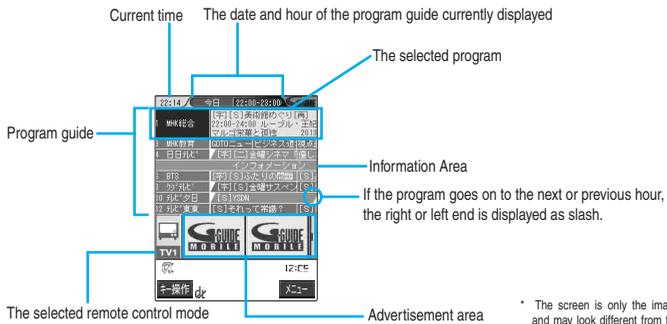
### 5 Select the channels linked to the TV stations from the pull-down menu ▶ (設定)



The screen is not displayed if the manufacturers are not specified for TV1 and TV2.

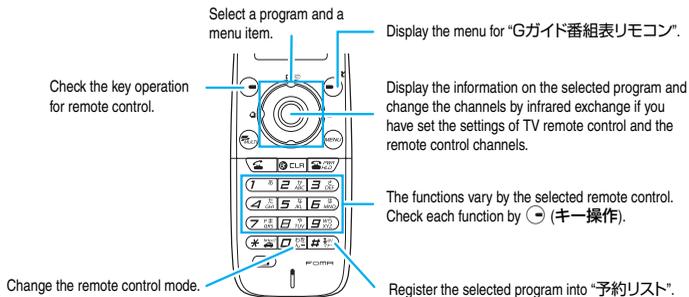
The channel settings are linked to the program guide. Select the channels linked to the TV stations from the pull-down menu.

## ● The main screen of “Gガイド番組表リモコン”



\* The screen is only the image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

## ● The basic operations for “Gガイド番組表リモコン”



### NOTE

- Selecting the ad links may connect to the advertised website. This is the Web To function.

### “Gガイド番組表リモコン” menu

## 1 “Gガイド番組表リモコン” main screen ▶ (メニュー) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
番組詳細	Opens communication and retrieves program details when detailed information is provided for the selected program.	
日時指定	▶ Select the date and hour ▶ (表示) Selects the date and hour in the program guide.	
予約リスト	Sets the schedules.	
	#追加	Adds the selected program to 予約リスト. You can add up to 8. If you try to add the ninth, an error message appears.
	一覧	“Using 予約リスト” → P.401
	履歴	Displays the history of 予約リスト.
検索	“Searching a program” → P.401	
おすすめメール	Composes an i-mode mail message with the program information entered in the message.	
HELP	Displays how to use “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.	

Item	Description	
アプリ情報	Checks the information about “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.	
	最新に更新	Updates the program guide.
	バージョン情報	Checks the version of “Gガイド番組表リモコン”. Press  (更新) to upgrade “Gガイド番組表リモコン” if the latest version is available.
初期設定	Changes the default settings of “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.	
	視聴チャンネル	Sets the channel to display on the program guide.
	リモコン登録	Specifies the manufacturers of the devices to operate by “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.
	初期化	(初期化)  “YES” Initializes “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.
	リモコンチャンネル設定	Sets the channels linked to the TV stations.

## ● Using 予約リスト

- 1** “Gガイド番組表リモコン” main screen (P.400) (メニュー) “予約リスト” “一覧” (メニュー) Select any item:

Item	Description
番組情報表示	Displays the detailed information about the selected program. Pressing  on “予約リスト一覧 screen” also displays the contents.
スケジュール登録	“YES”  Edit schedule   (完了) Adds the information about the selected program to the schedule.
1件削除	Deletes the selected 予約リスト.
全件削除	Deletes all the 予約リスト.
赤外線録画予約	Sends the information about the selected program to the recording device.
録画機器設定	Use  to select the manufacturer   (次へ)  Set the items   (設定) Sets the recording mode or remote control mode.

## ● Searching a program

- 1** “Gガイド番組表リモコン” main screen (P.400) (メニュー) “検索” Select any item:

Item	Description
ジャンル	Select “ジャンル”  Select “サブジャンル”  “YES” Specifies a keyword to search.
キーワード	Enter a keyword   (検索)  “YES” Searches by keyword. You can also search by using the search history.

- 2** Press (メニュー) on the search result screen Select any item:

Item	Description
番組情報表示	Displays the details of the selected program. Pressing  on “search result screen” also displays the contents.
# 予約リスト追加	Adds the selected program to 予約リスト. Pressing  also adds the selected program to 予約リスト.

# Viewing Document (PDF File)

PDF Viewer is available for viewing PDF documents that have been downloaded from sites and saved. You can also view documents stored on the miniSD memory card.

● You can open downloaded documents or documents stored in the miniSD memory card from My document in Data box.

● Download from sites → P.211

1



“My document”

The “folder list screen” appears.



Folder list

Function menu → P.389

2

## Select a folder

The “document list screen” appears.



Document list

Function menu → P.408

3

## Select a document

The “document screen” appears.

### ■ If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password specified for the document.

### ■ If you receive a message notifying that the data may be downloaded

You are trying to open a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on. → P.212

### ■ If you receive a message asking whether to download all remaining data

You are trying to open a document, only a part of which has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. The remaining pages need downloading. → P.212



Document

Function menu → P.409

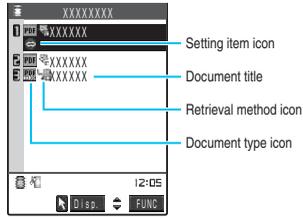
## NOTE

- It may take some time to display the document.
- The documents may not be properly displayed if they contain the formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- While viewing a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page, if you try to view a page that has not been downloaded yet, the download starts. You can download the remaining pages all together. → P.212
- To transfer a document from PC to the miniSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name. → P.380  
The document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.
- You cannot attach a PDF document to i-mode mail.
- The FOMA terminal cannot receive mail sent from PC with PDF document attached.
- The incoming call lamp continues flashing while displaying a document stored on the miniSD memory card (even if you fold the FOMA terminal).

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

## How to see document list

Icon indicates the type of saved document.



### Document type icon

Icon	Description
<sup>*1</sup>	All the pages have been downloaded. The file size of a document with blue icon (“PDF”, “PDF <sup>+1</sup> ”) displayed exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
<sup>*1</sup>	Only a part has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on. <sup>*2</sup> → P.212
<sup>*3</sup> , <sup>*1</sup>	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. Downloading all the remaining pages allows you to view the document <sup>*2</sup> (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully). → P.212

\*1 : The icon including “” indicates that the document is file-restricted. It cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection, or copied to the miniSD memory card.

\*2 : Downloading and saving all the remaining pages will change “”, “” or “” to “PDF” or “”.

\*3 : Cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection.

### Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Preinstalled document
	Downloaded from site
	Retrieved from miniSD memory card, PC, etc.

### Setting item icon

Not displayed if the document is stored on miniSD memory card.

Icon	Description
	Can be transmitted by infrared data exchange
	Can be exported to miniSD memory card

#### NOTE

- A document in a folder on the miniSD memory card, which is displayed with blue icon “PDF” or “”, cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

## Operations on the document screen

Use the scroll bar and tool bar to view the document.

### ■ Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen. The scroll bar indicates the location of the displayed page in the document.

### ■ Tool bar

Icons on the tool bar are available for viewing the document. You can change the display magnification or rotate the pages.

#### ■ To use icons on the tool bar

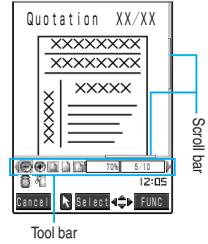
▶  (Tool)

To cancel the operation of icons, press  (Cancel).

Use  to select an icon.

As for the tool bar itself, you can:

- Use  to change the display.
- Use the neuropointer to select an icon.



### ■ Icons on the tool bar

Item	Description
	Indicates the zoom factor. Specifying a zoom displays the page by the zoom. ▶  ▶ <b>Enter a 4-digit number</b> For example, enter "0070" to specify 70%.
	Indicates the current page number. Specifying a page number takes you to the page. ▶  ▶ <b>Enter a 4-digit number</b> For example, enter "0005" to jump to P.5.
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the whole page.
	Displays the page with the magnification of 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the screen.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches the specified characters in the document.
	Rotates the page 90 degrees clockwise.
	Rotates the page 90 degrees counterclockwise.
	Trims a part of the document as an image. → P.407
	Shows the description of the operation assigned to the key.
	Displays single page on the screen.
	Displays the pages in double-page spread.
	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

## Document stored at the time of purchase

The “ワールドマップ” (World Map) document of “DRAGON QUEST II” (P.307) is already stored on the FOMA terminal.

- “ワールドマップ” (World Map) is stored in the Inbox folder of My document.



©SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.

ワールドマップ (World Map)

### NOTE

- If you want to restore “ワールドマップ” (World Map) after it is deleted, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”.  
How to access “みんなNらんど” → P.197  
If you use a FOMA card different from the one used for downloading, the FOMA card operational restriction function is applied. → P.39

## NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.  
(Supported only by N901iS As of June, 2005)

- “NEC Mobile PDF” → P.539

## Functions available on the document screen

You can enlarge, reduce and rotate page and change the type of page display. You can also set your own bookmarks and marks, and trim a page to save it.

- The tool bar is useful to change the display of the document screen.
- You can also use the keys to change the page display. → P.408
- Some bookmarks are already placed in the document. You can also use “Own bookmark” as if you put a sticky note to immediately jump to the page or location you want to view.

### ● Scrolling

#### ■ Using to scroll

Press  on the document screen to scroll to the direction that you selected.

#### ■ Using to scroll

Press  to scroll up and  to scroll down.

#### ■ Using Neuropointer to scroll



Press the neuropointer to the direction you want to scroll on the document screen. You can scroll in eight directions. The cursor is fixed at the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

#### NOTE

- You cannot use Neuropointer to operate the scroll bar.

### ● Showing/hiding tool bar and scroll bar

Press  to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

### ● Changing the page display

#### 1 Document screen (P.402) ▶ (Tool) ▶ Select an icon

Use  to select an icon.

#### 2 Perform any operations

When you finish operating the tool bar, press  (Cancel).

Tool bar → P.404

The screen returns to the document.

### ● Searching characters

#### 1 Document screen (P.402) ▶ (Tool) ▶ ▶ Enter any characters to search

You can enter up to 8 full-pitch characters or 16 half-pitch characters.

“Entering Text” → P.506

#### 2 Select the checkbox () for the condition ▶ (Search)



When the characters are found, the page including the characters is displayed.

Press  to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.

Press  to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.

## Using bookmark to view the document

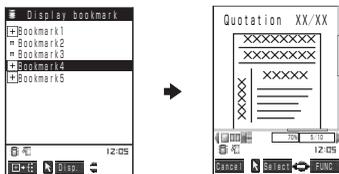
### To use a “bookmark” placed in the document

If bookmarks are placed in the document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed.

#### 1 Document screen (P.402) (Tool) Select a bookmark in which the document you want to display is registered

Selecting a bookmark displays the location (page) where the bookmark is placed.

If there are no bookmarks in the document, you receive a message notifying that no bookmark was found.



Press (Func) with (Add) bookmark highlighted, and then other bookmarks appear under the bookmark.

### To use “Own bookmark”

Own bookmark allows you to place a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks available for one document).

To jump to the location (page) where you placed a bookmark, follow the steps below:

#### 1 Document screen (P.402) (FUNC) “Own bookmark” Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display as the one when you placed the bookmark (zoom, etc.).

##### To add own bookmark

(Add) “YES” Enter a title for own bookmark

The current display (displayed page, zoom, etc.) is saved as own bookmark.

##### To edit the title of own bookmark

(FUNC) “Edit title” Enter a title

##### To delete own bookmark

(FUNC) “Delete” “YES”

##### To delete all own bookmarks placed in the document

(FUNC) “Delete all” Enter your security code “YES”

Security code → P.140

## Trimming page

You can trim a part of the document to save as a JPEG image.

#### 1 Display the page you want to trim (Tool) “YES” Select a folder to save

The trimmed page is saved.

#### NOTE

- The image trimmed from the PDF data cannot be taken out of the FOMA terminal, e.g. send mail or copy to miniSD memory card.
- You may be unable to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the document.

## ● Using keys to change the page display

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
	Zooms out.
	Displays the whole page.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the previous page.
	-
	Displays the next page.
	Searches the specified characters in the document.
	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. →P.406
	-
	Shows the description of the operation assigned to the key.
	Searches next. →P.406
	Searches previous. →P.406

### Function menu (Document list screen)

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

#### 1 Document list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>Edit title</b>	Edits the document title.	
<b>Display document</b>	<b>From the last</b>	Displays the page that was displayed last time.
	<b>First page</b>	Displays from the beginning.
	<b>Own bookmark</b>	Displays the page with the selected bookmark attached.
<b>Document info</b>	Displays the information such as File name, Format, File size, Base and Transfer for Repair. Transfer for Repair shows whether the file can be transferred when a failure occurs.	
<b>DL remaining data</b>	Downloads all the remaining pages of the document, only a part of which has been downloaded. → P.212	
<b>Add desktop icon<sup>*1</sup></b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133	
<b>Send Ir data<sup>*1</sup></b>	Transmits documents between FOMA terminals. → P.395	
<b>Export<sup>*1</sup></b>	<b>Export this</b>	Exports the selected document to the miniSD memory card.
	<b>Export selected</b>	Exports the multiple documents you select to the miniSD memory card.
	<b>Export all</b>	Exports all the documents to the miniSD memory card.
<b>Move<sup>*1</sup></b>	<b>Move this</b>	Moves the selected document to another folder.
	<b>Move selected</b>	Moves the multiple documents you select to another folder.
	<b>Move all</b>	Moves all the documents to another folder.
<b>Memory info</b>	Indicates the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.	

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Item	Description	
Sort* <sup>1</sup>	Chronological ↑	Sorts data in reverse chronological order.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts data in chronological order.
	By title ↓	Sorts data in ascending order by title.
	By title ↑	Sorts data in descending order by title.
	By size ↑	Sorts data in ascending order by size.
	By size ↓	Sorts data in descending order by size.
	By source	Sorts data in the order of data source. "By source" in "Sort" sorts the data in the order of documents downloaded from the sites → those retrieved using infrared data exchange or from the miniSD memory card.
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the selected document.
	Delete selected	Deletes the multiple documents you select.
	Delete all	Deletes all the documents.
Import* <sup>2</sup>	Import this	Imports the selected document to Inbox folder.
	Import selected	Imports the multiple documents you select to Inbox folder.
	Import all	Imports all the documents to Inbox folder.
Move* <sup>2</sup>	Move this	Moves the selected document to another folder on the miniSD memory card.
	Move selected	Moves the multiple documents you select to another folder on the miniSD memory card.
	Move all	Moves all the documents to another folder on the miniSD memory card.
Copy* <sup>2</sup>	Copy this	Copies the selected document to another folder.
	Copy selected	Copies the multiple documents you select to another folder.
	Copy all	Copies all the documents to another folder.

\*1 : Does not appear for the Document list screen of the miniSD memory card.

\*2 : Does not appear for the Document list screen of the FOMA terminal.

#### NOTE

##### <Export>

- A document cannot be exported if only a part has been downloaded by page ("PDF") or if it is prohibited to be taken out of the FOMA terminal.

##### <Import>

- A document cannot be imported if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.

### Function menu (document screen)

## 1 Document screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Zoom out	Zooms out the page. → P.406	
Zoom in	Zooms in the page. → P.406	
View types	Zoom to	Specifies the magnification to display the page.
	Fit page	Adjusts the page size to the screen size.
	Actual size	Displays the page in the actual size (100%).
	Fit width	Adjusts the page width to the screen width.

Item	Description	
<b>Go to</b>	<b>First page</b>	Displays the first page.
	<b>Previous page</b>	Displays the previous page.
	<b>Next page</b>	Displays the next page.
	<b>Last page</b>	Displays the last page.
	<b>Specified page</b>	▶ <b>Enter the page you want to view</b> Displays the specified page.
<b>Search</b>	<b>Search</b>	▶ <b>Enter a string</b> ▶ <b>(Search)</b> Searches the string. → P.406
	<b>Previous result</b>	Searches previous. → P.406
	<b>Next result</b>	Searches next. → P.406
<b>Page layout</b>	<b>Single page</b>	Displays single page on the screen.
	<b>Facing</b>	Displays the pages in double-page spread.
<b>Display link</b>	Selects URL, phone number or mail address to access, make a call or compose i-mode mail to the link destination. The scroll and tool bars are not displayed when you display the link destination in the document. Press  to display the document screen.	
<b>Hide tool/scr. bars*<sup>1</sup></b>	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. → P.406	
<b>Rotate view</b>	<b>Clockwise</b>	Rotates the page 90 degrees clockwise. → P.406
	<b>Counterclockwise</b>	Rotates the page 90 degrees counterclockwise. → P.406
<b>Display bookmark</b>	Jumps to the location (page) where "Bookmark" is placed. → P.407	
<b>Own bookmark</b>	Jumps to the location (page) where "Own bookmark" is placed. → P.407	
<b>Mark</b>	Specifies (up to 10) marks to your desired positions.	
	<b>Add</b>	Adds a mark.
	<b>Change</b>	▶ <b>"YES"</b> Changes the mark.
	<b>Delete</b>	Deletes the mark.
	<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ <b>"YES"</b> Deletes all the marks.
<b>Capture screen</b>	Trims a part of the document. → P.407	
<b>Add desktop icon*<sup>2</sup> *<sup>3</sup></b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133	
<b>DL remaining data</b>	Downloads all the remaining pages of the document, only a part of which has been downloaded. → P.212	
<b>Save</b>	Saves the downloaded document.	
<b>Help</b>	Shows the description of the operation assigned to the key.	
<b>Document property</b>	Displays the document properties.	
<b>End</b>	Closes the document screen.	
<b>Document info</b>	Displays the information such as File name, Format, File size, Base and Transfer for Repair. Transfer for Repair shows whether the file can be transferred when a failure occurs.	
<b>Delete this*<sup>3</sup></b>	Deletes the displayed document.	

\*1 : If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, "Show tool/scr. bars" is displayed. The tool bar and scroll bar are set to be shown at the time of purchase.

\*2 : Does not appear for the documents on the miniSD memory card.

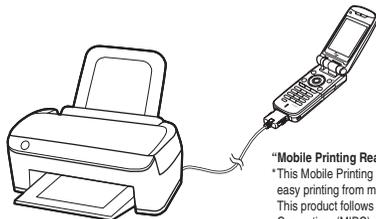
\*3 : Does not appear while browsing a document in a site.

**NOTE**

● "Own bookmark" or "Mark" set on the FOMA terminal is unavailable on PC.

# Printing Stored Images

Connect the FOMA terminal to PictBridge-compatible printer via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can print JPEG images directly without using PC.



"Mobile Printing Ready" (PictBridge, miniSD)  
\*This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.  
This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot by the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images other than still images shot by the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the terminal.
- You can specify how to print images stored on miniSD memory card. → P.413
- You cannot print images that cannot be taken out of the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery to the full for the PictBridge print. You may be unable to print if the battery is low.
- Do not pull out the FOMA USB Cable while communicating with the printer. "⏏" appears during the communication.

## 1 USB mode setting screen (P.388) ▶ "Print mode"

Specifying the "Print mode" displays "⏏".  
Set "Print mode" before connecting FOMA USB Cable, or you may be unable to print.

## 2 Connect the FOMA terminal and your printer via FOMA USB Cable

Turn on the printer before connecting. How to connect and how to remove → P.470

## 3 Image list screen (P.337) or Title list screen (P.338) ▶ Highlight an image and press (FUNC) ▶ "PictBridge print"

DPOF print is available from "image list screen" or "title list screen" on the miniSD memory card. You do not need to highlight an image if you print multiple images or print DPOF.

### ■ To print from "My picture screen"

One image is printed if you select from the function menu of "My picture screen" (P.338). Go on to Step 5.  
▶ (FUNC) ▶ "PictBridge print"

## 4 Select the print type

If you select "DPOF Print", the image is printed by following the print settings specified in "DPOF setting" (P.413) and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (step 5 and later are unnecessary).

Item	Description
Print this	Prints the selected image.
Print Choice	▶ Use (OK) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) Prints the multiple images you select.
DPOF Print	Prints the images stored on the miniSD memory card by following the "DPOF setting". → P.413

## 5 Set the print settings



## ■ Print settings

Set the following:

Item	Description		
<b>Print Sheets*</b>	▶ Enter the number of sheets (01 to 99)		
<b>Print Style</b>	<b>Paper size</b>	Specifies the paper size. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· L size      · A4</li> <li>· 2L size    · Card</li> <li>· 8" × 10"   · Default</li> <li>· Postcard</li> </ul>	
	<b>Layout</b>	Sets the layout for printing.	
		<b>1-up (borderless)</b>	Prints one image in one sheet without border.
		<b>1-up</b>	Prints one image in one sheet with the border.
		<b>2-up</b>	Prints two images in one sheet. When only one image is selected, the two same images are printed.
		<b>4-up</b>	Prints four images in one sheet. When only one image is selected, the four same images are printed.
		<b>8-up</b>	Prints eight images in one sheet. When only one image is selected, the eight same images are printed.
		<b>16-up</b>	Prints 16 images in one sheet. When only one image is selected, the 16 same images are printed.
<b>Default</b>	Prints in the layout set as the default.		
<b>a date</b>	Sets whether to add the date stamp.		

\* : Can be set when "Print this" is set in step 4.

**6**

**⊖ (Finish)**

The image is printed.

## ● When an error occurs on printer

- Pull out the FOMA USB Cable from the printer and then fix the error. To fix the error, see the user guide to the printer.
- After the error is fixed, make sure that “

### NOTE

- If the message “Error” appears, an error may occur in a printer. For information how to recover from the error, see the user’s manual of the printer.
- Up to 100 copies can be selected at a time in Print Choice.
- The selectable paper size or layout varies by the printer for Print this or Print Choice. DPOF print prints the image using the paper size and layout specified for the printer.
- When you select to add the date, the shooting date and time are stamped if there is the information. If the shooting date and time is not stamped on the image, the “Saved at” information shown on the “Image info” screen will be stamped. However, even if you select to add the date, it may not be stamped in some layout settings.
- You cannot print images larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or the sizes of which exceed 600K bytes. Also, progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high cannot be printed. Progressive JPEG image → P.210
- You cannot use the Multitask function for PictBridge print.
- You cannot make/receive a call or use i-mode as the FOMA terminal is regarded as out of service area while printing.

## Specifying how to print images stored on miniSD memory card <DPOF setting>

You can set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on the miniSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format for specifying the information on printing images shot by digital camera.
- Save still images shot by the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, and specify still images to print and the number of sheets. The images can be printed following the settings with the DPOF-enabled printer or in a print service shop.
- Printing DPOF-set still images with PictBridge-enabled printer → P.411

- 1** Folder list screen (P.337) ▶ “miniSD” ▶ “Picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “DPOF setting” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
DPOF set One	Specifies the print settings for the highlighted image.
DPOF set Choice	▶ Select an image Specifies the print settings for the multiple images you select.

- 2** “Print” ▶ Specify “Print Sheets” (2-digit number from 01 to 99), “a date”, and whether to add a date stamp ▶  (Finish)

- To cancel the print settings for the current image  
▶ “Print OFF”
- To cancel the print settings for all the saved images  
▶ “All print OFF”

### NOTE

- You can specify up to 999 print settings.
- Cannot be set for images larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or of which sizes exceed 600K bytes.
- The settings other than the number of copies are unavailable if you set the DPOF setting on PC, etc.
- You may not be able to set the DPOF setting if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- The number of copies specified can be checked in “Image info”.



## ● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access.....	<b>Multi access</b>	416
Multi Tasking.....	<b>Multi task</b>	418
Setting the Alarm Mode.....	<b>Alarm setting</b>	420
Using the FOMA terminal as an Alarm Clock.....	<b>Alarm clock</b>	423
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries.....	<b>Schedule</b>	424
Adding ToDo List Entries.....	<b>ToDo</b>	429
Storing Your Own Name and Image.....	<b>Own number</b>	432
Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice .....	<b>Voice memo (during a call)/Voice memo (in Stand-by)</b>	434
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones....	<b>Voice announce</b>	435
Checking Call Times and Charges.....	<b>Call data</b>	436
Checking and Notifying Upper Limit of Cost.....	<b>Notify cost limit</b>	438
Using the FOMA terminal as Calculator.....	<b>Calculator</b>	439
Composing Text Memo.....	<b>Text memo</b>	440
Using Dictionaries.....	<b>Dictionary</b>	441
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch .....	<b>Earphone/microphone with switch</b>	444
Connecting Earphones and Selecting Person to Call ....	<b>Auto dial setting</b>	445
Connecting Earphones and Receiving Calls Automatically.....	<b>Automatic answer</b>	445
Selecting Your Provider.....	<b>PLMN setting</b>	446
Resetting the Function Settings.....	<b>Reset</b>	446
Resetting to the Default Settings of FOMA terminal.....	<b>Initialize</b>	451

# Multi Access

Multi Access is a function that allows voice calls, packet communication and SMS to be conducted at the same time. This enables you to receive mail during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.

## Communication lines that can be used concurrently

Using the Multi Access function, the FOMA terminal can concurrently use the 3 communication lines listed below.

Type of communication	Lines used
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-appli, or i-mode mail	1 line for one of the types
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

### NOTE

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- You cannot use multi access during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.
- You cannot use multi access during 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received simultaneously.

## When you receive a call during communication

### i-mode mail received during a voice call

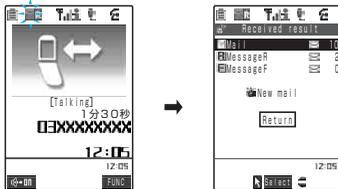
When you receive i-mode mail during a voice call, the voice call screen remains on screen while the i-mode mail is received. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

#### 1 (for 1 second or longer)

The screen changes to the i-mode mail reception results screen.

##### ■ To change screens from the Task menu

Using the Task menu to change screens → P.419



#### 2 Checking i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail → P.263

#### 3 (for 1 second or longer)

The screen changes to the voice call screen.

### NOTE

- If you receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a voice call, the "Mail", "Message Request" or "Message Free" icon flashes and then lights without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If no operations are performed in the Received result screen, the in-call screen reappears. When this occurs, holding down  for 1 second or longer does not switch back to the Received result screen.

## ● Voice call received during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, while you are receiving or sending i-mode mail or while you are using packet communication to send data, the screen changes to the voice call reception screen and you can answer the call without ending the i-mode or packet communication.

- You cannot receive videophone calls while using i-mode.

### 1



The screen changes to the voice call reception screen and you can answer the call.

- **To return to the i-mode display without answering the call**

▶ (for 1 second or longer)

The caller hears the busy tone with no message.

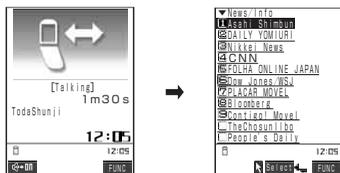
### 2

**When you have finished talking, press**

The call is ended and the i-mode screen reappears.

- **To return to the i-mode screen during a voice call**

▶ (for 1 second or longer)



## To use another type of communication while communicating

This function allows you to use another type of communication without interrupting your current communications.

- To change the screen during multi access communication, hold down for 1 second or longer or select the function you want to view from the Task menu. → P.419

### ● Connecting to i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, you can connect to i-mode by pressing and connecting from the i-mode menu in the Main menu. → P.196

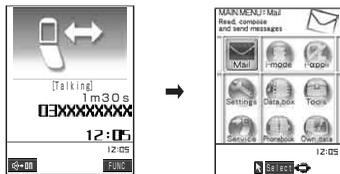
### ● Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, you can compose and send i-mode mail by pressing and selecting the Mail menu in the Main menu.

### 1

**During a voice call** ▶ ▶ **Select the Mail menu**

Using menus → P.34



### 2

**Composing i-mode mail** ▶ **Sending**

Composing/sending i-mode mail → P.235

### 3

(for 1 second or longer)

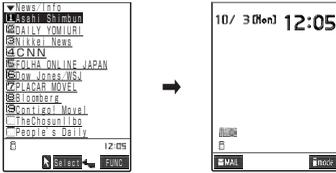
The voice call screen reappears.

## ● Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

### 1 During i-mode (for 1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



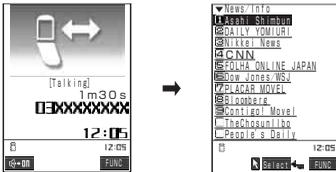
### 2 Make a voice call

Making voice calls → P.50

### 3 When you have finished talking, press

The call is ended and the i-mode screen reappears.

- To return to the i-mode screen during a voice call  
▶  (for 1 second or longer)



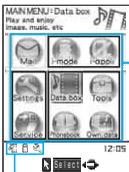
#### NOTE

- If you make a videophone call while in i-mode, the “disconnecting” message appears, after which the FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone is ended, the i-mode screen reappears.

#### <Multi task>

## Multi Tasking

Multi task is a function that allows you to use a number of functions at the same time. This allows you to use up to 3 functions at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.



The running group is enclosed by the frame.

The running tasks are expressed by icons.

Groups	Major functions (tasks)
Mail group	Mail
i-mode group	i-mode, i-appl
Settings group	Settings and Network service
Tools group	Data box, Phonebook, Tools and Own data

- The voice call charge continues to increment while you are concurrently using another communication function during a voice call.

## Activating a task (function)

### 1 While launching a task (for 1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.

### 2 Select a task from a group that has no tasks currently running

- To activate a task from the Main menu

▶  Select a task → P.34

■ **To activate a task using a menu option number**

▶ ▶ Enter menu number for the desired task → P.528

■ **To activate a task from the Mail menu**

▶ → P.234

■ **To activate i-mode menu**

▶ → P.196

**NOTE**

- If you attempt to activate tasks from the same group, either a message appears asking whether to switch tasks, or the tasks are automatically switched (when the Mail menu or i-mode menu is being displayed). If the message asking you to switch appears, select "YES" to switch to the newly selected task.
- If you attempt to activate a fourth task when there are already 3 tasks running concurrently, a message appears informing you that no further tasks can be activated.
- In the following cases, one task is added to compose mail while viewing mail. If 3 tasks are already running and you perform the operation below, a message is displayed, stating that the task cannot run. End a task other than a mail group task and then perform the operation. "Ending a Task" → P.420
  - Compose message
  - Compose an SMS
  - Reply/Reply with quote/Forward on the function menu while viewing mail
  - Function menu "Edit" while viewing the sent mail detail screen
  - Edit draft mail

## Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can use this procedure to switch between tasks. To switch between tasks, you can either press to display the Task menu and select the task you want to control from the menu, or hold down for 1 second or longer to switch between tasks one after the other. You can also switch between tasks by using the neuropointer to select task icons in the system display area.

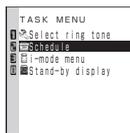
### Switching between tasks in the Task menu

1

The Task Menu List screen appears.

2

Select the task you want to use

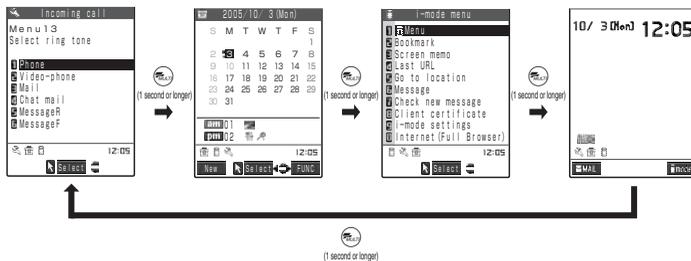


The screen for the selected task appears.

### Switching from one task to the next

You can switch between tasks on the task menu by holding down for 1 second or longer. Switching between tasks in this way does not end an active task or cut off a voice call.

● Holding down for 1 second or longer while the Main menu is displayed does not switch between tasks.



## Ending a task

A task can be ended in any of the following ways:

- Switch to the task to be ended 
- Select the task to be ended in the Task menu  "YES"
- While the Task menu is displayed  "YES"  End all the active tasks

### NOTE

- Turning the FOMA terminal off ends all the active tasks.
- If you use procedures that access menu functions such as UIM operations or color patterns while other menu functions are running, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed. If this occurs, quit the other menu functions before using procedures that access menu functions.

<Alarm setting>

## Setting the Alarm Mode

Default setting  
Alarm preferred

Use this procedure to select either "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" as the alarm notification setting for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "ToDo".

### 1 "Clock" "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred"

- **When you set to Operation preferred**  
Alarm is used only when the screen is standby.
- **When you set to Alarm preferred**  
Alarm is used when using FOMA terminal or when talking.

## Alarm notification actions

When you set alarm notification in the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" functions, an icon appears on the standby screen to show that an alarm has been set. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function notifies you.

### When you set an alarm

When you set an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm, an icon appears on the standby screen.



- **An alarm set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**  
The  icon is displayed.
- **An alarm set for tomorrow or later**  
The  icon is displayed.

### When the specified time is reached

The different alarms notify you as shown below.



Alarm clock



Schedule\*1



ToDo\*1



## ● To stop the alarm tone

### ■ Alarm clock alarm tone

#### When “Snooze OFF” is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone and freezes the animation. If you press any key again, the release tone (“pipip”) sounds and the display is cleared.

#### When “Snooze ON” is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, freezes the animation and displays the “Snooze...” message. After the “Snooze...” message has been displayed for around 5 minutes, the alarm is notified again. If you press  while the “Snooze...” message is displayed, the release tone (“pipip”) sounds and the snooze setting is cancelled.

### ■ Schedule and ToDo alarm tones

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, freezes the animation and displays the alarm message. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, if you pressed the side keys when the FOMA terminal was folded, the alarm notification display is not cleared.

### ■ If you receive a call during alarm notification

Alarm notification stops and the FOMA terminal receives the call. The “Alarm clock” snooze setting is also cancelled.

#### NOTE

- Snooze is canceled in the following situations:
  - When you receive a voice call or videophone call
  - When you receive i-mode mail or SMS and “Alarm preferred” is selected in “Receiving display”.
  - When you receive Clock, Schedule or ToDo alarm and “Alarm preferred” is selected in “Alarm setting”.
- If “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF”, the snooze notification release tone does not sound.

## ● Checking alarm details when notification fails

If the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you of an alarm, the “” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can then check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

### 1 On standby screen “Miss”



The missed alarm information for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is displayed.

#### ■ To clear the “” desktop icon

 (for 1 second or longer)

Once you clear the “” desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

### 2 Check the details

The standby screen reappears with “” (Missed alarm) no longer displayed.

#### NOTE

- If “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” alarms are set for the same time and the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you, the respective missed alarm information is displayed.



# Using the FOMA terminal as an Alarm Clock

- You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

## Setting the alarm clock

1



“Alarm clock”

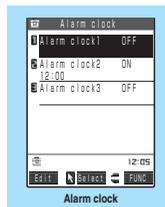
The “Alarm clock screen” appears. If you have set the alarm clock before, the details of the last setting are displayed.

2

Select a setting item ▶ (←) “Edit”

3

Set the respective parameters



Function menu▶P.424

Item	Description	
<b>Time setting</b>	▶ <b>Enter a time</b> Enters the time at which the alarm will sound.	
<b>Repeat</b>	Set the number of alarm clock repetitions.	
	<b>1 time</b>	The alarm sounds only once.
	<b>Daily ( [D] )</b>	The alarm sounds every day.
	<b>Select day ( [W] )</b> ▶ <b>Use (☑) select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (←) (Finish)</b> The alarm sounds every week on the specified day.	
<b>Alarm tone</b>	Select the alarm tone. If you have created folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option. “Clock Alarm Tone” can be selected from the “Pre-installed” folder. “Changing the Ring Tone” → P.114	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	<b>Voice announce</b>	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” as the alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → P.435
	<b>OFF</b>	No alarm tone sounds.
<b>Volume</b>	▶ <b>Adjust the alarm tone with (🔊)</b> Sets the alarm tone volume. “Adjusting the Ring Volume” → P.68	
<b>Snooze setting</b>	Specify whether a snooze (repeating) alarm is set.	
	<b>ON</b>	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for 1 minute and then repeats this up to 5 times at around 5-minute intervals.
	<b>OFF</b>	▶ <b>Enter a ringing time (01-10 minutes)</b> The alarm tone sounds continuously for the specified ringing time. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press (⊙).
<b>Auto power ON</b>	Specifies whether the FOMA terminal is automatically turned on when the time for an alarm is reached.	

4

(←) (Finish)

### NOTE

- You cannot store or edit alarm clock entries while PIM lock is set.
- When the alarm clock automatically turns the FOMA terminal on to notify you of an alarm and an alarm tone other than “Pre-installed” is selected, the FOMA terminal uses the “Clock Alarm Tone” set in the FOMA card operational restriction function.
- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the “Auto power ON” setting to “OFF” and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

## Function menu (Alarm clock screen)

### 1 Alarm clock screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the Alarm clock.
<b>Display detail</b>	Changes to the detail display when the list display is shown.
<b>Release this</b>	Disables a selected Alarm clock.
<b>Release all</b>	Disables all Alarm clocks.

<Schedule>



## Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

If you add an event to your schedule, an alarm tone sounds at the specified date and time and the FOMA terminal displays an animation and message notifying you of the details stored for the event. You can also add holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule events and holidays can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch between 1-month and 1-week calendar display mode to view the number of scheduled events for a given day and the key points. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, such as storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a set day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled event, or storing multiple scheduled events for the same day.

- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holiday or anniversaries respectively. Note that the national public holidays stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in this number.
- You can store multiple scheduled events for the same day. You can only set 1 holiday or anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms → P.420

### 1 "Schedule"

The "Schedule screen" appears.



Function menu → P.424

## Function menu (Schedule screen)

### 1 Schedule screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>New</b>	"Adding schedule entries" → P.426
<b>Weekly display*</b>	"Changing the Schedule display mode" → P.425
<b>Icon display</b>	 <b>Select an icon</b> Displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events ( <b>D</b> or <b>W</b> ) are displayed as a single item.
<b>User icon settg.</b>	"Setting your choice of image as your user icon" → P.427
<b>No. of schedules</b>	Displays the number of stored schedule entries, stored holidays, stored anniversaries and entries stored as secret events.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	Sends all the schedule entries using infrared communication. "Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.396

Item	Description	
<b>Delete past</b>	Delete all the schedule entries prior to a selected date.	
	<b>Schedule</b>	Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.
	<b>Holiday</b>	Deletes holidays up to the previous day.
	<b>Anniversary</b>	Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.
	<b>All</b>	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶Enter your security code▶Select any item	
	Security code → P.140	
	<b>Schedule</b>	Delete all the schedule entries.
	<b>Holiday</b>	Delete all holidays.
	<b>Anniversary</b>	Delete all anniversaries.
	<b>All</b>	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries.
<b>Reset holiday</b>	Resets the schedule to the national public holidays stored initially.	

\* : If Weekly display is set, it changes to "Monthly display". The default setting is Monthly display.

#### NOTE

● "Delete all" resets the holidays to the default settings at the time of purchase.

## Changing the Schedule display mode

The calendar displayed by the Schedule can be viewed either as a "Monthly display" or a "Weekly display". By using  to highlight a particular date, you can check icons and the number of scheduled events stored for the selected date.



Shows icons and the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Shows the icons, number, and details of scheduled events set for the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.

Blue dates: Saturdays

Red dates: Sunday, public holidays and holidays

○: Anniversaries

—: Today

□: Scheduled event stored for the morning

■: Scheduled event stored for the afternoon

The public holidays are set in accordance with the "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律(平成13年法律第59号)" (Revised National Holidays Law (Law No. 59, 2001)). (As of June, 2005)

## Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Storing a holiday>

- 

▶ "Schedule" ▶  (New) ▶ "Holiday"
  -  To add an anniversary
    - ▶ "Anniversary"

## 2 Set the respective parameters

Item	Description
 <b>Date setting</b>	▶ <b>Enter the date</b> Enters the date of the added holiday or anniversary.
 <b>Repeat</b>	Set the holiday or anniversary repetitions.
	<b>1 time</b> The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.
	<b>Annually</b> (  )      The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.
 <b>Message</b>	▶ <b>Enter a message</b> Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. The message can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506

## 3 (Finish)

### NOTE

- If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.

## Adding schedule entries

By adding the details of a trip or appointment to your schedule, you can have the FOMA terminal notify you using an alarm tone and animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- The scheduled event is not automatically deleted once the specified date and time has passed. If you try to store more than 100 events in your schedule, a message appears saying that the event cannot be stored. Delete some unwanted scheduled events and try again.
- When registering schedule, you must enter "Details". Entries with no details entered are not added to the schedule.

## 1 "Schedule screen" (P.424) ▶ (New) ▶ "Schedule"

## 2 Set the respective parameters

Item	Description
 <b>Date setting (from)</b>	▶ <b>Enter the date and time</b> Enters the starting time for the scheduled event.
 <b>Date setting (to)</b>	▶ <b>Enter the date and time</b> Enters the finishing time for the scheduled event.
 <b>Repeat</b>	Set the scheduled event repetitions.
	<b>1 time</b> The event is only set for the specified day.
	<b>Daily</b> (  )      The event is set to repeat every day.
	<b>Select day</b> (  )      ▶ <b>Use</b>  <b> to select a checkbox</b> ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶ <b>(Finish)</b> The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day.
 <b>Alarm</b>	Specify the alarm notification settings used when the starting date and time has elapsed.
	<b>ON</b> An alarm notification is used at the starting time.
	<b>ON/Set time</b> ▶ <b>Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes)</b> Sets how many minutes in advance of the starting time alarm notification is given. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press  .
	<b>OFF</b> No alarm notification is given when the starting time has elapsed.

Item	Description	
 <b>Alarm tone</b>	Select the alarm tone. If you have created folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. "Changing the FOMA terminal's Ring Tone" → P.114	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	<b>Voice announce</b>	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" as the alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.435
	<b>OFF</b>	No alarm tone sounds.
 <b>Summary</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a message</b></p> <p>Enters a summary of the scheduled event details. The summary can include up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during alarm notification. "Entering Text" → P.506</p>	
 <b>Schedule</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a message</b> ▶ <b>Select an icon</b></p> <p>Enters the scheduled event details. The details can contain up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506 When no summary is set, the details appear on the screen during alarm notification. If both summary and details are set, the summary is displayed.</p>	

### 3 (Finish)

#### NOTE

- You cannot store or edit schedule entries while PIM lock is set. Note also that when the calendar is set to the standby screen, added holidays are not displayed.
- When the calendar is set to the standby screen, you can set your schedule from the calendar.
- If the "ON/Set time" setting is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the specified time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes in advance). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the scheduled event itself.
- If you attempt to store 2 scheduled events with the same date and time, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.
- Scheduled events can be stored to notify the alarm at the same date and time when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for the other is "1 time" (no repeats). In this situation, the scheduled event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- If the day set as the starting time and the day set in the Repeat setting are different, the day set in the Repeat setting has priority and the scheduled event is added on the first specified day after the starting time.
- If you store a scheduled event during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are only displayed when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode". → P.145

#### Important

- You should back up the details of stored scheduled events onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.538) and a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up the Schedule data onto your PC.
- Stored Schedule entries can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of scheduled event details as a precautionary measure.

## Setting your choice of image as your user icon

This procedure allows you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. Icons set as user icons are shown as "👤" to "👤" in the icon selection display. When you set a user icon, the selected image or animation is displayed when the FOMA terminal notifies you of an alarm. Also, "👤" is displayed on the display and on the Image display.

- You can store up to 5 user icons.

### 1 "Schedule screen"(P.424)▶ (FUNC)▶ "User icon settg."▶ "<Not recorded>"



■ **To change a user icon that was set previously**

▶ Choose the items already set

■ **To clear all the user icon settings**

▶ “Release all” ▶ “YES”

Settings can only be cleared when user icons have already been set.

## 2 Select a folder containing images



If there are user-created folders, images can also be selected from those. Selecting images → P.337

■ **To release the icon that is set to the schedule**

▶ “Release this” ▶ “YES”

■ **To release the icon that is not set to the schedule**

▶ “Release this”

## 3 Select the image to be set

The selected image is zoomed in. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

■ **To show a preview**

▶ Select the image to show ▶ (Play)

### NOTE

- If you attempt to change or clear a user icon that is being used in a scheduled event, a message appears asking whether to clear the icon. If you change or clear the user icon, the icon on the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to “⌚”.

## Checking schedule details

Use this procedure to view and check the detail display for scheduled events.

### 1 Schedule screen (P.424) ▶ Select the date on which the scheduled event to be checked is stored

The “Schedule list screen” appears.

The icons used in the list display are described below.

⌚ : Scheduled event icon. Indicates that a scheduled event is stored.

🏠 : Stored holiday

🎂 : Stored anniversary

🔔 : Alarm set

📅 : Daily repeating event set

📅 : Weekly repeating event set on a specified day of the week

📅 : Annual repeating event set



Function menu ▶ P.429

### 2 Select item to be viewed in detail



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

## Function menu (Schedule list screen)

### 1 “Schedule list screen” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description								
<b>New</b>	“Adding schedule entries” → P.426								
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the schedule.								
<b>Copy</b>	Copies schedule entries. When the copied entry is set as a repeating event in the source schedule, the repeat setting is removed when the entry is pasted.								
<b>Icon display</b>	▶ <b>Select an icon</b> Displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events ( <b>D</b> or <b>W</b> ) are displayed as a single item.								
<b>User icon settg.</b>	“Setting your choice of image as your user icon” → P.427								
<b>Release secret</b>	Cancels the secrecy for a scheduled event stored as secret data. See “Changing secret data back to normal data” → P.147								
<b>Compose message</b>	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235								
<b>Send Ir data</b>	“Transferring one data at a time” → P.395								
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	Sends all the schedule entries using infrared communication. “Transferring multiple data at the same time” → P.396								
<b>Export this</b>	“Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card” → P.382								
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes 1 entry.								
<b>Delete past</b>	Delete all of one of the following options up to the previous day. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td><b>Schedule</b></td> <td>Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Holiday</b></td> <td>Deletes holidays up to the previous day.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Anniversary</b></td> <td>Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>All</b></td> <td>Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Schedule</b>	Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.	<b>Holiday</b>	Deletes holidays up to the previous day.	<b>Anniversary</b>	Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.	<b>All</b>	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
<b>Schedule</b>	Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.								
<b>Holiday</b>	Deletes holidays up to the previous day.								
<b>Anniversary</b>	Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.								
<b>All</b>	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.								
<b>Delete select</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox ( <input type="checkbox"/> ) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” You can delete multiple schedule entries.								

#### NOTE

- “Delete past” and “Delete select” do not delete the default holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- If you attempt to use “Delete this” or “Delete select” to delete a scheduled event for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message appears asking whether to delete the planned repetitions. Select “YES” and to delete all repeat occurrences of the scheduled events.
- When you use “Delete past”, all past occurrences of repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while repeat occurrences from the selected date onwards are left untouched.
- If you select “Delete select” from the Function menu when scheduled events are displayed by icon, the screen changes to show the selective deletion screen in the list display for the date selected on the screen before the scheduled events were displayed by icon. You cannot select “Delete select” when scheduled events are displayed by icon.

<ToDo>



## Adding ToDo List Entries

You can control your schedule by adding events to ToDo list. You can also set alarms for events.

- You can store up to 100 entries in the ToDo list.
- For information on ToDo alarms → P.420

# Checking the entries

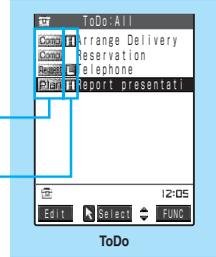
1

  "ToDo"

The "ToDo screen" appears.

Shows the entry status.  
The blue icon turns into red when the specified day has elapsed.

Shows the priority.



Function menu → P.430

2

## Select the entry to be checked

### ■ To edit the entry

 (Edit)

"Adding and editing entries" → P.431



Function menu → P.430

## Function menu (ToDo/ToDo detail checking screen)

1

"ToDo/ToDo detail checking screen"  (FUNC)  Select any item:

Item	Description	
<b>New</b>	See "Adding and editing entries" → P.431	
<b>Edit</b>	See "Adding and editing entries" → P.431	
<b>Change status</b>	Chooses an entry from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" or "Substitution".	
<b>Category display</b>	Chooses entries from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting", and shows them by category.	
<b>Sort/Filter</b>	Sorts entries or displays only entries with a specified status.	
	<b>By due date</b>	Sorts entries by due date from the oldest entry onwards.
	<b>By completed</b>	Sorts entries by completion date from the oldest entry onwards.
	<b>By entered time</b>	Sorts entries in the order in which they were entered.
	<b>Plan</b>	Displays only entries with the Plan status.
	<b>Acceptance</b>	Displays only entries with the Acceptance status.
	<b>Request</b>	Displays only entries with the Request status.
	<b>Provisional plan</b>	Displays only entries with the Provisional plan status.
	<b>Confirmation</b>	Displays only entries with the Confirmation status.
	<b>Denial</b>	Displays only entries with the Denial status.
<b>Completion</b>	Displays only entries with the Completion status.	
<b>Substitution</b>	Displays only entries with the Substitution status.	
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.133	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	"Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries" → P.395	
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	Sends all the entries using infrared communication. "Sending all data entries" → P.396	
<b>Export this</b>	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.382	

Item	Description
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected entry.
<b>Delete select</b>	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple entries.
<b>Delete completed</b>	Deletes a completed entry.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Security code → P.140 Deletes all entries.

## Adding and editing entries

- Always enter “Details” for an entry. Entries with no “Details” entered are not added to the ToDo list.
- To edit a previously added entry, begin the procedure from step 2.

1

▶ ▶ “ToDo” ▶ (New)

■ If the entry has already been added

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “New”

2

Set the respective settings

Item	Description
<b>ToDo</b>	▶ Enter the details for the entry Enters the details for the entry. The details can contain up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.506
<b>Due date</b>	Sets the due date for an entry.
	<b>Enter date</b> ▶ Enter the date and time Enters the date directly.
	<b>Choose date</b> ▶ Select a date from the calendar ▶ Enter the time Selects a date from the calendar.
	<b>No date</b> No due date is set.
<b>Priority</b>	Set the priority for an entry.
	<b>H</b> Sets a high priority.
	<b>L</b> Sets a low priority.
	<b>None</b> No priority is set.
<b>Category</b>	Chooses a category of entries from “None”, “Personal”, “Holiday”, “Travel”, “Business” or “Meeting”.
<b>Alarm</b>	Specify the alarm notification settings used when the due date is reached.
	<b>ON</b> An alarm notification is used at the due date.
	<b>ON/Set time</b> ▶ Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes in advance of the due date alarm notification is given. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press .
	<b>OFF</b> No alarm notification is given when the due date has elapsed.

Item	Description	
 <b>Alarm tone</b>	Select the alarm tone. If you have created folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. "Changing the FOMA terminal's Ring Tone" → P.114	
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	<b>Voice announce</b>	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" as the alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.435
	<b>OFF</b>	No alarm tone sounds.
 <b>Completion date*</b>	Set the completion date for an entry.	
	<b>Enter date</b>	 <b>Enter the date</b> Enters the date directly.
	<b>Choose date</b>	 <b>Select a date from the calendar</b> Selects a date from the calendar.
	<b>No date</b>	No completion date is set.

\* : Only displayed when an existing stored entry with a "Status" of "Completion" is edited.

### 3 (Finish)

#### NOTE

- You cannot store or edit ToDo list entries while PIM lock is set.
- If the "ON/Set time" setting is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the set time before the ToDo event (01-99 minutes in advance). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the ToDo event itself.
- If you store a ToDo list entry during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.

#### Important

- You should back up the details of a stored ToDo list onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.538) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up contents of ToDo list onto your PC.
- Stored contents of ToDo list can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss of data and users are advised to make a note of ToDo list as a precautionary measure.

<Own number>



## Storing Your Own Name and Image

Default setting  
Own number only

Use this function to store your own personal information, including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Stored personal information provides the FOMA terminal with a way of confirming that you are the owner and can also be quoted in text entry and editing displays.

- You cannot change or delete the FOMA terminal's own phone number.
- Items other than the own number are stored on the FOMA terminal. If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) of another FOMA terminal, the items other than the own number are displayed.

### Displaying personal data

When this function runs, it shows only your name, the FOMA terminal's own phone number and the first e-mail address listed.

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

# 1 “Own number”

The “Own number screen” appears.  
If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can display all the data by selecting “Display all data” from the function menu and entering security code.



Function menu → P.433

## Function menu (Own number screen)

### 1 “Own number screen” (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits your personal data. “Storing personal data” → P.433
<b>Display all data</b>	 <b>Enter your security code</b>  <b>Check the contents with</b>  Security code → P.140
<b>Copy name</b>	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into input and other screens. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → P.522
<b>Copy phone number</b> <sup>*1</sup>	Copies the phone number stored in the personal data. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other screens. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → P.522
<b>Send Ir data</b>	“Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries” → P.395
<b>Export this</b>	“Imported/Exported data” → P.382
<b>Erase phone number</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Deletes the phone number stored in the personal data.
<b>Reset</b>	 <b>Enter your security code</b>  <b>“YES”</b> Resets (deletes) all the personal data other than your FOMA terminal's phone number and restores the defaults set at the time of purchase. When you use “Display all data” to display the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code. Security code → P.140

\*1 : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, “Copy address” is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” is displayed.

\*2 : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, “Erase mail add.” is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, “Erase address” is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Erase birthday” is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, “Erase memorandums” is displayed.
- If you have selected an image, “Delete image” is displayed.

## Storing personal data

### 1 “Own number” (Edit) Enter your security code Security code → P.140

### 2 Set the respective settings

Item	Description
 <b>Name</b>	 <b>Enter your name</b> Enters your name. Your name can be up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and pictographs. “Entering Text” → P.506

Item	Description
 <b>Reading</b>	▶ <b>Enter the reading</b> Enters the reading for your name. The Reading is entered automatically when you enter your name. Change it if necessary. Reading can be up to 32 characters long and can include half-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. "Entering Text" → P.506
 <b>Phone number</b>	▶ <b>Enter a phone number</b> ▶ <b>Select an icon</b> Adds a phone number other than the FOMA terminal's own number and selects an icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. When you store a new phone number, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the personal data edit display. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
 <b>Mail address</b>	▶ <b>Enter the e-mail address</b> ▶ <b>Select an icon</b> Enters the e-mail address and select an icon. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "  <Not stored>" option appears on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. "Entering Text" → P.506
 <b>Address</b>	▶ <b>Enter your postal code</b> ▶ <b>Enter your street address</b> Enters the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. Street addresses can be up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. "Entering Text" → P.506
 <b>Birthday</b>	▶ <b>Enter your birthday</b> Enters the contact's birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 <b>Memorandums</b>	▶ <b>Enter a memo</b> Enters a memo (short note). Memos can be up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. "Entering Text" → P.506
 <b>Image</b>	Selects/releases the image displayed when you display your personal data.

### 3 (Finish)

#### NOTE

- If you change your own e-mail address or store a secret code, the e-mail address stored in this function does not automatically change.

<Voice memo (during a call) / Voice memo (in stand-by)>

## Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice

Voice memo is divided into two types. In-call "Voice memo" allows you to record your party's voice during a voice or videophone call. Standby "Voice memo" allows you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- Each time you record a voice memo, it overwrites the existing voice memo of the corresponding type.
- You can record for 20 seconds or so.
- For information on playing and erasing recorded voice memos → P.74

### Recording the other party's voice during a call

Use this procedure to record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call. A single key press allows quick and easy recording of important calls.

# 1 During a call ▶ (Memo/Check) (for 1 second or longer)



The FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (around 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the in-call screen.

## ■ To cancel recording in progress

▶ , or (Memo/Check) (for 1 second or longer)

Pressing also ends the call.

Pressing does not stop recording during Videophone.

### NOTE

- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are making a voice memo recording, recording stops.
- You cannot record your or the other party's voice while a videophone call is on hold or while you are using a Function menu option.
- While you are holding a voice call, you can record the call by following the steps below:

▶ ▶ ▶ "Voice memo"

## Recording yourself in stand-by mode



# 1 ▶ ▶ "Voice memo" ▶ "YES" ▶ Record voice memo

When the FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (around 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the "Tool" list screen.

## ■ To cancel recording in progress

▶ , or

Pressing returns you to the standby screen but saves the recorded voice.

### Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice memo.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of the voice memo. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any liability for loss of data. Take notes of the contents of the voice memo just in case.

### <Voice announce>



## Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function allows you to record speech for use as original ring tones and answer messages.

- You can make 2 voice recordings: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- Recordings can be up to around 15 seconds long.
- Voice recordings made using this function can be set in the following functions:
  - Ring tones
  - Ring tones for calls without caller IDs
  - On hold tone
  - Holding tone
  - Answer message of Record message
  - Alarm clock alarm tone
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - ToDo alarm tone
  - Notify cost limit alarm tone
  - Chat mail notification tone

## Recording voice

# 1 ▶ ▶ "Voice announce" ▶ Select the item to be recorded



# 2 "Record" ▶ Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (around 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the original screen.

## ■ To cancel recording in progress

▶ , or

Pressing returns you to the standby screen but saves the recorded voice.

## NOTE

- When there is already a voice recording, a message appears notifying you that there is an existing recording. Select "YES" to make a new recording and overwrite the existing recording.
- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are making a voice announce recording, the recording stops.

## Playing and erasing voice announce recordings

1



▶ "Voice announce" ▶ Select the item to be played



2

Select any item:

Item	Description
Record	"Recording voice" → P.435
Play	The recorded sound is played.
Erase	The recorded sound is erased.

■ To stop playback in progress



<Call data>



## Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- When you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice and videophone calls is displayed in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice and videophone calls are displayed separately in the last charge area. The displayed charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is displayed for both voice calls and digital calls and communication (videophone calls and +64K data communication). Times for both calls made and calls received are displayed.
- Charges are only displayed for calls made. However, if you call at toll free number such as directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥\*:" is displayed.
- As charges are accumulated on the FOMA card (UIM), the accumulated charge (start from December 2004) is displayed on the Charge line even if you change your FOMA card (UIM).  
\* : Charges are accumulated on FOMA cards (UIM) in FOMA terminals released before the 901i series, but they cannot be displayed.
- You can reset displayed call times and charges.
- Displayed call times and charges may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in the call costs.

# 1



## “Call time/Charge”▶“Call data”

Call data	
Last duration	1h 0m 2s
Last Charge	
Talk	VXXX
Digital	VXXX
All calls duration	
Talk	34m 23m 48s
Digital	9h 13m 32s
Charge	¥455
Calls reset	10/10 12:12
Charge reset	10/10 12:13
	12:05

**Last duration:** Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown regardless of whether the call was incoming or outgoing.

**Last Charge:** Shows the approximate charge for the last call. “Talk” shows the Last Charge of a previous voice call. “Digital” shows the Last Charge for a videophone call and 64K data communication.

**All calls duration:** Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to “0”). “Talk” shows the total call time for voice calls. “Digital” shows the total call time for videophone calls and 64K data communication.

**Charge :** Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset and shows the approximate total charges for all the calls including voice calls and digital communications (videophone charge + 64K data communication charge).

**Calls reset :** Shows the time and date of the last calls reset.

**Charge reset:** Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

### NOTE

- If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds 199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds, the call count returns to 0 seconds.
- The time and charge are not counted for i-mode or packet communication. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received at the time of contract.
- The time taken to pick up a call, or for the other party to pick up a call is not counted.
- If the “Set time” settings are not set or if “Set time” is set and then “Reset call duration” is not executed at least once, the date and time of time reset and charges reset are not displayed.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off or remove the FOMA card (UIM), the duration and fee shown for the last call reverts to “0” and “¥\*\*” respectively.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not affect the duration or charge.

## Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset call duration>



Use this procedure to reset the “Call data” displayed for the “All calls duration” and “Charge” to zero.

# 1



## “Call time/Charge”▶“Reset call duration”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Security code → P.140

Item	Description
<b>Reset call duration</b>	Resets accumulated duration.
<b>Reset charge duration</b>	▶“YES”▶ Enter PIN2 code Resets charges.

## Resetting Charges automatically <Auto reset all cost>

Default setting  
OFF

You can set so that Charge shown in “Call data” should become zero automatically on the 1st day every month, at 0:00 AM.

- Set date and time at “Set time” in advance. → P.47

# 1



## “Call time/Charge”▶“Auto reset all cost”▶Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

## 2 “Auto reset” ▶ Select “ON” or “OFF”

Item	Description
<b>ON</b>	▶ Enter PIN2 code Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code → P.141
<b>OFF</b>	Does not set Auto reset.

### NOTE

- Charge will be automatically reset even in a packet communication.
- When the date for auto reset is reached during a talk, auto reset is carried out after the talk ends.
- When it becomes time to reset automatically while the FOMA terminal is turned off, enter PIN2 code next time you turn the power on, and the charge will be reset.
- Setting Auto reset all cost to “ON” and changing the month in “Set time” automatically reset the total call charges.
- Setting Auto reset all cost to “ON” displays the PIN2 code entry screen when you turn on the FOMA terminal.
- The Auto reset all cost is reset to “OFF” when:
  - You turn on the power without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted
  - You press  when the screen is PIN2 code entry
  - PIN2 code is locked → P.141
  - An error occurs on the FOMA card (UIM)

### <Notify cost limit>

## Checking and Notifying Upper Limit of Cost

Default setting      Cost limit: ¥3,000    Notify cost limit: OFF

When accumulated charge shown at “Call data” exceeds the cost limit set in this function, you are notified with standby screen or alarms.

- Cost limit is notified only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the amount that is set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making a call.

## 1 ▶ ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Notify cost limit” ▶ Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

## 2 Set the respective settings

Item	Description	
<b>Cost limit setting</b>	You can set the cost limit between ¥10 and ¥100,000 by ¥10.	
<b>Notify setting</b>	Decides whether or not to notify the cost limit. Setting “OFF” does not notify you of the limit exceeding. Setting “ON” notifies you of the limit exceeding by the settings of “Alarm tone” and “Volume”.	
	<b>Alarm tone</b>	Select the alarm tone. If you have created folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option. “Clock Alarm Tone” can be selected from the “Pre-installed” folder. “Changing the Ring Tone” → P.114
	<b>Inbox</b>	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from Web sites.
	<b>Pre-installed</b>	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	<b>Voice announce</b>	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” as the alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → P.435
	<b>OFF</b>	No alarm tone sounds.
<b>Volume</b>	Sets the alarm tone volume with  . “Adjusting the Ring Volume” → P.68	

## 3 (Finish)

**NOTE**

- The alarm volume while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in "Phone vol." in "Original".
- The charges for i-mode communication and packet communication are not included in this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received at the time of contract.

**Alarm notification actions**

After ending a call, the function notifies you with the following methods when accumulated charges exceed the cost limit.

**When Notify setting is set to "ON" and alarm tone is set to other than "OFF"**

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm starts sounding in three seconds after you finished talking, and it lasts about five minutes, which displays the screen notifying that the accumulated charge has exceeded the limit. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the notification, pressing or displays "MRX" (Call billing) desktop icon on the standby screen.



**When Notify setting is set to "ON" and alarm tone is set to "OFF"**

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, "MRX" (Call billing) desktop icon is shown on the standby screen.

**Checking details of "MRX" (Call billing)**

The details of Notify cost limit is shown by clicking "MRX" (Call billing) desktop icon on the standby screen.

**1 On standby screen** "MRX"

The alarm information of "Call billing" is shown.

**2 Check the details**

The standby screen reappears without "MRX" (Call billing) displayed.



**NOTE**

- The "MRX" (Call billing) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed in "Cost limit setting".
- If "Alarm tone" is set to "OFF", no alarm notification is made.
- If the specified limit is lower than the accumulated charge, the alarm of Notify cost limit sounds when you finish making/receiving a call immediately after changing the settings.
- You can set the alarm mode by selecting "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" in "Alarm setting" (P.420).

**<Calculator> Using the FOMA terminal as Calculator**

You can use your FOMA terminal to perform 4 different types of arithmetical calculations (addition, subtraction, multiplication and division).

- The number can be displayed up to 10 digits. Below the decimal point up to 9 digits can be displayed.
- If the result of a calculation exceeds 10 digits, "E" is displayed.

**1** **"Calculator"**



The FOMA terminal displays the entered numbers and calculation result.

**To calculate "23 + 57"**



**To use negative numbers in a calculation**

To calculate using negative amounts, simply insert "-" before the first digit.



## NOTE

- **CE** ( **AGC** or **CE** ) can be used in the following situations.
  - After pressing +, -, ×, ÷ and =, **AGC** is shown. You can start calculation from the beginning by pressing **CE**.
  - While inputting numbers or decimal points, **CE** is shown. You can delete wrong numbers or decimal points by pressing **CE**.

## <Text memo>



# Composing Text Memo

You can use your FOMA terminal to write short messages in the form of text memos. You can then paste a completed text memo into your schedule or into mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- Each text memo can contain up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters.

## Storing a text memo

### 1 **MENU** → **memo** → “Text memo”

The “Text memo screen” appears.

### 2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and then press **⊖** (Edit)

■ To edit the content of an existing text memo

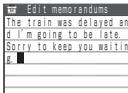
▶ Select a changing item ▶ **⊖** (Edit)

### 3 Write the memo

“Entering Text” → P.506



Function menu → P.440



## Important

- You should back up the details of stored Text memo onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.538) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up the Text memo data onto your PC.
- Stored Text memo entries can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss of data and users are advised to make a note of text memos as a precautionary measure.

## Checking the details of text memos

### 1 **MENU** → **memo** → “Text memo” → Select the item to be checked → Check the memo



## Function menu (Text memo screen)

### 1 Text memo screen → **⊖** (FUNC) → Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	Edits the text memo.
<b>Compose message</b>	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.235
<b>Edit schedule</b>	“Adding schedule entries” → P.426

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.378

Item	Description
Send 1r data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.395
Send all 1r data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.396
Export this	"Imported/Exported data" → P.382
Text memo info	Displays the creation date/time and category.
Category	Chooses a category of the text memo from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting".
Delete this	Deletes 1 text memo.
Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (☐)▶  (Finish)▶ "YES" Deletes multiple text memos.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ "YES" Security code → P.140 Delete all the text memos.

<Dictionary>

## Using Dictionaries

### Activating the dictionary

1

▶▶ "Dictionary"  
The "Dictionary screen" appears.



Function menu▶P.442

2

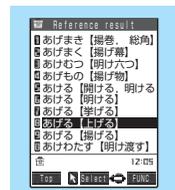
Select any item:

Item	Description
Enter word	▶Enter a word You can enter up to 32 full-pitch or 64 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.506
Access reader	▶"Dic. (Japanese)" or "Dic. (English)"▶ Scan the text Enters a word from the access reader. "Scanning Text" → P.182
Reference history	You can then search the dictionary using the history of previously retrieved words. "Using reference history" → P.442

3

Select the dictionary type  
The "Reference result (list) screen" appears.

- To display the previous or next list  
▶"Reference result (list) screen"▶



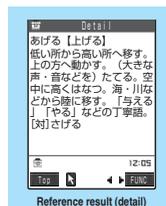
Reference result (list)  
Function menu▶P.442

## 4 Select a word from the retrieval results list

The "Reference result (detail) screen" appears.

### ■ To display the previous or next word

▶"Reference result (detail) screen"▶



Reference result (detail)  
Function menu▶P.443

## Function menu (Dictionary screen)

### 1 Dictionary screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select the following:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.133

## Using reference history

### 1 Dictionary screen (P.441)▶"Reference history"

The "Reference history screen" is displayed.

### 2 Select a word



Reference history  
Function menu▶P.442

## Function menu (Reference history screen)

### 1 Reference history screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Delete this	Deletes 1 Reference history.
Delete all	Deletes all Reference histories.

## Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

### 1 Reference result (list) screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Copy	Copies the word in <b>[ ]</b> retrieved from the dictionary. The copied word can be pasted into entry displays, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→P.522
Refer dic.	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.

## Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

### 1 Reference result (detail) screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Copy	Copies the word retrieved from the dictionary (detail). The copied words can be pasted into entry screens, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522
Re-reference	"Searching in the Reference result (detail) screen" → P.443
Refer dic.	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit	This option allows you to refer to the retrieval results while editing text. The dictionary is activated from the text edit display and, if the operation display and text edit display cannot be shown, the text edit display from which the dictionary was launched appears (e.g. text memo or phonebook text edit display). "Changing the Active Display" → P.526

## Searching in the Reference result (detail) screen

### 1 Reference result (detail) screen (P.442) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Re-reference"

2 ▶ Press ◉ on the first character of the string to search

3 ▶ Highlight to the end of the string to search and then press ◉

4 Select the dictionary type

5 Select a word from the reference result list

## Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dic." from the respective function menus in the following displays:

- Text edit screens
- Detail screens for sent or received mail and while the message entry screen for a new mail is displayed.
- Pages on sites and while a screen memo is displayed

### ■ When you activate the dictionary from a text edit display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from the text edit display.

### ■ When you activate the dictionary from the Sent or Received Mail detail screen or from the Message Entry display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from a message in sent or received mail or from a new message you are composing.

### ■ When you activate the dictionary from a site or from a screen memo

You can choose "Enter word", "Site refer (enter)" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Site refer (enter)" allows you to enter the word you want to look up while referring to a screen memo or a page on a site.

## ● Guide to the dictionary reference screen



When you select “Refer edit” or “Site refer (enter)”, the display is split into top and bottom halves.

Each time you select “Change window” from the Function menu, the window you can use switches between ① and ②.

Moving the neuropointer between the windows also changes the windows.

### ■ When you selected “Refer edit” from the Retrieval Results screen...

① shows the Dictionary Detail screen.

② shows the text edit screen.

③ shows the separation lines.

To exit the dictionary, switch to window ① and press (End).

### ■ When you selected “Refer edit” from a screen memo or a page on a site...

① shows the site page or screen memo display.

② shows the search term entry display.

③ shows the separation lines.

Enter the search term and press . The dictionary selection display appears with the search term entered.

## <Earphone/microphone with switch>

# Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive a call by using a switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone jack cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. → P.24
- The call connection tone and call end tones always sound regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that connecting the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is emitting a ring tone may cause the FOMA terminal to accept the call.
- Do not wrap the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch cord around the FOMA terminal. This may interfere with signal reception.

## ● Using the switch to make calls

### 1 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer on the Standby screen

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to a phone number set at “Auto dial setting” (P.445). Even if FOMA terminal is folded, you can still make a call to a phone number that is set at “Auto dial setting” by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer.

#### ■ Making a call from the list screen of the Phonebook

▶ Phonebook list screen ▶ Select a phonebook ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number registered at “Phonebook”.

You can also make a call from “Redial/Dialed call screen (list)” or “Received calls screen (list)”.

#### ■ Making a call from the detail screen of the Phonebook

▶ Phonebook detail screen ▶ Select a phone number ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to a selected phone number.

You can also make a call from “Redial/Dialed call screen (detail)” or “Received calls screen (detail)” or by holding down the switch for one second or longer on “Enter phone number screen”.

### 2 When you finish talking, hold down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

## ● Using the switch to accept calls

### 1 When you receive a call, press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone

You can press the switch with the FOMA terminal folded to answer the call.

#### ■ Receiving voice calls

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call.

#### ■ Receiving videophone calls

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call using your Substitutive image. Press to switch to your own camera image.

## 2 When you finish talking, hold down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

### NOTE

- You can use the "Earphone" setting to make sounds through the earphone and speaker when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- By setting "Automatic answer" to "ON", you can have the FOMA terminal answer calls automatically without having to press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone. → P.445
- If "Silent" is selected for "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting, or if the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, no ring tone sounds. However, a ring tone does sound if you are using an "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- Holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer during a call does not switch the FOMA terminal to hands-free mode. Holding down the switch for 1 second or longer actually ends the call.
- If you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting Service" (P.457), you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can switch calls by pressing the switch for 1 second or more. However, pressing the switch does not end the current call.
- Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone as this may cause the FOMA terminal to automatically accept a call.

### <Auto dial setting>

## Connecting Earphones and Selecting Person to Call

Default setting  
OFF

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal automatically make voice calls by holding down the switch for 1 second or more.

- You can set telephone numbers registered in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) to this function.
- Even when FOMA terminal is folded, you can still receive a voice call and make a voice call by holding down the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) for 1 second or longer.

1

  "Talk" ▶ "Auto dial setting" ▶ "ON"

- Not to use Auto dial setting  
▶ "OFF"

2

Phonebook detail screen (P.103) ▶ Display a phone number to set ▶ 

Searching the phonebook → P.101

### NOTE

- The phonebook entry in which no phone numbers are registered or the entry registered to UIM phonebook cannot be set.
- If you delete the phonebook in this function, you can no longer make phone calls by pressing the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) even if this function is set to "ON".

### <Automatic answer>

## Connecting Earphones and Receiving Calls Automatically

Default setting      Auto answer: OFF      Ringing time: 6 seconds

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal automatically answer received voice or videophone calls without having to press the switch.

- The FOMA terminal does not automatically answer calls during 64K data communication.
- You can receive a call automatically when FOMA terminal is folded.

1

  "External connection" ▶ "Automatic answer" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
ON	▶ Enter the ringing time (001-120 seconds) Enables the Automatic answer function. The FOMA terminal waits for the specified ringing time after the call is received and then automatically answers the call. Enter the time as a 3-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press  .
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function

**NOTE**

- When the FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees your substitute image. To switch to your own image displayed by FOMA terminal's camera during the videophone call, press **[M]**.
- You cannot set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is the same as the ringing time for "Record message" or "Remote observation".
- To give this function priority when it is set at the same time as the "Voice Mail Service" (P.455) or "Call Forwarding Service" (P.458), set a shorter ringing time for this function than those set for Voice Mail and Call Forwarding.
- If the ring start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Automatic answer ringing time, the FOMA terminal switches to Automatic answer without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it switches to Automatic answer, set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is longer than the ring start time.
- If you connect an earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal while the FOMA terminal is ringing, Automatic answer does not operate. However, Automatic answer will operate if you disconnect the earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is ringing.

<PLMN setting>

## Selecting Your Provider

Default setting  
DoCoMo

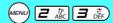
\* If you are using DoCoMo, there is no need to change this setting.

Use this setting to specify your FOMA service provider (PLMN).

- As of June 2005, no service providers other than DoCoMo can be selected.

**1**   **"Other settings" ▶ "PLMN setting" ▶ "Manual" ▶ Select PLMN (service provider)**

<Reset>



## Resetting the Function Settings

This function allows you to reset the FOMA terminal's function settings to the defaults selected at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake "Initialize" for "Reset".  
"Initialize", and you will lose all the data you have stored. → P.451

- If the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" is not returned to its default setting.
- To restore the default settings for the i-mode functions, use "Reset". → P.216
- To reset the "Last URL" setting, use "Reset last URL". → P.216
- To restore the default settings for the mail functions, use "Reset". → P.286

**1**   **"Other settings" ▶ "Reset" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"**

Security code → P.140

- To cancel the reset  
▶ "NO"

### Functions that are reset

Function		Default settings
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume
		Select ring tone
		Sound effect
		Phone: Level 4 Video-phone: Level 4 Mail: Level 4 Chat mail: Level 4 MessageR: Level 4 MessageF: Level 4
		Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Chat mail: Pattern 2 Message R: Pattern 3 Message F: Pattern 3
		Surround: OFF 3Dsound: ON SRS_WOW: OFF

Function		Default settings	
Settings	Incoming call	Vibrator	Phone: OFF Video-phone: OFF Mail: OFF Chat mail: OFF MessageR: OFF MessageF: OFF
		Illumination	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12 Adjust color tone: Initial setting
		Manner mode set	Manner mode (Original manner → P.120)
		Disp. PH-book image	ON
		Answer setting	Any key answer
		Fold setting	End the call
		Mail/Msg. ring time	Mail: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds Chat mail: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds MessageR: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds MessageF: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds
		Ring time	Set mute seconds: 0 second Missed calls display: Display
		Info notice setting	Japanese display: 電子音 English display: ON
		Talk	Noise reduction
	Quality alarm		High tone
	Reconnect control		No tone
	Illumination in talk		OFF
	Call response setting		On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody
	Auto dial setting		OFF
	Video-phone	Visual preference	Normal
		Camera image sending	ON
		Select image	On hold: Pre-installed Holding: Pre-installed Substitutive image: Chara-den (ブンブン (Dimo)) Record message: Pre-installed Preparing: Pre-installed Voice memo: Pre-installed
		Voice call auto switch	OFF
		Remote observation	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF
		Disp. setting VP	Main display: Other image Display screen size: Large
	Display	Display setting	Stand-by display: Surfing Wake-up display: MEN'S KIT Edit message: It returns to the state when it is not entered. Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP Dialing: Standard VP Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Check new message: Standard

Function		Default settings	
Settings	Display	Display light	Lighting: ON + Saver (5-minute delay) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys (Normal) Brightness: Level 2
		Display design	Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background1: OFF Background2: Pattern 1
		Image display	Set: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Analog 1 Pict: ON Image set: Pre-installed folder Called: ON (Image + Caller ID) Mail: OFF Connection: ON Backlight: OFF Background i-appli: OFF
		Font	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium
		Desktop icon	Camera
		Original menu	Own number Check new message Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code
		Menu display set	Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: List Theme: Pattern1
		Viewer settings	Picture
		Automatic display	OFF
		Call time/Charge	Notify cost limit
	Auto reset all cost		OFF
	Call time display		ON
	Clock	Clock display	Display Japanese display: 日本語 English display: ON Size: Big
		Alarm setting	Alarm preferred
	Lock/Security	IC Card lock	OFF
		Self mode	Release
		Keypad dial lock	Release
		Reject unknown	Accept
		Call setting w/o ID	All "Accept" (same as ring tone)
		Scanning function	Scan function: ON
		Remote all lock	OFF Accept phone No.: Reverts to "Not recorded" Monitoring: 3 minutes Received calls: 5 time
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	60 seconds
		Set check new message	Mail: ON MessageR: ON MessageF: ON
Host selection		i-mode User defined host: Reverts to "Not recorded"	
SMS center selection		DoCoMo User setting: Revert to unrecorded status.	
Certificate		All valid	
Certificate host		DoCoMo User setting host: Reverts to "Not recorded"	
i-appli settings	Disp. software info	Not display	

Function		Default settings	
Settings	External connection	USB mode setting	Communication mode
		Earphone	Earphone
		Automatic answer	OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds
	Other settings	Keypad sound	ON
		Charge sound	ON
		Side keys guard	OFF
		Character input method	Input mode: All ON Preferred mode: Mode 1 (5-touch) Prediction: ON Guidance: ON T9 change mode: T9 Kanji change mode
		Record display set	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON
		Sub-address	ON
		Prefix setting	WORLD CALL (009130010) User setting: Revert to "Not recorded"
		Int'l dial setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country code setting: アメリカ (Country code: 1) User setting: Revert to unrecorded status.
		Neuropointer	Pointer: ON Simple: Normal
	Select icons setting	ON	
Tool	Camera	Photo mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: CIF (352 × 288) Storage setting: Fine Image quality Photo mode: Auto Color mode set: Normal Image tuning: Auto Select frame: OFF	
		Movie mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: Large (176 × 144) File size setting: Restricted (Short) Storage setting: Normal Image quality Brightness: 0 White balance: Auto Color mode set: Normal Photo mode: Portrait Image tuning: Auto Movie type set: Normal	
		Photo mode/Movie mode Shutter sound: Sound 1 Auto timer: OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.) Auto save set: OFF File restriction: File unrestricted Display size: Actual size (Setting Continuous mode → P.167, 168)	
		Schedule	Monthly display User icon settg.: Reverts to "Not recorded".
		Alarm clock	All OFF
		Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds
	Forwarding image	ON	
Network service	Arrival call act	Answer	
Phonebook	Utilities	All OFF	
	Restrictions	All OFF	
Own data	Common phrases	Fixed phrases reset (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)	

Function	Default settings	
Data box	My picture	Set image disp.: Normal Sort: Chronological ↑
	i-motion	Listing: Title + image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name + image (miniSD) Set repeat play: OFF Set image disp.: Actual size Sort: Chronological ↑
	Chara-den	Rec. Chara-den: Photo mode Substitute image: Dimo Set image disp.: Fit in display Select size: QCIF (176 × 144) Movie type set: Video+Voice Storage setting: Normal
	My document	Sort: Chronological ↑
Other functions	Volume	Level 4
	Manner mode	Release
	Driving mode	Release
	Videophone function menu "V-phone settings"	Brightness: 0
	Videophone function menu "Display light"	All time ON
	Phonebook search Last one function <sup>1</sup>	Reading search

\*1 : The "Last one function" provides for the function selected last time an operation was performed to be the pre-selected function next time that operation is performed.

#### NOTE

- You cannot reset the functions while using other functions. Also, you cannot reset the functions while "All lock" or "PIM lock" is set.

# Resetting to the Default Settings of FOMA terminal

This function deletes stored data and returns the settings for the FOMA terminal's functions to their defaults set at the time of purchase.

"Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, i-appli, PDF documents, still images and movies shot by the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters or PDF documents, resetting the FOMA terminal restores them.
- Data that had already been stored at the time of purchase is not deleted.
- For more information on the restored default settings, see "Reset" (P.446).
- The "Initialize" returns the functions that are listed below and that can be reset by the "Reset" function to their default settings set at the time of purchase.

- |                                |                   |                         |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| · Mail data                    | · Mail folders    | · Template              |
| · Color palette                | · Chat member     | · Mail settings         |
| · Bookmark                     | · Screen memo     | · Last URL              |
| · Go to location               | · Message         | · i-mode settings       |
| · Full Browser settings        | · Auto start set  | · Certificate host      |
| · i-appli launch information*1 | · Call data       | · Set time              |
| · Pause dial                   | · Sub-address     | · Melody                |
| · ToDo                         | · Text memo       | · Voice announce        |
| · Access reader                | · Bar code reader | · Dictionary            |
| · Additional service           | · Multi number    | · Phonebook             |
| · Group setting                | · Received calls  | · Redial/Dialed calls   |
| · Received address             | · Sent address    | · Mail member           |
| · Chat group                   | · Own dictionary  | · Changed security code |
| · Data you have stored*2       |                   |                         |

\*1 : The launch information on i-appli that had been preinstalled at the time of purchase is not restored to the default (except if it is upgraded or if it is deleted once and then downloaded).

\*2 : Saved data, downloaded data, i-appli applications, still images or video clips shot using the built-in camera, etc.

- Group names and folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing the FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize the FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn the FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while the FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls or mail.

● You can restore your FOMA terminal to the default settings by using "Initialize".  
 It is recommended to store your data registered to FOMA terminal by taking memo or using Data Link Software (P.538) or miniSD memory card (P.378).

## 1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Initialize" ▶ Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

## 2 "YES" ▶ "YES"



Initialization begins.

Initialization may take a few moments.

When the terminal initialization ends, the FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

### ■ If initialization is not completed correctly

▶ "OK" after turning the power on

The initialization starts again.

## NOTE

● The initialization deletes i-oppli if they:

- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were upgraded
- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
- were downloaded

You can download the i-oppli that were pre-installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase from the “みんなNらんど” page on the “ケータイ電話メーカー” website. You will be charged for the download. →P.197

- Mobile Wallet i-oppli and data in the IC card are not deleted.
- You cannot initialize the FOMA terminal while another function is running.
- Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or miniSD memory card are not deleted.
- Data communication settings specified from a PC are not deleted.
- When there are large amounts of data to be deleted, the initialization may take some time.

# ● Network Services

Available Network Services .....	454
Voice Mail Service .....	455
Call Waiting.....	457
Call Forwarding Service.....	458
Nuisance Call Barring Service.....	460
Caller ID Request Service .....	461
Dual Network Service .....	461
English Guidance.....	462
Service Dialing Number.....	463
Handling Calls Received During a Call.....	463
Setting Up Remote Access.....	<b>Remote access</b> 464
Multi number <Not currently available>.....	464
Adding and Using Services .....	<b>Additional services</b> 464

To use the “Voice mail”, “Call waiting”, “Call forwarding”, “Nuisance call barring”, “Dual network” and “i-mode” services, you must subscribe beforehand. For further information on the network services, refer to contact information provided on the back cover of this manual. (Check the phone number carefully before dialing.)

Subscribe to the “Voice mail”, “Call waiting”, “Call forwarding”, “Nuisance call barring” and “i-mode” services via the DoCoMo e-site. See the back cover of this manual for details.

## Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the services and shows pages that describe the service details.

Service name	Description	Subscription	Monthly usage fees	Page
Voice mail service*	Stores caller messages on your behalf.	Required	Charged	P.455
Call waiting*	Allows you to take calls from other people while you are on a phone.	Required	Charged	P.457
Call forwarding service*	Forwards calls to a preset number.	Required	Free	P.458
Nuisance call barring service*	Automatically bars calls from nuisance callers or repeated wrong number calls.	Required	Free	P.460
Caller ID notification service*	Provides your FOMA terminal phone number to callers when you make a call.	Not required	Free	P.48
Caller ID request service*	Plays a message to callers who do not provide his/her caller ID by asking them to call again with their caller ID provided.	Not required	Free	P.461
Driving mode*	Plays a message to callers notifying that you are driving and cannot take the call.	Not required	Free	P.70
Dual network service*	Allows the same phone number to be shared by the FOMA terminal and mova terminal.	Required	Charged	P.461
English guidance*	Allows you to select English as the language used in the spoken guidance messages provided when you make or receive calls or set up network services.	Not required	Free	P.462
Short Message Service (SMS)*	Provides a simple way to send and receive short text messages.	Not required	Free	P.292
i-mode	Allows you to connect to i-mode sites (programs) and use i-mode mail, etc.	Required	Charged	P.190

\* : For more details of the network services, see the "Network Services Operation Guide".

- For the service being used when you are connected to the Network Service Center, the service cannot be used when the  icon appears.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu. →P.464

## Voice Mail Service

Subscription  
Required

If you receive a voice call when the “” icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, this service plays an answer message to the caller and stores the caller’s message on your behalf.

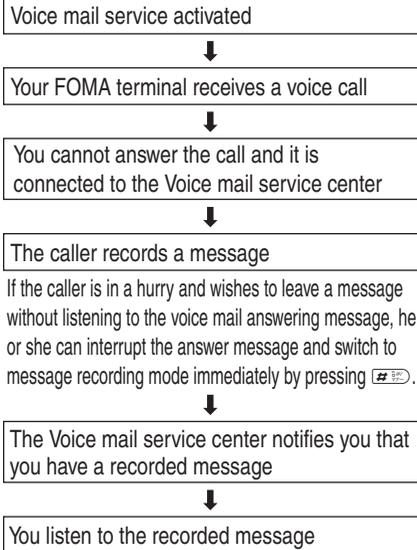
You can check your stored messages from anywhere in Japan.

- The Voice mail service cannot be used from your FOMA terminal when the “” icon appears. If you use “Remote access” (P.464) to enable remote access beforehand, you can access the Voice mail service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your “Network security code” (P.140).
- To use the Voice mail service, you must pay a monthly usage fee plus the call charges that apply when you listen to your recorded messages.

### Overview of Voice mail service

- The Voice mail service center will store up to 20 Voice mail messages, each of which can be up to approximately 3 minutes long.
- Messages are held at the center for up to 72 hours.
- If you receive a videophone call, the call is not connected to the Voice mail service center and the call is disconnected when the ring time set for the Voice mail service elapses.
- The Voice mail service is automatically suspended when the “Call forwarding service” (P.458) is activated.
- If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the “Caller ID request service” (P.461) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and cannot leave a message at the Voice mail service center.

### Basic flow of Voice mail service operation



### NOTE

- You can also choose to simply leave a message saying that you cannot answer the call. Select this option in “Setting”.
- You can still make and receive calls while the Voice mail service is activated.
- If you receive a voice call when the Voice mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in “Select ring tone” sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice mail service center. Calls are logged in the Received calls records as “Missed calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- Voice calls received while you are talking on the FOMA terminal can also be transferred to the Voice mail service center. → P.464

### Activating the Voice mail service



## ② “YES” ▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)

If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the “Received calls record”.  
If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.

- **To change the ring time only**  
▶ “Set ringing time” ▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)
- **To deactivate the Voice mail service**  
▶ “Deactivate” ▶ “YES”

### NOTE

- To give priority to voice mail when “Record message” is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for voice mail is shorter than the ring time set for “Record message”.
- If the mute time set in “Ringing time” is longer than the voice mail ring time, the FOMA terminal transfers the call to voice mail without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to voice mail, set a ring time for voice mail that is longer than the mute time.

## Checking your Voice mail service settings

Use the procedure below to check your settings by inquiring at the Voice mail service center. You can also modify your settings while checking them.

### ① “Voice mail” ▶ “Status request”

“Voice mail setting screen” appears.  
Check your current Voice mail service settings in this screen.



Function menu ▶ P.456

### Function menu (Voice mail setting screen)

#### ① Voice mail setting screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Activate	Activates the Voice mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice mail service.
Set ringing time	Changes the ring time.

## Changing your Voice mail service settings using audio guidance

### ① “Voice mail” ▶ “Setting” ▶ “YES”

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center. Then specify your settings by following the audio instructions.

### NOTE

- You cannot perform some of other operations during a call to the Voice mail service center.
- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys ( to ,  and ) in response to the audio instructions, note that pressing  may not end the call. In this event, press  again.

## Having the FOMA terminal ring when your recorded messages increase <Message notification>

Use this procedure to have the FOMA terminal emit a ring tone when the number of recorded messages held at the Voice mail service center increases.

- The FOMA terminal only rings when the standby screen is shown.
- When the messages held at the Voice mail service center increases, the ring tone set to “Mail” in “Select ring tone” rings for approximately 5 seconds.

### ① “Voice mail” ▶ “Message notification” ▶ “YES”

## Checking for recorded messages <Check messages>



### ① “Check messages”

After checking for messages, the FOMA terminal displays a message saying that it has finished checking for messages.

If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice mail service center, the  (voice mail icon) and  (“Voice mail” desktop icon) appear in the standby screen. The number in the voice mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages (“”, “”, “” ... “” (10 messages or more)).

### NOTE

- The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.
- The number of messages that arrive at the Voice mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the voice mail icon.

## Playing recorded messages

### ① “Voice mail” ▶ “Play messages” ▶ “YES”

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center.

Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.

#### NOTE

- You cannot perform this operation during a call.
- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys (☰ to ☲, ☱ and ☳) in response to the audio instructions, note that pressing ☲ may not end the call. In this event, press ☲ again.

### Clearing the voice mail icons

Use this procedure to clear voice mail icons (📞) from the standby screen.

- 1 "Voice mail" ▶ "Erase icon" ▶ "YES"

#### NOTE

- Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The voice mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

### Activating the Notice call service

When you receive a voice call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, and the caller ID) (P.292) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.

- You can set this function regardless of whether you have activated the Voice mail service.

- 1 "Voice mail" ▶ "Activate notice call" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
All calls	Notifies you of all received calls.
Calls with caller ID	Notifies you only of calls with the caller ID provided.

- To deactivate the Notice call service  
▶ "Deactivate notice call" ▶ "YES"
- To check the Notice call service setting  
▶ "Notice call status"

### Call Waiting

Subscription  
Required

The Call waiting enables you to answer another voice call while you are talking on the FOMA terminal. You can also use this service to put your current call on hold while you call someone else.

- The Call waiting cannot be used from your FOMA terminal when the 📞 icon appears.
- To use Call waiting, select "Answer" in "Arrival call act" (P.463) beforehand. If another setting is selected, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call when Call waiting is activated.

- If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID request service" (P.461) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and Call waiting is not available.
- The Call waiting is not available in the following situations:

- During a call to a 3-digit number such as 110, 119, 118, 117\* or 104
- While signals are sent after dialing or other party's phone is ringing
- While you are on a call to a 4-digit phone number to specify network service settings, such as 1411 (activate the Voice mail service) or 1420 (deactivate the Call forwarding service)
- If you have subscribed to the Voice mail service and are connected to the Voice mail service center to listen to recorded messages, etc.
  - ※ : If you receive a voice call while on a call to 117, you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) but you cannot answer the call.

### Activating Call waiting

- 1 "Call waiting" ▶ "Activate" ▶ "YES"



- To deactivate the Call waiting  
▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "YES"
- To check your Call waiting settings  
▶ "Status request"

#### NOTE

- If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) pressing ☲ or ☳ automatically puts the first call on hold and connects the second caller.

### Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a voice call, press ☲ or ☳

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.



- 2 Switch back to the first call

**■ To end the call with the second caller**

▶ ▶ or

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to your first call.

**■ To put the second caller on hold**

▶

This puts the second caller on hold and returns you to your first call.

You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

**■ To end the call on hold**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "End held call"

**NOTE**

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the current call or the held call. To end the held voice call, press , select "End held call" from the function menu and then press either or . To end the current voice call, press , press and then press either or .

**Ending the current voice call to answer another voice call**

**1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press**

The first call is ended and the ring tone sounds. If an i-motion is set as the ring tone, "Pattern 1" is played.

**2 or**

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

**Putting the current voice call on hold to make a voice call to someone else**

Use this procedure to put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

**1 Dial another phone number during your current call ▶ or**

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call. You can also make calls by searching the phonebook.

How to search phonebook → P.101



**2 Switch back to the first call**

**■ To end the new call**

▶ ▶ or

This ends the new call and returns you to your first call.

**■ To put the new call on hold**

▶

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to your first call.

You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

**■ To end the call on hold**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "End held call"

**NOTE**

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, refer to the procedure in "Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received voice call" (P.457).

**Call Forwarding Service** Subscription Required

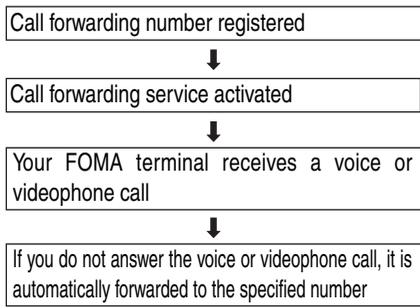
If you receive a voice or videophone call when the icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, the Call forwarding service forwards the voice or videophone call to a previously registered forwarding number such as your home or office phone.

- You cannot use Call forwarding service from your FOMA terminal in locations where is displayed. If you use "Remote access" (P.464) to enable remote access beforehand, you can access the Call forwarding service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your "Network security code" (P.140).

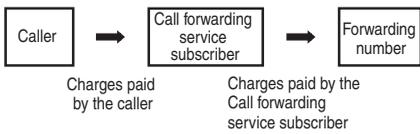
**Overview of Call forwarding service**

- You can only nominate 1 Call forwarding number.
- Received videophone calls can only be forwarded to a videophone-compatible phone that conforms to the 3G-324M standard (P.78).
- The Call forwarding service is automatically deactivated when you activate the "Voice mail service".
- If you receive a call from a caller who has not provided his or her caller ID while the "Caller ID request service" (P.461) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and the call is not forwarded.

**Basic flow of Call forwarding service operation**



**Call forwarding service call charges**



- There is no charge for calls made to register forwarding numbers, to activate or deactivate the service or to specify the ring time.
- When calls are forwarded, charges for calls from the location registration area for the FOMA terminal used to subscribe to the Call forwarding service to the forwarding number are incurred by the service subscriber.

These charges can increase markedly if you leave the FOMA terminal switched off after you have set forwarding in a remote location. For example, if you set your company's phone number in Tokyo as the forwarding number and activate the Call forwarding service in Osaka when you are there on a business trip, this sets Osaka as the location registration area. If you then leave the FOMA terminal turned off, all forwarded calls are charged at the Osaka-Tokyo rate. Make sure to turn off and on your FOMA terminal when you return from a remote location, so that the location registration is updated.

**NOTE**

- You can still make voice and videophone calls when the Call forwarding service is activated.
- If you receive a voice or videophone call when the Call forwarding service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the forwarding number. Calls are logged in the Received calls records as "Missed calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- Received calls are automatically forwarded without the FOMA terminal ringing if your FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off. You (the service subscriber) are charged for the call from the registered location (where you are in) to the forwarding number.
- Calls received while you are on another call can also be forwarded. → P.464
- When necessary, Call forwarding can be deactivated by a request from the forwarding number instead of the subscriber (you).
- You cannot forward collect calls (calls paid for by the receiver) while call forwarding is in progress.

**Activating Call forwarding service**

**1 "Call forwarding" ▶ "Activate"**



- **To deactivate the call forwarding service** ▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "YES"
- **To change the forwarding number only** ▶ "Change forwarding No" ▶ Enter the new forwarding number ▶ Select "Change No." if the Call forwarding service is already activated, and "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated
- **To check your Call forwarding settings** ▶ "Status request"

**2 Set the forwarding number and the ring time**

- **To set the forwarding number** ▶ "Register fwd number" ▶ Enter the forwarding number  
Once you set the number, a star (★) appears next to "Register fwd number". Use  $\odot$  to enter the number from the phonebook. How to search phonebook → P.101
- **To set the ring time** ▶ "Set ringing time" ▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)  
Once you set the number, a star (★) appears next to "Set ringing time". If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls record". If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.



**3 "Activate" ▶ "YES"**

**NOTE**

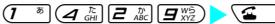
- If Call forwarding service is set to "Activate", a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible (P.78) videophone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding. Also, no guidance message is sent to the person making the videophone call during call forwarding. (If the caller is using this FOMA terminal model, a forwarding message is displayed.)
- You cannot register toll-free numbers or 3-digit numbers, such as 110, as forwarding numbers.
- You should provide an explanatory forwarding announcement for callers if you are forwarding calls to an internal company number (PBX), a pager\* or fax number.

**NOTE**

- If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ringing time".
- To give priority to Call forwarding when "Record message" is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for Call forwarding is shorter than the ring time set for "Record message".
- To give priority to Call forwarding when "Remote observation" is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for Call forwarding is shorter than the ring time set for "Remote observation".
- If the mute time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Call forwarding ring time, the FOMA terminal transfers the call to Call forwarding without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to Call forwarding, set a ring time for Call forwarding that is longer than the mute time.

**Setting or canceling the call forwarding guidance message**

**1 On standby screen**



Set the call forwarding guidance message by following the audio guidance message. For more information, see "Network Services Operation Guide".

**Forwarding call to Voice mail service center when the forwarding number is busy <At fwd party busy>**

When the forwarding number is busy, received voice calls can be transferred to the Voice mail service center.

- You must be subscribed to the Voice mail service.
- The forwarding destination also must be subscribed to the Voice mail service and set the terminal to activate the service.

**1** **"Call forwarding" > "At fwd party busy" > "YES"**

**Nuisance Call Barring Service**

Subscription  
Required

The Nuisance call barring service allows you to register specific phone numbers, such as those which make nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and a call rejected message is sent to the caller.

- You cannot use the Nuisance call barring service when appears.
- If you receive a videophone call from a barred caller, the call ends without the guidance message notifying that the call has been rejected.
- You can register up to 30 barred numbers.
- If the Nuisance call barring service is activated at the same time as other network services, it operates as shown in the table below.

Network service	Handling of received calls
Voice mail service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no recorded message is stored.

Network service	Handling of received calls
Call forwarding	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and the call is not forwarded.
Call waiting	A call rejected message is sent to the caller.
Caller ID request service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no caller ID request is sent to the caller.
Driving mode	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no Driving mode message is sent to the caller.

- Calls barred by the Nuisance call barring service are not logged in the "Received calls record" and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

**Registering the last answered call for call barring <Register caller>**

Use this procedure to add the last caller to your list of barred callers.

- You can register callers who do not provide the caller ID.
- You may be unable to bar international calls.
- You cannot check your list of barred callers. It is recommended to make a written note of the phone numbers you have registered as barred callers.

**1** **"Nuisance call barring" > "Register caller" > "YES" >**

**■ If there are already 30 registered numbers**

A message appears asking whether to delete the oldest stored number and add the new number.

To add the new number to the list, delete the oldest number as instructed by the message and then store the number of the last received nuisance call as a barred caller.



**NOTE**

- Received calls that were not answered and calls from you cannot be stored.
- You can also specify a phone number by keypad operation and store it as a barred number. To do this, make a voice call to 144 directly from the standby screen and then store the number as directed by the instructions.

**Removing numbers from the barred callers list**

**1** **"Nuisance call barring"**

**2 Delete the barred phone number**

**■ To delete the barred number that was registered last time**

**> "Delete recent entry" > "YES" >**

Only the last stored phone number can be deleted. Repeating this procedure does not delete any of the preceding barred numbers.

- To delete all the barred numbers in the list  
▶“Delete all entries”▶“YES”▶

## Caller ID Request Service

Subscription  
Required

When you receive a call from a caller who has not provided his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID request service sends the caller an audio message requesting a caller ID for voice calls and a visual message requesting a caller ID for videophone calls, and then automatically ends the call. This service provides an effective way to prevent problems with calls from unknown callers and makes using the FOMA terminal safer.

- You cannot use the Caller ID request service when “” appears.
- This service only operates when the caller has deliberately withheld his or her caller ID using the “User unset” setting. Calls where the reason is “Payphone” or “Not supported” are not intercepted by this service.
- There is no charge for activating or deactivating the Caller ID request service.
- Call charges generated while the message is sent to the caller are paid by the caller.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as “Voice mail”, “Call forwarding”, “Call waiting” or “Driving mode”, the Caller ID request service has priority and intercepts incoming calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as “Nuisance call barring” service, “Nuisance call barring” service has priority and rejects received calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as “Call setting w/o ID” (P.151), the Caller ID request service has priority.
- Calls rejected by the Caller ID request service are not logged in the “Received calls record” and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

## Activating the Caller ID request service

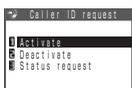
- 1   “Caller ID request”▶  
“Activate”▶“YES”▶

- To deactivate the Caller ID request service

▶“Deactivate”▶“YES”▶

- To check your Caller ID request service settings

▶“Status request”



## NOTE

- The caller ID request message is not sent to callers in the following situations:
  - When caller IDs cannot be notified, such as calls from an NTT payphone or from overseas.
  - When the caller is using the Call count display service or Charge meter, the call is connected without the caller ID request message being sent.
  - The caller ID request message is not sent for 64 data communication calls.

## Dual Network Service

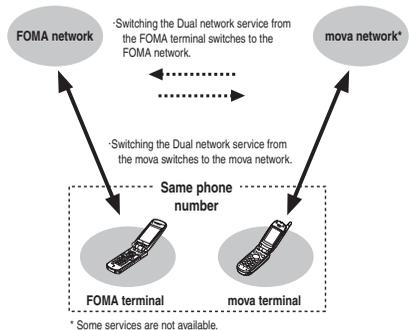
Subscription  
Required

The Dual network service allows a FOMA terminal, with its advanced communications services, and a mova terminal, which offers an extremely extensive service area, to each use the same phone number.

- You cannot use the Dual network service when “” appears.
- For detailed information on how to access the service from a mova terminal, refer to the “Network Services Operation Guide”.

## Overview of Dual network service

- The Dual network service can be selected either from a FOMA terminal or from the mova terminal that it is unable to access the services.



- You cannot access the network from both the FOMA terminal and the mova terminal at the same time.

## Switching from a mova terminal to a FOMA terminal

- 1   “Dual network”▶“Dual network switching”▶



## ② “YES”▶ Enter your network security code

Network security code → P.140

■ To check whether the FOMA terminal can be used

▶ “Status request”

### NOTE

- To switch networks, end communication from the terminal that is currently able to access services before making the switch.
- When you switch networks from a terminal that is already able to access the network, you are notified that you are already able to access the network.
- To switch networks so that the mova terminal can be used, switch networks from the mova. You cannot switch to the mova terminal network from a FOMA terminal.

## English Guidance

Subscription  
Unrequired

This function allows you to set English as the language used in guidance messages such as the out of area warnings and service information that are given when network services such as “Voice mail” service and “Call forwarding” service are set. This function also sets English as the language used in the guidance messages sent by services such as the Caller ID request service to people who call you. When calls are made to another DoCoMo mobile phone, the settings for the guidance message on the caller’s phone when the call is made take priority over the settings on the recipient’s phone when the call is received. The table below shows the languages that can be set.

	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming (guidance messages played to callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

## ① “English guidance”▶

“Guidance setting”▶ Select any item:

■ To check the guidance setting

▶ “Status request”



Item	Description
<b>Outgoing + Incoming</b>	Sets the language used for guidance given for outgoing and incoming calls. Set the language for outgoing calls first and then for incoming calls.
	<b>Japa- nese</b> Sets Japanese as the language used for guidance instructions for outgoing calls.
	<b>Japa- nese</b> Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and incoming calls.
	<b>Japa- nese + English</b> Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
<b>English + Japa- nese</b>	Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
	<b>English</b> Sets English as the language used for guidance instructions for outgoing calls.
	<b>Japa- nese</b> Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese for incoming calls.
	<b>Japa- nese + English</b> Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
<b>English + Japa- nese</b>	Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
	<b>Outgoing call</b> Selects the language used only for outgoing calls, from “Japanese” or “English”.
	<b>Incoming call</b> Selects the language used only for incoming calls, from “Japanese”, “Japanese+English” or “English+Japanese”.

### NOTE

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, payphone or another mobile phone.

## Service Dialing Number

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.



Item	Description
ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo service desk.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general information desk.

### NOTE

- You can only use this function if the contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information desk and service desk are stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
- The screens shown and dialed phone numbers may differ depending on the FOMA card (UIM) used.

## Handling Calls Received During a Call

Use this procedure to specify how voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication that arrives during a call are handled.

- If you have not subscribed to "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, received voice calls are not transferred to the Voice mail service center or forwarding number.

### Specifying how calls received during another calls are handled <Arrival call act>

Default setting  
Answer



Select any item:

Item	Description
Voice mail	Transfers voice calls received during a call to the Voice mail service center regardless of the "Call waiting" and "Voice mail" service settings.
Call forwarding	Transfers voice and videophone calls received during a call to the forwarding number regardless of the "Call waiting" and "Call forwarding" service settings.
Call rejection	Rejects voice and videophone calls and 64K data communication received during a call.

Item	Description
Answer	If "Call waiting" is activated and a voice call is received during another voice call, the call received later is handled according to the "Call waiting" setting. If call waiting is not activated or during a videophone call or 64K data communication, call can be handled in any of the following ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· You can end the current voice or videophone call or 64K data communication, and answer the received voice or videophone call or 64K data communication.</li> <li>· You can use the function menu to manually handle a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication received during a call. →P.464</li> <li>· If "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service is activated, calls can be handled using those service settings.</li> </ul>

### Activating the settings for handling calls received during another call <Set arrival act>

- You cannot specify this setting where "国外" appears.



Select any item:

Item	Description
Activate	Activates "Set arrival act" setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates "Set arrival act" setting.
Status request	Shows the current setting.

### NOTE

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, payphone or another mobile phone.
- If you are subscribed to "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, this function is set to "Activate".
- When you receive a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during a call, the incoming call screen may appear before the call is connected to the Voice mail service center or forwarded to a forwarding destination even if "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is set.

### Ending the current call or 64K data communication to answer a received call

- When the current and incoming calls are the same type

<Example: Ending the current voice call to answer a received voice call>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press

This ends the current call and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

- **For videophone or 64K data communication**  
A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the current call.



This accepts the incoming voice call.

- **For 64K data communication**  
▶ Take the call on a PC

## ● When the current and incoming calls are different types

If you receive a videophone call or 64K data communication during a voice call, if you receive a voice call or 64K data communication during a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end your current call or 64K data communication so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending an active videophone call to answer an incoming voice call>

### 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and a message\* appears, press

When you receive a 64K data communication, the message appears instead of the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

\* : A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the current call.



#### NOTE

- If you have activated the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service and the specified ring time elapses while you can still hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), the call is connected to the Voice mail center or the forwarding number.

## Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Voice mail or Call forwarding

<Example: When "Set arrival act" is set to "Activate" and "Arrival call act" is set to "Answer">

### 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press (FUNC)

- **When you receive a call other than a voice call during a voice call**  
▶ (FUNC)

### 2 Select how the received call will be handled

- **To reject a received call**  
▶ "Call rejection"

- **To forward a received call to the forwarding number**  
▶ "Call forwarding"

- **To transfer a call to the Voice mail service center**  
▶ "Voice mail"

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote access>

## Setting Up Remote Access

This function allows you to use the "Voice mail" service and "Call forwarding" services from a remote location such as a payphone.

### Activating remote access

Please read "Network Services Operation Guide" about the details of the method of operating a network service from a payphone etc.



"Activate" ▶ "YES"

- **To deactivate remote access**  
▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "YES"

- **To check your remote access settings**  
▶ "Status request"

#### NOTE

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, payphone or another mobile phone.
- This function is deactivated after you apply for the "Voice mail" service and "Call forwarding" service.

## Multi number <Not currently available>

This service has yet to begin as of June 2005.

<Additional services>

## Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new services on your FOMA terminal.

When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "number" and "service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You should store the number and code on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

- You can add up to 10 new network services.
- Enter the service code in the "Enter USSD number" field in the screen for adding new services.

## Adding a new service

- 1   ▶ “Additional service” ▶ “Additional service”

“Additional service screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.465

- 2 Highlight “<Not stored>”
- 3  ▶ “Add new service”

- To change the setting  
▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Edit”

- 4 Enter the service name

The service name can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

“Entering Text” → P.506

- 5 Select the connection method

Item	Description
Enter number	▶ Enter the number ▶ “YES” Uses the number to connect. The number can consist of up to 20 digits.
Enter USSD number	▶ Enter the code ▶ “YES” Uses the service code to connect. The code can consist of up to 40 digits.

### NOTE

- To use this service, you must confirm or enter the “number” or “service code” provided by DoCoMo. The “number” is the number used to connect to the service center, while the “service code” (USSD) is the code used for notifying the service center.

## Using the newly added service

- 1   ▶ “Additional service” ▶ “Additional service”

- 2 Select a service ▶ 

Function menu (Additional service screen)

- 1 Additional service screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Add new service	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service.
Delete all	Deletes all services.

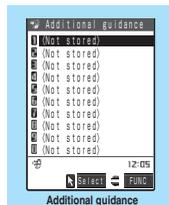
## Adding response message

When you use your service code (USSD) to access an added service, you can use this procedure to store response messages for commands posted from the network.

- You can store up to 10 response messages.

- 1   ▶ “Additional service” ▶ “Additional guidance”

“Additional guidance screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.465

- 2 Highlight “<Not stored>”
- 3  (FUNC) ▶ “Add new guidance”

- To change the setting  
▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Edit”

- 4 Enter a command

The command can include up to 20 digits.

- 5 Enter a response message ▶ “YES”

The response message can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

“Entering Text” → P.506

### Function menu (Additional guidance screen)

- 1 Additional guidance screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Add new guidance	Adds a message.
Edit	Edit the message.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted message.
Delete all	Deletes all messages.



# ● Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA terminal .....	468
Before Using .....	469
Checking the Procedure .....	469
Setting the PC.....	470
About the FOMA PC Setting Software.....	474
How to Set Various Settings .....	475
Executing Set Data Communication .....	479
W-TCP Settings .....	481
Access Point Name (APN) Settings.....	482
Setting up Dial-up Network .....	483
Setting up Dial-up .....	487
AT Command List .....	494

## ● Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this chapter are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary by your environment.

## About Data Communication Available for the FOMA terminal

### Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

#### ● Packet communication

Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Be informed that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

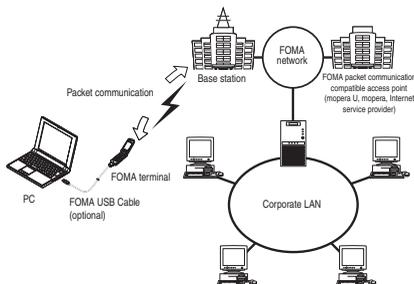
#### ● 64K data communication

Data can be received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected, regardless of the amount of data.

#### ■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

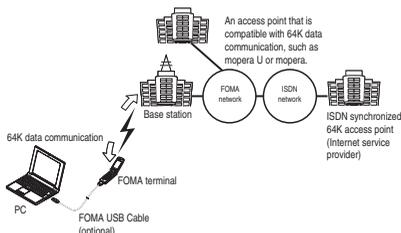
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



#### ■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



## Notice before using

### Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

### Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64Kbps.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

### User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the provider or administrator for details.

### Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant websites on your PC's browser, you may need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPassPC software included on the CD-ROM packaged with this product and conduct the setting. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) stored in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder included on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is in Japanese only.)

To view the PDF-format “FirstPassManual”, you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended).

If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

## Before Using

### Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

Item	Description
PC unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive</li> <li>USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1)</li> <li>Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended</li> </ul>
OS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows 98<sup>*1</sup>, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)</li> </ul>
Required memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows 98, Windows Me: 32Mbytes or more<sup>*2</sup></li> <li>Windows 2000: 64Mbytes or more<sup>*2</sup></li> <li>Windows XP: 128Mbytes or more<sup>*2</sup></li> </ul>
Hard disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5Mbytes or more<sup>*2</sup></li> </ul>

\*1: The FirstPass PC software is not compatible with Windows 98.

\*2: The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

#### NOTE

- To transmit data with the FOMA connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.

### Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Bundled CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS"

#### NOTE

- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

## Checking the Procedure

In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA packet communication.

### About the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS" provided

- The CD-ROM contains the communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N901iS Communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet

communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N901iS Communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.

Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

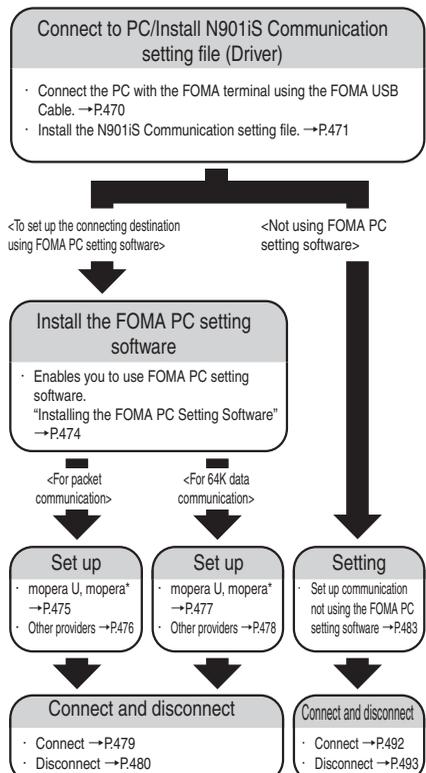
- Using FirstPassPC software allows you to set up FirstPass (user certification) easily and therefore it will be helpful for gaining authentication when you try viewing FirstPass-compliant sites on the PC browser. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) stored in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder included on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only)

To view the PDF-format FirstPassManual, you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended).

If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

### Flow Chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.

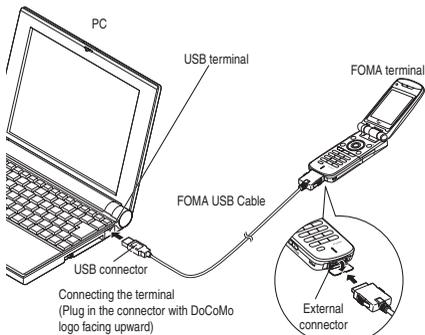


\* : To use Internet on the FOMA terminal, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, international roaming, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.

## Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

- Before connecting it, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". → P.388



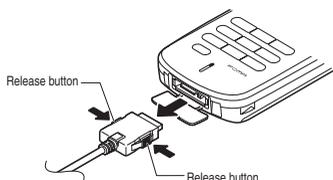
- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
- 2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC
- 3 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable straight until you hear a click  
" " changes to " " on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable has been connected.

### NOTE

- " " appears on the FOMA terminal display when a communication setting file for data communication is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before a communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and " " appears.

## Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



- 1 Pull it out straight while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable
- 2 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC
- 3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

### NOTE

- Do not repetitively connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable. After you have connected and disconnected once, wait for a while before doing so again.

## Setting the PC

This section describes the steps from connecting to PC to installing the N901iS communication setting file (drivers).

### Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC
- 2 Start up Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
- 3 Click "終了" (Exit) to exit from the "FOMA N901iS ご利用にあたって" (To use FOMA N901iS) screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS" is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 5.

If this screen appears while you are installing the N901iS communication setting file, click "終了" (Exit) as well.



**4** Click “終了” (Exit) to close “お問い合わせ先” (Inquiries) screen

**5** Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the PC to your FOMA terminal

For Windows 98/Me

“新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen appears.

For Windows 2000/XP

“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

### Installing the N901iS communication setting file (drivers)

- If you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with Administrator privilege to install setup files for N901iS communication. An error will occur if you try to install the files by using other accounts. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N901iS Communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC. For Windows 98 and Windows Me refer to the following.  
For Windows 2000, proceed to P.471. For Windows XP, proceed to P.472.

### For Windows 98/Windows Me

**1** Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable (optional) has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (P.470), the screen “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) as shown on the right is automatically displayed.

For Windows 98

Click “次へ” (Next).

**2** Select “ドライバの場所を指定する (詳しい知識のある方向け)” (Specify driver location (for advanced users)), then click “次へ” (Next)

For Windows 98

Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the Optimal driver for the device in use (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).



**3** Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (Recommended)), check “検索場所の指定” (Specify the search location) and click “参照” (Reference) to specify the folder to search, and “次へ” (Next)

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\¥USB Driver\¥Win98”.

The CD-ROM drive differs depending on the PC used.

For Windows 98

Check the “検索場所の指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next).

Select “更新されたドライバ (推奨)” (Updated driver (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).

**4** Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next) “FOMA N901iS” appears here.

**5** When the message “新しいハードウェアのインストールが完了しました。” (Installation of the new hardware is now complete) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

For Windows 98

The message “新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。” (The software needed to install a new software is installed) appears.

**6** Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 6 drivers (P.473). If the “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P.472).

### For Windows 2000

**1** Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable (optional) has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (P.470), the screen shown below is automatically displayed.



**2** Click “次へ” (Next)

**3** Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the Optimal driver for the device (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

- 5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\\$USB Driver¥Win2000”:  
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using.

- 6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

“FOMA N901iS” appears here.

- 7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

- 8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (P.473). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P.472).

## For Windows XP

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

Attaching the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (P.470) displays the following dialog box:



- 2 Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません” (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 3 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next)



- 4 Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する” (Search for the most compatible driver in the next location), uncheck “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど) を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) and check “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) and specify a folder to search, click “次へ”(Next)

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\\$USB Driver¥Win2000”.

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using. In the example below, the CD-ROM drive is “E”.

The driver is common with Windows 2000.



- 5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

- 6 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 4 and install all other 3 drivers (P.473). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 4, installation of the drivers is complete.

When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P.472).

## Checking the installed driver

Check that the N901iS communication setting file has been correctly installed.

- 1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

- 2 Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

### For Windows Me

If the “システム” (System) icon does not appear in “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel), click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options).

### For Windows XP

Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance).

## 3 Open the device manager

### For Windows 98/Me

Click the “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager) tab.

### For Windows 2000/XP

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager).

## 4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “ポート (COMとLPT)” (Ports (COM& LPT)), “ユニバーサルシリアルバス (USB コントローラ)” (Universal Serial Bus controller) and “モデム” (Modems). Check the driver name, and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (P.474).

(Windows XP)



Device name	Driver name
Port (COM/LPT)	・ FOMA N901iS Command Port ・ FOMA N901iS OBEX Port
Modem	・ FOMA N901iS
Universal Serial Bus controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller	・ FOMA N901iS ・ FOMA N901iS Command* ・ FOMA N901iS Modem* ・ FOMA N901iS OBEX*

\* : Windows 98/Me only

### NOTE

- When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear or if you have installed an improper communication setting file for your Operating System, follow the uninstall instructions (P.473) to delete the N901iS communication setting file and install the proper file.

## Uninstalling the N901iS communication setting file

If necessary (when Windows has been upgraded, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute the uninstalling program while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run and a message appears notifying that the FOMA terminal is connected.
- If you uninstall N901iS communication setting file from Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with Administrator privilege. If you attempt to uninstall the software from another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

## 1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable, remove the FOMA USB Cable

## 2 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

## 3 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N901iS ご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N901iS) screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS” is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 5.



## 4 Click “終了” (Exit) to close “お問い合わせ先” (Inquiries) screen

## 5 Specify and run the uninstall program

Open “スタート” (Start)→“マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open) to open the “UnInst” folder under the “USB Driver” folder on the CD-ROM.

## 6 Double-click “n901isun.exe” to execute the uninstall program

“n901isun” may appear instead depending on the setting of the PC you use.



## 7 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

## 8 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.  
If you have clicked “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

### About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the following:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. → P.483



See P.470 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

### かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for “Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication” and “W-TCP setting”.

### W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP Settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”.

To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先 (APN) の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) Settings)  
Set the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field. For using mopera, APN: mopera.ne.jp is registered as the first cid, and for using mopera U, APN: mopera.net is registered as the third cid, but when connecting to other providers or corporate LAN, you will need to make the APN settings.

cid [Context Identifier] ... a number corresponding to a packet communication connection point (APN). It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

#### NOTE

- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as a larger number than COM20 in communication setting file, APN information cannot be obtained nor written when setting APN. In this case, use “Hyper terminal” for setting. “Setting up the access point (APN)” → P.485

### Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check operating environment prior to install the FOMA PC setting software. → P.469

- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software” on a Windows 2000/Windows XP machine, be sure to log on as Administrator. Installing with another user privilege makes an error. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

## 1 Insert the supplied CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC and click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the PC setting software)

The “FOMA N901iS ご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N901iS) screen will automatically be displayed. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), select “開く” (Open) and double-click “start.exe”. Then click “FOMA PC設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software).



## 2 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a message appears indicating that “Previous W-TCP setting software” or “Previous APN setting software” is installed, proceed to P.475.

## 3 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

## 4 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the Task Tray.

This is a function to set up / cancel optimization of “W-TCP communication”, we recommend you choose to let it reside in the Task Tray.

If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) checked  to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) here, you will be able to change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the Task Tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.

(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Reside in the task tray) setting is in effect.



The W-TCP setting will appear in the task tray that is usually located at the bottom right corner of the desktop.

### 5 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the destination, click “参照” (Browse), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next). You can select another drive if you do not have enough hard disk space, but generally the default setting is recommended.

### 6 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



### 7 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process has been completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) screen will automatically appear. You can specify other settings at this point.

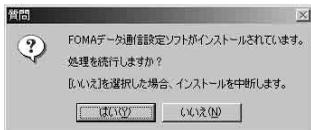
## Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

### <If the “Previous W-TCP setting software” is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

### <If the “Previous APN setting software” is installed>



- When you click “はい” (Yes), the previous APN settings software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC settings software will be installed.

### < If the “FOMA PC setting software” is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.

### <If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you intend to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

## How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the Communication setting file needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC.

- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as a number higher than COM20, the “FOMA PC setting software” will not run.

### 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

#### For Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software).

The following operation display appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.



### Easy settings: “Packet communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.

Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.

- Note that the communication charge can become high if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view Web pages and internet homepages containing images or to download files.

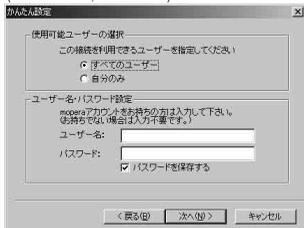
- 1 Click “**かんたん設定**” (Easy settings)
  - 2 Select “**パケット通信**” (Packet communication) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
  - 3 Select “**「mopera U」への接続**” (mopera U access) or “**「mopera」への接続**” (mopera access) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- See P.476 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.
- 4 Click “**OK**”
- The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC. Wait a while.
- 5 Enter the connection name and click “**次へ**” (Next)

You can specify the name of the access point. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “**接続名**” (Connection Name) column. Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case. You cannot use the following reserved characters:  
 ¥/: \* ? ! <> | ” (half-pitch only).



- 6 Specify a user name and password and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.

If you are not sure which user to select, choose “**すべてのユーザー**” (All users) (default setting). When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

- 7 Check “**最適化を行う**” (Optimize the setting) and click “**次へ**” (Next)

Optimize “**W-TCP設定**” (W-TCP settings) required for “**Packet communication**”. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed.

- 8 Check the setting information and click “**完了**” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “**デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する**” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “**戻る**” (Back).



- 9 Click “**OK**”

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the reboot screen appears, click “**はい**” (YES).

The communication set up is carried out on the next step. → P.479

### Easy settings: “**Specifying Packet communication settings using other providers**”

- 1 Click “**かんたん設定**” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “**パケット通信**” (Packet communication) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 3 Select “**その他**” (Other) and click “**次へ**” (Next)

- 4 Click “**OK**”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC.

Wait a while.

- 5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting has been completely acquired, the screen “**パケット通信設定**” (Packet communication setting) will appear.

Enter a name in the “**接続名**” (Connection name).

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.

You cannot use the following reserved characters:

¥/: \* ? ! <> | ” (half-pitch only).

If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked off, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).



## 6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN))

“mopera.ne.jp” is specified in “番号 (cid)” 1 by default and “mopera.net” in 3.

Open the “接続先 (APN) の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”. Return to the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen.

Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point. It is recommended to set cid to 2 and 4 to 10.



## 7 Specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Set up detail information) on “パケット通信設定” (Packet Communication settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address”/“Name Server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

## 8 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

It returns to the screen in Step 5. The access point (APN) entered in the Step 6 is displayed on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

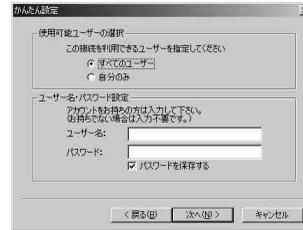
## 9 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

## 10 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.

If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー” (All users) (default setting).

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

## 11 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed and proceed to Step 12.

## 12 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon. To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



## 13 Click “OK”

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the reboot screen appears, click “はい” (YES).

The communication set up is carried out on the next step. → P.479

## Easy settings: “64K communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64k bps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you are connected. With stable 64k bps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.

## 1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “[mopera U] への接続” (mopera U access) or “[mopera] への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See P.478 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Enter the access point name and modem, and click “次へ” (Next)

The “64Kデータ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the access point. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection Name) column.

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.

You cannot use the following reserved characters:

¥/: \* ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only).

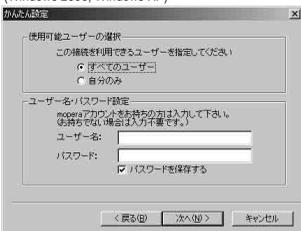
When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N901iS”.



5 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.

If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー” (All users) (default setting).

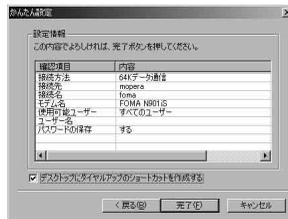
When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

The communication set up is carried out on the next step. →P.479

### Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next)

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection Name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N901iS)
- Phone number

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: \* ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only).



Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the phone number with half-pitch taking care of upper/lower case characters. If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked off, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

### <To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP)>

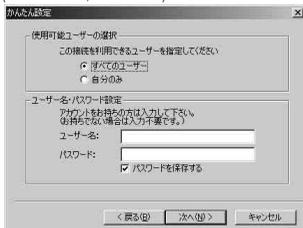
When you click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings), the screen for the “IP address” and “Name server” settings will appear. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

## 5 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.

If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー” (All users) (default setting).

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

## 6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon. To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



## 7 Click “OK”

The specified communication is performed. →P.479

## Executing Set Data Communication

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used at time of icon creation.

To connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the communication setting file must be installed again.

## 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

### Windows 98/Me

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dialup network) and open the host.

### Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) and open the host.

### Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) and open the host.

## 2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

If you select modera U or modera, click “ダイヤル” (Dial), leaving the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) text boxes blank. If you select an Internet service provider other than modera or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial). Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at during subsequent connections.



## 3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, the screen as shown below will appear when the dial-up connection is made. This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



- (Communicating, sending data)
- (Communicating, receiving data)
- (Communicating, no data transfer)
- (Sending, or disconnecting)
- (Receiving, or disconnecting)
- ➤ appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.

## How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

### 1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

### 2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



#### NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

## When this happens

- Check the following if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
“FOMA N901iS” is not recognized by the PC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· See if your PC satisfies the operational environment required (P.469).</li> <li>· See if the N901iS communication setting file has been installed.</li> <li>· See if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on.</li> <li>· See if the FOMA USB Cable is firmly connected.</li> <li>· See if the USB mode setting (P.388) is set to “Communication mode”.</li> </ul>

Problem	Points to check
Unable to connect with the access point.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· See if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct.</li> <li>· See if the FOMA USB Cable is firmly connected.</li> <li>· If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that “184” is not added to the phone number.</li> <li>· See if the box of “フロー制御を使う” (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked.</li> <li>· See if the APN is set correctly.</li> <li>· If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.</li> </ul>

## Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

This section describes uninstallation instructions for FOMA PC setting software.

- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software” from Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

### 1 Before uninstalling

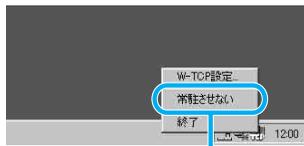
Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their original settings.



Right-click

#### (1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task tray

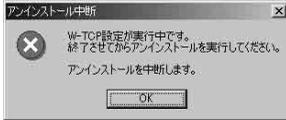
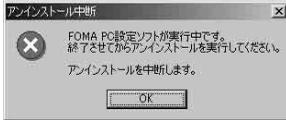
Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task tray located at the right-bottom of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



Click

#### (2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the “FOMA PC setting software” or “W-TCP settings” is in operation, the screen as shown below will appear. Stop the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



## 2 Start “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Click “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add/delete applications).

“アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ” (Property of Add and remove applications) appears for Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add or remove programs).

## 3 Select “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

Select NTT DoCoMo “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Click here

## 4 Check the program name to be deleted and click “はい” (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



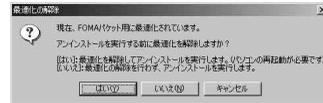
## 5 Click “OK”

Uninstallation of the “FOMA PC setting software” is completed.

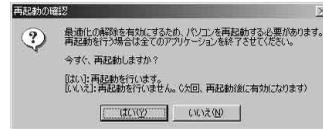


## NOTE

- Cancel “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP). The screen shown below appears if “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP) is done. Click “はい” (YES) to uninstall.



W-TCP optimization will be canceled after reboot.



## W-TCP Settings

“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

## Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>

Optimization settings by dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

## 1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the Task Tray Click the “W-TCP icon” in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.

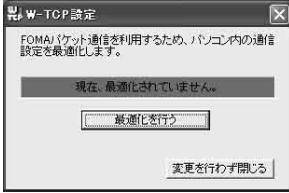


## 2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the reboot.

- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized Click “最適化を行う” (Optimize). “W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定” (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. If you

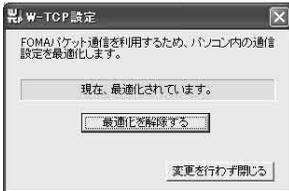
select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



- (2) If the system settings have been optimized “W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定” (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. If there are some changes, make changes to the settings.



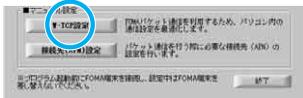
- (3) To cancel optimization Click “システム設定” (System settings). “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) screen appears. Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000>

## 1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト”(FOMA PC setting software) Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the Task Tray Click the “W-TCP icon” in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



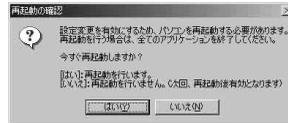
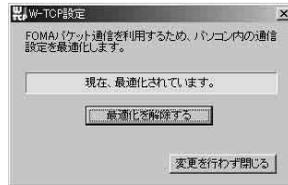
## 2 Proceed with the following

### (1) If not optimized

Click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) screen, close all the PC programs open and reboot the PC to enable the optimized settings.

### (2) If optimized

A message saying “現在、最適化されています。” (Already optimized) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) screen. To cancel the optimization settings if connecting to a terminal other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

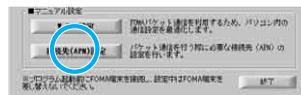


## Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- The APN setting (the access point for FOMA packet communication) is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the APN must be registered again.
- When continuously using an APN on a PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.
- The default setting for cid1 (APN1) is mopera and for cid3 (APN3) mopera U.

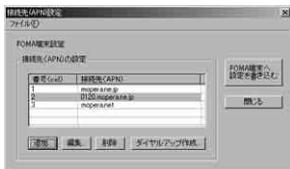
## 1 After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN))



## 2 Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the FOMA terminal connected and reads the Access point (APN) information registered. It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

### 3 Set up the access point (APN)



#### Adding/Editing/Removing the Access point (APN)

##### ● To add an access point (APN)

Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

##### ● To edit a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

##### ● To delete a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

The access point (APN) registered in Number (cid) 1 cannot be deleted.

#### Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

#### Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

#### Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

#### Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). This is not needed for mopera U or mopera.

Enter the user name and password (select an available user for Windows 2000 or Windows XP) and click “OK”.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Enter detail information) on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication), register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write the settings to the FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

## Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication without using the FOMA PC setting software.

About AT commands

● AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.

● Entering an AT command allows you to confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

● It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (P.487).

## Checking the COM port

● To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N901iS” (Modem) built in after installing the N901iS Communication setting file. This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.485).

Access points <APN/cid>

● Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN (P.485) instead of a telephone number for connection.

● The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration numbers (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which are used part of the access point number.<sup>1</sup>

● APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Connected to the access point with the cid number if the access point number is set to “\* 99 \* \* \* <cid number> #”.

● “mopera.ne.jp” (mopera) is specified in cid 1 and “mopera.net” (mopera U) in cid 3 by default. Specifying “\* 99 \* \* \* 1 #” as the access point number for the mopera connection or “\* 99 \* \* \* 3 #” for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.<sup>2</sup>

● The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile

phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	<input type="radio"/> (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	<input type="radio"/> (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	<input checked="" type="radio"/> (Cannot even confirm)	<input type="radio"/>
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

\*1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

\*2 : To connect to another internet service provider, set up APN and register it in cid Number 2 or 4 or higher. How to set up APN and make registration → P.485

● **To confirm COM port on Windows 98/ Me**

① **Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)**

② **Open “モデム” (Modem) in Control Panel**

If the “モデム” (Modem) icon does not appear in Control panel, click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options).



③ **Confirm that “FOMA N901iS” has been set and click the “検出結果” (Diagnostics) tab**



④ **Confirm the COM port for which “FOMA N901iS” is set up and click “OK”**

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.485).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



● **To confirm the COM port on Windows 2000**

① **Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)**

② **Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel**



③ **If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”**

- 4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N901iS” and click “OK”

The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up the access point (APN) (P.485).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



- 4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N901iS” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.485).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



## To confirm the COM port on Windows XP

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)



- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”

## Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1 : mopera.ne.jp cid3 : mopera.net cid2, 4 to 10 : not set
-----------------	---

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

- Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 access points (APN) up by assigning registration numbers cid1 through cid10 (P.483).
- Since “mopera.ne.jp” (mopera) is specified in cid1 and “mopera.net” (mopera U) in cid3 by default, it is recommended that you enter cid into numbers 2 or 4 though 10.
- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.
- The AT commands entered in “Hyper terminal” may not be shown after Step 6 on P.486. In this case, if you enter ATE1, AT commands you enter from then on are shown.

<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal
- 2 Power the FOMA terminal on and connect the FOMA USB Cable connected with the FOMA terminal with the PC

- 3 Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

#### For Windows Me, Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

#### For Windows 98

After opening “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal), double-click “Hypertm.exe”.

- 4 Select the “今後、このメッセージを表示しない” (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click “はい” (Yes)

- 5 Enter any name in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”

“sample” is entered here as an example.



- 6 Select “FOMA N901iS” from “接続方法” (Connection method), and click “OK”

If a COM port of “FOMA N901iS” can be selected  
When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.

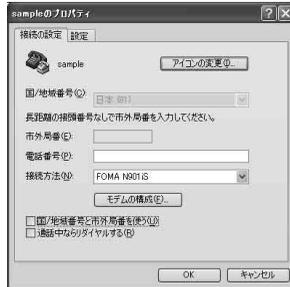
In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” on P.483 to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N901iS” to be selected in “接続方法” (Connection method).



If a COM port of “FOMA N901iS” cannot be selected

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to close the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps:

- (1) Select “ファイル” (File) menu → “プロパティ” (Properties)
- (2) Select “FOMA N901iS” in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column of the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) tab on the “sample”のプロパティ (sample Properties)
- (3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
- (4) Click “OK”



- 7 Enter the access point (APN) and press

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, “PPP”, “APN”.

<cid> : Enter any number from 2, 4 to 10.  
Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overridden.

“APN” : Put “ ” around the access point (APN) to enter.

“PPP” : Enter “PPP” as it is.

If “OK” is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

(Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2)  
Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“XXX.abc”



- 8 Confirm that “OK” is displayed and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu

You will be asked “セッションsampleを保存しますか?” (Do you want to save the session sample?) However, there is no need to save it.

#### NOTE

##### To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command

If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to “mopera.ne.jp” (Default value) and cid=3 to “mopera.net” (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.  
<How to enter>

AT+CGDCONT= (to reset all cid)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (to reset a certain cid only)

## NOTE

### To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command

- Display the current settings.  
<How to enter>  
AT+CGDCONT? 

### If entering the AT command displays nothing on the screen

- <How to enter>  
ATE1 

## Specifying Caller ID

Default setting  
Notify

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when “Packet communication” is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the \* DGPIR command (P.495) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to “Not set” (Default value).

- Start Hyper terminal
- Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of “AT \* DGPIR=<n>”.

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/ answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT \* DGPIR=1 

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT \* DGPIR=2 



- Confirm that OK is displayed and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



## About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point ID in the Dial-up network settings as well.

The table below shows what happens if you have set 186/184 both for the \* DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by * DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
	Not set	Notify
* 99 * * * 1#	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

## NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

## Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter “\* 99 \* \* \* 3#” as the number of access point for mopera U or “\* 99 \* \* \* 1#” for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter “\* 8701” as the number of access point for mopera U or “\* 9601” for mopera.

## Setting up dial-up on Windows 98, Windows Me

- Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network)
- When the “ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ” (Welcome to Dial-up Network) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

This screen appears only when the dial-up network is started for the first time. Click “次へ” (Next) to proceed to Step 4.

This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “Dial-up Network” screen in Step 3 does instead.



3 Double-click “新しい接続” (New connection) in the Dial-up Network



4 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection Name) and click “次へ” (Next)

Confirm that the “モデムの選択” (Modem selection) column has “FOMA N901iS”. If “FOMA N901iS” is not selected, select “FOMA N901iS”.



5 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

Leave the “市外局番” (Area Code) column blank.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

6 Confirm the Connection name (any name) and click “完了” (Finish)



7 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network)

8 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



9 Confirm “電話番号” (Telephone number) and “接続方法” (Connection method) on the “全般” (General) tab

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う” (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial).

Confirm that the “接続方法” (Connection method) column has “FOMA N901iS”. If “FOMA N901iS” is not selected, select “FOMA N901iS”.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

10 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: インターネット、Windows 2000/NT、Windows Me” in the “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “TCP/IP” in “使用できるネットワークプロトコル” (Supported network protocols) field.

For Windows 98

Click the “サーバーの種類” (Type of server) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: インターネット、Windows NT Server、Windows 98” in “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “TCP/IP” in the “使用できるネットワークプロトコル” (Supported network protocols) field.



11 Click the “セキュリティ” (Security) tab and click “OK” without entering the user name and password

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by

the internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.

**For Windows 98**

Click “OK”.



**Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000**

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2. This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”

5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)

7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N901iS” and click “次へ” (Next)

If “FOMA N901iS” is not selected, select “FOMA N901iS”.

If no other modem than “FOMA N901iS” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

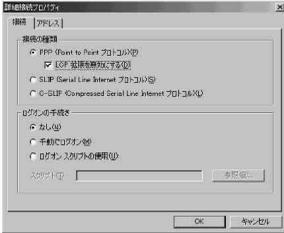
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

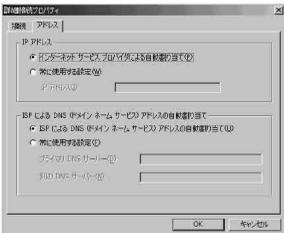
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown below and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



- 12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown below and click “OK”

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “IPアドレス” (IP address) and “ISPによるDNS(ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て”(Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



- 13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)
- 14 Leave the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns blank and click “次へ” (Next)

A dialog box appears next asking if you will leave the User Name and Password blank. Click “はい” (YES) for each screen.

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, as shown in the screen below enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



- 15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



- 16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 17 Click “完了” (Finish)

- 18 Select the icon of the dial-up created and click “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu



- 19 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N901iS” (Modem - FOMA N901iS) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

- 20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



- ① Click “設定” (Settings)
- ② Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



- ③ When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

## Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

- ① Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)
- ② When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)



- ③ Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)
- ④ Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next)
- ⑤ Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

- ⑥ If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select “モデム - FOMA N901iS (COMx)” (Modem - FOMA N901iS (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems. (COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (P.483).



- ⑦ Enter any name you want in the “ISP 名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



- ⑧ Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

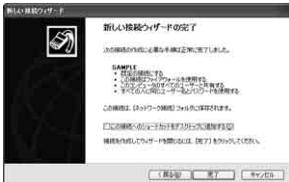
- ⑨ Leave the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm password) columns blank and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection. To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name, password specified by the provider or network administrator as shown in the screen below in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns.



## 10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



## 11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

## 12 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



## 13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N901iS” (Modem - FOMA N901iS) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it. Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, clear it.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

## 14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000,Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoS パケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



## 15 Click “設定” (Settings)

## 16 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



## 17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

## Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows Me>

## 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

“How to connect” → P.470

## 2 Click the “スタート” (Start) menu, select → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) and open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network)

## 3 Select the icon of the access point to connect and open “接続” (Connect)



#### 4 Confirm each item and click “接続” (Connect)

The telephone number of the access point set up in Dial-up Network is displayed in “電話番号” (Telephone number).

You can leave user name and password blank for moperu U or moperu connection.

To use a provider other than moperu U or moperu, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



#### <The Connecting screen appears>

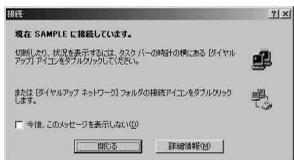
Meanwhile, the user name/password confirmation and logon processes are performed.



#### <Completion of the connection>

You can start browser software to browse Websites, and to use e-mail.

If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.



#### <Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

- 2 Open Access point

Select the dial-up connection icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on P.491 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



- 3 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

The following screen shows an example for moperu connection. You can leave user name and password blank for moperu U or moperu connection.



#### <The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen is displayed, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



#### <Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message as shown below is displayed from the indicator of the taskbar located on the lower right of the desktop for a few seconds.

You can start browser software to browse Websites, and to use e-mail.

If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.

See P.479 for communication conditions.



#### How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows Me.

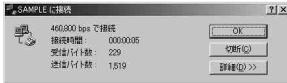
- 1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

## 2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



### NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

## AT Command List

### AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
  - [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
  - [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved to ATZ command.

### Modem port command list

The following are the usable commands for FOMA N901iS (modem):

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
A/	Execute the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Select the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	<i>n</i> =0 : CD is always ON. <i>n</i> =1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Select the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transmits between ON and OFF.	<i>n</i> =0 : Ignore ER status (always assumed to be ON). <i>n</i> =1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. <i>n</i> =2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E <i>n</i>	Select how to display the connection speed.	<i>n</i> =0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. <i>n</i> =1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed. (default)	AT&E0 OK
AT&F <i>n</i>	Restore all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only <i>n</i> =0=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	At the time of on-line command mode AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line command mode) At the time of off-line command mode AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F = ? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT&S <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Set the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	<i>n</i> =0 : DR is always ON (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W <i>n</i>	Store the current settings.	Only <i>n</i> =0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR
AT * DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is out of area. 1 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 1 bar. 2 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK  AT * DANTE=? * DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT * DGANSM= <i>n</i>	Set the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disable the incoming call reject (AT * DGARL)/permit setting (AT * DGAPL) (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Enable the incoming call reject setting. <i>n</i> =2 : Enable the incoming call permit setting. AT * DGANSM? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT * DGAPL= <i>n</i> [,cid]	Set APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. <i>n</i> =1 : Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGAPL? : Display incoming call permission list.	AT * DGAPL =0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL =1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL= <i>n</i> [,cid]	Set APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT.	<i>n</i> =0 : Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. <i>n</i> =1 : Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGARL? : Display incoming call rejection list.	AT * DGARL =0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL =1 OK AT * DGARL? OK
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i>	This command is valid when sending/receiving packet communication with caller ID and no caller ID. Even in the dial up network setting, you can add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (P.487)	<i>n</i> =0 : Use APN as it is (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) <i>n</i> =2 : Use APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always not sent.) AT * DGPIR? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPIR =0 OK AT * DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT * DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK  AT * DRPW=? * DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CEER	Display the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	<report> List of disconnection reasons (P.504).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	P.501	P.501

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CGEQMIN	Register a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] (P.502) AT+CGEQMIN=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.	P.502
AT+CGEQREQ	Set the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] (P.502) AT+CGEQREQ=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.	P.502
AT+CGMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i>	Specify whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification shows whether you are inside or out of service.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: < <i>n</i> >, <stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: (1,0) OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area)  (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
[&F] [&W]			
AT+CGSN	Display the product number of FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i>	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not display the result (Default) <i>n</i> =1 : Display the result  Result: +CLIP( <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ) <i>m</i> =0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID outgoing call. <i>m</i> =1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID outgoing call. <i>m</i> =2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK  AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK  (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXX",177,"123" ,136
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	<i>n</i> =0 : Complies with the CLIR service contract. <i>n</i> =1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. <i>n</i> =2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (Default).  Result: +CLIR( <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ) <i>m</i> =0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) <i>m</i> =1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) <i>m</i> =2 : Unknown <i>m</i> =3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) <i>m</i> =4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)  * Without the #31 # or X31 # , CLIR setting is first.	AT+CLIR=0 OK  AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK  AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Set whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	<p><i>n</i>=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value).</p> <p><i>n</i>=1 : +CME ERROR:&lt;err&gt; result code is used, and a numeral value is used for &lt;err&gt;.</p> <p><i>n</i>=2 : +CME ERROR:&lt;err&gt; result code is used, and characters are used for &lt;err&gt;.</p> <p>AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting.</p> <p>The command shown on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error.</p> <p>+CME ERROR result code is as follows.</p> <p>1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown</p>	<p>AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted</p>
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	<p>number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.</p>	<p>AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK</p>
AT+CPIN	Enter the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	<p>Format: AT+CPIN="&lt;pin&gt;","&lt;newpin&gt;" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal.</p> <p>Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put &lt;pin&gt; and &lt;newpin&gt; in " ".</p> <p>AT+CPIN? result +CPIN : READY : PIN1 code, PIN2 code</p> <p>Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN: SIM PIN:PIN1 entry standby +CPIN: SIM PIN2 : PIN2 entry standby +CPIN:SIM PUK : PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN:SIM PUK2:PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code)</p> <p>The command shown on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".</p>	<p>(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR</p> <p>(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR</p> <p>(The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK</p> <p>(The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK</p> <p>(The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK</p> <p>AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY</p> <p>OK</p> <p>AT+CPIN=? OK</p>

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CR= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, display the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not display (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Display. <serv> : Display only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CR=1 OK ATD * 99 * * * 1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Set whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING : SYNC +CRING : AV64K : GPRS "PPP" ,,, "<APN->" AT+CRC?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (PPPOverUD received) +CRING : SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING : AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING : GPRS "PPP" ,,, (APN)"
AT+CREG= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result display is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is switched. AT+CREG? : Displays the current setting. +CREG : < <i>n<i>n</i>: Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area</i>	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed)  AT+CREG? +CREG : ,1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG : 1
AT+GMI	Display the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Display the FOMA terminal product name (FOMAN901iS).	—	AT+GMM FOMAN901iS OK
AT+GMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC= <i>n</i> , <i>m</i>  [&F] [&W]	Select the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> =2,2 AT+IFC?: Display the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK  AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2  OK  AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2)  OK
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Display the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT $\neq$ S	Display the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT $\neq$ S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 $\neq$ V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT $\neq$ V <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Select the response code specification for connecting the line.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use extended result code.	AT $\neq$ V0 OK
ATA	Handle the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handle the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD * 99 * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting.  AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication  AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication  AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD * 99 * * * 1# CONNECT  <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT  <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT  <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Select whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0 : Echo back not present. <i>n</i> =1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i>	Perform on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATI <i>n</i>	Display the ID code.	<i>n</i> =0 : Display "NTT DoCoMo". <i>n</i> =1 : Display the product name (same with +GMM). <i>n</i> =2 : Display the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR).	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN901s OK
ATO <i>n</i>	Return from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	<i>n</i> =0 : Return from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATQ= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Specify whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	<i>n</i> =0 : Display the result code (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Specify how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	<i>n</i> =0 : No automatic reception (initial value). <i>n</i> =1-255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Display the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Set an escape character.	<i>n</i> =43 : Initial value. <i>n</i> =127 : Escape processing is invalid. ATS2? : Display the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Set a carriage return (CR) character.	<i>n</i> =13 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =13 can be specified). ATS3? : Display the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Set a line feed (LF) character.	<i>n</i> =10 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =10 can be specified). ATS4? : Display the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Set a backspace (BS) character.	<i>n</i> =8 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =8 can be specified). ATS5? : Display the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Set the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS7= <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Disconnect the line if the connection cannot be established within a specified period after making a call.	<i>n</i> =1 to 120 (The initial value is 60) (second). 121 to 255 will be regarded as 120. ATS7?: Display the current setting.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS8= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Set the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
ATS10= <i>n</i>  [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	<i>n</i> =0 : Inactive timer off (Default) <i>n</i> =0 - 255 Where <i>n</i> is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK  ATS30? 000 OK  ATS30=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATS103= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : * <i>n</i> =1 : / (Default) <i>n</i> =2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK  ATS103? 000 OK  ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : # <i>n</i> =1 : % (Default) <i>n</i> =2 : &	ATS104=0 OK  ATS104? 000 OK  ATS104=? ERROR
ATV <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result code is returned in numeral or alphabetical characters.	<i>n</i> =0 : Return the result code in numeral value. <i>n</i> =1 : Return the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i>  [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detect a busy tone or a dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. <i>n</i> =1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Reset the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

## ● Supplementary explanation of AT command

### ■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

### ■ Command name: +CGDCONT

#### • Outline

Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination. Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

#### • Format

+CGDCONT=[ <cid>[ , "PPP"[ , "<APN>" ] ]

#### • Explanation of the parameters

Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

<cid>\*: 1 ~ 10

<APN>\*: Any value

\* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1 and

"mopera.net" to <cid>=3 as an initial value, which can be rewritten.  
<APN> is an arbitrary character string showing each access point name.

• **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGDCONT=: Set the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGDCONT=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=: Display a list of values that can be set.

+CGDCONT?: Display the current setting.

• **Command execution example**

Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"

OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]**

• **Outline**

Register a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

The 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example can be used.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• **Format**

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[ „, <Maximum bitrate UL>

[ „, <Maximum bitrate DL>]]

• **Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>: 1 ~ 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None (initial value) or 384

\* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, at which time a packet communication may not be connected.

• **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQMIN=: Set the default value to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

• **Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)

AT+CGEQMIN=2

OK

(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 4)

AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384

OK

(3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).

AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64

OK

(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)

AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

• **Outline**

Set the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.

For setting, only the pattern shown in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• **Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

• **Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>: 1 to 10

\* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10.

• **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ=: Set the default value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

• **Command execution example**

Only the following 1 patterns can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.

Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 2).

AT+CGEQREQ=2

OK

**Saving modem port command setting value**

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (P.485), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject setting by AT \* DGAPL/AT \* DGARL/AT \* DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT \* DGPRI command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W 

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ 

even after the power is turned on or off.

## Result codes

### Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

### Extended result codes

#### • &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000 bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000 bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000 bps.

#### • &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800 bps.

### Communication protocol result code

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by PACKET

#### NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when `ATVn` command (P.501) is set to  $n=1$ , and as number indication when the command is set to  $n=0$ .
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).

## NOTE

- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the packet network is congested. If this is displayed, wait a while and then try again.

## Result code display example

### ■ When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT $\neq$ V $\neq$ n command (P.499) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
1

### ■ When ATX1 is set

#### • ATX1, AT $\neq$ V0 are set (default)

Display in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format is made when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
1 21

#### • ATX1, AT $\neq$ V1 are set \*

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal → Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection was made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
CONNECT 460800

PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Number indication example: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
1 21 5

\* : If both ATX1 and AT $\neq$ V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT $\neq$ V0 is recommended.

## List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are the following:

### ■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	Missing or unknown APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

### ■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The number specified does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

# ● Entering Text

Entering Text .....	506
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases . <b>Store common phrase</b> .....	521
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text.....	522
Entering Kuten Codes.....	523
Storing Frequently Used Words ..... <b>Own dictionary</b> .....	524
Resetting the Learning Record ..... <b>Clear learning record</b> .....	525
Selecting the Dictionaries Used ..... <b>Download dictionary</b> .....	525
Changing the Active Screen .....	526

# Entering Text

You can enter text on the FOMA terminal using the keypad, by using the access reader or bar code reader, or by retrieving words from a dictionary.

## Text entry (edit) screen

The Text Entry (Edit) screen is made up of the text entry area, operation guidance area, and information display area. The text entry area shows the text currently being entered along with the cursor and end mark. The operation guidance area shows information on the operations that can be performed at that point, such as kanji conversion and retrieval and range specification. The information display area shows information such as the current text entry method, the input mode and the remaining number of characters that can be entered.



**Text entry area**

- : The cursor. Text is entered at this location.
- ◀ : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark.  
The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

**Operation guidance area**

- ▲▼ CHG: Indicates that (☺) can be used for character conversion. →P.514
- ▲▼ All / ▲▼ Find: Indicates that (☺) can be used to search for text in the Search phonebook display. →P.101
- ☒ Fix mode / ☒ Fix END: Indicates that you can use Fix mode in Mode 3 (T9 input) →P.512
- ◀▶ ▲▼ Area: Displayed when you copy (or cut) text. →P.522
- ☺ LU: Displayed when you can switch the entered text between upper case and lower case by pressing (☺). →P.515
- ☺ LONG CR: Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol (↵) by holding down (☺) for 1 second or longer. →P.516
- ◀▶ Back: Displayed when you can return to the previous reading assigned to the same key by pressing (☺) (Home) when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

**Information display area**

- ☺ / ② : Displayed when the text entry method is "Mode 3 (T9 input)" (P.510) or "Mode 2 (2-touch)" (P.509). No icon is displayed in "Mode 1 (5-touch)".
- ☒ : Displayed when "Fix mode" is selected in Mode 3 (T9 input). → P.512
- INS / OVR : The [INS] icon denotes Insert mode and the [OVR] icon denotes Overwrite mode. → P.515
- 漢 / 英 / 記 / 記 : Shows the current input mode when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 input)".
- ☒ : Displayed in "Kuten code input mode". →P.523
- 1/4 / 1/2 : The 1/4 icon is displayed during full-pitch character input and 1/2 appears during half-pitch character input. →P.508, 509
- Sm : Displayed when lower case character is being entered. →P.515
- R : Shows the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. Half-pitch characters count as 1 byte while full-pitch characters each count as 2 bytes. In other words, full-pitch characters use twice as many bytes as half-pitch characters.
- In : Shows the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the phonebook. No distinction is made between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

Function menu → P.519

### NOTE

- Pressing a keypad key while you are entering the text of an i-mode mail message displays the Text Entry (Edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input, word prediction and input mode selection.

## ■ The number of characters remaining and the number entered

Characters shown in the Text Entry (Edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. In the Text Entry (Edit) screen, the end mark “◀” shows the end of the text that can be entered using the current function. Use the end mark as an approximate guide to how many more characters you can enter.

- When the number of characters is counted, each full-pitch character is counted as 2 bytes and each half-pitch character is counted as 1 byte.
- Full-pitch character occupy twice as many bytes as half-pitch characters.  
Full-pitch: あいうえお = 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes).  
Half-pitch: アイロキカケコ = 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes).

## ■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering “ト” ㇿ in half-pitch kana input mode and “の携帯電話” in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ト ㇿ コ モ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the display)  
1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 half-pitch characters)

- The half-pitch dakuten “゛” and han-dakuten “゜” are each counted as 1 character.  
Full-pitch characters are each counted as 2 half-pitch characters.

## ■ Scrolling

In the Text Entry (Edit) screen, use to scroll up and down one line at a time, and (Memo/Check) and (Home) to scroll 1 page at a time.

In the candidates list screen for kanji conversion, you can also use to scroll up and down one line at a time, and , (Memo/Check) or (Home) to scroll 1 page at a time.

## Selecting the text entry method



There are three ways to enter text:

- Mode 1 (5-touch input) → P.508  
Several characters are assigned to each key and the assigned character changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2 (2-touch input) → P.509  
Enters characters using 2-digit numbers.
- Mode 3 (T9 input) → P.510  
Each time you press a key, the characters assigned to that key appear as a list of candidates from which you can select the desired character.

**1** **“Other settings”** ▶ **“Character input method”** ▶ **“Input mode”** ▶ Use to select a checkbox (  ) ▶ (Finish)  
Select at least 2 modes.

**2** **Select your preferred mode**  
A mode not selected in step 1 cannot be selected in this step.

## ● Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the Text Entry (Edit) screen is shown, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to switch to a different text entry method.

A change to the text entry method only applies to the current Text Entry (Edit) screen. When you exit text entry and then return to a Text Entry (Edit) screen later, your preferred text entry method will again be selected.

- In displays used for entering (editing) specific text, such as postal codes, it may not be possible to change the text entry method.

## ■ Changing from the Function menu

“CHG input method” in “Function menu (text entry (edit) screen)” → P.519

## ■ Holding down (Mode) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes to the next method each time you hold down (Mode) for 1 second or longer, in the following sequence: “Mode 1 (5-touch)” → “Mode 2 (2-touch)” → “Mode 3 (T9 input)”.

# Entering text in mode 1 (5-touch input)

## Changing the input mode

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (Mode)

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press (Mode), in the following sequence: “Alphabetic (half-pitch)” → “Numeric (half-pitch)” → “Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch)” → “Katakana (half-pitch)”. (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu enables you to use full-pitch when changing the input mode.)

## Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Half pitch”/“Full pitch”

When you change to “Full pitch”, “” appears in the information display area. When you change to “Half pitch”, “” appears.

You cannot switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”.

### Characters that can entered in mode 1

<Example> To enter “う”, select “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and press  3 times.  
To enter “B”, select “Alphabetic input mode” and press  twice.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode	Alphabetic input mode	Number input mode
	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	?!-/¥&*()#'^* ♥ 	1
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc	2
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef	3
	たちつてと	タチツテト	GHIghi	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno	6
	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs	7
	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv	8
	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz	9
	わをんーわ	ワワンーワ <sup>*2</sup>	—	0+ <sup>*7</sup>
	— <sup>*3</sup>	—	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp <sup>*4</sup> www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp	*.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp <sup>*4</sup> www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp
	* ° 、 。 ・ ! ? <sup>*5</sup>	* ° 、 。 ・ ! ? <sup>*5</sup>	._@/!/?(),-_:!'"*6&¥	#.@/!/?(),-_:!'"*6&¥

\*1 : Only valid when entering SMS. You cannot enter pictographs in SMS but you can enter “♥” and “”. Also, while symbols are displayed as half-pitch characters, “♥” and “” are always full-pitch characters.

\*2 : The lower case “ワ” can be entered in full-pitch character input.

\*3 : Pressing  in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” switches to “Kuten code input” mode.

\*4 : Not shown when you change to full-pitch character input (excluding “\*” in Numeric input mode).

\*5 : In “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and full-pitch “Kana input mode”, dakuten “” and han-dakuten “” are only displayed when the character that precede them can take dakuten. You cannot enter commas, periods, bullets, or exclamation or question marks in reading input when storing phonebook entries on the UIM or entering Own dictionary readings.

\*6 : Becomes “” in full-pitch input mode.

\*7 : “+” can be entered in an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.

■ : Lower case text can be entered:

- By entering upper case text and then pressing  to convert it to lower case.
- By selecting “Lower case” in the Function menu and then entering the text.

# Entering text in mode 2 (2-touch input)

## ● Changing the input mode

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (Mode)

The input mode switches between "Full pitch" and "Half pitch" each time you press (Mode).

## ● Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Half pitch/Full pitch"

When you change to "Full pitch", "1/1" appears in the information display area. When you change to "Half pitch", "1/2" appears.

## ■ Characters that can entered in mode 2

<Example> To enter "う", select Full-pitch input mode and press (1/1) (う).

To enter a full-pitch "B", select Full-pitch input mode and press (1/1) (B).

To enter a half-pitch "B", select Half-pitch input mode and press (1/2) (B).

### Full-pitch input mode

Key	2nd key input										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
1st key input	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
		か	き	く	け	こ	f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
		さ	し	す	せ	そ	k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
		た	ち	つ	て	と	p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
		な	に	ぬ	ね	の	u	v	w	x	y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/	
	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&				
	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&				
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#				
	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#				
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん			6	7	8	9	0	
	わ	を	ん			6	7	8	9	0	

### Half-pitch input mode

Key	2nd key input										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
1st key input	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
		カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
		サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
		タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
		ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	u	v	w	x	y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/	
	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&				
	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&				
8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#				
	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#				
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	ワ	ヲ	ン			6	7	8	9	0	
	ワ	ヲ	ン			6	7	8	9	0	

• During reading input when you are storing entries in the UIM phonebook, Full-pitch input mode becomes katakana input.

\*1 : Pressing (1/1) (1/2) switches between upper case input mode (top) and lower case input mode (bottom). You can also enter upper case text and then change it to lower case by pressing (1/2).

\*2 : These can also be used only when pictograph input is possible, such as "Text memo" or storing "Common phrases". Note that these icons are always entered as full-pitch characters. "Pictograph" is not possible when you are composing an SMS, but "☺" and "♥" can be entered.

\*3 : In "Full-pitch input mode", dakuten "゛" and han-dakuten "゜" are only displayed for characters with which dakuten can be used. Dakuten entered with other characters appear as spaces.

■ : Spaces are entered.

### NOTE

● You may not be able to use mode 2 input. If this is the case, use mode 1 input instead.

## Entering text in mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode allows you to enter text without pressing keys many times.

For example, to enter the “あした” reading in mode 1 (5-touch), you have to press once, twice and once, whereas in mode 3 (T9 input) you only have to press the for the respective line character to be input once each.

A line character is assigned to each key, and each time you press a key a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter the desired reading.

Mode 3 also features 2 input helper functions:

“Yomi edit” and “Fix mode”. “Yomi edit” enables you to edit the entered reading candidates, while you can use “Fix mode” to directly enter the desired reading. Mode 3 (T9 input) also works in tandem with the FOMA terminal's word prediction function (P.512) to allow faster and easier text entry.

### Changing the input mode

#### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506)

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press (Mode), in the following sequence: Alphabetic (half-pitch) → Numeric (half-pitch) → Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch) → Katakana (half-pitch). (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu enables you to use full-pitch when changing the input mode.)

Mode 3 (T9 input) operates in the Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch) and Katakana (full-pitch and half-pitch) input modes.

In Alphabetic (full-pitch and half-pitch) and Numeric (full-pitch and half-pitch) input modes, text entry automatically uses mode 1.

#### Characters that can entered in mode 3

Key	Kanji/hiragana Input mode	Kana input mode
	あ column, 1	ア column, 1
	か column, 2	カ column, 2
	さ column, 3	サ column, 3
	た column, 4	タ column, 4
	な column, 5	ナ column, 5
	は column, 6	ハ column, 6

Key	Kanji/hiragana Input mode	Kana input mode
	ま column, 7	マ column, 7
	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8
	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9
	わを ん ゐ ー, 0	ワヲンウ <sup>3</sup> ー, 0
	*1,*2	*1,*2

\* For the characters assigned in “Alphabetic input mode” and “Numeric input mode”, refer to the character assignments for “Mode 1 (5-touch)”.

\* Numeric character candidates are not displayed when you are entering reading to store phonebook entries on the UIM or entering Own dictionary readings.

\*1 : Changes the conversion candidate readings with dakuten “ ” and han-dakuten “ ” during reading input.

\*2 : As for 5-touch input (mode 1), dakuten, han-dakuten, commas, periods, bullets, exclamation marks and question marks are displayed after readings and characters have been confirmed, but the dakuten “ ” and han-dakuten “ ” only appear when they are preceded by characters that take dakuten.

\*3 : The lower case “ ” can be entered in full-pitch character input.

### Entering Text

<Example: Entering “戸田” in T9 Kanji change mode>

#### 1 “Kanji/hiragana input mode”

#### 2 Enter the characters to be converted



(た column), (た column), (dakuten)

The predicted candidates for “たた” are displayed.

#### ■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press to delete the character. ▶ Press the key again.

#### ■ If the entered texts has no recognized candidates

▶ Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray. ▶ Use to change the range of characters to be converted.

#### ■ To change the conversion candidate display mode (kanji-kana)

▶

#### ■ To view the word prediction conversion candidates

▶ (1 second or longer)

Press to return to the conversion candidates shown before the word-prediction conversion candidates appeared.

### 3 Press to select a conversion candidate



The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.

■ **To return to entering characters to be converted**

▶  (CLR)

■ **To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates**

▶  (CHG) ▶ Use  to select a candidate.

## ● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering “らわらわた” and converting to “爛々と”>

### 1 Enter the characters to be converted



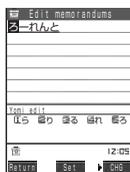
 (ら column),  (わ column),  (ら column),  (わ column),  (た column)

The predictable conversion candidates for “らわらわた” are displayed. Candidates for “らんらんと” do not appear.

### 2 (Yomi)

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The “ら column” characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

### 3 Press the number on the keypad for the character you want to enter



In this case, press  (ら).

After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct that character.

■ **If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate**

▶ Use  to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected.

■ **To exit edit mode in mid-operation**

▶  (Return)

The characters corrected so far are displayed as the conversion candidate.

### 4 Press to select “爛々と”

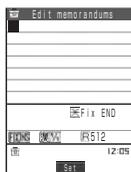


From next time, if “らわらわた” is input, “爛々と” will be displayed at the top of conversion candidates.

## Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Entering the “はためく” reading>

### 1 (Fix mode)

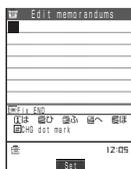


The input mode changes to Fix mode and “” in the information display area changes to “”.

### 2 Press the key for the line that includes the character you want to enter

In this case, press . The “は column” characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

### 3 Press the keypad number for the character you want to enter



In this case, press  (は).  
Use the same procedure to enter the rest of the reading.

### 4 (Fix END)



When you press  (Fix END), the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji or katakana by pressing  and then  (CHG).

## Setting T9 change mode

When you are entering text in T9 input mode, you can use this procedure to specify whether the entered text is converted to kanji or kana.

### 1 (MENU) ▶ (Settings) ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input method” ▶ “T9 change mode” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
T9 Kanji change mode	Converts the entered text to kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts the entered text to kana.

## Using word prediction

The FOMA terminal’s word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the next time you enter the same character string, it includes the stored character string along with common phrases in your list of candidates to choose from.

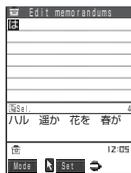
### 1 (MENU) ▶ (Settings) ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input method” ▶ “Prediction” ▶ “ON”

■ To inactivate the word prediction  
▶ “OFF”

## Using word prediction to enter text

The word prediction function displays predictive candidates and historical candidates based on text you have entered in the past.

### 1 Enter the reading



The predictive candidates appear in the guidance area.

### 2 (1 second or longer)



The cursor appears in the guidance area and you can choose from the predictive candidates.

■ To return to reading entry

▶  CLR

■ If no predictive candidates appear or there are no predictive candidates for the text you want to enter

▶ Enter the reading unchanged

### 3 Select a predictive candidate



Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.

### 4 Select a candidate

■ If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of them

Enter the next section of text unchanged

## Displaying guidance

Use this procedure to specify whether guidance (P.506) is displayed in the Text Entry (Edit) screen.

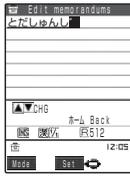
### 1 "Other settings" ▶ "Character input method" ▶ "Guidance" ▶ "ON"

■ To not display the guidance

▶ "OFF"

<Example: Entering “戸田俊司”>

## 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ Enter the hiragana



■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press **[DEL]** to delete the character. ▶ Press the key again.

■ If you press a key too many times

▶ **[HOME]** (Home)

The previous character assigned to that key appears.

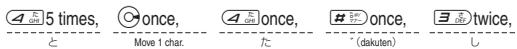
■ When the next character to be entered is assigned to the same key

▶ **[C]** or press the key again and hold for one second or longer  
Cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ To confirm the hiragana

▶ **[OK]**

<Mode 1>



<Mode 2>



In mode 2, entering a single digit and then confirming the input deletes the text. Always enter 2 digits.

<Mode 3>



In mode 3, use **[C]** to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and use **[\*]** to switch to Yomi edit mode.

## 2 Press **[C]** to convert the reading to kanji



The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined ( \_ ).

■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji

▶ **[OK]**

The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ To change the conversion range

▶ Use **[C]** to change the conversion range.

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are available kanji for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

## 3 Use **[C]** to display the conversion candidates



A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.

■ If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of “あ” -level characters

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

## 4 Select the kanji you want to enter

### NOTE

- You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the “on” or “kun” reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- Where 2 or more characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- You can use kuten codes to enter kanji that cannot be entered by conversion. → P.523
- Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a confirmation message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.

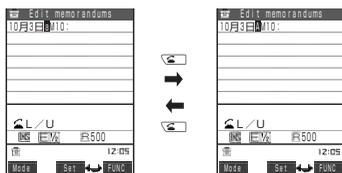
## Switching between upper case and lower case

Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

### ■ Pressing to switch the cases of entered characters

#### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when  “L/U” is displayed in the operation guidance.



### ■ Using the function menu before entering

#### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Lower case”/“Upper case”

When you change to “Lower case”,  “Sm” appears in the information display area. No icon appears when “Upper case” is selected.

## Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in “Insert”, the new text is inserted into the existing text. In “Overwrite”, the new text replaces the existing entered text.

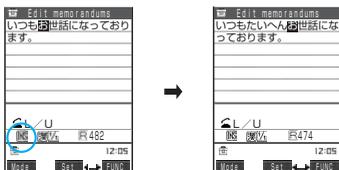
#### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Insert”/“Overwrite”

When you change to “Insert”,  “INS” appears in the information display area, and  “OVR” appears when you select “Overwrite”.

When the Text Entry (Edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

## Inserting text

Select “Insert” and use  to move the cursor the position immediately to the right of the character, where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



## Overwriting text

Select "Overwrite" and use  to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



## Inserting a space (blank)

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Space"

A full-pitch space is inserted in full-pitch input and a half-pitch space is inserted in half-pitch input.

#### NOTE

- A space (blank) is counted as a one full-pitch or half-pitch character.

## Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol "". There are 2 ways to insert a line feed "". The line feed symbol is counted as 1 full-pitch character.

### ■ Holding down for 1 second or longer

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and hold down (1 second or longer)



A line feed symbol "" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

### ■ Using the Function menu

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Line feed"

A line feed symbol "" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

#### NOTE

- The line feed symbol can be deleted and overwritten in the same way as normal text.
- The line feed symbol is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- You may not be able to insert a line feed in an i-mode text box.
- You cannot enter line feed symbols in a "Text memo" (P.440).

## Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek numbers and units.

Note that you cannot enter full-pitch symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

## 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Symbols” ▶ Select the symbol to be inserted

“Symbols and Special Character List” → P.530

### NOTE

- The half-pitch symbols are displayed when you can only enter half-pitch characters.

## Entering face symbols

You can enter the stored face symbols by selecting on the list.

## 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Face Mark” ▶ Select the face symbols you want to enter

“Smiley Face Symbols List” → P.531

### NOTE

- If you select the download dictionary for face symbols in “Download dictionary”, the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

## Using character conversion to enter symbols and face symbols

In “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, you can enter symbols and face symbols by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

### Entering symbols

Entering and converting “きごう” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays the symbol candidates. You can also enter symbols by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かっこ” or “さんか”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion” → P.530

### Entering Face symbols

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays the face symbol candidates. You can also enter face symbols by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

“Smiley Face Symbols List” → P.531

## Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, the weather or an animal in the Text Entry (Edit) display for items such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Pictographs are can also stored when they are entered in “PI•SB input mode”.

## 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Pictograph” ▶ Select a pictograph

“Pictographs Symbols List” → P.531

## Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Use this procedure to have the FOMA terminal continue to display symbol and pictograph candidate displays so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

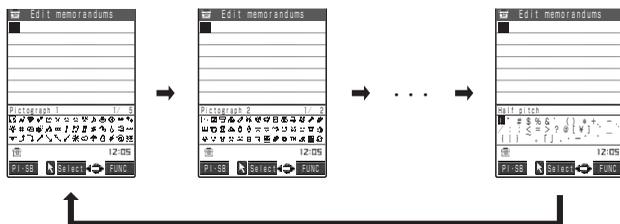
- Entering symbols → P.530
- Pictographs → P.531

## 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “PI•SB input mode”

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The “current page/total pages” figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

## 2 Press **PI\*SB** to switch to a different candidate display

Each time you press **PI\*SB**, the candidate display changes in the following sequence: "Pictograph 1" → "Pictograph 2" → "Full pitch 1" → "Full pitch 2" → "Half pitch".



## 3 Select a symbol or pictograph



The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs.

## 4 When you have finished entering symbols and pictographs, press **CLR**

Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

### Deleting text

Use **CLR** to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and hold down **CLR** briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.

#### ■ When there is no character in the cursor position

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

#### ■ If you hold down **CLR** for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

#### ■ If you hold down **CLR** for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor

All the text is deleted.



### Data protection during text entry and editing

When you are entering text in the Text Entry (Edit) screen and the battery fails or your receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the screen.

#### ■ If the battery fails

If the low-battery alarm sounds during text entry, the Text Entry (Edit) screen is replaced by the "Recharge battery" message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

Re-editing the phonebook → P.99

## ■ If you press



If you press  while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.

<To quit without saving the text>

Select "YES". The FOMA terminal redisplayes the previous screen or standby screen without saving the entered text.

You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing .

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The FOMA terminal returns to the Text Entry (Edit) screen with the entered text still displayed.

You can also return to the Text Entry (Edit) screen by pressing .

## ■ When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text Entry (Edit) screen reappears. During a voice call, you can return to the Text Entry (Edit) screen during the call by pressing  to display the Task menu. → P.419

## Function menu (text entry (edit) screen)

### 1 Text Entry (Edit) screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>PI+SB input mode</b>	"Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P.517
<b>Face Mark</b>	"Entering face symbols" → P.517
<b>Lower case<sup>*1</sup></b>	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → P.515
<b>Half pitch<sup>*2</sup></b>	"Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P.508, 509
<b>Copy</b>	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522
<b>Cut</b>	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522
<b>Paste</b>	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.522
<b>Common phrases</b>	"Entering common phrases" → P.520
<b>Space</b>	"Inserting a space (blank)" → P.516
<b>Line feed</b>	"Inserting a line feed" → P.516
<b>Symbols</b>	"Inserting symbols" → P.516
<b>Pictograph</b>	"Entering pictographs" → P.517
<b>Kuten code</b>	"Entering Kuten Codes" → P.523
<b>Overwrite<sup>*3</sup></b>	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. → P.515
<b>Quote phonebook</b>	"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520
<b>Quote own number</b>	"Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P.520
<b>Access reader</b>	Pastes text data scanned in by the Access reader. "Scanning Text" → P.182
<b>Bar code reader</b>	Pastes text information acquired with the "Bar code reader". "Using the Bar code Reader" → P.179
<b>Refer dic.</b>	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.441
<b>Prediction OFF<sup>*4</sup></b>	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF.
<b>CHG input method</b>	Changes the text entry mode to "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 input)".
<b>T9 Kanji CHG mode<sup>*5</sup></b>	When you are entering text in T9 input mode, you can use this procedure to specify whether the entered text is converted to kanji or kana. When "T9 change mode" is set to "T9 Kanji CHG mode", "T9 Kana CHG mode" is displayed. Conversely when "T9 change mode" is set to "T9 Kana CHG mode", "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is displayed. You can only switch conversion modes while entering characters when on the character input (edit) screen. Once you have finished entering the characters and the next character input screen is displayed, it returns to the setting specified in "Character input method".
<b>Jump</b>	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.

Item	Description
Change window	When the operation display for a function and the Text Entry (Edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the FOMA terminal's display, this option switches between windows. "Changing the Active screen" → P.526

- \*1: If you have selected the lower case, "Upper case" is displayed.
- \*2: If you have selected the Half pitch, "Full pitch" is displayed.
- \*3: If you have selected the Overwrite mode, "Insert" is displayed.
- \*4: If you have selected the word prediction, "Prediction ON" is displayed.
- \*5: If you have selected the T9 Kanji conversion mode, "T9 Kana CHG mode" is displayed.

## ● Entering common phrases

### 1 Text Entry (Edit) screen (P.506) ► (FUNC) ► "Common phrases" ► Select a folder

List of common phrases → P.522

### 2 Select a common phrase ► ( )

#### NOTE

- Common phrases can be used in the following Text Entry (Edit) displays:
  - Text memo
  - Common phrases
  - Common phrase folder name
  - Schedule
  - ToDo
  - Wake-up message
  - i-mode mail subject
  - i-mode mail message
  - i-mode mail header
  - i-mode mail signature
  - i-mode mail quotation
  - i-mode mail reply with ref
  - Enter auto sort setting subject
  - Enter mail search subject
  - Edit i-mode text box
  - Edit i-appli text
  - Dictionary
- Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.
  - Modes 1 and 3 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.  
Displayed as half-pitch katakana in other input modes.
  - Mode 2 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in full-pitch input mode.  
Displayed as half-pitch katakana in half-pitch input mode.
- If the acceptable number of characters is exceeded when you enter a common phrase, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select "YES", the common phrase is entered and the excess text from the end of the common phrase onwards is truncated.

## ● Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook

In the Text Entry (Edit) display for an e-mail message or "Text memo", you can use this procedure to enter the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the phonebook or in "Own number".

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text Entry (Edit) screen.

### 1 Text Entry (Edit) screen (P.506) ► (FUNC) ► "Quote phonebook" or "Quote own number"

#### ■ When "Quote phonebook" selected

- Select "Group search" or "Column search". ► Search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted.

Searching the phonebook → P.101

#### ■ When "Quote own number" is selected

- Enter your security code.

Security code → P.140

### 2 Select the item to be quoted



Quoting a phonebook entry

### 3 (Finish)

#### NOTE

- You cannot quote data when PIM lock is set.
- When you quote a street address, the postal code “〒” symbol and “.” are not quoted.
- By selecting “Access reader”, “Bar code reader” or “Refer dic.” from the Text Entry (Edit) display function menu (P.519), you can also use those functions to quote data.

<Store common phrase>



## Modifying and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text Entry (Edit) screen later.

Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.

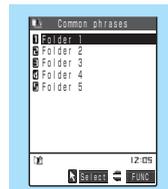
### Composing a new common phrase

1



▶ “Common phrases”

The “Common phrase folder list” screen appears.



Common phrase folder list

Function menu ▶ P.521

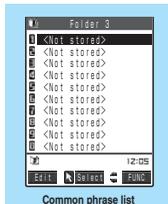
2

#### Select a folder

The “Common phrase list” screen appears.

3

Highlight “<Not stored>” and then press (Edit) ▶  
Enter the common phrase



Common phrase list

Function menu ▶ P.522

#### NOTE

- Common phrases can contain up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters.
- When you create an original common phrase to be used in mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or as a quotation symbol, do not use “half-pitch katakana” or “pictographs” as these may not be displayed correctly. (Pictographs can be used when i-mode mail is exchanged.)
- Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in mode 1 (5-touch) or mode 3 (T9) or “full-pitch character input” in mode 2 (2-touch), and as “half-pitch katakana” when another text entry method is used.

### Function menu (Common phrase folder list screen)

1

Common phrase folder list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit folder name</b>	▶ <b>Change the folder name</b> The selected folder name changes. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters and 20 half-pitch characters for the folder name.
<b>Reset name</b>	The folder name returns to the default folder name.

**NOTE**

● If there are no characters in the folder name when you set it, the folder name returns to the default folder name.

**Function menu (Common phrase list screen)**

**1** “Common phrase list screen” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
<b>Edit</b>	▶ <b>Edit the common phrase</b> Edits the selected common phrase.
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the selected common phrase.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ “YES” Security code → P.140

**NOTE**

● If you delete one of the fixed common phrases, it reverts to the default common phrase set at the time of purchase.

**Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)**

No	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

**Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)**

No	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

**Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text**

● Only one item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

**Copying (or cutting) text**

**1** Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy” or “Cut”

**2** Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut ▶ ●



### 3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut ▶ ●

The selected text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

■ **If the text was cut**

The selected text is deleted, but is stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ **If you select a range that includes no text**

The range is stored as half-pitch spaces.

## Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Paste”

■ **If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text Entry (Edit) display**

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced by spaces when the text is pasted.

#### NOTE

- If the acceptable number of characters is exceeded when you paste cut or copied text, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select “YES”, the text is pasted and the excess text from the end of the pasted text onwards is truncated. If you select “NO”, the text is not pasted and the original display reappears.

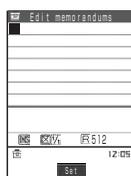
## Entering Kuten Codes

This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit “kuten” codes.

- “Kuten code and characters that can be entered by using kuten codes” → P.532
- The display of a screen may differ from the character or a symbol in the Kuten Code List.

<Example: Entering “慶” (kuten code 2336)>

### 1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.506) ▶ (Func)



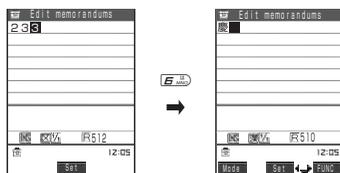
The input mode changes to Kuten code input and “☒” appears in the information display area.

■ **When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)**

▶ Text entry (edit) screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Kuten code”

### 2 Enter kuten code

The character (“慶” in this example) for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.



■ **If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code**

A space is entered.

#### NOTE

- When the text entry mode is “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Mode 2 (2-touch)”, you still switch to kuten code input by selecting “Kuten code” from the function menu.

# Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting  
Not stored

Using this procedure to store frequently used words in an own dictionary under your preferred reading allows you to recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text Entry (Edit) screen.

- You cannot enter pictographs, line feeds or common phrases as the words or their readings. A space is automatically omitted before it is stored.
- Symbols other than dakuten and han-dakuten “、。・！？” cannot be stored.

## Adding a new word

1



“Own dictionary”

The “Own dictionary” screen appears.

2

“<New>” ▶ Enter the word ▶ Enter the reading



Function menu ▶ P.524

### NOTE

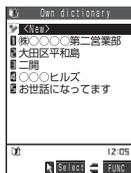
- Own dictionary will hold up to 100 words.
- Words can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. Readings are written in full-pitch hiragana and can be up to 10 characters long.

## Checking words

1



“Own dictionary”



2

Select the word you want to check

- To edit a word
  - ▶ Select the word you want to change ▶ (Edit)

### Function menu (own dictionary screen)

1

Own dictionary screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the stored word.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted word.
Delete selected	▶ Use ( ) to select a checkbox ( ) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple own dictionaries.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the own dictionaries. Security code → P.140

<Clear learning record>

## Resetting the Learning Record

The learning dictionary contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning dictionary to its default status at the time of purchase.

- 1   **“Other settings”** ▶ **“Character input method”** ▶ **“Clear learned”** ▶ **Enter your security code** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
<b>T9/Expect words/Pic.</b>	Clears the learning records stored for “Mode 3 (T9 input)”, “Prediction” and “Pictographs”.
<b>Kana/Kanji change/face</b>	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

<Download dictionary>

## Selecting the Dictionaries Used

Default setting  
Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries for Japanese language conversion from i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 5 downloaded dictionaries, 2 of which can be active.
- For information on downloading dictionaries → P.213

- 1   **“DL dictionary”**

“Download dictionary screen” appears.

- 2 **Select the dictionary you want to set**

A star “★” appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ **To deselect the selected dictionary**

▶ Select a dictionary marked with a star “★”.

The dictionary is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



Download dictionary

Function menu ▶ P.525

### NOTE

- If you set the download dictionary for face symbols, up to 550 face symbols (including the preinstalled 50 face symbols) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select “Face Mark” from the function menu during text input.
- If you add two download dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face symbols stored in the first-activated download dictionary are displayed as a list.

### Function menu (download dictionary screen)

- 1 **Download dictionary screen** ▶  **(FUNC)** ▶ **Select any item:**

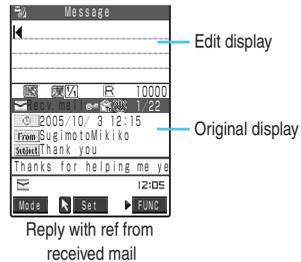
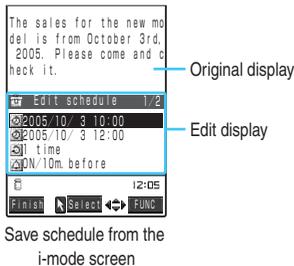
Item	Description
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title</b> Edits the title of the downloaded dictionary selected. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Set dictionary</b>	Sets the downloaded dictionary or cancels the setting.
<b>Dictionary info</b>	Displays information for the downloaded dictionary selected.
<b>Delete this</b>	Deletes the highlighted download dictionary.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your security code</b> ▶ <b>“YES”</b> Deletes all the download dictionaries. Security code → P.140

### NOTE

- If you try to edit a dictionary name and try to set the name when it is completely blank, it reverts to the original title.

# Changing the Active Screen

Some screens, such as that for replying to received mail while referring to the original message (Reply with ref), are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the Text Entry (Edit) screen at the same time.



- The function operation screen and Text Entry (Edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
  - Replying to i-mode mail while referring to the message
  - Adding schedule entries from i-mode mail
  - Saving schedule entries while referring to an i-mode screen
  - Entering site URLs by searching dictionaries in an i-mode screen
  - Chat screen for Chat mail
  - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

## Procedure for changing the active screen

When a function operation screen and the Text Entry (Edit) screen are shown at the same time, you can use any of the 3 methods described below to switch between screens.

### ■ Hold down **EF** for 1 second or longer

The active display changes each time you hold down **EF** for 1 second or longer.

### ■ Select the active screen using the function menu

Select "Change window" from the function menu to change the active display.

### ■ Select the active screen using the neuropointer

Slide your finger over the neuropointer key to display the neuropointer and then use it to select the active screen.

#### NOTE

- When you switch to the other screen, the entered text or cursor location in the current screen remain unchanged.
- You cannot change screens while you are entering a character reading.
- If you switch to using a received mail screen or i-mode screen while an edit screen is shown, you can only scroll the mail or i-mode screen. However, in the case of Received mail only, you can also copy text and set the character size.
- You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

# ● Appendix

Menu Function List .....	528
Symbols and Special Characters List.....	530
Pictographs Symbols Lists.....	531
Smiley Face Symbols List.....	531
Kuten Code List .....	532
Multi Access Combination Patterns .....	536
Multi Task Combination Patterns .....	536
Services Available for the FOMA terminal .....	537
Options and Accessories.....	538
Data Link Software .....	538
NEC Mobile PDF .....	539
■ <b>Playing music</b>	
Movie Playing Software .....	539
Playing i-motion (including music) created on PC on the FOMA terminal .....	540
■ <b>Troubleshooting</b>	
Malfunction Checklist.....	541
If Any Error Message Appears.....	546
Warranty and After-Sales Service .....	553
Software Update .....	<b>Software update</b> 555
Protecting the FOMA terminal from Harmful Data .....	<b>Scanning function</b> 559
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones.....	560

# Menu Function List

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Mail			—	P.234
i-mode			—	P.196
i-appli			—	P.300
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	⊖ (7.3) (7.2)	P.68
		Select ring tone	⊖ (7.1) (7.2)	P.114
		Sound effect	⊖ (6.2) (6.3)	P.116
		Vibrator	⊖ (5.2) (4.3)	P.116
		Illumination	⊖ (5.1) (6.2)	P.131
		Manner mode set	⊖ (2.2) (7.2)	P.120
		Disp. PH-book image	—	P.125
		Answer setting	⊖ (5.2) (6.2)	P.64
		Fold setting	⊖ (7.1) (6.2)	P.65
		Mail/Msg. ring time	⊖ (6.2) (6.3)	P.118
		Ringling time	⊖ (5.2) (7.2)	P.152
		Info notice setting	⊖ (6.2) (6.3)	P.71
		Talk	Noise reduction	⊖ (7.2) (6.2)
	Quality alarm		⊖ (7.2) (6.2)	P.118
	Reconnect control		⊖ (7.2) (7.2)	P.61
	Illumination in talk		—	P.132
	Call response setting		—	P.69
	Auto dial setting		—	P.445
	Video-phone		Visual preference	—
		Camera image sending	—	P.86
		Select image	—	P.87
		Voice call auto switch	—	P.86
		Remote observation	—	P.91
		Disp. setting VP	—	P.89
		Indicate V-phone	—	P.90
		Display	Display setting	⊖ (5.2) (6.2)
	Display light		⊖ (7.2) (7.2)	P.126
	Display design		⊖ (5.1) (6.2)	P.127
	Image display		⊖ (5.2) (6.2)	P.125
	Font		⊖ (6.2) (6.2)	P.132
	Desktop icon		⊖ (6.2) (6.2)	P.133
	Select language		⊖ (7.1) (6.2)	P.46
	Original menu		⊖ (5.1) (6.2)	P.130

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	Display	Menu display set	⊖ (5.2) (7.2)	P.128
		Viewer settings	—	P.340
		Automatic display	⊖ (7.2) (7.2)	P.112
		Icons	⊖ (5.2) (6.2)	P.27
	Call time/Charge	Call data	⊖ (6.2) (7.2)	P.436
		Notify cost limit	—	P.438
		Reset call duration	⊖ (6.2) (7.2)	P.437
		Auto reset all cost	—	P.437
		Call time display	⊖ (7.2) (6.2)	P.132
		Clock	Set time	⊖ (5.2) (7.2)
	Clock display		⊖ (5.2) (6.2)	P.133
	Alarm setting		—	P.420
	Lock/Security	All lock	—	P.143
		PIM lock	—	P.147
		IC Card lock	—	P.324
		Self mode	—	P.153
		Keypad dial lock	—	P.148
		Reject unknown	—	P.153
		Call setting w/o ID	⊖ (7.2) (7.2)	P.151
		Change security code	⊖ (2.2) (6.2)	P.140
		PIN setting	—	P.141
		Secret mode	⊖ (7.2) (7.2)	P.145
	Connection setting	Secret only mode	⊖ (7.2) (7.2)	P.146
		Scanning function	—	P.559
		Remote all lock	⊖ (5.2) (6.2)	P.143
		Set connection timeout	—	P.217
		Set check new message	—	P.283
		Host selection	⊖ (6.2) (7.2)	P.217
		SMS center selection	—	P.296
	i-appli settings	Certificate	—	P.223
		Certificate host	—	P.226
		Disp. software info	—	P.303
		End stand-by display	—	P.313

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	External connection	USB mode setting	—	P.388
		Earphone	⏪ [F.2] [F.1]	P.119
		Automatic answer	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.445
	Other settings	Keypad sound	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.117
		Charge sound	—	P.118
		Battery level	⏪ [F.2] [F.1]	P.45
		Side keys guard	⏪ [F.2] [F.2] [ON/OFF]	P.148
		Character input method	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.507
		Record display set	—	P.149
		Pause dial	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.56
		Sub-address	—	P.61
		Prefix setting	—	P.57
		Int'l dial setting	—	P.59
		PLMN setting	—	P.446
		Neuropointer	—	P.130
		Select icons setting	—	P.136
		Reset	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.446
		Initialize	—	P.451
		Software update	—	P.555
		Data box	My picture	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]
i-motion	—		P.355	
Melody	⏪ [F.1] [F.2]		P.373	
Chara-den	—		P.367	
My document	—		P.402	
Tool	Camera	—	P.162, 171	
	Schedule	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.424	
	Alarm clock	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.423	
	ToDo	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.429	
	Text memo	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.440	
	Calculator	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.439	
	Play/Erase msg.	☐ (Memo/Check)	P.74	
	Record message	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.72	
	Voice memo (in stand-by)	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.435	
	Voice memo (during a call)	☐ (Memo/Check)	P.434	
	Voice announce	⏪ [F.2] [F.1]	P.435	
	Receive Ir data	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.395, 397	
	UIM operation	—	P.106	
	Forwarding image	—	P.392	
	Access reader	—	P.182	
	Bar code reader	—	P.179	
	SD-PIM	—	P.383	
	Dictionary	—	P.441	

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Network service	Check messages	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.456	
	Caller ID notification	⏪ [F.1] [F.2]	P.48	
	Voice mail	—	P.455	
	Call waiting	—	P.457	
	Call forwarding	—	P.458	
	Nuisance call barring	—	P.460	
	Caller ID request	—	P.461	
	Arrival call act	—	P.463	
	Set arrival act	—	P.463	
	Remote access	—	P.464	
	Dual network	—	P.461	
	English guidance	—	P.462	
	Additional service	—	P.464	
	Service dialing number	—	P.463	
	Multi number	—	P.464	
Call barrings*	—	—		
Phonebook	Add to phonebook	—	P.97	
	Search phonebook	—	P.101	
	No. of phonebook	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.108	
	Utilities	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.111	
	Restrictions	⏪ [F.1] [F.2]	P.151	
Own data	Group setting	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.100	
	Own number	⏪ [F.2]	P.48, 432	
	Received calls	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.65	
	Dialed calls	—	P.54	
	Mail member	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.252	
	Chat group	—	P.289	
	Common phrases	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.521	
	Own dictionary	⏪ [F.2] [F.2]	P.524	
	DL dictionary	—	P.525	

\* : It cannot be used with this FOMA terminal.

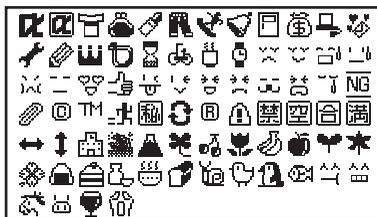


# Pictographs Symbols Lists

## List of Pictographs 1



## List of Pictographs 2



### NOTE

● Pictograph in a mail message may not be displayed properly on the receiving phone when sending to a mobile phone or PC that is not compatible with it. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode compatible terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

# Smiley Face Symbols List

## Smiley Face Symbols

You can enter smiley face symbols in mail messages, by entering “かお” or “かおもじ” while you are in Kanji/hiragana input mode, and then selecting from the smiley face symbol candidates. You can also enter the meaning of a smiley face symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired smiley face symbol.

Characters to enter (meaning)	Face symbol
あせあせ(Sweat/Sweat)	(:~^A
あは(Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)
ありがとう/ありがとう(thanks)	m(^_^)m
いかり(Angry)	(^-)
いたた(Ouch!)	o_<)
いっぶく(Take a break)	(!)y~
いっぶく(Take a break)	(~)y~
ういんく(Wink)	(^-)
うん(Yeah)	(^_^)(u_u)
え(What?)	(@_@:)
えんん(Crying)	(;_~)
えへん(Ahem)	(^_^)
おーし(Hey!)	(^o^)/
がーん(Shocked!)	([O_~)!!
がんばら(Cheer up!)	p(^_^)q
かんばし(Cheers!)	(^_^)/^/☆^/ (^_^)
きこえない(Can't hear)	(-_-)

Characters to enter (meaning)	Face symbol
ぎやはは(Ha-ha!)	(^o^)/
きらーん(Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆.☆)
こあら(Koala)	(-Q-)
こそこそ(Whisper)	(.·)
ごまっちん(My goddess)	(~)ε
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(^-)/
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(T_T)/
じーっ(Gaze)	(^-)
ししくし(Sob, sob)	(T_T)
ちゅ(Kiss)	(^3^)/
ちゅ(Kiss/Kiss)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
どき(Shocked!)	(◎-◎)
ども(Well, well)	(^o^)(^o^)/
なぜ(Why?)	(?_?)
にこ(Smile)	(^-)
にこ(Smile! smile)	(*~*~)
ね(Sn't?)	(.^)b

Characters to enter (meaning)	Face symbol
ねてる(Zzzz...)	(-_-)zz
ねむい(I'm sleepy)	(^o^)/
はてな(Wait a minute!)	(.·?)
ばんざい(Hurrah!)	(^o^)/
びくっ(Twitch)	(*~*)
ひやあせ(Cold Sweat)	(^o^;)
びい(Vvvv)	(^o^)/
ぶたー(Pig)	)o^(
ほし(Star)	☆
ほりほり(Scratch, scratch)	(^_^)
むい(Sullen)	(-_-~)
むか(Offended)	(;~_+)
めがてん(WH*H*?)	(.·.·)
めも(Memo)	φ(。.)
わーい(Wow!)	(^o^)
わくわく(I'm excited!)	o(^o^o)

### NOTE

● Face symbols can be entered from “Face Mark” in the function menu of Text entry (edit) screen.

# Kuten Code List

## <Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter "digits 1-3 of the kuten code" and then enter "digit 4".

● The kuten code actually displayed may differ from the table shown here.

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
010										075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й	191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	害	崖
011										076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у	192	概	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
012										077	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э	ю	193	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
013										078	ю	я									194	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
014																					195	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
015										080											196	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
016										081											197	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
017										082											198	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
018										083											199	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
019																					200	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
020										130											201	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
021										131	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨		202	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
022										132	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱		203	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
023										133	⑳	㉑	㉒	㉓	㉔	㉕	㉖	㉗	㉘		204	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
024										134	X	Y	Z	aa	bb	cc	dd	ee	ff		205	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
026										135											206	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
027										136											207	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
028										137											208	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
029										138											209	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
031										160											210	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
032										161											211	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
033										162											212	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
034										163											213	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
035										164											214	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
036																					215	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
037										165											216	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
038										166											217	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
039										167											218	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
040										168											219	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
041										169											220	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
042										169											221	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
043										170											222	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
044										170											223	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
045										171											224	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
046										172											225	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
047										171											225	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
048										173											226	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
050										173											227	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
051										174											228	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
052										175											229	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
053										176											230	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
054										177											231	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
055										178											232	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
056										178											232	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
057										179											233	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
058										180											234	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
060										181											235	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
062										182											236	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
063										182											237	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
064										183											238	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
065										184											239	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
070										186											240	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
071										186											241	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
072										188											242	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
073										189											243	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖
074										190											243	擊	滙	階	蓋	鼎	街	該	駭	崖







## Multi Access Combination Patterns

Communication newly started Current communication status	Voice calls		Videophone calls		i-mode <sup>*7</sup>	i-αppli	i-mode mail	
	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming			Send	Receive
During a voice call	△ <sup>*1</sup>	△ <sup>*2</sup>	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>	—	△ <sup>*3</sup>	×	×	×	×
During i-mode <sup>*7</sup>	○	○	○ <sup>*5</sup>	×	—	—	○	○
During packet communication with PC	○	○	×	×	×	△ <sup>*6</sup>	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>	×	×	×	×

Communication newly started Current communication status	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication	
	Send	Receive	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>
During a videophone call	×	○	×	×	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>
During i-mode <sup>*7</sup>	○	○	×	×	×	×
During packet communication with PC	○	○	—	—	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△ <sup>*3</sup>

○ : Can be activated. × : Cannot be activated. △ : Can be activated depending on situation. — : Functionally incompatible.

\*1 : If you have subscribed to a network service called "Call waiting", calls can be originated by holding a voice call.

\*2 : If you have subscribed to a network service called "Call waiting", calls can be answered by holding a voice call. If you have subscribed to a network service called "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", a new call can be answered after disconnecting a current call.

\*3 : If you have subscribed to a network service called "Call waiting", "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", a new call can be answered after disconnecting a current call.

\*4 : The i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free are not received, and are stored in the i-mode Center instead. You can receive those stored i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free by "Check new message" after the current communication ends.

\*5 : Start Video-phone after ending the current i-mode connection.

\*6 : The i-αppli software cannot communicate.

\*7 : Communication with Full Browser is included.

## Multi Task Combination Patterns

Function to use Current status	Mail	i-mode menu	i-αppli	Settings	Data box	Tool	Network service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
During starting Mail group	○ <sup>*1</sup>	○	○	○ <sup>*3</sup>	○	○ <sup>*5</sup>	○	○ <sup>*10</sup>	○	○
During starting i-mode group	○	×	×	○ <sup>*3</sup>	○	○ <sup>*5</sup>	○	○ <sup>*10</sup>	○	○
During starting Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○ <sup>*5</sup>	×	○ <sup>*10</sup>	○	○
During starting Tool group	○	○	○	○ <sup>*3</sup>	×	×	○	×	×	○
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During a voice call	○ <sup>*2</sup>	○ <sup>*2</sup>	×	×	×	×	○ <sup>*2,9</sup>	○ <sup>*2,10</sup>	○ <sup>*2,11</sup>	○ <sup>*2</sup>
During packet communication with PC	○	○	○	○ <sup>*3</sup>	○	○ <sup>*5</sup>	○	○ <sup>*10</sup>	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	×	○ <sup>*9</sup>	○ <sup>*10</sup>	○ <sup>*11</sup>	○

○ : Can be activated. × : Cannot be activated.

\*1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" cannot be used simultaneously.

- \*2 : It is not available while switching between voice call and videophone call.
- \*3 : Unavailable depending on a function.
- \*4 : Only "Set time", "Keypad sound" and "Pause dial" are available.
- \*5 : "Voice announce", "Received Ir data", "UIM operation" and "SD-PIM" are unavailable.
- \*6 : Holding down  (Memo/Check) for one second or longer allows you to use "Voice memo (during a call)", which is unavailable while switching between voice call and videophone call.
- \*7 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Voice memo (during a call)", "Access reader", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. Only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
- \*8 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Access reader", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. Only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
- \*9 : "Voice mail" cannot be played. Special numbers (P.464) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).
- \*10: "Restrictions" is unavailable.
- \*11: "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "DL dictionary" are unavailable.
- \*12: Only "Indicate V-phone" is available.

## Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the recipient)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) <small>(Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)</small>		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (pay)		Area code of an area you want to know + 177
Emergency call to the police		(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance		(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

### NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of June, 2005)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with sight or upper-limb handicaps. For details, call 116 (NTT Sales) from a general phone. (As of June, 2005)
- You cannot be specified the location from which you are calling when you dial 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal. Because you may be asked to receive a confirmation call from the relevant service (police, fire service, etc.), state that you are calling from a mobile phone and provide your current location. Also, to prevent the call from dropping out before it is completed, stand still while talking. Do not turn the FOMA terminal off immediately after making the call, but leave it turned on for at least 10 minutes so that you can receive calls.
- Depending on your location, you may not be connected to the police or the fire department for the area you are in. If this happens, call from the nearest pay phone or general phone.
- If you are using a "Call forwarding" or "Voice Warp" service from a general phone and a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of a general phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, outside the service area or turned off.
- You cannot use services such as 116 (NTT Sales), Dial Q2, Message Dial or Credit Call. (Automatic credit calls can be made to the FOMA terminal from a general phone or payphone.)

## Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, your FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available depending on the area you are in. For more information, contact a DoCoMo service counter or a retail outlet.

For details of options and accessories, refer to relevant User's Manual.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001\*/P002\*
- Stereo Earphone Set P001\*
- Earphone Terminal P001\*
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N07
- Battery Pack N09
- Back Cover N07
- In-Car Holder N06
- Carry Case N08
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna

\*: To connect to FOMA N901iS, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is necessary.

## Data Link Software

By using "FOMA N901iS Data Link Software", you can transfer data such as Phonebooks, schedule, mail, melodies, pictures (still images), movies and i-motion.

You can download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N901iS from the NEC Internet website:

- NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)  
<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Visit the website above or help of the Data Link Software for the detailed description for downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restricted items.

(You cannot download it using the site function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use it for free of charge. You will be separately charged communication fees when downloaded.)

- Setting environment and note

A "FOMA USB Cable (optional)" is required to connect with a PC. You cannot use it for infrared exchange. For the other operation environments and supported OS refer to the download page "ソフトウェアのご紹介". Since the data link software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, refer to "Forwarding data by Infrared data exchange/cable connection" (P.392) as well.

You cannot transfer information downloaded using i-mode/i-appli to anywhere other than the FOMA terminal even using the Data Link Software according to the Copy Right Laws. You cannot transfer data prohibited to be output outside the FOMA terminal, either.

### ■ Supported OS

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)

\* PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

### ■ Before using the product

- NEC Corporation ("this company") does not guarantee to users regarding licensed programs operation, intended purpose compatibility, compatibility or reliability regarding result of use, that this software is free from defects whatsoever. Any problems or difficulties arising with regard to the licensed programs are the responsibility of the customer and any costs will be borne by the customer.
- This company does not take any responsibility about the damage based on the reparations responsibility of having been made to the users from the damage (the case where our company foresees per damage generating, or it may foresee being included.) produced from a user's lost profits and the special situation, and the third person in any cases. Moreover, a user shall not perform any claim to our company, either.

Inquiries about Data Link Software

NEC (NEC Mobile Terminals Sales Promotion Division)

 **0120-102-001 (Japanese only)**

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm  
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

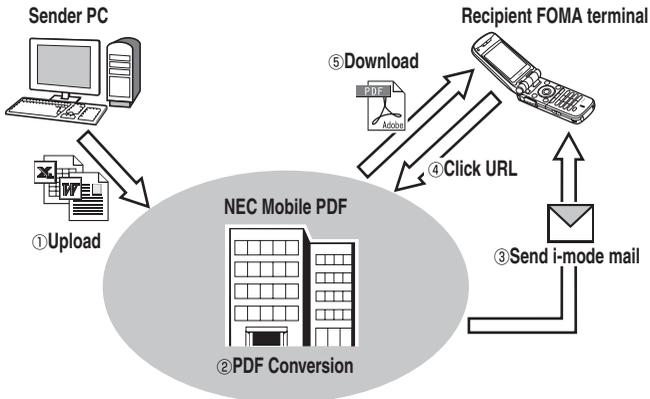
\* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

## NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.  
(Supported only by N901iS As of June, 2005)

- Some files cannot be converted to PDF data, depending on the formats or contents.
- This service may terminate without notice.

### NEC Mobile PDF flow



Visit the following site for the service details:

NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)

<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Inquiries about NEC Mobile PDF

NEC (NEC Mobile Terminals Sales Promotion Division)

 **0120-102-001** (Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm  
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

\* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

## Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) of Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following webpage:  
<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>
  - To download, you need PC to access Internet. You are charged for the Internet communication to download the software.
  - See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

## Playing i-motion (including music) created on PC on the FOMA terminal

Convert songs on CD you purchased to i-motion data, and then play them on the FOMA terminal.

- Use the built-in stereo speaker or flat-plug stereo earphone (optional) as music player to enjoy i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card (P.378) using the FOMA terminal or PC.

- The replay continues even if you fold the FOMA terminal during the replay. Use side keys (⏮ ⏭) to adjust the volume.
- You can play all songs in the folder continuously (played repeatedly on this FOMA terminal). → P.360

- The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store.

- \* You can enjoy the music stored on the miniSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe on the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright.
- \* Do not copy or move the music stored on the miniSD memory card to PC or other media.



### 1 Use the conversion software to convert a song or movie to play on the FOMA terminal into the AAC-format, and then save it to PC

For information on how to use the software, check with the manufacturer.

### 2 Copy the converted file to the miniSD memory card

Copy the converted file using PC equipped with the reader/writer of the miniSD memory card. The FOMA terminal is also available as the reader/writer of the miniSD memory card using the FOMA USB Cable (optional). → P.387

#### ■ To copy the converted file to the miniSD memory card

- ① Rename the converted file to "MOLaaa.3gp"

\*: "aaa" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF using half-pitch numbers between 0 and 9 and half-pitch alphabets between A and F.

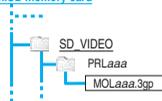
<Example: The file name is "Music data.xxx">  
"Music data.3gp" (Change the extension to "3gp")



"MOLaaa.3gp" (Change the file name to "MOLaaa")

- ② Make the "PRLaaa" folder under the "SD\_VIDEO" folder on the miniSD memory card as shown on the right, and then copy the file to the "PRLaaa" folder
  - If the miniSD memory card does not contain the "SD\_VIDEO" folder, create the folder tree as shown on the right on PC.  
Folder tree on the miniSD memory card → P.380

miniSD memory card



### 3 Insert the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal and then play the music

Select the file copied in Step 2.

Setting "Set repeat play" (P.360) to "ON" plays all songs repeatedly in the display order starting with the selected file in the folder.

How to play i-motion → P.355

#### NOTE

- If the mail "Receiving display" (P.281) is set to "Alarm preferred", receiving mail, Message Request/Free while playing music may stop the playback and change the screen to the receiving screen.

# Malfunction Checklist

- Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.  
Updating software → P.555

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
The FOMA terminal does not turn on. (The FOMA terminal cannot be used.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the battery pack properly attached?</li> <li>● Has the battery run out?</li> </ul>	P.40 P.45
The animation similar to the one shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The battery has run out. Charge the battery pack.</li> </ul> 	P.45
The "外出" icon appears and I hear a busy tone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Are you outside the service area or in a location with poor radio wave reception?</li> </ul> 	P.46
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Keypad dial lock set?</li> <li>● Is Self mode set?</li> <li>● Is Restrict dialing set?</li> </ul>	P.148 P.153 P.150
I dialed a number and initiated the call, but all I hear is a busy tone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Did you start dialing without waiting for the dial tone first?</li> <li>● Did you dial the area code?</li> <li>● Is the "外出" icon displayed?</li> <li>● Is "Please wait" displayed?</li> </ul>	P.50 P.50 P.46
I cannot receive calls. Or I cannot hear the ring tone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Are any of the following functions set?                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Restrictions                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Call rejection</li> <li>· Call forwarding</li> <li>· Ringing time</li> <li>· Set mute seconds</li> <li>· Reject unknown</li> <li>In Call setting w/o ID   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Not supported: Reject</li> <li>· User unset: Reject</li> </ul> </li> <li>· Payphone: Reject</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?</li> <li>● Is the FOMA terminal set to Driving mode?</li> <li>● Is All lock set?</li> <li>● Is Self mode set?</li> <li>● Is the start time of voice mail or call forwarding service set to 0?</li> <li>● Is caller ID request set to Activate?</li> <li>● Is mova valid with the dual network service?</li> <li>● You may have set the Ring volume to "Silent".</li> </ul>	P.150  P.152  P.153 P.151  P.119 P.70 P.143 P.153 P.455 P.459 P.461 P.461 P.68
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sound when a call comes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" set to longer time (such as 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.</li> </ul>	P.152
The records of dialed calls/ received calls, redial, received address /sent address disappear automatically.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Keypad dial lock" set?</li> <li>● Is "PIM lock" set?</li> </ul>	P.148 P.147
The Neuropointer does not move quickly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Adjust the slide setting.</li> </ul>	P.130



Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
Characters are displayed instead of images or i-motion.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If one of the following is displayed the image or i-motion is one that cannot be selected by the function in use. Select an image or i-motion for which the following is not displayed. "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data". However, "No preview data" is also displayed for images other than 176 dots wide × 144 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high, and only the audio may playback.</li> <li>● If "ASF" is displayed, the preview display is not displayed but the image or i-motion can be played.</li> </ul>	P.337 P.355  P.355
When illumination flashes for incoming mail, the color is not the color I specified.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illumination that may be set to the mail address.</li> <li>● The incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illumination that may be set to the group.</li> <li>● The incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illuminations that may be set to the group and to the mail address.</li> <li>● If you receive two mails or more, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illumination that is set to the last received mail address.</li> <li>● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as the mail address and set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address.</li> <li>● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address?</li> <li>● If you receive SMS, a distinctive illumination set for the phone number in the Phonebook flashes.</li> </ul>	P.108     P.97 P.108
The mail ring tone sounds but no mail is received.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Message notification" set? The mail ring tone sounds to notify that the number of voice mails increases 1 or more additional voice mails were recorded while you were outside the service area or the FOMA terminal was powered off, and then you come in the service area again or turn on the FOMA terminal.</li> </ul>	P.456
The FOMA terminal cannot be charged (The charge indicator does not turned on).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal?</li> <li>● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket?</li> <li>● Is the adapter properly attached to the FOMA terminal? (If you are using the AC adapter, make sure that the AC adapter connector is firmly plugged into the FOMA terminal or desktop holder).</li> </ul>	P.40 P.43 P.44
The key does not sound when I press it (No key tone).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"?</li> <li>● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?</li> </ul>	P.117 P.119
I cannot answer voice call/ videophone calls using Any key answer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"?</li> <li>● You cannot answer video-phone calls using Any key answer.</li> </ul>	P.64
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the earpiece speaker placed properly against your ear?</li> <li>● Is anything such as seal obstructing the earpiece speaker?</li> <li>● Is anything obstructing the speaker during hands-free?</li> <li>● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.</li> </ul>	P.24  P.67
The other party's voice is too high during calls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Did you change the "Volume setting"? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.</li> </ul>	P.67
The other party cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is anything obstructing the mouthpiece?</li> </ul>	P.24
The message "All lock" and the "  " mark appear.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter your security code, and cancel All lock.</li> </ul>	P.145
I cannot operate the FOMA terminal using the side keys when it is folded.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?</li> </ul>	P.148
I cannot check missed calls using  when the FOMA terminal is folded.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"?</li> <li>● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?</li> </ul>	P.71 P.148
The date is displayed in Japanese.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Japanese selected in "Select language"?</li> </ul>	P.46
The display is dim.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the brightness setting of the display light set to "Level 1"?</li> </ul>	P.126

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
The display, Image display and display light of the keypad do not turn on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Lighting of the display light set to "OFF"?</li> <li>● Hold down  for 1 second or longer to turn the display light on or off.</li> </ul> <p>Please note that the display light turns off when you hold down  for 1 second or longer during operation such as creating a mail.</p>	P.126
The motion of the screen during a videophone call is not smooth.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "Display screen size" of "Disp. setting VP" set to "Large"? Set it to "Normal".</li> </ul>	P.89
When I receive an incoming call immediately after turning on the power, the phone number is displayed but the name stored in the Phonebook is not.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The Phonebook function may not be available during that time.</li> </ul>	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after  has been held down for 1 second or longer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When Phonebook, etc. has reached full capacity, data verification takes some time.</li> </ul>	P.108
The call does not finish even if I press  .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● This may happen when you perform operations using keys ( to ,  and ) according to the recorded announcement. In this case, press  again.</li> </ul>	—
Nothing appears on the display and  and  are flashing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The FOMA terminal is in Power saver mode. Press any keys to cancel Power saver mode.</li> </ul>	P.126
No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens when a call comes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens until the set time has passed when you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the Phonebook or from a caller who does not notify its caller ID, if "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" is set to other than 0 second.</li> </ul>	P.152
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase while talking on the phone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Operate "Reset call duration".</li> </ul>	P.437
When I receive SMS, the name stored in the Phonebook is not displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Did you correctly store the phone number of the sender on the phone number line () of the Phonebook?</li> </ul>	P.97
Mails are not automatically filtered.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If the other party's mail address is "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the telephone number only in the Auto-sort settings.</li> <li>● If the other party's mail address is other than "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the complete address including the domain name in the Auto-sort settings to be automatically allocated.</li> </ul>	P.271
Mails are not automatically received.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".</li> </ul>	P.257
N901iS communication setting file (driver) is not installed or data communication is not available.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have set USB mode setting to "miniSD mode", set it to "Communication mode".</li> </ul>	P.387
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-appli cannot be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is "PIM lock" set?</li> </ul>	P.147
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-appli are not accessible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have not set "Host selection" to "i-mode", set it to "i-mode" to use the i-mode.</li> <li>● If you started subscribing to the i-mode Service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.</li> </ul>	P.217 —
Even if mail has been received, no incoming call notification operation (incoming call ring time, vibrator, incoming call lamp) is performed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Haven't you set "Mail/Msg. ring time" to "OFF"?</li> <li>● Haven't you set "Receiving display" to "Operation preferred"?</li> </ul>	P.118 P.280
Sent mail does not remain in the Outbox.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Haven't you set "Sort all" to the folder of a mail-connected i-appli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-appli and then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm it.</li> </ul>	P.271
Received mail does not remain in the Inbox and  does not disappear.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Doesn't  appear on the folder of a mail-connected i-appli in the Inbox? Or, haven't you set "Sort all" to the folder of a mail-connected i-appli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-appli and then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm.</li> </ul>	P.263 P.301

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
“添付ファイル削除” (Attached file deleted) displayed in mail.	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message.	P.232
Files attached to mail sent from a PC was deleted.	● If the image file is GIF-formatted, which was attached to mail sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 10,000 bytes can be received.	—
When I take pictures with the built-in camera, the images are flickered.	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. The flickering may be suppressed by changing the “Image tuning” setting.	P.174
Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera look too bright.	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with “Image tuning” set to “Mode 1 (50Hz)” or “Mode 2 (60Hz)”. Check the tuning and make sure it is reset to “Auto”.	P.174
Still images or movies look blurred.	● Set modes suited to the scene being shot.	P.174
When I attempt to display an image, “  ” appears. Or When I attempt to play for demonstration or see a preview, “  ” appears.	● “  ” may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed.	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the terminal or if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
When I record using Chance capture, the recording time has decreased.	● When you record using Chance capture, the control data will be saved with the movie data. It may shorten the recordable time.	—

# If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used by the i-mode Center as separators between transmitted errors.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Accept call Already set full" "Call forwarding Already set full" "Reject unknown Already set full" "Restrict dialing Already set full" "Voice mail Already set full"	● These messages are displayed if you attempt to add the Restriction setting to Phonebook when 20 items have already been set in the Phonebook. Perform the desired setting again after canceling the unnecessary Phonebook settings.	P.150
"Activating keypad dial lock"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when keypad dial lock is set.	P.150
"Activating mail security Cannot delete"	● You cannot delete the mail-connected i-appli or its folder because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli is protected. To delete both the mail-connected i-appli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete the mail-connected i-appli only, select "NO" when you receive a message asking whether to delete the folder used for the mail-connected i-appli.	P.149
"Activating mail security Cannot download"	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-appli, you cannot download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli. To download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli, deactivate the security.	P.149
"Activating PIM lock"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when PIM lock is set.	P.147
"Activating record display OFF"	● Because "OFF" is selected in "Record display set", you cannot use "Received calls", "Redial/Dialed calls", "Received address" or "Sent address". To access these records, select "ON" in "Record display set".	P.149
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when "Restrict dialing" is set.	P.148
"Activating self mode"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when self mode is set.	P.153
"Already saved"	● This message appears when you attempt to save i-motion consecutively with the data acquisition screen.	—
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears if i-mode mail received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to mail or take the file out of the FOMA terminal when you attempt to forward i-mode mail. Press  to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press the "Cancel" key on the "Authentication" screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through. Press  to return to the screen displayed before the message appeared.	—
"Calling now Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you display the task menu during a call and select an unavailable function.	P.419 P.536
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file has reached 5000 full-pitch characters' worth.	P.250
"Cannot save attached file"	● Displayed when you receive mail with an attached file that cannot be stored using infrared communication, OBEX communication or importing from the miniSD memory card.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● This message appears when you "Import & add" one that has the same data and time as an existing schedule entry.	—
"Cannot use network transmission"	● This message appears while starting up software when "Network setting" is set to "OFF". Set the "Network setting" to "Check every run" or "ON".	P.305
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →P.378

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. You cannot establish TLS/SSL communication with this site.</li> </ul>	—
"Check new message is set all OFF"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Check new message" cannot be done because "Set check new message" is set for "Do not check" for all. Set the item to check in "Set check new message".</li> </ul>	P.283
"Connection failed (403)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.</li> </ul>	—
"Connection failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" of Connection setting.</li> <li>The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.</li> </ul>	P.217 —
"Connection failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set "Caller ID notification" to "ON" and try again.</li> </ul>	P.48
"Connection interrupted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The i-mode connection was lost due to poor reception. Move to a location with stronger reception to resume using i-mode.</li> <li>If this message appears when reception is strong and "Y" is indicated, the site you are trying to connect to is busy. Try connecting again later.</li> </ul>	P.196 —
"Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when a streaming type i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion size exceeds 2M bytes.</li> </ul>	P.316
"Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when a normal type i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion size exceeds 500K bytes.</li> </ul>	P.316
"Could not read"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cannot import data due to some kind of error. Replace with a new miniSD memory card and import again.</li> </ul>	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum size and the New mail screen is displayed with the excess part deleted.</li> </ul>	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode mail to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 full-pitch characters or fewer.</li> </ul>	—
"Data size is too big to save" "Memory full" "Not enough memory"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data in the miniSD memory card and export again.</li> </ul>	P.384
"Desktop icon is full"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if you attempt to paste a new icon when there are already 15 icons pasted on the standby display. Delete desktop icons that you no longer need and retry pasting.</li> </ul>	P.133 P.134
"Downloading interrupted" "Unable to download"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displayed if a communication error occurs or data contains an error when trying to download data such as a melody, Chara-den or DL dictionary.</li> </ul>	—
"Draft mail is full"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>New mail and SMS cannot be composed because there are already 20 saved messages. Edit and send a saved message or delete some saved messages and try again.</li> </ul>	P.251
"Editing now Cannot delete"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if you attempt to delete a message that is in the Draft and being edited.</li> </ul>	—
"Enter correct network security code"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed when an incorrect Network security code is entered for a function that requires the Network security code. Enter the correct Network security code. Note that if you forget your network security code, you must visit an NTT DoCoMo outlet with your FOMA terminal, your FOMA card (UIM) and some form of identification (driver's license, etc.) proving that you are the subscriber.</li> </ul>	P.140
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when the Flash movie cannot be displayed due to an error found in the data.</li> </ul>	—
"Failed to export all"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Due to an error, the data could not be exported. Insert a new miniSD memory card and try exporting again.</li> </ul>	—
"Failed to export one"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Due to an error, the data could not be exported. Insert a new miniSD memory card and try exporting again.</li> </ul>	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Format miniSD for your phone"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This miniSD memory card is abnormal such as an unformatted card. Format the miniSD memory card again.</li> </ul>	P.386
"Forwarding number is not set"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed when you have subscribed to the "Call forwarding service" and try to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call forwarding" from the Function menu without setting the forwarding destination.</li> </ul>	P.458
"Frame number of this page is not supported"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Web page cannot be displayed because it exceeds the maximum frame number supported by full browser.</li> </ul>	—
"Function cannot operate any more"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  and quit another function before proceeding.</li> </ul>	—
"i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error". "Software terminated due to security error"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The i-appli or the i-appli stand-by display (including the i-appli DX) terminated because you attempted to execute unauthorized operation.</li> </ul>	P.306 P.313
"Input error (205)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears after you enter data on a site or Web page and send the data. Pressing  resets the entered text (the setting or entry made is sent and this operation does not cancel sending).</li> </ul>	P.201
"Insert miniSD"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The miniSD memory card may not be inserted in the FOMA terminal or may not be inserted correctly. Insert the miniSD memory card correctly.</li> </ul>	P.378
"Insert UIM"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.</li> </ul>	P.38
"Invalid address"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The addresses contain a "," and are invalid. Delete any ",".</li> <li>The addresses of the received mail contain more than 50 half-pitch characters and not valid for send replies.</li> <li>SMS cannot be sent because the addresses contain a character other than numerals, "#", "X" and space. Delete excessive digits or any character other than "#", "X" and space.</li> </ul>	—
"Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you attempt to obtain streaming-type i-motion when "i-motion type" is set to "Normal type".</li> </ul>	P.319
"Invalid UIM auto start not possible"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if you attempt to perform auto start i-appli that is restricted by FOMA card operational restriction function.</li> </ul>	P.39
"Invalid UIM requested service not available"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you select the desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.</li> <li>This message appears when you select a screen memo, Message Request or Message Free protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.</li> </ul>	P.39
"Invalid UIM requested software can't start"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if you attempt to specify and perform i-appli that is restricted by FOMA card operational restriction function.</li> </ul>	P.39
"Invalid URL"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://") when setting the Home URL in the "Home URL" setting or another URL. Enter a URL correctly.</li> </ul>	P.204 P.216 P.327
"Memory is full Cannot receive no more"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inbox is full and no more i-mode mail or SMS can be received. Delete or cancel protection for mail that you no longer need until  (red) disappears and perform Check new message and Check new SMS.</li> </ul>	P.258 P.273 P.296
"Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook added as secret data when the Secret mode or Secret only mode is not set.</li> <li>This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook set to Automatic display. Press  to return to the Phonebook edit screen. Select , and enter a vacant memory number to add it.</li> </ul>	P.145 P.105
"Memory shortage Return and edit again"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can insert up to 10 images to Deco-mail. However, in some operations, this message may be displayed even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select "YES" and display the compose message display, and then re-edit the message.</li> </ul>	—

\* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →P.378

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Memory shortage Return to Full Browser menu"	● Process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the full browser menu.	—
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	● Process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the i-mode menu.	—
"Memory shortage"	● The software program cannot be run due to memory shortage.	—
"Message too long to add header & signature"	● The header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward i-mode mail because the character count exceeds 5,000 full-pitch with the header/signature added.	—
"Message too long to add header"	● The size of the text and header combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters worth and the header cannot be pasted.	—
"Message too long to add signature"	● The size of the text and signature combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters worth and the signature cannot be pasted.	—
"Movie is too big to attach Cannot compose"	● This message appears if the size of a movie shot with the built-in camera in the "Movie mode" has turned out to be too large to attach to i-mode mail when you select "Compose message" from the function menu.	P.250
"No content is available (204)"	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the connected site, etc.	—
"No data"	● This message is displayed when there is no Phonebook that matches the search conditions when performing Phonebook search.	P.101
"No requested Chara-den"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted Chara-den and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested i-motion"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a movie/i-motion that was deleted and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested image"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted image and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested melody"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted melody and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested software"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted i-appli program and attempt to execute. ● Displayed if there is no corresponding software when the i-appli is started from mail, the infrared exchange function, the bar code reader or the IC card.	—
"No response (408)"	● No response has been received from a site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
(During infrared exchange) "No response Retry?"	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared data ports are aligned on the same level. Select "YES" and press  to try again.	P.392
"No Switch"	● This message is displayed when switching from voicephone to videophone is not possible during a communication because other party is in a packet communication (including i-mode). Retry switch again after checking the status of the other party.	P.52
"Not correspond contents"	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents incompatible with the FOMA terminal.	—
"Operation may not run properly Cancel operation?"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "YES" to stop the operation. Select "NO" to continue with start up.	P.560
"Operation may not run properly Canceling operation"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to stop the operation.	P.560
"Operation may not run properly Delete data?"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "YES" to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, a message is displayed so select "OK". Select "NO" to stop the operation.	P.560
"Operation may not run properly Delete data"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, a message is displayed so select "OK".	P.560
"Operation may not run properly"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to continue with start up.	P.560

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Other function active Cannot activate"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation that is unavailable when another function is running.	—
"Out of service"	● This message appears when you try to use the i-mode service outside the service area or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move to a location where "Y" appears on the display to use the i-mode service.	P.196
"Page is not found (404)"	● The site is not found.It may not exist.	—
"Password is not correct (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES".	—
"Phonebook is full"	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add the 701st phone number or mail address to a FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook. Delete an unneeded phone number or mail address already stored in the Phonebook before adding the new one.	P.105
"PIN1 code blocked"	● This message is displayed when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press  to display the PUK code entry screen. Then, enter the PUK code properly to cancel the lock.	P.142
"Please set time to obtain data"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain i-motion data with replay period restriction when the "Set time" setting is not made.Set the "Set time".	P.47
"Please wait"	● Dialing is restricted. Try using voicephone, videophone or i-mode later. You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118). However, a connection may not be established depending on conditions.	—
"PUK code blocked"	● This message appears if you attempt to power on or perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) when PUK code is blocked.Contact a DoCoMo service counter.	P.141
"Reading UIM Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) while FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
"Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion"	● This message appears when retrieval of a streaming type i-motion cannot be completed because the i-motion size exceeds 2M bytes.	P.316
"Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion"	● This message appears when retrieval of a normal type i-motion cannot be completed because the i-motion size exceeds 500K bytes.	P.316
"Replace with a new one or check the disk"	● Check the disk of the miniSD memory card.	P.384
"Replay period has expired Cannot play"	● The i-motion cannot be replayed because the replay period is expired.	—
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	● Displayed when you try to play an i-motion after you have reached the limit on the number of plays or the valid playback period. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.	—
"Replay period has expired"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for an i-motion which replay period or number expired, and attempt to execute.	—
"Replay period has not yet started"	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with a replay period set before the period.	—
"Requested software unavailable"	● Displayed if the specified software was not able to be started when trying to start the software with the infrared exchange function, the bar code reader or IC card.	—
"Requested software unavailable"	● Displayed if the software was not able to be started when trying to start the software from a site or mail.	—
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal is expired. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO". ● This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or Web page when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting. ● This message appears if you are asked to send a client certificate while connecting to an SSL-compatible site or Web page.	P.223 P.47 P.199

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Root certificate is not valid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when an SSL certificate with the "Certificate" setting set to "Invalid" is received. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.</li> </ul>	P.223
"Root certificate is not valid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when a TLS/SSL certificate with the "Certificate" setting set to "Invalid" is received. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.</li> </ul>	P.223
"Secret data"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed when you try to search for a memory number specifying a secret data number during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.</li> <li>This message is displayed when you try to dial secret data with two-touch dialing during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.</li> </ul>	P.145
"Service is not registered"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The i-mode service is not available because you do not subscribe to the i-mode service. Subscription is necessary to use the i-mode service.</li> <li>If you started subscribing to the i-mode service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.</li> </ul>	—
"Service unavailable"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed if you perform network service operation when you are outside the service area or where radio waves cannot reach. Perform network service operation after moving to an area where "📶" is displayed.</li> </ul>	—
"Set time"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if you attempt to perform operation requiring the "Set time" setting when the setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting before operation.</li> </ul>	P.47
"Size of this page is not supported"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The data received from a site or Web page has exceeded the maximum size of one page. Reception is interrupted and the data obtained up to that point is displayed.</li> <li>This message appears when the maximum size has been exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den.</li> </ul>	—
"SMS in UIM filled"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The FOMA card (UIM) is full and no more SMS can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM). To store SMS, delete unwanted SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) until "📧" disappears.</li> </ul>	P.274
"Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since the mail-connected i-oppli compatible with the selected mail folder is deleted, the software program cannot run. Refer to the mail of the folder from the function menu.</li> </ul>	P.270
"Software is stopped because of error"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.</li> </ul>	—
"Software upgraded"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The present software is updated and upgrading does not take place.</li> </ul>	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if not all addresses are valid when you attempt to send reply i-mode mail to two or more addresses.</li> </ul>	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is prohibited to attach to mail or take out of the FOMA terminal the file attached to i-mode mail that you attempt to forward. Press  to delete the file that cannot be attached to mail or taken out of the FOMA terminal.</li> </ul>	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears if connection to an SSL-compliant site or Web page was not established. Retry connection.</li> </ul>	—
"SSL session failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error in the communication of the authentication for an SSL connection.</li> </ul>	—
"Syntax error (XXX)" "URL address is not valid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in XXX.</li> </ul>	—
"Talking now Cannot operate"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message is displayed when operation of a function that cannot be performed during calls is attempted.</li> </ul>	P.418 P.536
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message may appear while you are viewing a site or Web page. Select "YES" to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select "NO".</li> </ul>	P.200
"The data may not be replayed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when i-motion in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) has been obtained.</li> </ul>	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".</li> <li>This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or Web page when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting.</li> </ul>	P.223 P.47
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when the CN of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".</li> </ul>	P.223
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with no replay count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.</li> </ul>	—
"This data can no longer be replayed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you select the desktop icon for an i-motion that completed replay number and attempt to execute.</li> </ul>	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you attempt to obtain unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.</li> </ul>	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".</li> </ul>	P.223
"This software contains an error Unable to download"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.</li> </ul>	—
"This software contains an error"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.</li> </ul>	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The software you attempt to obtain is not supported by the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.</li> </ul>	—
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displayed if a FOMA card (UIM) that cannot be used on this FOMA terminal may be inserted. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.</li> </ul>	P.38
"Time out"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connection to a site, mail sending process, etc. is interrupted due to the connection timeout time set in "Set connection timeout" is up. Retry connecting to the site or sending the mail later.</li> </ul>	P.217
"TLS/SSL session failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error in the communication of the authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.</li> </ul>	—
"Too much data was entered"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Too many characters are entered into the text box, as a URL, etc. and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.</li> </ul>	P.201
"Unable to display because of Memory shortage"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The operation will be interrupted because of memory shortage. When composing an i-mode mail, the number of characters to input may be limited up to 5,000 full-pitch characters depending on conditions such as the number of activated tasks or combination of character types.</li> </ul>	—
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when the data to be received exceeds the maximum size and cannot be received.</li> </ul>	—
"Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion replay restriction data contains an error.</li> </ul>	—
"Unable to receive"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you try to obtain i-motion and communication error occurs.</li> </ul>	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.</li> </ul>	—
"Unable to support this card"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This miniSD memory card is not compatible with the FOMA terminal. Use an appropriate miniSD memory card.</li> </ul>	P.378
"URL address changed (301)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.</li> </ul>	P.133 P.205 P.216 P.327
"URL is too long to add"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be pasted and cannot be pasted onto a desktop icon or i-mode mail.</li> </ul>	—
"URL is too long to register"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.</li> </ul>	—
"Wrong password"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when you enter the wrong password on the password entry screen in displaying or downloading a PDF document.</li> </ul>	P.402

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This message appears when a wrong security code has been entered for a function requiring entry of the security code. Enter the correct security code. Note that if you forget your security code, you must visit an NTT DoCoMo outlet with your FOMA terminal, your FOMA card (UIM) and some form of identification (driver's license, etc.) proving that you are the subscriber.</li> </ul>	P.140
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because no user certificate is downloaded.</li> </ul>	P.224
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because your user certificate has expired.</li> </ul>	P.224
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cannot display an SSL-compatible site because the DoCoMo CA certificate is set to be invalid.</li> <li>Cannot display an SSL-compatible site because the CA certificate or the DoCoMo CA certificate has expired.</li> </ul>	—
"i-αppli To" function is not set"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When trying to start the software from a site, mail, the infrared exchange function, the bar code reader or the IC card, it does not start because the specified software is not permitted to be interfaced.</li> </ul>	P.310

#### NOTE

- The transmitted "mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" are used by your IP (Internet service provider) to identify you and to provide information tailored to your needs. It is also used to determine whether content provided by your IP (Internet service provider) can be used on your mobile phone.
- Disclosed "mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) card manufacturer numbers" are sent via the Internet to your IP (Internet service provider) and is subject to possible interception by third parties. This procedure does not provide personal information such as your phone number, address, age or gender to your IP (Internet service provider).

## Warranty and After-Sales Service

### Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check the contents, the information about "the shop or date of purchase", etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- The stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through the damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. If you have a PC (Windows98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated Data Link Software (P.538) and then back up the data on the PC. Repairing the FOMA terminal cannot transfer most of the data downloaded via i-mode or i-αppli, complying with the copyright law.

### After-sales service

#### ● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before having your FOMA terminal repaired, see the "Malfunction Checklist" in this manual. If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

#### ● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to take your warranty card with you.

### ■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Be sure to take the warranty card with you when having your FOMA terminal repaired. Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if you cannot show the warranty card or if the malfunction or damage has resulted from improper use.
- Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction has resulted from the use of devices or consumables that are not specified by NTT DoCoMo.

### ■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

The FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired if the water reaction is found on the seal, if corrosion is found to result from water exposure, condensation or perspiration, or if the internal board is damaged or deformed. Even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, a charge will be made as the repair is not under warranty.

### ■ After the warranty period has expired

You can request to have your FOMA terminal repaired, although a charge will be made for the repair.

### ■ Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. The repair can be performed during the stock period. The repair may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

#### ■ Important

- Do not attempt to adapt the FOMA terminal or its accessories by yourself.
  - Doing so may cause fire, injury or malfunction.
  - To prevent the cross talk or network failure, the technical standard of the FOMA terminal or FOMA card is provided by law. You are not allowed to use the FOMA terminal or FOMA card that does not comply with the standard.
  - If you have adapted the FOMA terminal (a part has been replaced, adapted, coated, etc.) by yourself, the repair can be accepted only if you restore the FOMA terminal to the default (the factory settings). You may be rejected depending on the adaptation.
  - Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction or damage has resulted from adaptation.
- Do not peel off the model name seal attached to the FOMA terminal.
- The model name seal plays the part of the certificate verifying that the FOMA terminal complies with the technical standard. If the seal cannot be confirmed because it has been peeled off or replaced, the conformity to the technical standard cannot be standard, and then the repair may be unable to be accepted.
- The settings of the functions or the information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to the malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. If this is the case, specify the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for neuropointer key, speaker and earpiece speaker of the FOMA terminal. A cash card, bank card, etc, which is easily affected by the magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components.
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to the repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired depending on the condition.

## Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for alteration or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your mobile phone may alter or erase the data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your mobile phone with the substitute instead of repairing, when most of the data cannot be transferred to the substitute. As for your FOMA terminal, the images or melodies downloaded from the official i-mode site will be transferred when repairing. (Some contents cannot be transferred.)

## Updating software

Check whether it is necessary to update software on the FOMA terminal. Download and update the software via packet communication if necessary.

You will be notified of the update in the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせ&ヘルプ” (News & Help) of iMenu.

- A charge will not be made for the packet communication to update the software.
- There are two ways to update:
  - Now update : Updates immediately.
  - Reserved update : Updates automatically on the date and time you specified.
- You can update the software if the i-mode host is set as the user defined host.
- Updating the software (downloading and installing) may take some time.
- When you update the software, an SSL connection is established with the server (the software update server managed by DoCoMo). Validate the certificate beforehand (default setting: Valid. Setting procedure → P.223).
- Before updating the software, charge the battery to the full.
- It is recommended that you update the software without moving in a place where the reception is good (the signal strength indicator shows three bars).
  - \* If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, try to update again in a place where the reception is good.
- Updating the software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the Enter PIN1 code screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot receive a phone call or mail if you do not enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot update software:
  - When FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
  - When FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
  - When PIN lock is set
  - When PUK code is locked
  - When date and time is not set
  - You receive a call
  - While receiving mail/SMS/Message
  - During a voice call
  - During a videophone call
  - During i-mode connection
  - During 64K data communication
  - During packet communication
  - During All lock is set
  - When Self mode is set
  - When PIM lock is set
  - When you are out of service area
  - When packet dialing is locked
  - While using mova terminal with dual network service
  - When miniSD reader/writer function works
  - While other functions are running
- You cannot use other functions while updating the software. However, you can receive voice calls during downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” is displayed when you check for new software updates.
- After updating the software, the displayed i-mode center storage status icon disappears. Also, if the receive option is set to “ON” and mail is received while updating the software, the mail notification screen may not be displayed after the software has been updated.
- When you update the software, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is not used for any other purpose than updating the software.
- You can update the software without affecting data such as the phonebook, camera images, and downloaded data. However, be aware that depending on the state of your FOMA terminal you may not be able to protect data.
- It is recommended that you back up important data. (Note that there is some data, such as downloaded data, that cannot be backed up.)
- If the software download fails, “Cannot rewrite software” is displayed and you cannot operate the FOMA terminal. If that happens, take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.

### NOTE

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating the software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- When the software update is completed without operation for confirmation, you will see the desktop icon “” (Update complete) on the standby screen. Select “” and enter the security code to see the detail results of the update.

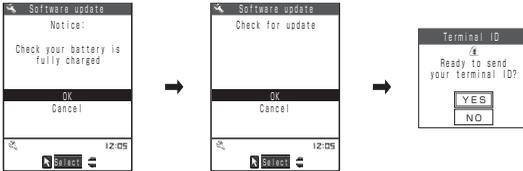
## Checking whether you need software update

### 1 “Other settings” ▶ “Software update” ▶ Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

### 2 Check the notices and whether you need to update the software

At this point, information specific to your mobile phone must be sent to the server.



### 3 Displays the check result



#### ■ When the display is “Update is needed”

- ▶ Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. → P.556

Select “Reserve” to update on a specified time. → P.557



#### ■ When the display says “No update is needed”

- ▶

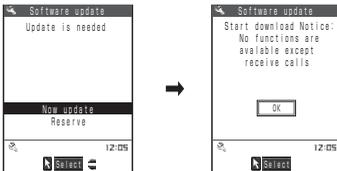
Continue using your FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

## Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

### 1 “Check result screen” (P.556) ▶ “Now update” ▶ Press when “Start download” is indicated

Downloading will start immediately.

Download will begin after a while, even if you do not press .



### 2 After the download is finished and then the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, press

The software will begin rewriting.

Rewrite will begin after a while, even if you do not press . It may take time to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

When the software is rewritten, the FOMA terminal will reload.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check the update has been completed. When you see the message "Software update is complete" press **OK**. Software update is complete.



#### NOTE

- If you stop downloading before the download is completed, the data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update begins automatically without having to select any items such as menu.
- The display on the right may be shown if the server is busy.  
In that case, select "Reserve" to perform the reserved update.



### Selecting the reservation date and time to update software <Reserved update>

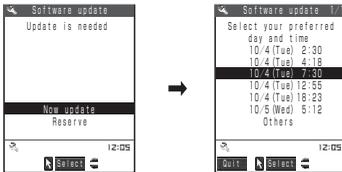
If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can select the time to startup Software update by communicating with the server beforehand.

<Example: Reserving at 7:30 on October 4 (Tuesday)>

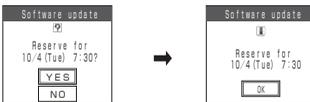
## 1 "Check result screen" (P.556) ▶ "Reserve" ▶ Select the timing

■ If you do not want to reserve any of the times displayed

▶ "Others" → P.558



## 2 Check the selected date and time ▶ "YES"



The software update is reserved.

■ If you want to change the date and/or time

▶ "NO"



The screen on the left appears at the reservation time and the FOMA terminal starts the software update automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal at a location with strong radio wave reception and show the standby screen before the reservation time. The rest of operation is same as "Updating software immediately <Immediate update>" (P.556).

#### NOTE

- The reservation time for the software updates will be based on the server's time.
- When the reservation time for the software update is the same as the alarm notification time, the software update is given priority.

## NOTE

- Note that software updating may not start up at the scheduled time if another function is being used.
- If the scheduled time has passed when you are on the phone or receiving mail, the software update is launched after you finish talking or receiving mail.
- If you perform "Initialize" (P.451) after the reservation procedure is complete, the software update does not start at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

## ● If you select "Others"

You can select the desired date and period of time after communicating with the server if you select "Others" at step 1 in P.557.

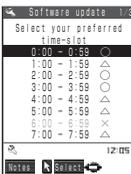
### 1 Select a desired date



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

- : Open
- △: Almost full
- None: Full

### 2 Select an hour



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

- : Open
- △: Almost full
- ×: Full

Select the period of time to display the candidates for the reservation time by communicating with the server again.

### 3 Confirm the software update time



If you check the selected time and select YES, you will communicate with the server again. The software update is reserved.

## ● Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

### 1 "Other settings" ▶ "Software update" ▶ Enter your security code

Security code → P.140

### 2 "Cancel"



#### ■ To accept the reservation date and time

▶ "OK"

#### ■ To change the reservation date and time

▶ "Change"

Once information specific to your mobile phone has been sent to the server, follow the procedure used when "Others" is selected. → P.558

### 3 When you see the message "Cancel this reservation?", select "YES"

At this point, information specific to your mobile phone is sent to the server.

NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone information (model and manufacturer number) to a third party.

When you see the message “The reservation is canceled”, press . The reservation is canceled.



## <Scanning function>

# Protecting the FOMA terminal from Harmful Data

### Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode mail, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program activation where the data or the program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. → P.559
- The Scanning function prevents the data that causes some problem from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing websites or receiving mail. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data that fixes the problem does not exist, the Scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies by the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute the pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.

## Setting the scanning function <Scanning function>

Default setting  
ON

When the Scanning function is set to “ON”, data and programs are automatically checked when they are executed.

**1** **“Lock/Security”** ▶ **“Scanning function”**

The “Scanning function screen” appears.

**2** **“Scan function”** ▶ **“ON”**

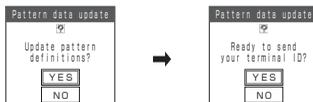
- If a message appears asking whether to change the settings  
▶ “YES”

\* If you enable the Scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed using one of 5 warning levels. → P.560



## Updating pattern data <Pattern data update>

**1** **“Scanning function screen” (P.559)** ▶ **“Pattern data update”** ▶ **“YES”**  
▶ **“YES”**



\* If no pattern data update is required, the “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” message appears. Continue using your current pattern data.

### NOTE

- When you update the pattern data, information specific to your mobile phone (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (Scanning function server managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use that information for any purpose other than scanning function.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- Update of pattern data will be suspended if a voice call is received or the terminal moves out the service area while updating the pattern data.

## Scannable data and the scanning results

### ■ Displaying problems detected by scanning



A list of up to 5 problems detected by the Scanning function is displayed, starting with the highest-level problem. If 6 or more problems were detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problems are omitted.

The rest of the problem elements (sixth and later), of which names are omitted, are displayed as follows:

1 - 9998 : The remaining count is displayed as it is.  
9999 or more : "Other:9999" is displayed regardless of the count.

### ■ Results of scanning

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
A warning message is displayed.	A warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to cancel the operation.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the operation ends.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to delete the data.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the data is deleted.

## Checking the Pattern Data Version <Definition version>

### 1 Scanning function screen (P.559) ▶ “Definition version”

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N901iS meets the MIC's\* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP\*\*\*.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.779 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh/emf/>  
 ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>  
 MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>  
 TELEC: [http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index\\_e.htm](http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm)  
 NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)  
 NEC: <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/> (Japanese only)

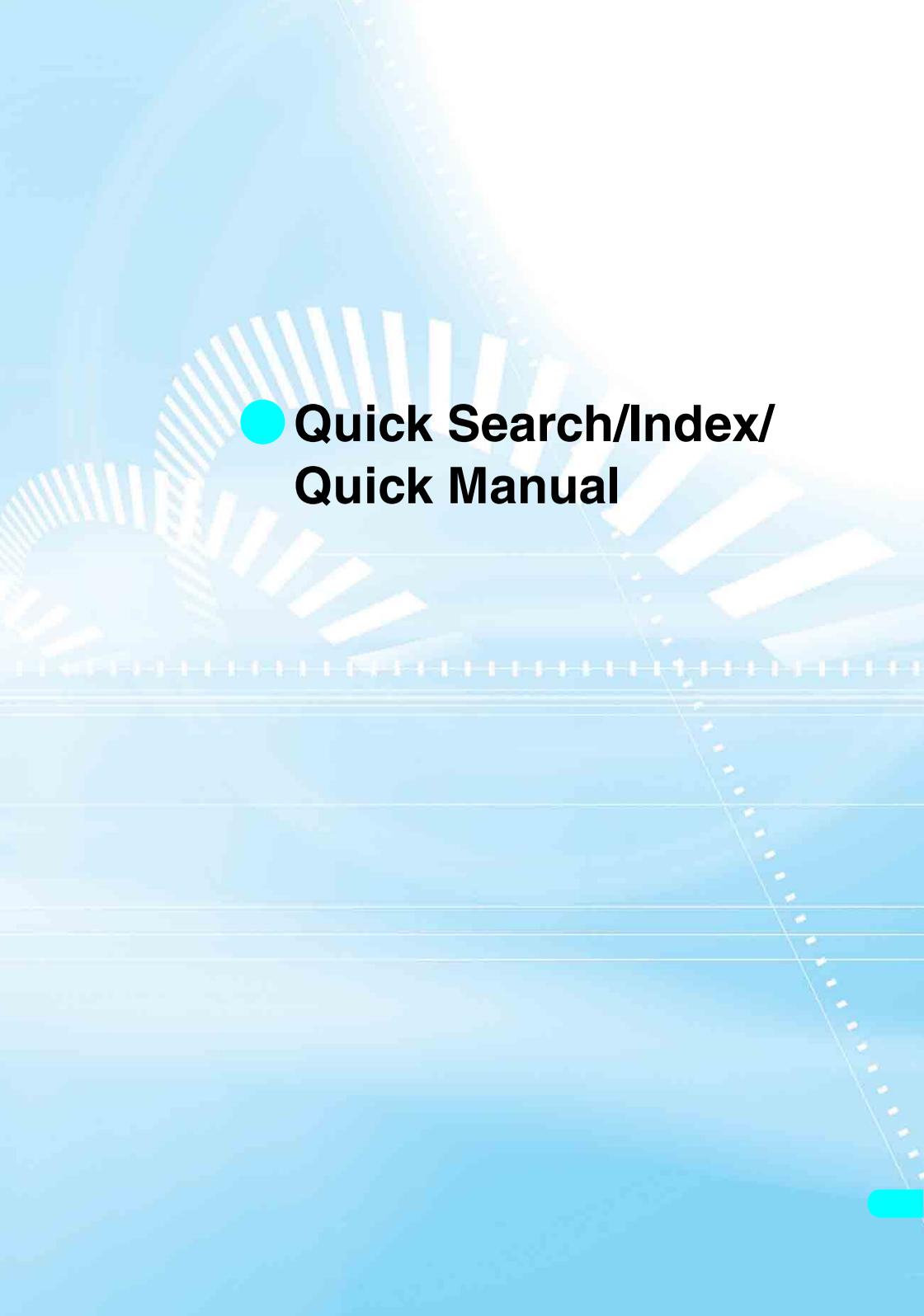
\* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

\*\* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

\*\*\* International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

[Memo]

[Memo]



● **Quick Search/Index/  
Quick Manual**

# Quick Search

Go to the page when you want to learn how to operate the function.

## Useful functions for talking

- Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID Caller ID notification **P.48**
- Adjust the volume during a call Volume **P.67**
- Hold the current call Hold call **P.52**
- Switch voice call to videophone call **P.52**



## When you cannot answer incoming call

- Have your party record voice message Record message **P.72**
- Set voice mail **P.455**
- Hold incoming call On hold **P.69**



## Change display or ring melody

- Mute keypad tone Keypad sound **P.117**
- Change ring melody Select ring tone **P.114**
- Set silent mode Manner mode **P.119**
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp Illumination **P.131**
- Set ring tone to specific party Utilities **P.108**
- Change standby screen Display setting **P.121**
- Display calendar on standby screen **P.124**
- Set clock Set time **P.47**
- Change font size **P.268**
- Learn what the icon means on screen **P.27**



## Master mail

- Send Deco-mail Deco-mail **P.242**
- Send image or melody Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail **P.250**
- Learn emotion-expressing mail **P.255**



## Master camera

- Change the size of image to shoot **P.161**
- Change shutter sound **P.164**
- Use zoom or light **P.177, 178**
- Save image to miniSD memory card **P.165**
- Display the shot My picture **P.337**
- Print the shot PictBridge print **P.411**



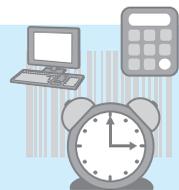
## Use your phone without worries

- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data Secret mode/Secret only mode **P.145**
- Reject unidentified call Call setting w/o ID **P.151**
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook Reject unknown **P.153**
- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand Remote all lock **P.143**
- Lock side keys Side keys guard **P.148**



## Miscellaneous

- Easily access the functions you often use Original menu **P.36**
- Save battery life Display light (Power saver mode) **P.126**
- Use as calculator Calculator **P.439**
- Read QR code or bar code Bar code reader **P.179**
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal Infrared data exchange/OBEX **P.392**
- Use as alarm clock Alarm clock **P.423**
- Use miniSD memory card **P.378**



For more information about other operation guides, see “Using the Manual (This Document)” on the back of the cover.

Also, “Quick Manual” instructs you how to operate the functions used often.  
→P.572

## Index

<b>Numerals</b>		Folder	206	Memory info	369
186(provide)/184(withhold)	56	No. of bookmarks	206, 207	Rec. Chara-den	371
3D Sound	116	<b>C</b>			
64K data communication	468	Calculator	439	Select multiple data	390
<b>A</b>		Calendar	124	Use	368
AC adapter	43	Call acceptance	150	Charge sound	118
Access reader	182	Call data	436	Chat mail	286
Accessories	538	Call forwarding (Restrictions)	150	Chat group	289
Additional services	464	Call forwarding service	458	Chat member	286
Address list	279	Call rejection	150	Chat settings	291
Adjusting volume	67, 68	Call response setting	69	Composing chat mail	287
After-sales service	553	Call setting w/o ID	151	Receive	288
Alarm	420	Call time display	132	Check messages	456
Check	422	Call waiting	457	Check missed calls	71
Notification actions	420	Caller ID notification	48	Checkbox	36, 201
Stop	422	Caller ID request service	461	Clear learning record	525
Alarm clock	423	Camera	156	Clock display	133
Alarm setting	420	Access reader	182	Component names and functions	24
All lock	143	Auto timer	178	Continuous pictograph/symbol input	517
Release	145	Bar code reader	179	Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text	522
Setting	143	Front camera	156	<b>D</b>	
Anniversaries	424	Guide to the shooting screen	160	Data box	336
Answer hold	69	Light	178	Data communication	468
Answer setting	64	Movie mode	171	Data Link Software	538
Arrival call act	463	Rear camera	156	DC adapter	43
AT command	494	Shooting menu	161	Deco-mail	242
Attached file	281	Shooting movies	158	Decoration	89
Auto dial setting	445	Shooting still images	157	Desktop	133
Auto focus	162	Still image	162	Desktop holder	44
Auto melody play	216, 281	Zoom	177	Desktop icon	133
Auto reset all cost	437	CD-ROM for FOMA N901iS	469	Add	133
Automatic answer	445	Certificate Host	226	Check	135
Automatic display	112	Change CHR code	198	Notify	135
<b>B</b>		Changing the Active Screen	526	Retrieve	134
Bar code reader	179	Changing voice call/videophone call	52, 83	Dialed calls	54
Battery level	45	Character size	216, 280	Dictionary	441
Battery pack	40	Chara-den	85, 367	Disp. PH-book image	125
Bookmark	205	Action	368	Display	27
Add	205	Delete	369	Display an SSL page	199
Delete	206, 207	Display	367	Display design	127
Display	206	Download	213	Display home	198
Edit title	207	Guide to the Chara-den List	368	Display icon	27
				Display indications	27

Display light	126	Rerecord sound	364	<b>H</b>	
Display setting	121	Trim for image	364	Header/Signature	282
Display software info	303	Trim for mail	367	Holding	52
Displaying images	201, 337	Trim i-motion	364	Holidays	424
Add folder	389	Emotion-expressing mail	255	Home URL	216
Delete	341, 343	English guidance	462	<b>I</b>	
Delete folder	389	Enter PIN1 code	142	i-appli	300
Files that can be edited	340	Entering Kuten Codes	523	Auto start	309
Guide to the Picture List	338	<b>F</b>		Auto start info	310
Guide to the Title list	338	Face symbols	517	Auto start setting	309
Memory info	341	FeliCa	322	Auto start time	309
Move	341	i-mode FeliCa	322	Built-in software	398
Original animation	348	FirstPass	224	Change mld./img.	305
Select multiple data	390	Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)	444	Delete	314
Viewer settings	340	Making a Call	444	Deselect i-appli standby screen	312
Document (PDF File)	402	Receiving a Call	444	Download	301
Delete	409	Fold setting	65	i-appli DX	300
Download	211	FOMA card (UIM)	38	i-appli standby screen	312
How to see document list	403	Add to UIM Phonebook	98	i-appli standby screen exit information	313
Operation	404	Operational restriction function	39	i-appli To function	310
Trim page	407	PIN codes	39	Icon info	305
View	402	UIM operation	106	Launching	304
Download dictionary	525	Versions	40	Mail-connected i-appli	301
DPOF setting	413	FOMA PC setting software	474	Network set	305
Driving mode	70	FOMA USB Cable	470	Pre-installed software	307
DTMF	81	Font	132	Quit	304
Dual network service	461	Forwarding image	392	Security error history	306
<b>E</b>		Frame	170	See Pbook/hist.	305
Earphone	119	Full Browser	326	Set i-appli To	310
Edit image	350	Changing display mode	328, 331	Software desc.	305
Brightness	351	Cookie	333	Stand-by net	305
Change size	352	Frame	329	Stand-by set	312
Character stamp	354	Multi window	329	Stored data	300
Clipping area	347	Referer	334	Trace information	304
Composite image	347	Scrolling	328	Upgrade	313
Frame	352	Setting	332	IC card	322
Marker stamp	353	Switching to full browser from i-mode	331	icon display	27, 29
Positioning	346	TLS/SSL	326	Illumination	131
Retouch	351	Upload	330	Illumination in talk	132
Rotate	351	Function menu	36	Image display	29, 30, 125
Size for mail	345	<b>G</b>		i-melody	210
Trimming	354	Go to location	204	iMenu	191, 196
Edit movie	363	Group setting	100	i-mode	190
Edit ticker	365	Group utilities	108	Add to phonebook	202

Change i-mode password	203	Open folder	270	Receive one	395
Check settings	216	Preview	237	Send all	396
Exiting i-mode	197	Protect ON/OFF	273, 276, 277, 278	Send one	395
Host selection	217	Read out message	264	Initial setting	46
i-mode menu	196	Reading mail messages	263	Initialize	451
i-mode password	140, 203	Receive	254	Insert mode	515
i-mode settings	216	Receive option	257	International calls	58
Reset	216	Reply	259	Internet connection	204
Starting up i-mode	196	Reply with quote	260	Int'l dial setting	59
Working with Flash movies	203	Reply with ref	259	<b>J</b>	
i-mode FeliCa	322	Resend	278	JAN code	179
i-mode mail	228	Reset	281	Jumping to previous pages	202
Add folder	270	Rules used for reading out mail	283	<b>K</b>	
Add receiver	238	Save address, Add to phonebook	261	Keypad dial lock	148
Attach image	250	Save image	262	Keypad sound	117
Attach i-motion	250	Save i-mode mail	251	Kuten code list	532
Attach melody	250	Save i-motion	262	<b>L</b>	
Auto-sort	271	Save melody	261	Last URL	201
Broadcast mail	238	Search mail	273, 275	Links	201
Change rcv. type	237	Secret code	105	<b>M</b>	
Changing the list screen display mode	268, 269	Set check new message	283	Mail list disp.	280
Changing the mail character size	268	Sort	273, 275	Mail member	252
Check new message	258	Sort folder	270	Mail security	149
Check settings	281	Speed photo mail	241	Mail To function	215
Compose message	235	Template list	249	Mail/Msg. ring tone	118
Copy	277, 278	Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail	236	Making a Call	50
Deco-mail pictures	245	i-motion	316, 355	Manner mode	119
Delete	274, 276, 277, 278	Automatic replay	318	Manner mode set	120
Delete folder	270	Details	318	Manufacturer numbers	200
Delete receiver	237	i-motion type setting	319	Melody	373
Edit	278	Normal type	316	Add folder	389
Edit folder name	270	Playing i-motion	316, 355	Delete	376
Filter function	273, 276	Saving i-motion	317	Delete folder	389
Forward	260	Sound effects	116	Download	210
Guide to the folder list screens	264	Streaming type	316	Guide to the Melody list	374
Guide to the mail detail screens	267	i-motion mail	250, 262	Memory info	375
Guide to the mail list screens	265	In-car Hands-free	62	Move	376
Large image	251	Info notice setting	71	Operation	375
Look-up address	237	Infrared data exchange	392	Play playlist	377
Mail menu	234	Data forwarded	393	Playing melodies	373
Mail security	270	Infrared data exchange mode	397	Menu function list	528
Mail settings	280	Infrared data port	392, 398	Message auto display	216
Move trash box	274, 277	Infrared Remote Control	398	Message display	281
No. of messages	252, 274, 276	Receive all	397	Message list display	216

Message service	194	Using Mobile Wallet	323	Own number	48, 432
Check new message	220	Movie	355	Display	432
Delete	222, 223	Add folder	389	Store	433
Display	218, 221	Delete	357	<b>P</b>	
Filter function	222	Delete folder	389	Packet communication	468
How to view the Message Request and Message Free screens	219	Files that can be edited	340	Paste text	523
No. of messages	222	Guide to the Preview screen and Title list	356	Pattern data update	559
Protect ON/OFF	222, 223	Memory info	357	Pause dial	56
Receive	218	Move folder	357	Storing	56
Sort	222	Operations during i-motion playback	359	Transmission	57
miniSD memory card	378	Play movie playlist	361	PDF Data (document)	402
Check miniSD	384	Playing screen	355	Petit message	90
Copy	391	Preview screen	356	Phone To function	214
Create folder	390	Select multiple data	390	Phonebook	96
DCIM folder	380	Title list	356	Add to phonebook	97
Delete file	384	Movie mode	171	Delete data	105
Delete image	341, 343	Multi access	416	Edit Phonebook	105
Delete movie	357	Combination patterns	536	Making a call	101
Displaying images	338	Multi number	464	Search phonebook	101
DPOF setting	413	Multi task	418	Secret code	105
Export	382	Activate	418	Storage status	108
Export images	349	Combination patterns	536	PictBridge print	411
Export movies	362	End	420	Pictographs	517
Folder tree	380	Switch	419	Pictographs symbols lists	531
Format	386	My Menu	203	PIM lock	147
Import	385	My picture	337	PIN lock	142
Import images	350	<b>N</b>		PIN setting	141
Import movies	363	Network security code	140	PIN unlock	142
Insert	378	Network Service	454	PIN1 and PIN2 codes	140
miniSD info	384, 385	Neuropointer	26, 130	Change	141
Number of files	381	Noise reduction	61	Pl*SB input mode	517
Playing movies	355	Notice call service	457	Playing music	540
Preview data	383	Notify cost limit	438	PLMN setting	446
Remove	379	Alarm notification	439	Power Saving mode	126
Save destination folder	391	Check the details	439	Prefix setting	57
SD_PIM folder	380	Notifying your phone number	48	Print	411
SD_VIDEO folder	380	Nuisance call barring service	460	Pull-down menus	201
The number of movies	158	<b>O</b>		Push signals	56
The number of still images	157	OBEX	392	<b>O</b>	
miniSD reader/writer	387	Options	538	QR code	179
Mobile phone manufacturer number	200	Original manner	120	Quality alarm	118
Mobile Wallet	322	Original menu	130	Quick Manual	572
IC Card lock	324	Overwrite	516	Quick message	74
Mobile Wallet i-appli	323	Own dictionary	524		

<b>R</b>		Save	207	Compose SMS	293
Radio buttons	201	Save image	209	Delete	294
Random melody	114	Scroll function	200	Look-up address	294
Read out setting	281	Scroll setting	216, 280	Preview	294
Receive option setting	281	SD-PIM	383	Receive	294
Received address list	279	Secret mode	145	Reply, forward	296
Received calls	65	Secret only mode	145, 146	Save	294
Receiving a Call	63	Security code	140	Saving SMS to Your FOMA Card (UIM)	298
Receiving display	281	Change	140	SMS (Short Message) center setting	296
Reconnect control	61	Entering	35	SMS (Short Message) rejection settings	297
Record display set	149	Select icons setting	136	SMS (Short Message) report	293
Record message	72, 74	Selecting	136	UIM operation	106, 298
Delete	75	Select language	46	SMS input character	281
Play	74	Select ring tone	114	SMS report request	281
Setting	72	Chaku-motion	114	SMS validity period	281
Redial	54	Random melody	114	Software keys	26
Reject unknown	153	Selecting the menu	34	Software update	555
Reloading	202	Selection boxes	202	Sound effect	116
Remote access	464	Self mode	153	Set 3D sound	116
Remote all lock	143	Sent address list	279	Set surround	116
Setting	143	Service available	537	SRS_WOW setting	116
Remote observation	91	Service dialing number	463	Sound effect setting	216
Reset call duration	437	Set arrival act	463	Speed photo auto disp.	281
Reset last URL	216	Set as home URL	198	SRS_WOW setting	116
Reset setting	446	Set connection timeout	217	SSL certificate setting	223
Restrict dialing	150	Set image disp.	216, 369	SSL certification	223
Restrictions	150	Set menu display	128	SSL communication	193
Result codes	503	Set time	47	SSL page	193
Ring volume	68	Shooting movies	171	Stand-by display	124
Ringing time	152	Auto timer	178	Still image	162
<b>S</b>		Chance capture	175	AF lock	163
SAR	560	Image size	158	Auto Focus	162
Save image	209	Light	178	Auto timer	178
Scanning function	559	Picture voice	176	Continuous mode	167
Schedule	125, 424	Shooting settings	172, 177	Framed photography	170
Changing the display mode	425	The number of movies	158	Image size	157
User icon settings	427	Voice mode	176	Light	178
Screen memo	207	Zoom	177	Shoot folded	166
Add to phonebook	209	Side keys guard	148	Shoot open	163
Delete	208, 209	Site (program) connection	190	Shooting mode	164
Display	208	Viewing a Site	197	Shooting settings	167, 177
Edit title	208, 209	Smiley face symbols list	531	The number of images	157
No. of memos	208	SMS (Short Message)	292	Zoom	177
Protect ON/OFF	208, 209	Check new SMS	296	Store common phrase	521

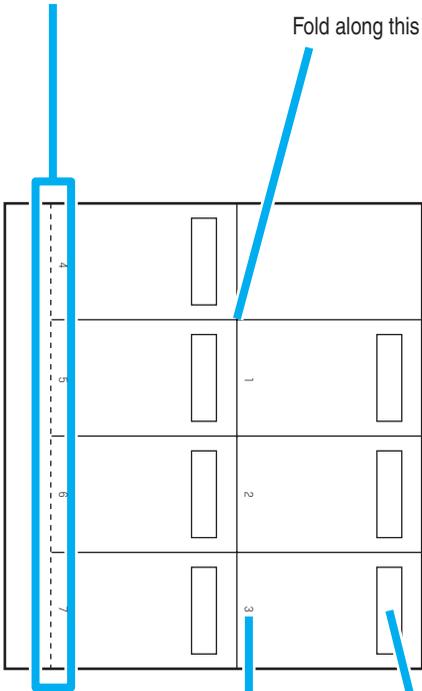
Sub-address	61	Videophone	78
Super silent	120	Camera image sending	86
Symbols	517	Chara-den	82, 85
Symbols and special characters list	530	Decoration	89
<b>T</b>		Disp. setting VP	89
Task menu	419	Hands-free	79, 84
Text boxes	201	Indicate V-phone	90
Text entry	506, 514	Making	79
Changing the Active Screen	526	Petit message	90
Common phrases	520	Receiving	84
Delete	518	Remote observation	91
Entering symbols and pictographs continuously	517	Select image	86
Full-pitch and half-pitch characters	508, 509	Viewing the videophone screen	78
Guidance	513	Visual check	88
Input mode	508, 509, 510	Visual preference	86
Insert mode and Overwrite mode	515	Zoom	88
Inserting text	515	Visual check	88
Line feed	516	Voice announce	435
Overwrite	516	Voice mail (Restrictions)	150
Pictographs	517	Voice mail service	455
Quote data	520	Voice memo	74, 434
Space (blank)	516	Voice memo (during a call)	434
Symbols	516	Voice memo (in stand-by)	434
Upper case and lower case	515	Volume	67
Text entry method	507	<b>W</b>	
Mode 1 (5-touch input)	508	Wake-up display	122
Mode 2 (2-touch input)	509	Warranty	553
Mode 3 (T9 input)	510	Web To function	215
Text memo	440	Website	195
ToDo	429	Word prediction	512
Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off	45	WORLD CALL	58
Two-touch dialing	112	WORLD WING	40
<b>U</b>		<b>V</b>	
URL	204	Your own phone number	48
Delete	205		
Enter URL	204		
URL	198		
URL history	204		
USB mode setting	388		
Use saved data	216, 217		
User certificate	224		
Utilities	108		
<b>V</b>			
Vibrator	116		

# How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual describes the basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
- You can tear it out of this manual and fold it for ease of use.
- Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages. Take care not to hurt yourself.

Cut along this line.

Fold along this line to use.



Name of function described in this page.

Page number of Quick Manual.

# FOMA® N901iS

## Quick Manual

- For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>  
For DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:  
(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)
- You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

**0120-005-250** (toll free) (in English)

※ Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS.

○ For malfunctions

For DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

○ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

**0120-800-000** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

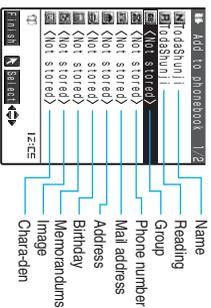
※ Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS.

※ Check the phone number carefully before calling.

### Edit/delete phonebook data

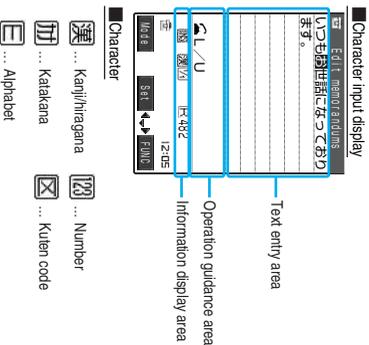
- Edit the phonebook data
  1. Display the phonebook data → (Edit) → Edit the items if necessary → (Finish)
  2. For the FOMA terminal (Phone) → YES\*  
For the FOMA card (UM) → Overwrite\* or "Add"
- Delete phonebook data  
Display the phonebook data → (FUNC) → Delete data\* → Delete this\*

### Add to phonebook



1. Stand-by screen appears → (Add) → Add to phonebook\*
  - To add data from the received call record  
Stand-by screen appears → (Add) → highlight the received call record → (FUNC) → Add to phonebook\*
  - To add data from the readal  
Stand-by screen appears → (Add) → highlight the readal record → (FUNC) → Add to phonebook\*

### Input method and mode



- Character input display
  - Text entry area
  - Operation guidance area
  - Information display area
- Character
  - 漢 ... Kanji/hiragana
  - かな ... Katakana
  - かな ... Katakana
  - 数字 ... Number
  - 記号 ... Kuten code
  - 英 ... Alphabet

2. Select "Phone" or "UM" → Enter name → Check the reading

3. Select items and enter them

Group (00 to 19)

<Not stored> → Select group

Phone number (up to 4)

<Not stored> → Enter phone number → Selection icon

Mail address (up to 3)

<Not stored> → Enter mail address → Selection icon

Address

<Not stored> → Enter postal code → Enter address

Birthday

<Not stored> → Enter birthday

2

- Select input method

Other settings\* → Character input method\* → Input mode →

- Select (Checkbox) or Mode 1 (5-touch)
- Select (Checkbox) or Mode 2 (2-touch)
- Select (Checkbox) or Mode 3 (T9 Input)

(Finish) → Select default mode

- Enter dakuten, han-dakuten, comma, dot

(one time or more)

- Switch to kanji/hiragana, katakana, alphabet or number mode

(Mode) (one time or more)

- Enter pictograph

(FUNC) → Pictograph\* → Select pictographs

- Memorandums

<Not stored> → Enter memorandums

- Image

<Not stored> → Select image

- Chara-den

<Not stored> → Select Chara-den

Memory number (000 to 699)

<Not stored> → Enter memory number

4. (Finish)

Only name, reading, phone number, group and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UM).

3

- Enter symbol

(FUNC) → Symbols\* → Select symbol

- Enter pictograph and symbol continuously

(FUNC) → P1, SB input mode → Select pictograph or symbol → (input) after entering

- Clear character

Use (input) to move the cursor to the character to clear → (input)

- Enter space

(FUNC) → Space\*

- Lower case/Upper case

(FUNC) → Lower case\* or "Upper case"

4

5

Cutting Line

6

7

## Enter “鈴木” on Text memo

- Text entry (edit) display
- Text memo → (Edit) → (Mode)  
 → \*Kanjiragana input mode →

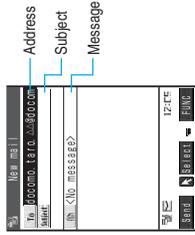
three times, (C)  
 three times, (H)  
 two times

- Conversion  
 or → Select “鈴木” from the conversion candidates

8

## i-mode Mail

### Compose/send Message



- Compose message screen  
 → \*Compose message\*
- Address  
 → Enter a mail address

12

## Camera

- Shoot still image  
 → \*Camera\* → Photo mode → or → Shoot continuously
- Shoot continuously  
 → \*Camera\* → Photo mode → (FUNC)  
 → CHG camera-mode → \*Continuous mode\* → \*Auto\* or \*Manual\* → → → (FUNC) → Select saving method  
 → \*Camera\* → \*Movie mode\* → or → →

9

### Subject

→ Enter subject

### Message

→ Enter message

### Send mail

→ after transmission end

### Attach file

- Attach image  
 Display New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file →  
 \*Attach image\* → Select folder → Select image

13

## Display image/play melody

- Display image  
 → \*My picture\* → Select folder → Select image
- Play movie  
 → \*I-motion\* → Select folder → Select movie
- Play melody  
 → \*Melody\* → Select folder → Select melody

10

### Attach melody

Display New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file →  
 \*Attach melody\* → Select folder → Select melody

### Attach I-motion

Display New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file →  
 \*Attach I-motion\* → Select folder → Select I-motion

### Receive mail

flashes → \*Received results\* screen appears →  
 Select \* → Select I-mode mail to read

14

## Make/receive videophone call

- To make a videophone call  
 Enter the phone number → → after talking
- To receive a videophone call  
 The phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes.  
 Press or → after talking

: Send your shot to the caller

: Send your substitute image to the caller

### During a call

- : Switch/cancel hands-free
- : Switch camera (Front camera/rear camera)

11

## Other functions

### Reply

Display the mail to reply → (FUNC) → \*Reply\* or  
 \*Reply with quote\* → → Enter message →  
 (Send) → after transmission end

### Forward

Display the mail to forward → (FUNC) → \*Forward\* →  
 \* → Enter address → (Send) → after  
 transmission end

## Check new message

→ → \*Check new message\*

15

## Menu list

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Main item	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	Contact SMS	
	Outgoing message	
	Repeat action	
	Check email/SMS	
	Templates	
	Mail settings	
	Phone	
Input	Message	
	Check outgoing	
	In-call settings	
	Internet (F. all Browser)	
	Software start set	
	Auto start set	
	Input mfo	

16

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Settings	Connection settings	Configure host
	4G/LTE settings	Reset emergency
	Emergency	Emergency/SSNIP
	Emergency call	USB mode setting
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Emergency call	Emergency (F. 2) (F. 2)

20

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Sound effect (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Sound effect (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)
		Volume (F. 2) (F. 2)

17

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Data box	Mail profile	Mail profile (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Internet	Internet (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Mobile	Mobile (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Character	Character
	My document	My document
	Camera	Camera (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Screen	Screen (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Alarm clock	Alarm clock (F. 2) (F. 2)
	ToDo	ToDo (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Text memo	Text memo (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Calculator	Calculator (F. 2) (F. 2)

21

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Settings	Video phone	Videophone
		Camera image setting
		Video phone

18

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Tool	Diagnosis	Diagnosis
	Check messages	Check messages (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Call ID notification	Call ID notification (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Voice mail	Voice mail
	Call waiting	Call waiting
	Call forwarding	Call forwarding
	Number call barring	Number call barring
	Caller ID request	Caller ID request
	Answer call set	Answer call set
	Star number set	Star number set
	Remote access	Remote access

22

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Settings	Lock/Security	Lock/Security
	All lock	All lock
	Pin lock	Pin lock
	IC Card lock	IC Card lock
	Keypad lock	Keypad lock
	Repeat dial lock	Repeat dial lock
	Call setting w/o ID	Call setting w/o ID (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Call setting w/o ID	Call setting w/o ID (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Call setting w/o ID	Call setting w/o ID (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Call setting w/o ID	Call setting w/o ID (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Call setting w/o ID	Call setting w/o ID (F. 2) (F. 2)

19

Main item	Sub item	Search item
Phonebook	Group setting	Group setting (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Own number	Own number (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Received calls	Received calls (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Dialled calls	Dialled calls (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Mail reminder	Mail reminder (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Call group	Call group (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Common address	Common address (F. 2) (F. 2)
	Own dictionary	Own dictionary (F. 2) (F. 2)
	DL dictionary	DL dictionary

23

- < Other features >
- Manner mode
  - Driving mode

Cutting Line



## Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, do not forget to consider the feelings of people around you.

### Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

- In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone  
It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:
  - An airplane · A hospital\* Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that the electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Driving  
Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.
  - \* Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or use the driving mode.
- In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator  
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.
- In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum  
Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

### Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

- If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.
- Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

### Respect privacy

- ! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

#### **[Manner mode/Original manner mode]**

Manner mode mutes the sounds of the FOMA terminal such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

#### **[Driving mode]**

The FOMA terminal announces to the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. The ring tone does not sound, which means that you can drive safely.

#### **[Vibrator]**

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

#### **[Record message function]**

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice mail service (P.455) and Call forwarding service (P.458).



You can subscribe to “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Barring Service”, “mopera U”, “WORLD CALL” and “WORLD WING” via the DoCoMo e-site.

● For i-mode: iMenu ▶  料金&お申込 ▶  ドコモeサイト no packet communication charge

● For PC: <http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

- ※ To access e-site via i-mode, your “Network security code” applied to NTT DoCoMo is required.
- ※ The packet communication fee for e-site via i-mode is free. However, you may be charged for some contents.
- ※ To access e-site from your PC, your “User ID” and “Password” are required.
- ※ If you lose or forget your “Network security code”, “User ID” and “Password”, please contact inquiries shown below.
- ※ Depending on contracts, you may not be able to access e-site.
- ※ You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.

### For inquiries < DoCoMo Information Center >

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:

**0120-005-250** (toll free) (in English)  
Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS

● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

### For technical inquiries

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:

**0120-800-000** (toll free) (in Japanese only)  
Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
- For details, check the “Service station list” provided with a FOMA terminal.



### Don't forget your cellular phone ... or your manners!

○ When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

## Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.

Li-ion



This manual is made of 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'05.6 (1.1 Edition)  
MDT-000059-EAAO